

Manual for

# FOMA® SO704i '07.7



- Easy Search/Contents/Precautions
- Before Using the Handset
- Voice/Videophone Calls
- PushTalk
- Phonebook
- Sound/Display/Light Settings
- Security Settings
- Camera
- i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel
- Mail
- i-αpli
- Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa
- Data Display/Edit/Management
- Music Playback
- Other Convenient Functions
- Character Entry
- Network Services
- Data Communication
- Appendix/External Devices/Troubleshooting
- Index/Quick Manual**

# NTT DoCoMo W-CDMA System Mobile Phone

Thank you for your purchase of the new “FOMA SO704i” mobile phone.

For proper and effective use of the FOMA SO704i, read this manual carefully before and while you use the FOMA SO704i.

## Before using the FOMA terminal

- Because a FOMA terminal operates using radio frequencies, it cannot be used inside a tunnel, underground, in a building or other locations where radio waves do not reach the FOMA terminal, in locations with weak radio wave condition, or outside of the FOMA's service area. The FOMA services may not be available on high upper floors of high-rise apartments or buildings, even if you can see no obstructions around you. On occasion, your calls may become disconnected even in areas with strong radio wave condition, even if you are not moving, or even if there are 3-antenna marks in the FOMA terminal's display.
- Please use discretion and mind your manners when using the FOMA terminal in public areas or crowded/quiet places to keep from bothering others.
- Note that because the FOMA terminal operates on radio frequencies, your calls are at risk of being intercepted by the third party. However, the W-CDMA system automatically scrambles all calls through a private call feature. Therefore, even if the third party successfully intercepts your call, they will only hear noise.
- The FOMA terminal operates on radio frequencies by converting voice into digital signals. If the caller moves into an area of adverse radio wave condition, the digital signal may not be restored accurately, and the voice received in the call may differ slightly from the actual voice.
- Always keep the information you save in the FOMA terminal in a separate note. Under no condition will DoCoMo be held liable for any damaged or lost data saved in the FOMA terminal.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifiers as listed herein make any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifiers shall be responsible for any such damage or loss.  
Certifiers: VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust, Inc., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Inc., and SECOM Trust Systems Co., Ltd.
- The FOMA terminal has FOMA Plus-Area support.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.

## To the first-time users of the FOMA terminal

If you are the first-time user of the FOMA terminal, please read this manual in the order indicated below so that you can make preparations to use the FOMA terminal and learn the basic operations.

1. Learn “Safety Precautions” (P.12).
2. Attach the battery pack and start charging (P.34, 35).
3. Power on, perform initial settings, and confirm your phone number (P.39, 41).
4. Learn the functions of the FOMA terminal parts, such as the keys (P.24).
5. Learn the meaning of the information in the display, such as icons (P.26).
6. Learn how to operate the menus (P.30).
7. Learn how to place/receive a call (P.45, 59).

The latest information on this manual is ready for download at the NTT DoCoMo's website.

- “User's Manual Download”  
(<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html>)
- ※ The URL and contents of the website are subject to change without notice.

# Information on Using the Manual and How to Look up in the Manual

This manual guides you through the operating instructions with step-by-step screen examples for each operating procedure to ensure that you operate the FOMA terminal properly.

## ■ How to Look up in the Manual

This manual employs several search methods so that it can provide the most appropriate way to find a page relating to your desired function or service flexibly according to your need or situation.

For details, see the next page.

### ◆ Index (P.310)

Search by a function or service name known to you or a function name to be displayed on the FOMA terminal's display.

### ◆ Easy Search (P.4)

Search a function that you want to know or you consider useful to know from a listing sorted by purpose or by a function name.

### ◆ Headings on the cover (Cover page)

Search the description page of a desired function in the order of "Cover page" → "Chapter opening page (the first page of a chapter)" → "Description page". The opening page of each chapter contains detailed contents of the chapter.

### ◆ Contents (P.6)

Search by purpose or a function name starting from chapters that are categorized by functions.

### ◆ Main functions (P.8)

Search for main functions of SO704i, such as new and useful functions.

### ◆ List of menus (P.270)

Search a desired function from the menu items of SO704i.

### ◆ Quick Manual (P.316)

The basic operations of the FOMA terminal are explained briefly. Cut and fold these pages into a booklet and take it with you for convenient reference.

- Please note that "FOMA SO704i" is called the "FOMA terminal" in this "Manual for FOMA SO704i".
- This manual describes the functions that can be performed using the microSD memory card. To use these functions, you need the optional microSD memory card.
  - About the microSD memory card (P.211)
- Reproduction or reprint of all or part of this manual without prior permission is forbidden.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without notice.

A function, referred to as “Notify caller ID” here, can be searched in diverse ways as follows.

## Index (P.310)

Search by a function or service name known to you or a function name to be displayed on the FOMA terminal's display.

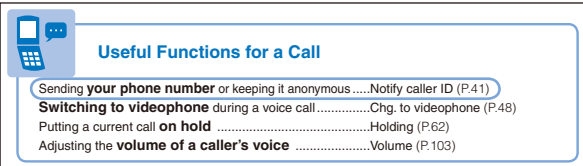


Memory card.....	211		
.....	220		
.....	212		
Up .....	213	Name .....	109
.....	216	Network security code .....	116
Move .....	212	Network service .....	260
Mode .....	217	Notification display .....	28
Info .....	216	Notify caller ID .....	41
No. ....	147	Nuisance Call Blocking Service .....	261
.....	215	.....	261
Memory .....	223	Number of protected data items .....	307
Eng. Info .....	216	.....	307
.....	65, 113	Number of saved data items.....	307

P.41  
To the description page of the “Notify caller ID”.

## Easy Search (P.4)

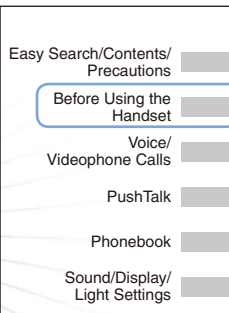
Search a function that you want to know or you consider useful to know from a listing sorted by purpose or by a function name.



P.41  
To the description page of the “Notify caller ID”.

## Headings on the cover (Cover page)

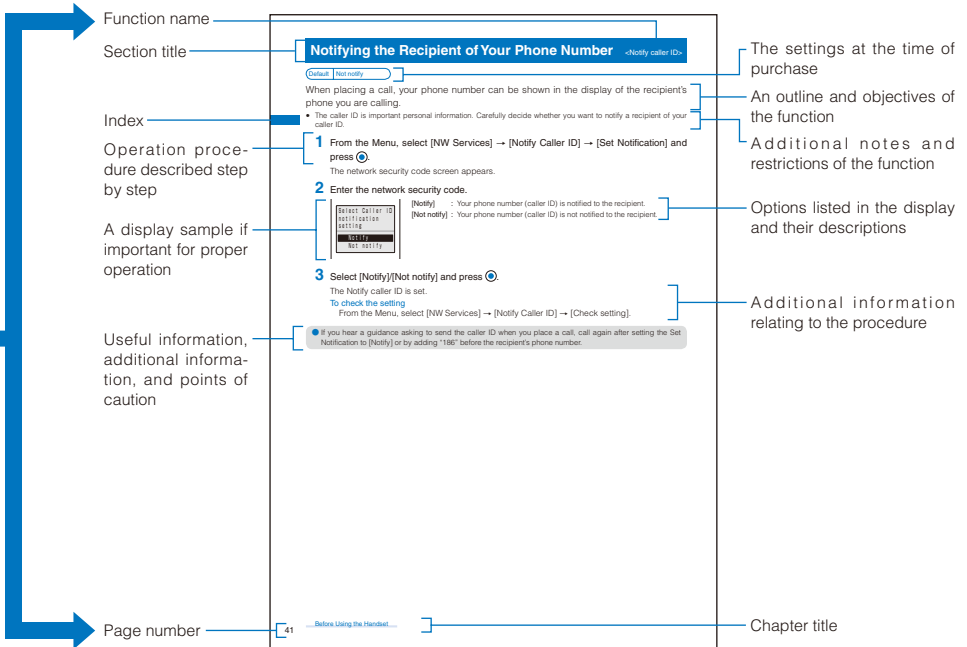
Search the description page of a desired function in the order of “Cover page” → “Chapter opening page (the first page of a chapter)” → “Description page”. The opening page of each chapter contains detailed contents of the chapter.



A screenshot of the 'Before Using the Handset' section of the manual. It contains a detailed table of contents for various topics, including Part Names and Functions, Using the Displays, About the Sub-display, Selecting the Menu, Using the UIM, Attaching and Removing the Battery Pack, Charging the FOMA Terminal, Attaching and Removing the Style-Up Panel, Checking the Battery Level, Powering On/Off, Setting the Basic Functions, Setting the Date and Time, Notifying the Recipient of Your Phone Number, and Checking Your Own Phone Number.

P.41  
To the description page of the “Notify caller ID”.

## Typical layout of the operating instructions page

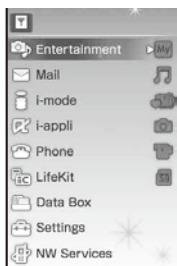


※ Please note that the above page is only for explanation purpose and is partly different from the actual page.

## About the menu operation

Throughout this manual the operations for selecting from the menu are described as follows.

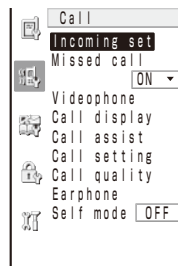
### Actual operations



Press [MENU] (MENU).



Use ▲▼ to move the cursor to [Settings] and press ● (Select).



Use ▲▼ to move the cursor to [Call] and press ● (Select).



Use ▲▼ to move the cursor to [Incoming set] and press ● (Select).

### Typical description of the operations

From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Incoming set] and press ●.

● Display examples and illustrations used in this manual are just images for explanations and may be different from actual ones.

● Some parts of the keys are deformed or omitted in the illustration in this manual.

Actual key	Illustration in this manual

● Display examples in this manual show the conditions in which the Menu pattern and Calendar/Clock are set to [SHINE] and [Digital clock], respectively.

● The shorter form "Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli" is used for "Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli software supporting IC card function" in this manual.

## Easy Search

You can search the function that you want to know with simple words.



### Useful Functions for a Call

Sending **your phone number** or keeping it anonymous .....Notify caller ID (P.41)  
**Switching to videophone** during a voice call .....Chg. to videophone (P.48)  
Putting a current call **on hold** .....Holding (P.62)  
Adjusting the **volume of a caller's voice** .....Volume (P.103)



### When Being Unable to Answer a Call

Putting an incoming call **on hold** .....On hold (P.62)  
Informing of **inability to talking** on the phone .....Public mode (Drive mode) (P.62)  
Public mode (Power off) (P.64)  
**Recording** a message .....Record message/  
Videophone message (P.65)



### How to Customize the Melody and Indicator

Using a **ring tone**, etc. specific to individual callers .....Des phone/mail tone/  
Select phone/mail Illum. (P.88)  
Changing a **ring tone** .....Ring tone (P.100)  
Adjusting the **volume of the ring tone** .....Ring volume (P.101)  
Setting the **vibrator** to notify incoming calls and mail .....Vibrator (P.101)  
Changing the **color of the indicator** .....Color (P.101)  
Muting the **keypad sound** .....Keypad sound (P.102)  
Setting the **Manner mode** .....Manner mode (P.105)



### How to Customize the Display

Learning what the **icons** in the display represent .....Use display (P.26)  
**Switching** the menu **display** .....Menu setting (P.30)  
Changing the **stand-by display** .....Stand-by disp. (P.107)  
Displaying the **calendar** in the stand-by display .....Stand-by disp. (P.107)  
Changing the **font size** .....Font size (P.114)



## Useful Functions for Mail

- Sending **Deco-mail** .....Compose and send Deco-mail (P.171)
- Sending an **image** .....File attachment (P.174)
- Sorting** received mail **automatically** .....Sort inbox/Sort outbox (P.182)



## Useful Functions for the Camera

- Turning on the **photo light** .....Photo light (P.141)
- Changing the **recording size** .....Select size (P.140)
- Saving an image directly to the **microSD memory card** ...Select save to (P.145)
- Displaying** a recorded **image** .....My picture (P.204)



## For Secure Operations of the FOMA Terminal

- Locking the FOMA terminal** from a remote location in case you misplace it .....Omakase Lock※ (P.121)
- Displaying saved **secret** contents .....Secret display (P.125)
- Rejecting** a call if no caller's phone number is presented ....Denied no ID (P.127)
- Rejecting** a call from a caller who is not saved in the Phonebook .....Reject unknown (P.128)
- Storing the Phonebook data and other information** to prevent data loss .....Data Security Service※ (P.128)

※ Omakase Lock is a paid service. Data Security Service is a paid service that requires a subscription.



## Other Useful Functions

- Suppressing the consumption** of the battery .....Power saver (P.111)
- Reading the **QR and bar codes** .....Bar code reader (P.149)
- Using the **microSD memory card** .....microSD memory card (P.211)
- Exchanging information using **infrared communication** ....Infrared communication (P.224)
- Listening to **music** .....MUSIC Player (P.230)
- Using the FOMA terminal as an **alarm clock** .....Alarm (P.242)
- Using the FOMA terminal as a **calculator** .....Calculator (P.249)
- Upgrading to the latest **software** .....Software update (P.299)
- Updating **security** to the latest safeguards .....Scan function (P.303)

- For information on how to search the other operations than described above, see "Information on Using the Manual and How to Look up in the Manual" (P.1).
- The Quick Manual is included for convenient reference, in which operating instructions on the most commonly used functions are summarized (P.316).

# Contents

Before using the FOMA terminal	
To the first-time users of the FOMA terminal	
Information on Using the Manual and How to Look up in the Manual ...	1
Easy Search .....	4
Main Functions of the FOMA SO704i .....	8
Making Full Use of SO704i ! .....	10
Safety Precautions (Observe Strictly) .....	12
Handling Precautions .....	18
Intellectual Property Right .....	20
Supplied and Optional Accessories .....	22

## Before Using the Handset

23

Part names and functions, Use display, Sub-display, Select menu, UIM, Attach and remove battery pack, Charge the FOMA terminal, Style-Up Panel, Battery level, Power on/off, Initial setting, Date/time, Notify caller ID, Own number

## Voice/Videophone Calls

43

Place voice/videophone call, Change to videophone/voice call, Redial/Received record, Chaku-moji, WORLD CALL, Receive voice/videophone call, Any key answer, Setting when folded, Public mode, Record message/Videophone message, Call Chara-den, Videophone setting, and so on...

## PushTalk

73

What is PushTalk?, Originate PushTalk call, Receive PushTalk call, Add to PushTalk phonebook, Originate from the PushTalk phonebook, Delete a PushTalk phonebook entry, PushTalk setting, and so on...

## Phonebook

85

About phonebooks, Add to FOMA terminal phonebook, Add to UIM phonebook, Group setting, Display phonebook, Search phonebook, Phonebook setting, Edit phonebook, Delete phonebook, Memory status, 2-touch dial, Data Security Service, and so on...

## Sound/Display/Light Settings

99

Incoming set, Set basic tone, Volume, Manner mode, Stand-by display, Animation setting, Call display, Sub display, Backlight, Menu setting, Menu pattern, Font size, Language, and so on...

## Security Settings

115

About security codes, Change code, UIM setting, Cancel the PIN lock, Lock all, Omakase Lock, Self mode, PIM lock, Key dial lock, Record display, Secret display, Mail security, Accept/Reject call, Denied no ID, Set ring start time, Reject unknown, Data Security Service, and so on...

## Camera

131

Record still images, Record movies, Change the camera settings, Adjust the camera, Set the camera operation, Bar code reader, and so on...

## i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel

151

What is i-mode?, i-mode menu, Display sites, Change i-mode password, Internet connection, Bookmark, Screen Memo, Save image, Download, i-mode setting, MessageR/MessageF, SSL certificate, User certificate, What is i-motion?, Download i-motion, What is i-Channel?, Display i-Channel, i-Channel setting, and so on...



## Mail

167

What is i-mode mail?, Mail menu, Compose and send mail, Compose and send Deco-mail, Template, File attachment, Save mail, Receive option, Check new messages, Received/sent/saved mail, Mail setting, Compose and send SMS, and so on...

## i-αppli

187

What is i-αppli?, Download, Run i-αppli, Auto start, i-αppli stand-by, Manage i-αppli, and so on...

## Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

197

What is Osaifu-Keitai?, Start an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli, What is ToruCa?, Obtain a ToruCa card, Display ToruCa, Manage ToruCa cards, ToruCa setting, IC act. Notice, IC card lock, and so on...

## Data Display/Edit/Management

203

My picture, i-motion, Chara-den, Music, Melody, microSD memory card, Data Box, Infrared communication, iC communication, and so on...

## Music Playback

229

What is MUSIC Player?, Transfer music data, Download Chaku-Uta Full®, Play back music data, Manage playlist, Music settings

- "Chaku-Uta Full" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment Corporation.

## Other Convenient Functions

237

Multiaccess, Multitask, Lifetime Calendar, Alarm, Schedule, My Selection, Voice memo, Call duration/cost, Calculator, Text Memo, Reset settings, Reset all data&set, and so on...

## Character Entry

253

Enter text, Enter common phrases, Pictographs/symbols, Cut/Copy/Paste, Reset data, Download dictionary, and so on...

## Network Services

259

Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting Service, Call Forwarding Service, Nuisance Call Blocking Service, Caller ID Display Request Service, Dual Network Service, English Guidance Service, Service Numbers, Arrival Call Act, Remote Control, Multi Number Service, and so on...

## Data Communication

265

About data communication, Before using data communication, Preparations and flow of data communication, AT commands, About the supplied CD-ROM, Introduction of DoCoMo keitai datalink

## Appendix/External Devices/Troubleshooting

269

List of menus, Troubleshooting, Software update, Scan function, Specifications, and so on...

## Index/Quick Manual

309

Index, Quick Manual

## Main Functions of the FOMA S0704i

“FOMA” is the name of NTT DoCoMo’s mobile service based on the W-CDMA (Wideband Code Division Multiple Access) system, which has been approved as a global standard of third generation (3G) wireless communication systems (IMT-2000 or International Mobile Telecommunications-2000).

### It’s amazing because it’s i-mode

i-mode is an online service that enables you to take advantage of valuable information from i-mode Menu sites (Program) and i-mode compatible sites on an i-mode terminal display. This service also enables you to exchange e-mail with great ease.

#### i-mode mail/Deco-mail/Deco mail Pict.

Besides the main body of text, you can attach up to 10 files (JPEG, ToruCa, etc.) of up to 2M bytes in total. The FOMA terminal also supports Deco-mail and Deco-mail pictographs, allowing you to create and send more impressive mail by providing a diversity of expression, such as changing font color and size and using effect of background color on mail main body (P.168).

#### Mega i- $\alpha$ ppli/i- $\alpha$ ppli DX

By downloading i- $\alpha$ ppli from a relevant site, you can enjoy games or obtain automatically updated information, such as about market shares and weather. Mega-appli is supported, enabling you to enjoy games that require large amounts of memory, such as high resolution 3D games and full-featured role playing games.

Additionally, i- $\alpha$ ppli DX expands the way of enjoying i- $\alpha$ ppli by allowing it to work in conjunction with the information saved in the i-mode terminal, such as Phonebook and mail (P.188).

#### Chaku-Uta Full®

You can download a whole track of music from an i-mode site, which can be set for the ring tone as well as played back (P.232).

#### Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

Once you download the Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i- $\alpha$ ppli, you can deposit e-money to IC card inserted in the FOMA terminal or look up the balance or purchase history. Furthermore, the i- $\alpha$ ppli for “DCMX” credit service provided by DoCoMo is preinstalled, making your mobile phone an increasingly handy tool in real life by providing a feature known as “Osaifu-Keitai”. The “iC transfer service” is also supported which allows you to easily transfer data stored on the IC card to another one in a case such as when replacing a mobile phone with a new model.

ToruCa is an e-card that can be obtained from a reading device or site and easily exchanged by way of e-mail or infrared communication (P.198).

## Security Settings (P.115)

#### Omakase Lock

If you misplace the FOMA terminal, it can be locked by your request. You can cancel the lock as well. See the contact address at the backcover of this manual for inquiries (P.121). Please note that Omakase Lock is a paid service\*.

- \* When you subscribe to this service together with your request to suspend the FOMA terminal or while the FOMA terminal is suspended, the service charge is not required.
- Omakase Lock allows the FOMA terminal to be locked by a request from a subscriber of the UIM inserted in the FOMA terminal. Note that if the UIM subscriber and user of the FOMA terminal are different, the FOMA terminal may be locked without knowledge of the user by request of the subscriber.

#### Data Security Service

You can save the Phonebook, still images, and mail of the FOMA terminal at the Data Security Service Center, and restore the data stored at the Center in case you lose any of it. You can also use a PC to edit/manage the data stored at the Center and update the FOMA terminal with newly edited data.

See the “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]” to learn about the precautions and details on how to use the Data Security Service when you use this service. See the contact address at the backcover of this manual for inquiries. Data Security Service is a paid service that requires a subscription (P.128).

### Camera Function

You can record still images and movies using two cameras, Out- and In-camera. This FOMA terminal has a wide range of installed camera functions including a scene selection function, an auto focus function, and a maximum 4:1 zoom function (P.132).

Out-camera : Effective number of pixels -- about 2,000,000 (Maximum number of recording pixels -- about 2,000,000)

In-camera : Effective number of pixels -- about 110,000 (Maximum number of recording pixels -- about 100,000)

### Style-Up Panel

The Style-Up Panel is employed. Optional panels allow you to enjoy customizing the look of your FOMA terminal by changing the panel according to your preference (P.37).

### Large-Screen Main Display & Sub-display

A 2.7-inch high-quality display is employed as the main display, reproducing sharp and vivid still images and movies.

The organic EL display employed as the sub-display reflects the displayed contents beautifully on the surface of the Style-Up Panel.

### microSD memory card


The small-sized microSD memory card is supported. You can copy the data, such as the FOMA terminal phonebook, mail, and images, to the microSD memory card and view the saved data on the FOMA terminal display.

You can also use the FOMA terminal as a microSD memory card reader/writer by connecting it to a PC (P.211, 217).

### Menu Pattern

You can change the design of the stand-by display, menu display, and Dreamy Twinkle for the sub-display with one operation. Besides four types of menu patterns preinstalled at the time of purchase, extra menu patterns designed for use with the Style-Up Panels (optional) are available for downloading from "SO@Planet" (P.112).

### "POBox" and Convenient Text Input

The FOMA terminal is provided with the prediction conversion function "POBox" (Predictive Operation Based On eXample). Pressing  for over a second allows you to scroll through the "POBox" line-by-line, thus enabling the speedy selection of the target word. The FOMA terminal also allows you to continuously switch the Japanese alphabet letters assigned to keys on the keypad, in a manner like "あ→い→う→え→お→あ→...", by pressing down keys for over a second (P.254).

### Quick deco. Mail Function

The entertaining Deco-mail is available with simple steps (P.172).

### Lifetime Calendar

The Lifetime Calendar allows you to display an image, mail, Schedule, and Phonebook (birthday) data directly from the Calendar and provides you with more pleasant way of retrieving your memories saved in the FOMA terminal (P.240).

### Infrared Communication/Infrared Remote Control

You can exchange data with other FOMA terminals using the infrared communication function. You can also use the FOMA terminal to operate equipment such as a TV that is provided with infrared remote control (P.224, 226).

### Multiaccess

You can use voice call and packet communication simultaneously. You can receive i-mode mail even when you are in a call and you can also make a call while you are using i-mode (P.238).

## Comprehensive Line-up of Network Services

- Voice Mail Service (Paid) (P.260)
- Call Forwarding Service (Free) (P.261)
- Caller ID Display Request Service (Free) (P.262)
- English Guidance Service (Free) (P.262)
- Call Waiting Service (Paid) (P.261)
- Nuisance Call Blocking Service (Free) (P.261)
- Dual Network Service (Paid) (P.262)
- Multi Number Service (Paid) (P.263)

# Making Full Use of SO704i !

## Videophone




Image of a person you are talking to

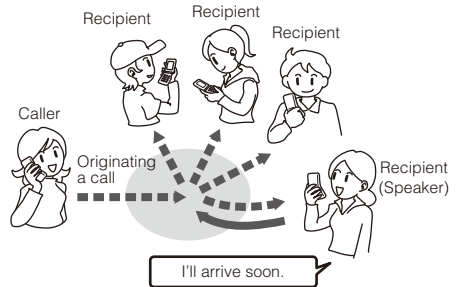


Your image

You can have a face-to-face conversation with a person in the distance. You can hear the person's voice from the speaker without changing any settings, so you can start a conversation soon. You can switch a call to a videophone call during a voice call without hanging up as well (P.44).

## PushTalk

You can communicate among several persons (up to five persons including yourself) with a simple operation of selecting recipients from the PushTalk phonebook and pressing  (P.74).



## i-Channel

You can receive graphical information such as News or weather.

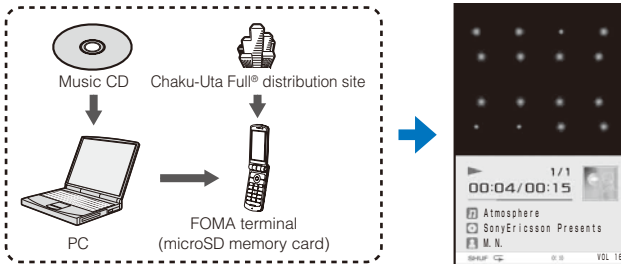
You can also get rich and detailed information that is created with Flash (P.154) by selecting your favorite channel from a list of available channels (P.165).

Unsubscribed	Subscribed

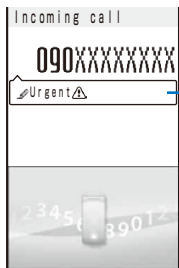
※ i-Channel is a paid service that requires a subscription.

## Playing Music

You can use the MUSIC Player to play back Chaku-Uta Full<sup>®</sup> downloaded from an i-mode site or music data that was saved from a PC in the microSD memory card inserted in the FOMA terminal using SonicStage (P.230).



## Chaku-moji






You can send a message that is displayed in the recipient's Incoming call display while calling the recipient. The recipient can know the purpose of the call or feelings of the caller from a message even before the recipient answers (P.51).

## Safety Precautions (Observe Strictly)







For safe and proper use of the FOMA terminal, please read the "Safety Precautions" prior to use. Keep the Manual in a safe place for future reference.

ALWAYS observe the safety precautions since they intend to prevent personal injury or property damage.

■ The following symbols indicate the different levels of injury or damage that may result if the guidelines are not observed and the FOMA terminal is used improperly.

 <b>DANGER</b>	Failure to observe these guidelines may immediately result in death or serious injury.
 <b>WARNING</b>	Failure to observe these guidelines may result in death or serious injury.
 <b>CAUTION</b>	Failure to observe these guidelines may result in injury and property damage.

■ The following symbols indicate specific directions.

 Don't	Indicates prohibited actions.
 No Disassembly	Indicates not to disassemble.
 No liquids	Indicates not to use where it could get wet.
 No wet hands	Indicates not to handle with wet hands.
 Do	Indicates compulsory actions in accordance with instructions.
 Unplug	Indicates to remove the power plug from the outlet.

■ "Safety Precautions" are described in the following categories:

Handling the FOMA Terminal, Battery Pack, Adapter (including the charger), and UIM.....	12
Handling the FOMA Terminal .....	14
Handling the Battery Pack.....	16
Handling the Adapter (including the charger).....	16
Handling the UIM .....	17
Handling the FOMA Terminal Near Electronic Medical Equipment .....	17

## Handling the FOMA Terminal, Battery Pack, Adapter (including the charger), and UIM

### DANGER



Don't

Do not use or leave the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter, or UIM in a place subject to high temperature such as close to fire, under direct sunlight, or in a car on an extremely hot day.

Doing so may cause the device to be deformed or damaged, or the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode, catch fire, or deteriorate in performance and longevity. Also, part of the case may heat up and cause burns.



No Disassembly

Do not disassemble or modify the FOMA terminal, battery pack, or adapter and do not directly solder the battery pack to the FOMA terminal.

Doing so may cause accident such as fire, injury or electric shock, or malfunction. Also, it may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode, or catch fire.



No liquids

Do not get the FOMA terminal, battery pack, or adapter wet.

If liquids such as water or pet urine get into the device, it may cause overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, or injury. Be careful where and how you use the device.



Do

Use the battery packs and adapters (including chargers) specified for the FOMA terminal by DoCoMo.

The use of products that are not specified may cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack, or other device to leak, overheat, explode, catch fire, or malfunction.

Battery Pack SO02, Desktop Holder SO05, FOMA AC Adapter 01/02, FOMA DC Adapter 01/02, FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01, FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use, FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01, FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01

※ Contact our service counter (DoCoMo shop, etc.) for information on other compatible products.

## WARNING



Don't

Do not place the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (including the charger), or UIM inside cooking appliance such as a microwave oven or high-pressure containers.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode, or catch fire, or the FOMA terminal and adapter (including the charger) to overheat, smoke, catch fire, or damage the circuit parts.



Don't

Do not subject the FOMA terminal, battery pack, or adapter to excessive force or throw it.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode, or catch fire, or cause the device to malfunction or catch fire.



Don't

Do not allow the charge and external connection terminals to come in contact with conducting foreign substances (a piece of metal, pencil lead, etc.). Never allow these objects to get into the FOMA terminal, battery pack, or adapter.

Doing so may cause fire or malfunction due to short circuits.



Don't

Do not use the FOMA terminal in a place where a fire or explosion could occur such as gas stations.

The use of the FOMA terminal in a place where flammable gases such as propane or gasoline, or dust exist may cause explosion or fire.



Do

If you notice anything unusual about the FOMA terminal, battery pack, or adapter such as an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration or deformation during operation, charging or storage, immediately perform the following measures.

1. Remove the power plug from the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
2. Power off the FOMA terminal.
3. Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal.

Failure to do so may cause the device to overheat, explode, or catch fire, or the battery pack to leak.

## CAUTION



Don't

Do not place on an unstable or inclined platform.

Doing so may cause the device to fall and cause injury or malfunction.



Don't

Do not keep in a place that is very humid, dusty, or subject to high temperature.

Doing so may cause malfunction.



Do

If children use the FOMA terminal, parents or guardians should give them the proper instructions for use. Make sure that they use the FOMA terminal as instructed.

Failure to do so may cause injury.



Do

Keep the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter, and UIM out of the reach of babies and infants.

Failure to do so may cause accidental swallowing or injury.



Do

Be careful especially when you use the FOMA terminal while it has been continuously connected to the adapter (including the charger) for a long period of time.

If you continue using i- $\alpha$ pli or talking on the videophone for a long period of time with the battery being charged, the temperature of the FOMA terminal, battery pack, and adapter (including the charger) may rise.

If you are directly in contact with hot parts for a long period of time, it may cause your skin to become red, itch, or develop a rash depending on your physical condition.

### **WARNING**



Don't

Do not use the FOMA terminal while driving a vehicle.

Mobile phone usage during driving is subject to punishment by law as of November 1st, 2004. Use the FOMA terminal after stopping the vehicle to park in a safe place even if you are using a hands-free kit. While driving a vehicle, use the Public mode or the Voice Mail Service.



Don't

Do not aim the infrared data port towards eyes when using the infrared communication.

Doing so may affect your eyes. Also, aiming it towards other infrared devices may interfere with the operation of these devices.



Don't

Do not turn up the headphone volume to a level where you cannot hear the sounds around you while you are walking. Also, look out for the surrounding traffic and road surface conditions.

Doing so may cause accident.



Don't

Do not turn on the photo light with the lighting luminescence part close to the eyes.

Doing so may cause vision impairment or accident by dazzling eyes or surprising.



Don't

Do not leave the FOMA terminal in a place such as the dashboard near the automobile air bag, which can have an adverse effect on the phone when it inflates.

Doing so may cause accidents such as an injury, malfunction, or breakage, in case the air bag inflates.



Don't

Do not put the FOMA terminal in your breast pocket or inside pocket if you are wearing any electronic medical equipment.

If the FOMA terminal is used close to electronic medical equipment, it may cause malfunction.



Do

Power off the FOMA terminal in a place where the use is prohibited such as in airplane or hospital.

Failure to do so may affect electronic equipment and electronic medical equipment. If you set the automatic power-on function, cancel it before powering off the FOMA terminal.

Follow the instructions of each medical facility for the use of mobile phones on their premises.

Prohibited acts such as mobile phone usage on board an airplane may be punished by law.



Do

Always keep the FOMA terminal away from your ear when you talk using the hands-free function.

Failure to do so may cause difficulty in hearing.



Do

If you have a weak heart, set the vibrator or ring volume carefully.

Failure to do so may affect your heart.



Do

If you hear thunder while using the FOMA terminal outdoors, power off immediately and take shelter in a safe place.

Failure to do so may cause injury or electric shock from the lightning.



Do

Power off the FOMA terminal near electronic devices or equipment operating on high precision control or weak signals.

Failure to do so may interfere with the operation of electronic devices or equipment.

※ The followings are some electronic devices or equipment that you should be careful of:

Hearing aids, implantable cardiac pacemaker, implantable cardioverter defibrillator, other electronic medical equipment, fire detector, automatic door, and other automatically controlled devices or equipment.

If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker, implantable cardioverter defibrillator, or other electronic medical equipment, check with the relevant medical electronic equipment manufacturer or vendor whether the operation can be affected by radio waves.



## CAUTION



Don't

Do not swing the FOMA terminal around by holding the strap.

The FOMA terminal may hit you or others or the strap gets cut away from the FOMA terminal. It may cause accident such as injury or damage to the FOMA terminal or other property.



Don't

Do not place your ear too close to the speaker while the ring tone sounds or the melody is played back.

Doing so may cause difficulty in hearing.



Don't

Do not turn up the volume unnecessarily high when you use the headphones.

If you use the headphones continuously for a long period of time with the sound turned up loud, it may cause hearing impairment, or your ears may be injured with the sudden emission of a loud sound.



Don't

Do not touch broken glasses if the display or the camera lens is broken.

The display and the camera lens are designed not to be shattered when broken. But they may cause injury if you touch a cut surface mistakenly.



Don't

Do not place a magnetic card, etc. near the FOMA terminal or let it caught by the folded FOMA terminal.

Magnetic data on bankcards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be erased. Also, confirm whether a metal object such as a pin is not attached to the speaker before using the FOMA terminal because it may cause injury.



Don't

Do not allow a foreign substance such as water and other liquids, metal parts, or flammables to get in the UIM insertion slot on the FOMA terminal.

Doing so may cause fire, electric shock, or malfunction.



Do

In rare cases, using the FOMA terminal may interfere with the operation of electronic devices in some types of vehicle.

If there is any interference, do not use the FOMA terminal when driving for safety reasons.



Do

The use of the FOMA terminal may cause itching, rashes, eczema, or other symptoms depending on the user's physical condition. Immediately stop using and get medical treatment in such a case.

Metals are used as listed below:

Where it is used	Material	Surface treatment
UIM tray	Stainless steel	—



Do

Be careful not to get your finger or the strap caught in the folded FOMA terminal when you fold and open it.

Failure to do so may cause injury or damage.



Do

Use the FeliCa reader/writer function only in Japan.

The FeliCa reader/writer function of the FOMA terminal is designed to conform to the Japanese radio standard. Overseas use of this function may be subject to punishment.

## Handling the Battery Pack

- Check the type of the battery by the label on the battery pack.

Display	Type of Battery
Li-ion	Lithium Ion Battery

### DANGER



Don't

Do not touch the battery pack terminal with a metal object such as a wire. Also, do not carry or keep the battery pack together with metal objects such as a necklace.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode, or catch fire.



Don't

Do not forcibly attach the battery pack to the FOMA terminal. Also, make sure to attach the battery pack in the correct direction.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode, or catch fire.



Don't

Do not throw the battery pack into fire.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode, or catch fire.



Don't

Do not stick a nail into the battery pack, hit it with a hammer, or step on it.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode, or catch fire.



Do

If the battery fluid gets into your eyes, do not rub, rinse with clean running water, and get medical treatment immediately.

Failure to do so may cause blindness.

### WARNING



Don't

Stop charging if the FOMA terminal is not charged within the specified charging time.

Failure to do so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode, or catch fire.



Do

If the battery fluid gets on your skin or clothes, immediately stop using the battery pack and rinse with clean running water thoroughly.

Failure to do so may cause injury on your skin.



Do

If the battery pack leaks or hears an unusual odor, immediately stop using and move it away from fire.

The leaking liquid may ignite fire, catch fire, or explode.

### CAUTION



Don't

Do not dispose of the battery pack together with other garbage.

The battery pack may become the source of fire or environmental destruction. Take the used battery pack to our service counter (DoCoMo shop, etc.) after insulating it by affixing an adhesive tape on the terminal of it or follow the instructions of the local authorities in charge of collecting used battery packs.

## Handling the Adapter (including the charger)

### WARNING



Don't

Do not use the adapter (including the charger) if the cord of the adapter or the power cord is damaged.

Doing so may cause electric shock, overheating, or fire.



Don't

Do not use the AC adapter or desktop holder in a very humid or steamy place such as bathroom.

Doing so may cause electric shock.



Don't

The DC adapter is for use in vehicles with a negative ground. Do not use it in vehicles with a positive ground.

Doing so may cause fire.



Don't

Do not touch the FOMA terminal and adapter (including the charger) if you hear thunder.

Doing so may cause injury or electric shock from the lightning.



Don't

Do not short-circuit the charge terminal of the charger while the power plug is connected to the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not touch the charge terminal with your hands, fingers, or any part of your body.

Doing so may cause fire, malfunction, electric shock, or injury.



Don't

Place the charger or the desktop holder on a stable platform while charging. Do not cover or wrap the charger or the desktop holder with a cloth or bedding.

The FOMA terminal may fall off the charger or heat up and cause fire or malfunction.



No wet hands

Do not touch the cord of the adapter (including the charger) or the power outlet with wet hands.

Doing so may cause electric shock.



Do

Use the adapter only on the specified power supply and voltage.

Failure to do so may cause fire or malfunction. Use the AC adapter available overseas when you use the phone overseas.

AC adapter: AC 100 V

DC adapter: DC 12 V/24 V

(exclusively used for vehicles with a negative ground)

AC adapter available overseas:

AC 100 to 240 V

(Make sure to connect the adapter to a household AC power outlet.)



Do

If the fuse of the DC adapter is blown, replace it with the specified fuse.

The use of a fuse other than specified one may cause fire or malfunction. See the user's manual supplied with the adapter for the specified fuse.



Do

Clean dust from the power plug.

Failure to do so may cause fire.



Do

When you connect the AC adapter to the power outlet, make sure that it does not come in contact with a metal object such as a metal strap and insert it firmly.

Failure to do so may cause electric shock, short circuit, or fire.



Unplug

Remove the power plug from the power outlet when not used for a long period of time.

Failure to do so may cause electric shock, fire, or malfunction.



Unplug

If liquid such as water gets into the adapter, immediately remove it from the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

Failure to do so may cause electric shock, smoking, or fire.



## CAUTION



Don't

Do not place any heavy objects on the cord of the adapter (including the charger) or the power cord.

Doing so may cause electric shock or fire.



Do

Hold the power plug, not the cord of the adapter (including the charger) or the power cord, when you remove the adapter (including the charger) from the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

Pulling the cord may damage it and cause electric shock or fire.



Unplug

Before cleaning, remove the power plug from the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

Failure to do so may cause electric shock.

## Handling the UIM



## CAUTION



Do

Please be careful not to touch a cut surface, etc. when you remove the UIM (IC portion).

Failure to do so may damage your hand or fingers.

## Handling the FOMA Terminal Near Electronic Medical Equipment

- The following instructions observe the guidelines of the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, Japan to protect electronic medical equipment from radio waves from mobile phones.

## **WARNING**



Do

Please observe the following guidelines in medical facilities.

- Do not take the FOMA terminal into the operating rooms, ICU (Intensive Care Unit), or CCU (Coronary Care Unit).
- Power off the FOMA terminal inside hospital wards.
- Power off the FOMA terminal in the lobby and other places if there are any electronic medical equipment operating in the vicinity.
- Follow the instructions of each medical facility when they specify areas forbidding to use and carrying a mobile phone.
- If you set the automatic power-on function, cancel it before powering off the FOMA terminal.



Do

Power off the FOMA terminal in crowded places such as rush-hour trains. There may be a person with an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator near you.

The radio waves from the FOMA terminal may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator.



Do

If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator, keep the FOMA terminal more than 22 cm away from the implant at all times.

The radio waves from the FOMA terminal may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator.



Do

If you need to use electronic medical equipment other than implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator outside medical facilities such as treating at home, check with the relevant medical electronic equipment manufacturer or vendor whether the operation may be affected by radio waves.

The radio waves from the FOMA terminal may affect the operation of electronic medical equipment.

## Handling Precautions

### ◆ Common Precautions

#### ● Do not expose to water.

- The FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (including the charger), and UIM are not waterproof. Do not use them in a humid place such as bathroom or in the rain. If you carry the FOMA terminal on your body, perspiration may corrode the internal parts of the FOMA terminal and cause malfunction. Note that if a trouble is diagnosed as exposure to water or other liquid, repairs of the FOMA terminal may not be covered by the Warranty or it may not be possible to repair such phones. In that case, even if the FOMA terminal can be repaired, it is repaired at the owner's expense.

#### ● Clean the FOMA terminal with a dry soft cloth (such as used for cleaning eyeglasses).

- The color liquid crystal display of the FOMA terminal has a special coating on it for better visibility. Do not use unnecessary force to wipe the display when you are cleaning it with a dry cloth. The display and its coating may be damaged. Handle the display with care and use a dry soft cloth (such as used for cleaning eyeglasses) to clean it. If the display is left with water drops or stains, stains may become permanent or the display coating may be peeled off.
- Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzene, cleaning detergent, etc. to clean the FOMA terminal. These chemicals may erase the printing on the FOMA terminal or cause discoloration.

#### ● Clean the terminals occasionally with a dry cotton swab.

- Soiled terminals may cause poor connection and loss of power. If the terminals are dirty, use a dry cloth or cotton swab to wipe them clean.

#### ● Do not leave the FOMA terminal near the air conditioning vent.

- Extreme temperature changes may produce condensation and corrode the internal parts of the FOMA terminal, causing it to malfunction.

#### ● Do not leave the FOMA terminal in a place where it may be subject to excessive force.

- Do not put the FOMA terminal in a bag full of items or sit down with the FOMA terminal in your hip pocket. This may damage the LCD screen and internal circuit board and cause the FOMA terminal to malfunction. The Warranty will not apply in such a case.

#### ● Make sure to see the user's manuals supplied with the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (including the charger), and desktop holder.

### ◆ FOMA Terminal Precautions

#### ● Do not use the FOMA terminal in extremely hot or cold places.

Use the FOMA terminal within a temperature range of 5°C to 35°C and a humidity range of 45% to 85%.

#### ● Using the FOMA terminal near ordinary phone, television or radio may cause interference in these electric appliances. Make sure to move far away from them when using the FOMA terminal.

● Note down the information saved in the FOMA terminal in a separate note and keep it safely.

- Under no condition will DoCoMo be held liable for any damaged or lost data saved in the FOMA terminal.

● Do not sit down with the FOMA terminal in the hip pocket of your trousers or skirt. Also, do not keep the FOMA terminal in a place where it may be subject to excessive force such as at the bottom of a bag.

- Doing so may cause malfunction to the FOMA terminal.

● Do not fold the FOMA terminal with an object including the strap left inside.

- Doing so may cause malfunction or damage to the FOMA terminal.

● The FOMA terminal could become warm while in use and charging. This condition is not abnormal and you can continue using the FOMA terminal.

● Do not leave the camera under direct sunlight.

- If you do so, some of the phone parts may melt or become faded.

● If you conduct any criminal behavior using the FOMA terminal that is a nuisance to the public, you may be subjected to punishment by authorities in accordance with related laws or ordinances (nuisance prevention act, etc.).

! Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

### ◆ Battery Pack Precautions

● The battery pack is a consumable accessory.

- Even if the operating time of the FOMA terminal varies depending on the operating conditions and other factors, when the length of time you can use the FOMA terminal with a fully charged battery becomes unusually short, it is time to replace the battery pack. Purchase the battery pack specified in this manual.

● Charge the battery pack in an environment with the proper ambient temperature (5°C to 35°C).

● Make sure to charge the battery pack before you use the FOMA terminal for the first time or when you have not been using it for a long period of time.

● The operating time of the battery pack varies depending on the operating environment and the secular degradation of the battery pack.

● Depending on the use condition, the battery pack may be inflated as it comes to the end of its life. This is not a malfunction.

● Store the battery pack in a well-ventilated and cool place where it is not exposed to direct sunlight.

- If you are not going to use the battery pack for a long period of time, remove it fully expended from the FOMA terminal and keep it in a container such as a plastic bag that wraps the battery pack.

● If any abnormality caused by an external shock, such as deformation or damages by falling, is found in the battery pack, contact the DoCoMo repair handling service counter.

### ◆ Adapter (including the charger) Precautions

● Charge the battery pack in an environment with the proper ambient temperature (5°C to 35°C).

● Do not charge in the following places.

- Places that are very humid, dusty or exposed to strong vibrations.
- Near ordinary phone, TV or radio.

● The adapter (including the charger) could become warm while charging. This condition is not abnormal and you can continue charging the battery.

● When you charge the battery pack using the DC adapter, keep the car engine running.

- Charging the battery with the engine turned off may drain your car battery.

● When you use the power outlet with a mechanism to prevent the plug from being removed, follow the instructions on the outlet's user's manual.

● Do not give a strong impact to the adapter. Also, do not bend or deform the charging pins or pin guide on the adapter.

- If you do so, the adapter may not work properly.

### ◆ UIM Precautions

● Do not use unnecessary force to insert/remove the UIM.

● The UIM could become warm while it is in use. This condition is not abnormal and you can continue using the card.

● Do not insert and use the UIM with another IC card reader/writer. Please note that you are wholly liable for any damage or malfunction as a result of such action.

● Always keep the IC portion clean when you use the card.

● Use a dry soft cloth (such as used for cleaning eyeglasses) for cleaning and maintenance of the UIM.

● Note down the information saved in the UIM in a separate note and keep it safely.

- Under no condition will DoCoMo be held liable for any damaged or lost data saved in the UIM.

● Take an expended UIM to our service counter (DoCoMo shop, etc.) for proper disposal in order to protect the environment.

● Do not use the UIM in extremely high or low temperature.

● Do not carelessly damage, contact, or short circuit an IC.

- Doing so may cause data loss or malfunction.

● Do not drop a UIM or subject it to impact.

- Doing so may cause malfunction.

● Do not bend a UIM or place a heavy object on it.

- Doing so may cause malfunction.

## ◆ FeliCa Reader/Writer

- The FeliCa reader/writer function of the FOMA terminal uses extremely weak radio waves, so that no license is required for use as a radio station.
- The FeliCa reader/writer function of the FOMA terminal uses frequencies in the 13.56MHz range. If there is another reader/writer used in the neighborhood, keep enough distance from it. Attention should be also paid to assure that no other radio station which uses the same frequency range exists near the FOMA terminal.

## Intellectual Property Right

### ◆ Copyright and Right of Portrait

Copyrighted contents you recorded or obtained from sites or Internet home pages using this product by downloading or other means, such as documents, images, music data, software, are prohibited from reproduction, transformation and transmission over public lines without consent of the copyright holders, unless intended for personal use or any other purpose permitted by law.

Note that some performances, shows, and exhibitions may not allow photography, movie shooting, or sound recording even for personal use.

You should also refrain from taking a picture of other people and disclosing it by such means as posting it on a site on the Internet without their consent because of possible infringement of their right of portrait.

### ◆ Trademarks

- "FOMA", "mova", "i-mode", "i-Channel", "PushTalk", "PushTalkPlus", "ToruCa", "i-α ppli", "i-α ppliDX", "i-motion", "i-area", "Deco-mail", "Chara-den", "Short Mail", "mopera U", "mopera", "DoPa", "WORLD CALL", "WORLD WING", "Chaku-motion", "FirstPass", "Dual Network", "DCMX", "iD", "Public mode", "Security Scan", "sigmarion", "musea", "V-live", "visualnet", "IMCS", "OFFICEED", "FOMA" logo, "i-mode" logo, "i-α ppli" logo, "DCMX" logo, and "iD" logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo.
- "Catch Phone (Call waiting service)" is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- Free Dial logo mark is a registered trademark of NTT Communications Corporation.
- McAfee® is a registered trademark or trademark of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the U.S. and/or other countries.
- G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE, and their logos are registered trademarks in Japan of U.S. Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates.
- QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries.
- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002-2006 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved. JBlend and JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- "μ" is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- microSD logo is a trademark.
- "Multitask" is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.

- Mascot Capsule® is a trademark of the HI Corporation.
- "LocoRoco" is a registered trademark of Sony Computer Entertainment Inc. © 2007 Sony Computer Entertainment Inc.
- POBox is a trademark of Sony Corporation.
- "SonicStage" and "SonicStage" logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sony Corporation.
- "Style-Up" and "Dreamy Twinkle" are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sony Ericsson Mobile Communications Japan, Inc.
- Java and Java-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of the U.S. Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Vista are trademarks or registered trademarks of the U.S. Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.
- ImageStar is a registered trademark of Ainix Corporation.
- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
- Other system names and/or product names mentioned in this manual are generally trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners. The trademark symbol ™ and registered trademark symbol ® are omitted hereafter in this manual.

## ◆ Others

- This product contains Flash® Lite™ of Adobe Systems Incorporated. Adobe, Flash, and Flash Lite are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the U.S. and other countries.  
Copyright © 1995-2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
- NetFront of ACCESS CO., LTD is installed in this product to provide Internet functionality.  
NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.  
Copyright © 1996-2007 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- This product incorporates a program module developed by Independent JPEG Group.
- FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.  
FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- Powered by Mascot Capsule®
- IrDA Protocol Stack "DeepCore™" © ITX E-Globaledge Corp. All rights reserved.
- Built with Linter Database.  
Copyright © 2006-2007 Brycen Corp., Ltd.  
Copyright © 1990-2003 Relex, Inc., All rights reserved.
- POBox technology has been developed by Sony Computer Science Laboratories, Inc.
- This product is under the licensing agreement of the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, and is approved for private and non-profit uses, such as those indicated below.
  - For recording MPEG-4 Visual standards-compliant movie (hereinafter referred to as MPEG-4 Movie).
  - For playing back MPEG-4 Movie recorded by a consumer who uses the product for private and non-profit activities.
  - For playing back MPEG-4 Movie recorded by a provider who owns an MPEG-4 license.To use this product for other applications, such as promotional activities, company use, or profit-making endeavor, contact U.S. MPEG LA, LLC.
- This product includes software licensed **symbian** from Symbian Software Ltd.  
Symbian, Symbian OS, and all Symbian-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Symbian Software Ltd.  
© 1998-2007 Symbian Software Ltd. All rights reserved.

## ◆ Windows Title Conventions

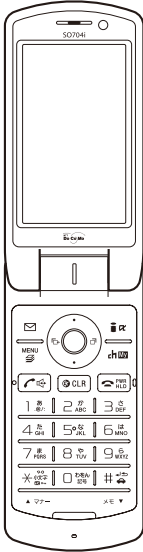
- Windows 2000 is an abbreviation of the Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
- Windows XP is an abbreviation of the Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
- Windows Vista is an abbreviation of the Windows Vista™ (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise, Ultimate).

# Supplied and Optional Accessories

## ■ Supplied accessories

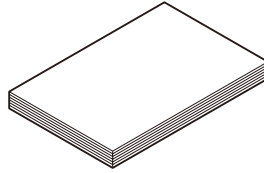
### FOMA SO704i

(w/warranty, back cover SO07, and Style-Up Panel SO02)



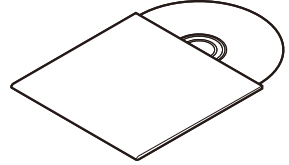
### Manual for FOMA SO704i (this manual)

(w/Quick Manual P.316)

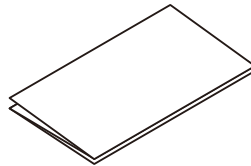


### FOMA SO704i CD-ROM

("Manual for Data Communication"  
(PDF format) and "Kuten Code List"  
(PDF format) are included)



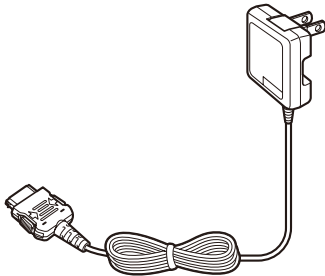
### Music Easy Setup Guide (Japanese only)



## ■ Optional accessories

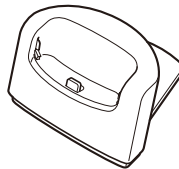
### FOMA AC Adapter 01/02

(w/warranty and user's manual)



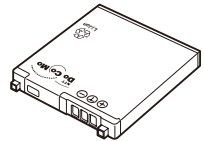
### Desktop Holder SO05

(w/user's manual)



### Battery Pack SO02

(w/user's manual)



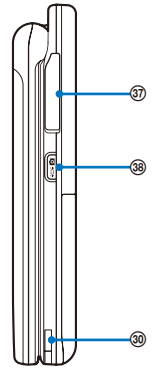
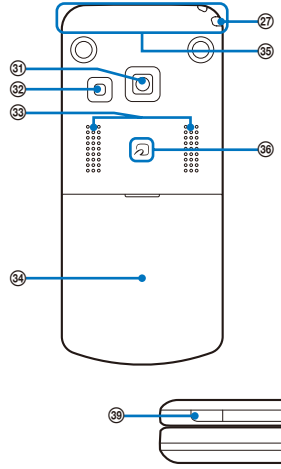
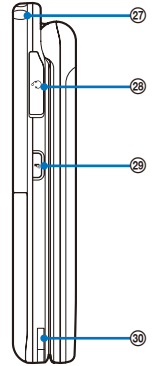
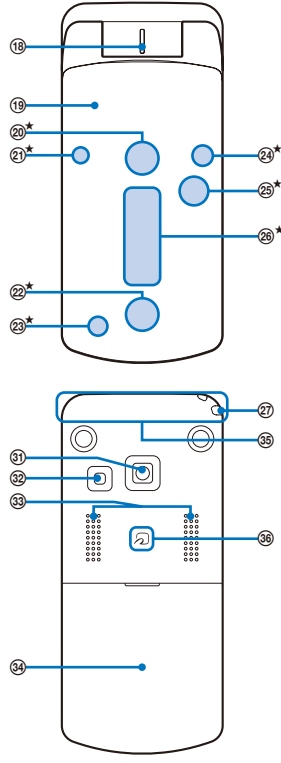
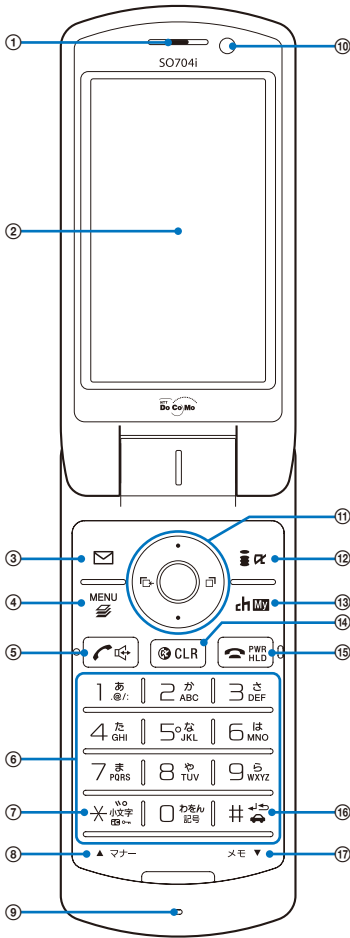
- Other optional accessories (P.288)



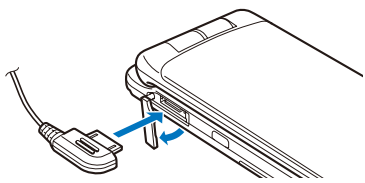
# Before Using the Handset

Part Names and Functions .....	24
Using the Displays .....	26
About the Sub-display .....	29
Selecting the Menu .....	30
Using the UIM .....	32
Attaching and Removing the Battery Pack .....	34
Charging the FOMA Terminal .....	35
Attaching and Removing the Style-Up Panel .....	37
Checking the Battery Level .....	<Battery level> 38
Powering On/Off .....	<Power on/off> 39
Setting the Basic Functions .....	<Initial setting> 39
Setting the Date and Time .....	<Date/time> 40
Notifying the Recipient of Your Phone Number .....	<Notify caller ID> 41
Checking Your Own Phone Number .....	<Own number> 41

# Part Names and Functions



## Connecting the Flat-plug Earphone/ Microphone with Switch (optional)



## ■ What is Dreamy Twinkle?

Dreamy Twinkle is the light expression effect that the sub-display and six illumination indicators (20 to 26 marked with ★) are fashioned. You cannot change the settings such as the way to light or indicator colors but can set ON/OFF of the illumination indicators (P.110).

- In the following cases, light in a random order. There are five different patterns for each.
  - When receiving mail
  - When you fold and open the FOMA terminal
  - When there is an incoming call
- In the following cases, light in the specified pattern for each.
  - When starting charging
  - When receiving a PushTalk call
  - When the alarm time comes
- When there is a missed call, 21 flashes.
- When there is a new mail/unread message, 24 flashes.

### ① Earpiece

The caller's voice is heard from here.

### ② Main Display (P.26)

### ③ Mail Key

In the stand-by display, press to display the Mail menu (P.170) and press for over a second to perform the Check new messages (P.160, 176). Press to select an item in the guide display (P.29).

### ④ MENU Key

Press to display the menu (P.30, 239). Press to select an item in the guide display (P.29).

### ⑤ Call/Hands-free Switch Key

Press to place a voice call or receive a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call.

Press during a call to switch ON/OFF of the hands-free function (P.47).

### ⑥ Keypad

Enter phone numbers or text (P.281).

### ⑦ \* /IC Card Lock Key

In the stand-by display, press for over a second to lock the IC card function or cancel the lock. To cancel the lock, enter the Security code (P.202).

### ⑧ Manner/ ▲ Key

In the stand-by display, press to display the Manner mode display (P.106) and press for over a second to set/cancel the Manner mode (P.105).

Press to scroll a page to the previous display.

### ⑨ Microphone

Picks up the sound of your voice. Do not cover it with your hand.

### ⑩ In-Camera

Use to record a still image or movie (P.136, 139) or send the image at your side during a videophone call (P.44).

### ⑪ Four-way Keys and Enter Key (P.26)

### ⑫ i-mode/i- $\alpha$ ppli Key

In the stand-by display, press to display the i-mode menu (P.152) and press for over a second to display the i- $\alpha$ ppli folder list display (P.190). Press to select an item in the guide display (P.29).

### ⑬ i-Channel/My Selection Key

Press to place or receive a videophone call (P.45, 59).

In the stand-by display, press to display the Channel list display (P.166) and press for over a second to display My Selection (P.246). Press to select an item in the guide display (P.29).

### ⑭ CLR Clear Key

Press to cancel the current operation.

In the i- $\alpha$ ppli stand-by display, press to operate the software (P.194). In the stand-by display, press for over a second to turn off the notification icon (P.28).

### ⑮ Power/End/Hold Key

Press to power on/off the FOMA terminal (P.39).

Press to hang up or end the multitask functions.

Press while receiving a voice or videophone call to put a call on hold (P.62).

### ⑯ #/Public Mode (Drive Mode) Key

In the stand-by display, press for over a second to set/cancel the Public mode (Drive mode) (P.62).

### ⑰ Memo/ ▼ Key

In the stand-by display, press to display the Record msg display (P.66) and press for over a second to set/cancel the Record message (P.65). Press to scroll a page to the next display.

### ⑱ Incoming Indicator/Charge Indicator/FeliCa Sign

Flashes in the preset color when receiving a call/mail. It also flashes when there is a missed call or new mail/unread message (P.113). Lights in red while charging the battery (P.36).

Lights in green during iC communication or when the FOMA terminal comes within the communication range with the reading device (P.199, 227).

Flashes/Lights in mixed colors when multiple operations are performed at once.

### ⑲ Style-Up Panel

Make sure to use the FOMA terminal with the panel attached (P.37).

### ⑳ to ㉞ Illumination Indicators

When you open/fold the FOMA terminal or receive a call/mail, each illumination indicator flashes in different patterns every time (P.110).

㉞ flashes while recording a movie (P.139).

㉞ flashes when there is a missed call and ㉞ flashes when there is a new mail/unread message to notify you (P.113).

### ㉟ Sub-display (P.29)

### ㊱ Strap Attachment

Attach the strap here.

### ㊲ Earphone/Microphone Jack

Connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional), etc. Other traditional Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is also available by connecting it through the Earphone Plug Adapter (optional) (P.250). Do not pull the cover forcibly.

### ㊳ PushTalk Key

Press to originate or receive a PushTalk call with the FOMA terminal opened (P.76, 77).

In the stand-by display, press to display the PushTalk phonebook (P.78).

### ㊴ Charge Terminal Pins (P.36)

### ㊵ Out-Camera

Use to record a still image or movie (P.136, 139) or send the surrounding image during a videophone call (P.44).

### ㊶ Photo Light

Lights (low light) during the Camera mode (P.132).

Turn this light on (full light) when you use the Out-camera (P.141). Flashes while recording a still image or activating the Auto timer (P.136, 141).

### ㊷ Stereo Speaker

Sounds including the ring tone are heard from here.

### ㊸ Back Cover (P.34)

The microSD memory card slot is located at the position visible when removing the back cover and battery pack (P.212).

### ㊹ FOMA Antenna

The antenna is incorporated in the main body. To talk on the phone with better condition, do not cover the antenna with your hands.

### ㊺ FeliCa Mark

Indication for a built-in IC card.

Hold this mark to the reading device to use the Osaifu-Keitai. You can send and receive data by placing the FeliCa mark of the FOMA terminal over that of another FOMA terminal provided with the iC communication function. You cannot remove the IC card (P.199, 227).

### ㊻ External Connection Terminal

Connect the AC adapter (optional), FOMA USB Cable (optional), etc. (P.36, 217). Do not pull the cover forcibly.

### ㊼ Shutter Key

When you open the FOMA terminal, press for over a second in the stand-by display to activate the Camera mode (P.132).

Press to record using the camera (P.136, 139).

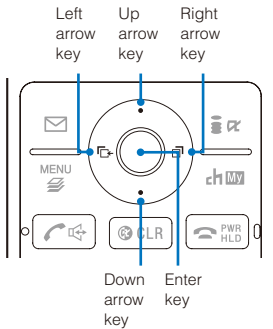
Press while the FOMA terminal is folded to switch the display on the sub-display (P.29).

### ㊽ Infrared Data Port

When you perform infrared communication (P.224) or use the FOMA terminal as a remote control (P.226), point this port to the target device or equipment.

● Some types of the Style-Up Panel may make it difficult to determine whether the illumination indicators are lit and also cause them to look different in color.

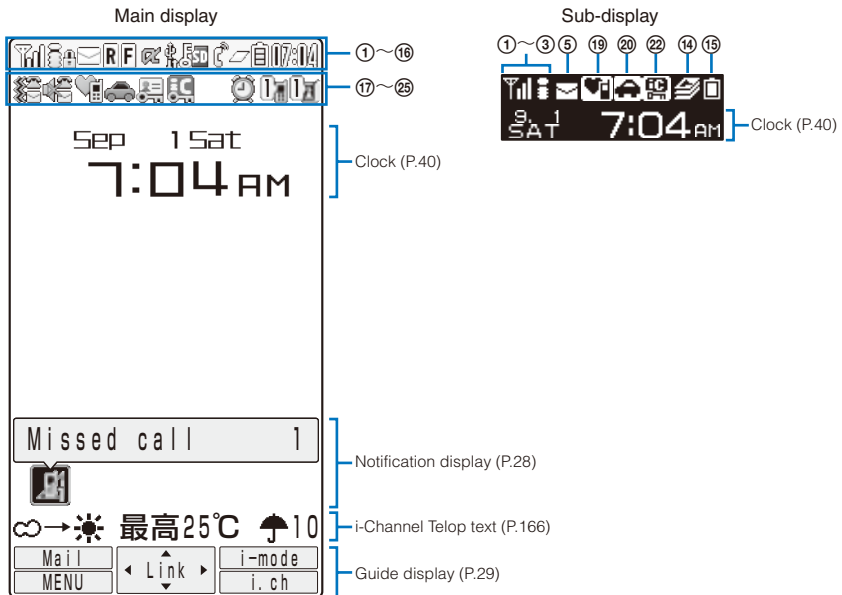
## Four-way Keys and Enter Key



Operation	Symbols in this manual	Description
Enter key	⊙	Set a selected item.
Up arrow key	▲	Move the cursor upward. Press for over a second to move the cursor continuously. Press in the stand-by display to display the Data Box.
Down arrow key	▼	Move the cursor downward. Press for over a second to move the cursor continuously. Press in the stand-by display to display the Phonebook.
Left arrow key	◀	Move the cursor to the left. Press for over a second to move the cursor continuously. Or, press to return to the previous display. Press in the stand-by display to display the Received record.
Right arrow key	▶	Move the cursor to the right. Press for over a second to move the cursor continuously. Or, press to go to the next display. Press in the stand-by display to display the Redial record.

## Using the Displays

- For details on the icons in the Camera mode, see P.135.



















- ① Radio wave condition (Strong ↔ Weak)
- ② During i-mode (P.152)  
 During i-mode communication  
 During packet communication  
 While sending/receiving packet communication data
- ③ Outside of the service area  
 Self mode is set (P.122)  
 A card other than the UIM is inserted  
 While using the infrared communication function (P.226)/During iC communication (P.227)
- ④ While an SSL site is displayed (P.153)/While i-αppli software downloaded from an SSL site is running (P.190)/While the software update is using SSL communication (P.300)
- ⑤ Unread i-mode mail (P.175)/Unread SMS (P.186)/Unread i-mode mail and unread SMS  
 The FOMA terminal is full of received i-mode mail and SMS/The UIM is full of SMS/The FOMA terminal is full of received i-mode mail and SMS and the UIM is full of SMS  
 Mail at the i-mode center/The i-mode center is full
- ⑥ Unread Message R (P.160)/The FOMA terminal is full of Message R  
 Message R at the i-mode center/The i-mode center is full
- ⑦ Unread Message F (P.160)/The FOMA terminal is full of Message F  
 Message F at the i-mode center/The i-mode center is full
- ⑧ While running i-αppli (i-αppli stand-by display)/While running i-αppli DX  
 i-αppli stand-by display is set/i-αppli DX stand-by display is set (P.194)
- ⑨ USB mode is set to Communication mode (P.217)  
 USB mode is set to Memory mode (P.217)  
 While using a hands-free device (P.58)
- ⑩ Secret display is [ON] (P.125)
- ⑪ While the microSD memory card is inserted (P.212)  
 While the microSD memory card management information is being updated (P.216)
- ⑫ While the infrared remote control is being used (P.226)
- ⑬ During a voice call  
 During a videophone call (64K)/(32K) (P.44)  
 During PushTalk communication (P.75)  
 While using PushTalkPlus (P.82)  
 During 64K data communication
- ⑭ 1/2/3 or more tasks are being executed (P.238) (↖ changes to ↗ while playback is in progress on the MUSIC Player)  
 While data in the MUSIC Player is being updated
- ⑮ Battery level (P.38)
- ⑯ Current time (Displayed in 24-hour format in other than the stand-by display)
- ⑰ The vibrator is set for incoming calls (P.101)  
 The vibrator is set for incoming mail (P.101)  
 The vibrator is set for incoming calls and mail (P.101)
- ⑱ Incoming call ring volume is OFF (P.101)  
 Incoming mail ring volume is OFF (P.101)  
 Incoming call and mail ring volumes are OFF (P.101)
- ⑲ Manner mode is set (♥ is pink) (P.105)  
 Silent mode is set (P.105)  
 Original manner mode is set (♥ is blue) (P.105)
- ⑳ Public mode (Drive mode) is set (P.62)
- ㉑ PIM lock is set (P.123)  
 Key dial lock is set (P.124)  
 PIM lock and Key dial lock are set (P.123, 124)
- ㉒ IC card lock is set (P.202)
- ㉓ Alarm is set (P.242)  
 Schedule alarm is set (P.243)  
 Alarm and Schedule alarm are set (P.242, 243)
- ㉔ Record message is set (□ is white) (P.65)  
 There are non-played back record messages (□ is light blue)  
 There is no non-played back record message (□ is blue)  
 Record message is OFF (There are record messages) (□ is gray)  
 There are non-played back record messages (□ is light blue)  
 There is no non-played back record message (□ is blue)  
 The number of recorded messages is displayed at □. When the number of recorded messages becomes full, "F" appears.
- ㉕ Videophone message is set (□ is green) (P.65)  
 There are non-played back videophone messages (□ is light blue)  
 There is no non-played back videophone message (□ is blue)  
 Videophone message is OFF (There are videophone messages) (□ is gray)  
 There are non-played back videophone messages (□ is light blue)  
 There is no non-played back videophone message (□ is blue)  
 The number of recorded videophone messages is displayed at □. When the number of recorded videophone messages becomes full, "F" appears.

● The FOMA terminal's display is manufactured based on the leading edge technologies, and some pixels unlit or lit may appear constantly in the display. This is not a malfunction.

## Notification Display

An icon is displayed in the notification display to alert you, for example, when you cannot answer a call. The icon is displayed from the left in the order of the latest event.

Move the cursor to the icon to display the text information and select the icon to check the notification information. The icon is turned off by checking the notification information or pressing **[CLR]** for over a second.

Icon <sup>※1</sup>	Text information	Description
	Missed call X	There is a missed call of a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call, or 64K data communication (P.65).
	New mail X	i-mode mail/SMS is received (P.175, 186).
	Mail at center	Mail is held at the i-mode center (P.175).
	New ToruCa X	A ToruCa card is obtained from a reading device (P.200).
	New Record msg	A record message is recorded (P.66).
	New V.phone msg	A videophone message is recorded (P.66).
	Exceed cost limit	The total cost has exceeded the upper limit (P.248).
	Voice Mail X	A record message is saved at the Voice Mail Service Center (P.260).
	USB cable cnccted	The FOMA USB Cable (optional), etc. is being connected (P.217).
	PB update failed	The Phonebook auto-update at the Data Security Service Center has failed (P.97).
	Stand-by SW error	i-αppli stand-by display security error has occurred (P.194).
	Update complete	The software update is completed (P.301).
	Check for update	There is confirmation of a software update (P.301).
	Update completed	The pattern definition auto-update was completed successfully (P.305).
	Update definitions	The pattern definition auto-update was failed. The update is still required (P.305).
	SW not terminated	There is an active function (excluding the i-αppli stand-by display) (P.238).

※1 The icons in parentheses appear in the sub-display. The number of data is not displayed in the sub-display.

※2 Even when you press **[CLR]** for over a second, the icon is not turned off.

※3 The icon appears at the rightmost location in the icons list when multiple icons are displayed.

## Guide Display

To utilize the FOMA terminal's functions, use the four-way keys (Up/Down/Left/Right arrow keys), the enter key, the Mail key, the i-mode/i-αppli key, the MENU key, and the i-Channel/My Selection key according to the instructions shown in the guide display.

Display	Operation	Display	Operation
	Press		Press
	Press		Press
	Press		Press
	Press		Press
	Press		

● The display may differ from the above depending on websites and i-αppli software.

## About the Sub-display

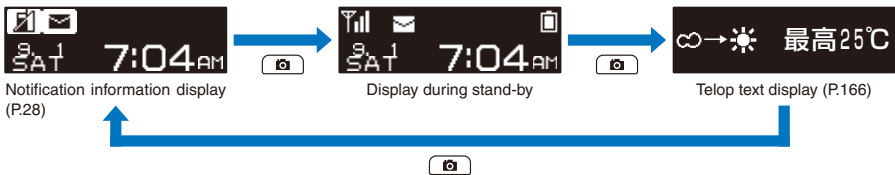
Images and messages are displayed in the sub-display when you receive a voice/ videophone call or mail, etc.

### Switching the display

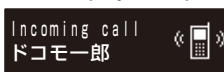
You can switch the display on the sub-display when there is a notification information or i-Channel Telop text to be displayed.

- When there is no notification information or the Ticker is set not to be displayed, neither the notification information nor Telop text is displayed.

1 Fold the FOMA terminal and press



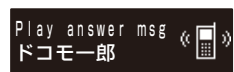
### Other display examples



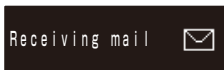
Receiving a call



During PushTalk communication



Record message in operation



Receiving mail



Alarm sounding



MUSIC Player

# Selecting the Menu

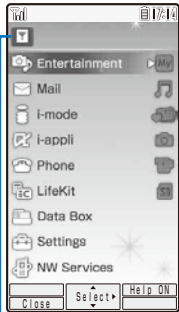
Default | Menu guide display (Normal mode): OFF, Menu guide display (Simple mode): ON

The FOMA terminal provides various functions.

Press **MENU** (MENU) to display the menu display. You can switch the menu display between [Normal] and [Simple] as well as change menu icons to be displayed in the Normal mode. You can change the design of the Normal mode menu display using the Menu pattern (P.112).

For the list of menus in the Normal mode, see P.270.

Normal mode



Task icon (P.239)

Icon	Menu name	Description
	Entertainment	Used to access functions such as My Selection, MUSIC Player, Lifetime Calendar, Camera, Movie, and microSD.
	Mail	Used to access an i-mode mail and SMS functions.
	i-mode	Used to access an i-mode function.
	i-appli	Used to access an i-αppli function.
	Phone	Used to access functions mainly related to placing and receiving a call such as the Own number, Phonebook, Call record, PushTalk phonebook, and Record message.
	LifeKit	Used to access functions such as BC reader, Receive infrared data, ToruCa, IC card content, Data Security Service, Alarm, Schedule, Text memo, and Calculator.
	Data Box	Used to access data such as those saved in My picture, MUSIC, i-motion, Melody, and Chara-den.
	Settings	Used to set items such as Display, Call, Application, Lock/Security, and Management.
	NW Services	Used to access the network services such as the Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting Service, Call Forwarding Service, Notify Caller ID, Call Cost/Duration, Multi Number Service, Chakumoji, and Videophone switch notice.

For the list of menus in the Simple mode, see P.277.

Simple mode



Menu name	Description
Phone	Used to access functions such as Phonebook, Call record, Record message, and Own number.
Mail	Used to access functions such as Inbox, Outbox, Draft, Compose message, and Check new msg.
i-mode	Used to access functions such as i Menu, Bookmarks, Screen Memo, and i-Channel.
Camera	Used to record an image with the camera and display recorded images.
Settings/Tools	Used to access functions such as Stand-by disp., Incoming set, Alarm, Calculator, Call Cost/Duration, and Voice Mail.
Main menu	The screen for confirming whether to change to the Normal mode menu display appears. If you select [Yes], the menu display is switched to the Normal mode. If you select [Chg. temporarily], the menu display is switched to the Normal mode only temporarily.

● You can turn on/off the menu guide by pressing (Help ON)/ (Help OFF).

● Functions displayed in gray are not available.



## Selecting a Function from the Menu Display

A function can be executed easily by going through the menus.

**1** Press **[MENU]** (MENU).

The menu display appears.

**2** Use **[▲]** **[▼]** to select a menu and press **[●]**.

The function associated to the menu is selected.

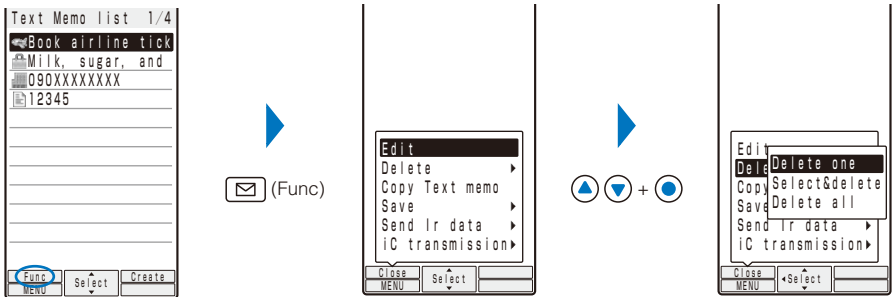
- You can execute a function in the menu display by pressing a key on the keypad. For the functions that can be executed using a number key, see the list of menus (P.270).

## Selecting a Function from the Function Menu

The Function menu is a menu that plays an auxiliary role for each function.

Whenever the Function menu is available, [Func] appears in the guide display. Press **[✉]** to display a list of available Function menus.

- The contents of the Function menu vary depending on the functions and displays. For details, see the description of operation for the individual option.



- Function menus displayed in gray are not available.

## Using the UIM

The UIM (FOMA card) records user information such as your phone number. Insert a UIM in the FOMA terminal to use it.

### Inserting/Removing the UIM

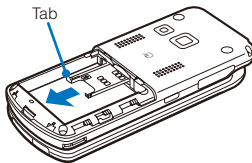
When inserting/removing the UIM (FOMA card), make sure to power off and fold the FOMA terminal, remove the battery pack, and perform the operation with the FOMA terminal held with your hand.

- If you insert the UIM forcibly, it may be damaged.

#### ■ Inserting the UIM

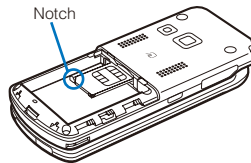
- 1 Pull the tab and then pull out the tray.

Pull out the tray until it stops.

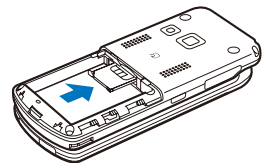


- 2 Place the UIM on the tray with the IC side facing up.

Align the notches of the tray and UIM.



- 3 Push the tray until it stops.



#### ■ Removing the UIM

- 1 Pull the tab and then pull out the tray.
- 2 Lift up the UIM with your finger to take it out.

- Make sure to keep a removed UIM safely.



### About the UIM Security Code


You can set two Security codes, namely "PIN1" and "PIN2", for the UIM (FOMA card). These codes are set to "0000" at the time of subscription. You can change them to any 4- to 8-digit number you want (P.119).

## About the Function for Restricting UIM Operation

The FOMA terminal provides a function for restricting UIM (FOMA card) operation in order to protect your data and files. If you record a videophone message or download files or data from sites or mail while the UIM is inserted in the FOMA terminal, the UIM operation restriction function is automatically set for these data and files.

- When you replace the UIM with another one or if you do not have a UIM inserted in the FOMA terminal, you are unable to display or play back the data or files for which the UIM operation restriction function is set or if they are sent using the infrared or iC communication or attached to mail.
- The target data for operation restriction is as follows:
 

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Image (including GIF animation, Flash, and Stamp&amp;Frame)</li> <li>- Image downloaded from the Data Security Service Center</li> <li>- Chara-den</li> <li>- File attached to i-mode mail (excluding a ToruCa card)</li> <li>- Message R/F attached file (melody/image)</li> <li>- Mail template (including target data for restriction)</li> <li>- Image inserted in Deco-mail or a signature</li> <li>- Screen Memo (including target data for restriction)</li> <li>- Downloaded dictionary</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Deco-mail pictograph</li> <li>- Movie/i-motion</li> <li>- Chaku-Uta®/Chaku-Uta Full®</li> <li>- Image inserted in a ToruCa(detail) card</li> <li>- Melody</li> <li>- Videophone message</li> <li>- i-α ppli (including i-α ppli stand-by display)</li> <li>- Movable contents-compatible data</li> <li>- Menu pattern</li> </ul>
---	---
- “” appears for the data with UIM operation restriction. Depending on the data, “” may not appear and a message may appear instead when you select the data.
- “Chaku-Uta” is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment Corporation.

- If you replace the UIM with another one or use the FOMA terminal without inserting a UIM when data targeted by the UIM operation restriction function is set for the stand-by display, call image, and ring tone, then the sound and image settings are reset to the default settings. In this case, the sound and image you have set and the actual sound and image may be different.
- You cannot set the UIM operation restriction function for data received using the infrared or iC communication, the microSD memory card, or DoCoMo keitai datalink or images recorded with the built-in camera.
- If you use the UIM on another i-Channel-compatible terminal, the Telop text does not appear. When the information is automatically updated or if you press  (i.ch) to receive latest information, the Telop text starts running automatically.

## Settings Saved in the UIM

The following settings are saved in the UIM (FOMA card). If you replace the UIM with another one, the settings in the new UIM come into effect.

- Language
- SSL certificate
- SMS setting
- UIM setting

## About the Differences in UIM Functions

A UIM (FOMA card) (blue) has the following functional differences from a UIM (green/white).

Item	UIM (blue)	UIM (green/white)	Page
Number of digits that can be saved for a phone number in the UIM phonebook	Maximum 20 digits	Maximum 26 digits	P.89
User certificate operation for using FirstPass	Unavailable	Available	P.162
Use of WORLD WING service	Unavailable	Available	P.34
Service Numbers (Use of [ドコモ故障問合せ] (Contact for Repairs) and [ドコモ総合案内・受付] (General Inquiries))	Unavailable	Available	P.262

## WORLD WING

WORLD WING is the DoCoMo's FOMA international roaming service that enables you to place or receive a call using the same mobile phone number even if you are overseas, just by replacing the UIM (green/white) with a card for a WORLD WING service-compatible FOMA terminal or overseas-use mobile phone (W-CDMA or GSM system).

- ※ If you subscribed to the FOMA services after September 1, 2005, you already have WORLD WING and no application is required. If you declined to use WORLD WING when you subscribed to the FOMA services or cancel the WORLD WING service halfway, you need to make an application to use WORLD WING.
- ※ If you subscribed to the FOMA services before August 31, 2005 and did not make an application to "WORLD WING", you need to make a separate application.
- This service is not available in some service charge plans.
- If you should lose your UIM (green/white) or have it stolen abroad, please report it to DoCoMo and take steps to cancel the use of the UIM as soon as possible. For information on where to call, see "General Inquiries" on the backcover of this manual. Note that you are still liable for the call and communication charge incurred after the loss or theft occurred.

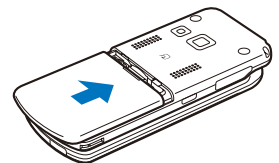
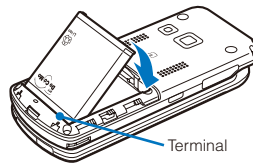
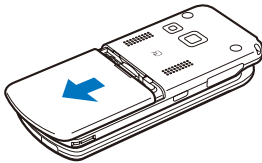
## Attaching and Removing the Battery Pack

When attaching/removing the battery pack, make sure to power off and fold the FOMA terminal.

- If you attach the battery pack forcibly, the terminal on the FOMA terminal may be damaged.
- Holding too hard or attaching/removing the back cover in a manner other than described below may damage it.

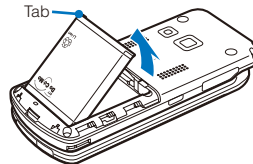
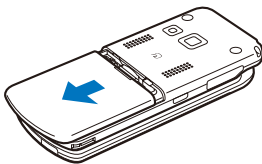
### ■ Attaching the battery pack

- 1 Slide to remove the back cover in the direction of the arrow.
- 2 Hold the battery pack with the recycle-mark side up, align the terminal of the battery pack with that of the FOMA terminal, and push it into place.
- 3 Align the back cover with the grooves on the FOMA terminal while holding it almost closed (about 3 mm clearance) and slide it in the direction of the arrow.



### ■ Removing the battery pack

- 1 Slide to remove the back cover in the direction of the arrow.
- 2 Raise to remove the battery pack in the direction of the arrow by holding it by the tab.



- When you attach the battery pack, make sure that any portion of the UIM tray is not sticking out. If the tray is not inserted completely, it prevents the insertion of the battery pack. If you use force to attach the battery pack, the UIM or tray may be damaged.

## Battery Pack

To make full use of the FOMA terminal, make sure to use the Battery Pack SO02.

### ■ Life of the battery pack

The battery pack is a consumable part. The usage duration of the battery per one charge decreases gradually each time the battery is recharged. When the usage duration per one charge becomes about half that of a new battery pack, the life of the battery pack is assumed to be almost over. It is recommended that you replace the battery pack ahead of time. Depending on the usage condition, the battery pack may be inflated as it comes to the end of its life. This is not a malfunction.

If you continue using i- $\alpha$ ppli or talking on the videophone for a long period of time with the battery being charged, the life of the battery pack may become shorter.

Return all spent battery packs to NTT DoCoMo or a dealer, or a recycling shop to protect the environment.



## Charging the FOMA Terminal

At the time of purchase, the battery pack is not fully charged. Make sure to fully charge the battery pack before using the FOMA terminal for the first time.

### About Charging the FOMA Terminal

- For details, see the user's manual of the FOMA AC Adapter 01/02 (optional), FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use (optional), or FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 (optional).
- The FOMA AC Adapter 01 is only compatible with AC 100 V. The FOMA AC Adapter 02 is compatible with AC 100 V to AC 240 V.
- Although the FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use is compatible with AC 100 V to AC 240 V, the shape of its power plug is only for use with AC 100 V (domestic specification).
- Make sure to attach the battery pack in the FOMA terminal before connecting it to the optional AC Adapter, Desktop Holder, or DC Adapter. If the battery pack is not attached, the FOMA terminal cannot be charged.
- If you use a function such as the videophone, data communication, and i- $\alpha$ ppli while charging the battery, the charging may stop because of high temperature of the FOMA terminal. The charging may not even start if the FOMA terminal is in high temperature. Wait until the temperature of the FOMA terminal falls and restart charging.
- If the charge indicator of the FOMA terminal flashes in red, wait until the temperature of the FOMA terminal falls or remove the battery pack and attach it back again.  
If it continues to flash in red, the battery pack may be defective. Stop charging immediately and contact our service counter (DoCoMo shop, etc.).
- Do not charge the battery pack for a long period of time (more than 24 hours) with the FOMA terminal powered on. If the FOMA terminal is powered on when charging is completed, the battery level decreases. This causes the FOMA terminal to restart charging. If you remove the FOMA terminal while it is recharging, the following conditions may occur.
  - The battery level is low.
  - The battery alarm sounds.
  - The operation time is short.

### ■ Estimated charging time/Battery time

Charging time (AC adapter)	Continuous call (communication) time	Continuous stand-by time
About 150 minutes	Voice call : About 160 minutes Videophone call : About 90 minutes	Stationary state : About 600 hours Moving state : About 450 hours

- The charging time is an estimated time for charging when the battery pack is empty and the FOMA terminal is powered off. When charging with the FOMA terminal powered on, the charging time becomes longer.
- The continuous call time is an estimated time for a call when the FOMA terminal can send/receive radio waves properly.
- The continuous stand-by time is an estimated battery time available on the FOMA terminal when it is folded and can receive radio waves properly. The continuous stand-by time during the stationary state indicates the average battery time available on the FOMA terminal that is placed stationary when it is folded and can receive radio waves properly. The continuous stand-by time during the moving state indicates the average battery time available on the FOMA terminal that is placed in mixture of the following states: "stationary", "moving", and "outside of the service area" when it is folded and within an area where it can receive radio waves properly.

- Note that the call (communication) time and stand-by time may be reduced to about half of the time indicated above depending on the operating environment such as the charge level of the battery, how functions are set, and temperature, and radio wave condition in the area where a call is placed (outside of the service area or area with weak radio wave condition). Similarly, the call (communication) time and stand-by time become shorter than the above when you use i-mode communication. Besides calls and i-mode communication, the battery time is also reduced when you are composing i-mode mail, starting a downloaded i- $\alpha$ ppli or i- $\alpha$ ppli stand-by display, performing data communication, executing multiaccess, and using the camera or MUSIC Player.

## How to Charge the FOMA Terminal

Charge the battery pack using the optional Desktop Holder SO05 with the FOMA AC Adapter 01/02 connected. Make sure to see the user's manuals of the Desktop Holder and AC Adapter. The battery pack cannot be charged alone.

**1** Insert the connector of the AC adapter horizontally with the engraved side facing up into the terminal (the side labeled "ACアダプタ") of the desktop holder.

**2** Lift the power plug of the AC adapter and plug it into an AC 100 V outlet.

**3** Insert the FOMA terminal, which has the battery pack attached, to the desktop holder and push it into place.

Charging starts and the red charge indicator is turned on. The indicator is turned off when charging is completed.

### When you charge while the FOMA terminal is powered on

The battery level icon flashes and the Charge sound is heard. When charging is completed, the icon changes from flashing to lighting and the Charge sound is heard.

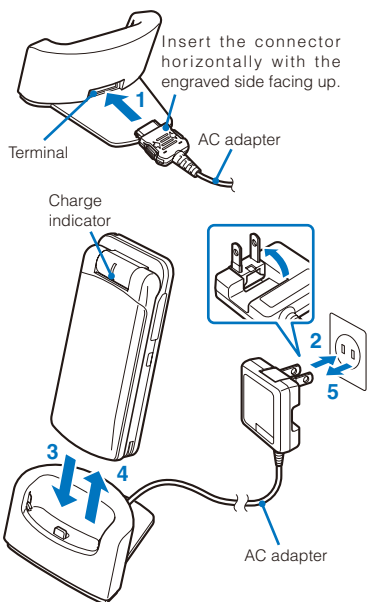
- You can set to mute the Charge sound with the Set basic tone (P.102).

### When there is a missed call or unread mail/SMS/message during charging

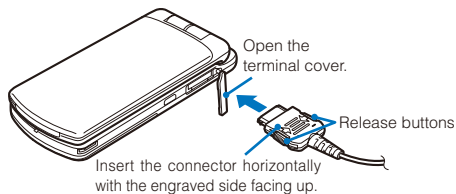
The charge indicator is also used as the incoming indicator. The charge indicator flashes in the indicator color for a missed call at about five seconds interval while it is lighting in red. Note that this is not a malfunction of the battery pack.

**4** When the charging is completed, lift to remove the FOMA terminal while holding the desktop holder.

**5** Remove the power plug of the AC adapter from the AC 100 V outlet.



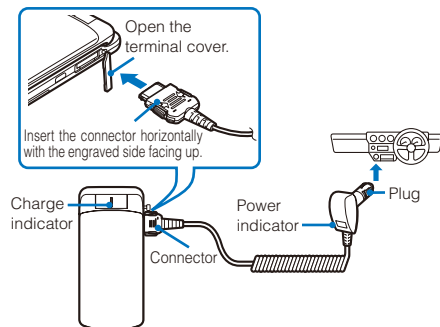
### ■ Charging with the AC adapter only



- To remove the AC adapter, make sure to pull it horizontally while holding the release buttons pressed. Pulling it forcibly may cause malfunction.

### ■ Charging with the DC adapter

With the optional FOMA DC Adapter 01/02, you can charge the battery pack by using the cigarette lighter socket of a vehicle (12 V/24 V). For details, see the user's manual of the DC adapter.



- While charging the battery, the incoming indicator/charge indicator/FeliCa Sign lights in yellow during iC communication or when the FOMA terminal comes within the communication range with the reading device.
- When not using the AC adapter for a long period of time, remove its power plug from the AC outlet.
- Make sure that the phone strap, etc. does not get caught in between the FOMA terminal and the desktop holder.
- The fuse (2.0 A) of the DC adapter is a consumable part. Purchase an equivalent fuse from an automobile parts store when it is necessary to replace the fuse.

## Attaching and Removing the Style-Up Panel

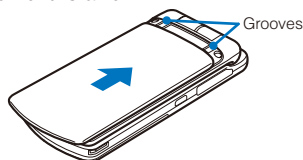
The Style-Up Panel is a name for a set of panels with which you can dress up the front face of your FOMA terminal. You can change the supplied Style-Up Panel SO02 with an optional Style-Up Panel SO02.

When attaching/removing the Style-Up Panel, make sure to fold the FOMA terminal.

- Holding too hard or attaching/removing the Style-Up Panel in a manner other than described below may damage it.

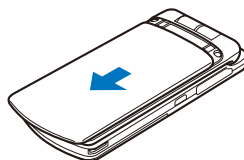
### ■ Attaching the Style-Up Panel

With the Style-Up Panel open by about 5 mm, place the panel so that the protrusions at the both sides of it are aligned with the grooves on the FOMA terminal, and slide it in the direction of the arrow.



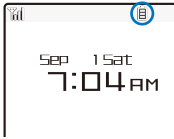
### ■ Removing the Style-Up Panel

Slide to remove the Style-Up Panel in the direction of the arrow.



- Using the FOMA terminal with the Style-Up Panel removed may lower strength and result in causing damage or malfunction of the FOMA terminal.
- When the dust gathers between the FOMA terminal and Style-Up Panel, remove the Style-Up Panel and wipe the dust with a soft cloth.
- When there is a missed call or new mail/unread message, the illumination indicators (⑳, ㉑ in P.25) flash and the design of the attached Style-Up Panel is emerged.
- The Style-Up Panel SO02 may not be available in some stores.

The estimated battery level is indicated in the display.



Display	Charge level
	Sufficiently charged.
	Slightly low.
	Very low. Charge.
	The battery level is 0. Charge.

- When the battery level becomes 0, the screen shown to the right appears and warning sound is heard. The sound may be suppressed by other sound, etc. in operation. It is heard again after about 20 seconds and the function you are performing is terminated. During a call, the warning sound is heard from the earpiece and the call is terminated after another warning sound. If you do not charge the battery, the FOMA terminal is automatically powered off after about 60 seconds.

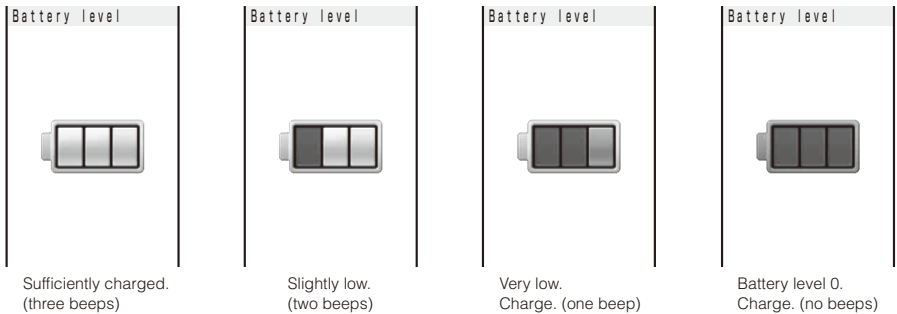


## Checking the Battery Level with the Sound and Display

- The confirmation beep does not sound when the volume of the keypad sound is [OFF] (P.102).

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [Battery level] and press

The current battery level is displayed using bars in the display and the confirmation beep sounds according to the remaining battery level.






- When you power on the FOMA terminal, the screen for confirming whether to execute the software update may appear (P.299).

## 1 Press (PWR) for over two seconds.



The FOMA terminal is powered on, the display and the keypad lights are turned on, and an animation is displayed. After a while, the stand-by display appears.

- If you have set the PIN1 code setting to [ON], the PIN1 code input screen appears. Enter the PIN1 code and press  (OK) (P.117).

### To power off

Press  (PWR) for over two seconds.

- If you replace the UIM with another one (except when the Omakase Lock is set), you need to enter a 4- to 8-digit Security code when the FOMA terminal is powered on. When the entered code is correct, the stand-by display appears. If you enter a wrong Security code five times consecutively, the FOMA terminal is powered off. (You can still power on the FOMA terminal, however.)

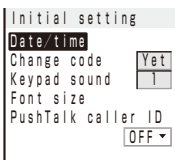
# Setting the Basic Functions

The Initial setting can be used to make basic settings such as the Date/time and Security code. See the respective pages for details about the settings.

## Available setting items

Item	Description
Date/time	Set the date and time of the FOMA terminal (P.40).
Change code	Change the Security code (P.118).
Keypad sound	Set the volume of the tone to sound when you press the key (P.102).
Font size	Set the size of fonts to be used individually for displaying the Phonebook, Call record, Mail, i-mode sites, etc. (P.114).
PushTalk caller ID	Set whether to send the FOMA terminal's phone number when you originate a PushTalk call (P.83).

## 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [Init. setting] and press .



## 2 Set each item.

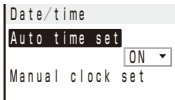
- If you perform the Reset all data&set or do not change the Security code of the FOMA terminal, the message "Initial setting is incomplete. Execute?" appears when you power on the FOMA terminal. When you select [Yes], the display in step 1 appears and you can perform the initial setting.

Default | Auto time set: ON

You can set the date and time either by automatically correcting the time based on the time information obtained from the DoCoMo network or by manually setting the time.

Example: Correcting the time automatically

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [Date/time] and press .



[Auto time set] : Set the time automatically.

[Manual clock set] : Enter the time manually. When you set the time using the Manual clock set, the Auto time set is set to [OFF].

**2** Select [ON] at [Auto time set].

[ON] : Correct the date and time automatically.

[OFF] : Do not correct the date and time automatically. Set the time using the Manual clock set.

**To set the time manually**

Select [Manual clock set] → [Yes] and enter the year and date within the range from 2000/01/01 to 2050/12/31, and the time in 24-hour format (00:00 to 23:59). Press

 (Complete).


- When you set the Auto time set to [ON], the date and time are corrected automatically when the FOMA terminal is powered on with a UIM installed. Note, however, that there may be an error lasting several seconds. The time cannot be automatically corrected in the following cases.
  - Outside of the service area (The time may not be corrected automatically even inside the service area depending on the radio wave condition.)
  - While i-αppli is running
- The date and time settings are retained even when you replace the battery pack. However, if you leave the FOMA terminal without a battery pack or with a fully expended battery pack for a long period of time, the date and time may be reset to "----/-- -- --:--". In this case, set the date and time once again.
- If the date and time are not set, functions that use the clock, such as the current time icon, Schedule, Alarm, i-αppli Auto start, and calendar/clock display cannot be used. The date and time for the Redial/Received record and the date and time on images shot with the camera are also not recorded.

## Notifying the Recipient of Your Phone Number

<Notify caller ID>


When placing a call, your phone number can be shown in the display of the recipient's phone you are calling.

- The caller ID is important personal information. Carefully decide whether you notify a recipient of your caller ID.

**1** From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Notify Caller ID] → [Set Notification] and press .

The network security code screen appears.

**2** Enter the network security code.

**3** Select [Notify]/[Not notify] and press .

The Notify caller ID is set.

**To check the setting**

From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Notify Caller ID] → [Check setting].

- If you hear a guidance asking to send the caller ID when you place a call, call again after setting the Set Notification to [Notify] or by adding "186" before the recipient's phone number.

## Checking Your Own Phone Number

<Own number>

Your phone number can be checked. You can also save your name, mail address, etc.

- If the Own number is saved as Secret, the data other than your phone number, mail address, and Additional No. is not displayed. Set the Secret display to [ON] to display all data.

**1** Press  (MENU) in the stand-by display and press .



Your phone number appears at . If the data other than a phone number is saved, that data also appears.

**To place a call**

Move the cursor to a phone number and press .

**To place a videophone call**

Move the cursor to a phone number and press  (V.phone).

**To originate a PushTalk call**

Move the cursor to a phone number and press .

**To send i-mode mail**

Move the cursor to a mail address and press  (Mail).

**To check the image**

Move the cursor to the image and press  (Play).

















## Saving Your Personal Data

You can save your personal data such as your name, postal address, and mail address, and check saved data in the Own number display and quote this data in the text input display.

## 1 Press (Edit) in the Own number display.



## 2 Save each item.





Icon	Settings												
	Enter your mail address within 50 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols.												
	Enter your name within 16 full-width or 32 half-width characters.												
	When entering your name, the reading is automatically entered. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To edit the reading, enter a reading within 32 half-width characters.</li> </ul>												
	Enter the postal code of your home address within seven half-width digits.												
	Enter the postal address of your home within 64 full-width or 128 half-width characters.												
	Enter your home phone number within 26 digits.												
	Enter your home mail address within 50 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols.												
	Enter the name of your office within 64 full-width or 128 half-width characters.												
	Enter the postal code of your office address within seven half-width digits.												
	Enter the postal address of your office within 64 full-width or 128 half-width characters.												
	Enter your office phone number within 26 digits.												
	Enter your office mail address within 50 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols.												
	Enter your birthday within the range from 1900/01/01 to 2050/12/31.												
	<p>Select an image from My picture/i-motion of the Data Box.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can set the following files.</li> </ul> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Category</th> <th>File format</th> <th>File size</th> <th>Image size</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>My picture</td> <td>GIF/JPEG</td> <td>Max. 100K bytes</td> <td>Max. [QVGA(240×320)]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>i-motion※</td> <td>—</td> <td>Max. 2M bytes</td> <td>[sQCIF(128×96)]/[QCIF(176×144)]</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>※ Some i-motion may not be set.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To specify no image, select [None].</li> <li>To check the image, move the cursor to the image and press  (Play).</li> </ul>	Category	File format	File size	Image size	My picture	GIF/JPEG	Max. 100K bytes	Max. [QVGA(240×320)]	i-motion※	—	Max. 2M bytes	[sQCIF(128×96)]/[QCIF(176×144)]
Category	File format	File size	Image size										
My picture	GIF/JPEG	Max. 100K bytes	Max. [QVGA(240×320)]										
i-motion※	—	Max. 2M bytes	[sQCIF(128×96)]/[QCIF(176×144)]										
	<p>Select [ON]/[OFF] of the Secret.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To display the entry saved as Secret, set the Secret display to [ON].</li> </ul>												

## 3 Press (Complete).

Your personal data is saved.

### To reset to the default settings

From the Function menu in the Own number display, select [Reset all] → [Yes].

- At  your phone number is displayed and at  and  Additional Nos. set for the Multi Number Service are displayed. These numbers cannot be edited or deleted.
- At the time of purchase, your mail address does not appear. Check your mail address by selecting  (i-mode) → [i Menu] → [English iMenu] → [Options] → [Mail Settings] → [Confirm Mail Address]. When you change your mail address, edit the Own number display accordingly.

# Voice/Videophone Calls

## ■ Placing Voice/Videophone Calls

What is Videophone? .....	44
Placing a Voice/Videophone Call .....	45
Switching to/from Voice/Videophone Call .....	<Chg. to videophone/Chg. to voice call> 48
Using the Redial/Received Record .....	<Redial record/Received record> 49
Setting the Chaku-moji.....	<Chaku-moji> 51
Changing the Caller ID Setting ON/OFF for an Individual Call.....	<186/184> 53
Placing a Call by Specifying a Condition .....	53
Setting a Prefix.....	<Prefix setting> 54
Placing an International Call .....	<WORLD CALL> 55
Placing a Call by Specifying a Sub-address .....	<Sub-address> 57
Setting the Alarm When Reconnecting a Dropped Call .....	<Reconnect alarm> 57
Improving Voice Clarity by Suppressing Background Noise.....	<Reduce noise> 58
Talking Hands-free While Driving .....	<Hands-free mode> 58

## ■ Receiving Voice/Videophone Calls

Receiving a Voice/Videophone Call .....	58
Receiving a Call by Switching to/from Voice/Videophone Call .....	60
Pressing a Key on the Keypad to Receive a Call .....	<Any key answer> 60
Setting the Operation for the FOMA Terminal Being Folded during a Call...	<Setting when folded> 61
Using the Low Voice Feature.....	<Whisper mode> 61
Putting a Call on Hold during a Call .....	<Holding> 62

## ■ When You Are/Were Unable to Answer a Voice/Videophone Call

Putting a Call on Hold .....	<On hold> 62
Using the Public Mode (Drive Mode).....	<Public mode (Drive mode)> 62
Using the Public Mode (Power off) .....	<Public mode (Power off)> 64
Checking the Missed Calls.....	<Missed call> 65
Recording Caller's Messages When Unable to Answer Calls....	<Record message/Videophone message> 65
Recording a Caller's Message When Unable to Answer a Call Just Receiving...	<Quick record message> 67
Playing Back/Deleting a Record Message/Videophone Message/Voice Memo .....	68
Using Chara-den .....	69
Setting the Videophone Operation .....	<Videophone setting> 70
Setting Notice for Switching between Voice and Videophone Calls .....	<Videophone switch notice> 72

# What is Videophone?

You can use the videophone function between DoCoMo videophone compatible terminals. You can use videophone to talk to the recipient/caller while looking at each other's image. You can send a still image, substitute image, or Chara-den character instead of your own.

DoCoMo's videophone complies with "3G-324M\*<sup>1</sup> standardized by 3GPP\*<sup>2</sup> for global standard". The FOMA terminal cannot be connected to a videophone that uses a different system.

\*<sup>1</sup> 3G-324M

Global standard for third-generation mobile videophones.

\*<sup>2</sup> 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)

Local standardization committee set up for development of common technology specifications related to third-generation mobile wireless communication systems (IMT-2000).

## Using the Display during a Videophone Call



- ① Videophone call communication speed  
 : 64kbps    : 32kbps
- ② Videophone image (Large)  
 Display an image of a person you are talking to (default setting).
- ③ Videophone image (Small)  
 Display your image (default setting).
- ④ Call duration  
 Display the call duration in the hh:mm:ss format.
- ⑤ Outgoing image status  
 : Camera image is being sent.  
 : A still image is being sent.  
 : A Chara-den character is being sent.
- ⑥ Zoom magnification  
 Display the zoom magnification bar.
- ⑦ : Hands-free ON
- ⑧ : Photo light ON
- ⑨ Mode  
 : Mode for operating full-body actions  
 : Mode for operating parts actions  
 : Mode for sending touch-tones (DTMF)

## Operations during a Videophone Call

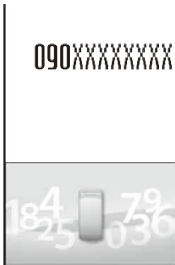
Operation	Key operation
Switch between camera image/substitute image	Press  (MySide/Sub). Every time you press the key, the display is switched between camera image/substitute image.
Switch cameras	Press  (In/Out). Every time you press the key, the camera is switched between the In-/Out-camera.
Switch ON/OFF of the hands-free operation	Press  (). Every time you press the key, the ON/OFF setting is switched.
Zoom-in/-out image	Press  (Zoom in) /  (Zoom out) when recording with the Out-camera.
Put a call on hold	From the Function menu, select [Holding]. To cancel this function, press .
Switch the display	From the Function menu, select [Display setting].
Switch the quality of the outgoing image	From the Function menu, select [Visual preference]. When you finish a call, the image quality set for the Visual preference of the Videophone setting is restored.
Select a substitute image	From the Function menu, select [Select sub image].
Switch ON/OFF of the photo light	From the Function menu, select [Photo light] (when using the Out-camera only).
Display your phone number	From the Function menu, select [Own number].
Switch to a voice call	From the Function menu, select [Chg. to voice call] (when placing a videophone call only).

# Placing a Voice/Videophone Call

Check the radio wave condition and enter a phone number.

Example: Placing a voice call

## 1 Enter a phone number in the stand-by display.

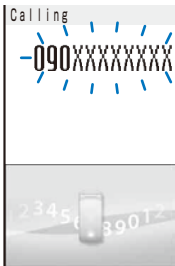


- You can enter a phone number of up to 80 digits.
- Make sure to include the area code, even for a local call.

### When you press the wrong number

Press **[CLR]** to delete the entered digits one by one from the right. Press **[CLR]** for over a second to delete all digits.

## 2 Press **[CALL]**.



A ringing sound is heard when the call is connected.

### To place a videophone call

Press **[V.PH]** (V.phone). When the call is answered, your image is sent to the recipient and the call is switched to the hands-free operation that allows you to hear the recipient's voice from the speaker.


### When a busy tone sounds

The line is busy. Press **[END]** to hang up and call again after a while.

### When you hear a guidance

Call again according to the guidance.

## 3 Press **[END]** to hang up.

- See P.52 for sending the Chaku-moji and P.53 for placing a voice or videophone call by specifying the condition.
- For a voice call, you can also place it in the order of step 2 → step 1. Press  and enter a phone number, and the call is dialed automatically after about five seconds.
- You are charged for digital communication even if you send a substitute image during a call.
- If the videophone call is not connected, the following messages appear in the display. The displayed message may not correctly represent the status of the recipient depending on the type of the phone of the recipient or whether the recipient has subscribed to any network service.

Message	Description
Check number, then redial	The phone number is no longer in use.
Busy	The recipient is talking on the phone. (This message may appear also during packet communication on some recipient's terminals.)
Busy with packet transmission	The recipient is using packet communication.
Outside of service area/power off	The recipient is in a place where radio waves do not reach or the phone is powered off.
Set Caller ID to ON	This message appears when the call was connected without a Caller ID (When a call is placed to V-Live, Visual Net, or other sites.)
Please try voice call	This message appears when the Call Forwarding Service is set on the recipient's phone and the terminal to which the call was forwarded is not equipped with the videophone function. (As of June 2007, this message may appear also when the Voice Mail Service is set on the recipient's phone.)
Connection failed	This message appears when none of the above reasons apply.
Please make your call from the i-mode web page	To view V-Live contents, visit and view an official i-mode site once, and then place a videophone call.
Upper limit has been exceeded. Connection failed	The upper limit set to the plan with a Limit (Type Limit or Family Wide Limit) has been exceeded.

- Videophone at 32K is intended for connection to a device such as a PHS that cannot use videophone at 64K because of network restrictions. Even when you place a videophone call using 64K to a recipient who has a 32K communication environment, the FOMA terminal automatically switches to 32K and redial the call.

※ Even when you connect videophone using 32K, you are charged for 64K digital communication.

- If a videophone call is not connected, the FOMA terminal automatically switches to 32K or voice call and redials the call.

	Auto redial(voice) [ON]	Auto redial(voice) [OFF]
No connection for videophone call using 64K	Redial using 32K.	Redial using 32K.
No connection for videophone call using 32K	Redial using voice call.	Do not redial a call.


- If you use the FOMA terminal to place a videophone call to emergency numbers (110, 119, and 118), it automatically switches to voice call dialing.
- When you place a videophone call to a terminal that is not equipped with a videophone function, or when a recipient is outside of the service area or the phone is powered off (even if the FOMA terminal has the videophone function), your call is not connected. When you place a videophone call to a terminal that is not equipped with a videophone function and the Auto redial(voice) is set to [ON], the recipient's terminal disconnects your videophone call before it is connected, and the FOMA terminal redials the call as a voice call. If, however, you dial a wrong number such as an ISDN synchronous 64kbps or PIAFS access points, or ISDN videophone that is not 3G-324M (as of June 2007) compatible, the above operations may not take place. Note also that you may be charged for the call.

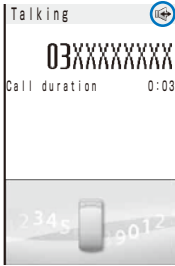


## Using the Hands-free Function

When you switch to the hands-free operation during a call, you can hear the caller's voice from the speaker and talk hands-free.

Example: Switching to the hands-free operation during a voice call

- 1 Press  (📞) during a call.



The call is switched to the hands-free operation and  appears.

### To cancel the hands-free function

Press  (📞) again.

- When you finish the call, the hands-free operation is automatically canceled.

- Talk into the FOMA terminal from a distance of 30 cm or less.

## Entering a Pause, Timer, or +

You can include a pause, timer, or + in a phone number (within 80 digits in all) to place a call.

The phone number and pause, timer, or + can be saved together in the Phonebook.

- Pause and timer are valid only for a voice call.

### Entering a pause “P”

If you enter “P (pause)” between the phone number and touch-tones when you book a ticket or play back your home answering machine, the touch-tones are sent by separating the numbers at the pause (P).

- 1 Press  in the phone number input display.

“P” is entered.

### To send touch-tones saved in the Phonebook


When the touch-tones are displayed after you place a call from the Phonebook, press

-  (Call).

- Some receiver devices may not be able to accept touch-tones.

### Entering a timer “T”


To dial an inside line number following an outside line number, enter “T (timer)” between the outside and inside line numbers. After a preset interval in seconds, the inside line number is dialed following the outside line number. An interval of about one second is added for every timer (T) entry. You can enter “T” consecutively to make the interval longer.

- 1 Press  for over a second in the phone number input display.

“T” is entered.

## Entering a “+”

If you enter “+” at the beginning of a phone number when the Auto conversion of the Int'l dial assist setting is set to [ON], a call is dialed by automatically adding the set international access number (set to “009130010” at the time of purchase).

- 1 Press  for over a second in the stand-by display.  
“+” is entered.



● You may not be able to place the call if you enter other than a phone number after “+” or enter only “+”.

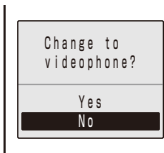
## Switching to/from Voice/Videophone Call <Chg. to videophone/Chg. to voice call>

A caller can switch to/from voice/videophone call during a call.

- This function can be used only between terminals that can switch between voice and videophone calls. A recipient must preset the V.ph switch notice to [Indication ON] (P.72).

Example: Switching from voice call to videophone call

- 1 Press  (Func) during a voice call, select [Chg. to videophone], and press .



- [Yes] : Switch the call from voice call to videophone call.  
[No] : Return to the voice call without switching the call.

### To switch from videophone call to voice call

From the Function menu, select [Chg. to voice call] → [Yes]. When the call is switched to the voice call, the hands-free operation is canceled.

- 2 Select [Yes] and press .



The recipient's image  
A substitute image may appear according to the setting on the recipient's terminal.

While the call is switched, an animation is displayed and you hear a guidance notifying you that a call is switched.

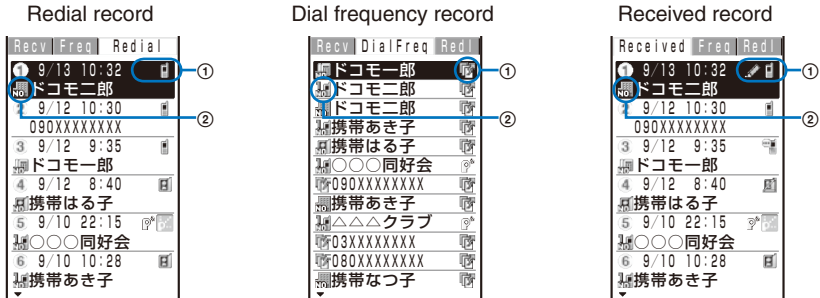
When the call is switched to the videophone call, your image is sent to the recipient and the call is switched to the hands-free operation that allows you to hear the recipient's voice from the speaker.

- If packet communication is in progress, it is disconnected and the FOMA terminal is switched to videophone.
- When the call is put on hold on the recipient or while the recipient is performing packet communication, you cannot switch to videophone.
- The switching operation takes about five seconds. It may take time depending on the radio wave condition.
- Switching to/from voice/videophone call may not be performed in some radio wave condition, and the phone may be disconnected.
- You are not charged while “Chg. to videophone”/“Chg. to voice call” is displayed.
- Every time you switch, the call duration starts from 0 seconds. When you finish the call, the total call duration is displayed for each of the voice and videophone calls.

# Using the Redial/Received Record

<Redial record/Received record>

Up to 30 previously placed/received calls are saved as call records with their dates/times, phone numbers, and names. The phone numbers or names appear in descending order from the most recent call. For a PushTalk call, the group name or the first member's name appears.



## ① Call type

	Placed/received voice call / Missed voice call ("☎" appears in case of the Dial frequency record)
	Placed/received videophone call / Missed videophone call ("☎" appears in case of the Dial frequency record)
	Received 64K data communication / Missed 64K data communication
	Originated/received PushTalk call / Missed PushTalk call
	PushTalk type (to one person)/(to multiple persons)/(PushTalkPlus)
	With Chaku-moji (Displayed only in the Received record)

※ "☎" appears when the Record message/Videophone message is recorded.

## ② Phone type

	Mobile1		Mobile2		Public phone
	Videophone		Home phone		Office phone
	Home FAX		Office FAX		QUICKCAST

• The phone type icons do not appear when the PIM lock is set.

Example: Displaying the Redial record

### 1 Press in the stand-by display.

The Redial record display appears.

#### To display the Received record

Press in the stand-by display.

#### To display the Dial frequency record

Press in the Redial record display.

#### To display phone numbers

When saved in the Phonebook, the name and phone type of a recipient are displayed instead of the phone number. Press to switch the display temporarily between names and phone numbers. The display is not switched when a group name for a PushTalk call is displayed.

#### To place a voice call

Move the cursor to a call record and press .

#### To place a videophone call

Move the cursor to a call record and press (V.phone).

#### To originate a PushTalk call

Move the cursor to a call record and press .

## To send mail

You can send mail to a person whose phone number and mail address are saved in the Phonebook. Move the cursor to a call record and from the Function menu, select [Reply by mail] → a mail address. Compose mail and send it.

## To save in a group of the PushTalk phonebook

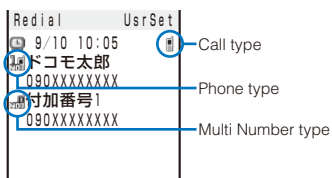
When you perform PushTalk communication among several persons saved in the PushTalk phonebook, move the cursor to a received record of the PushTalk call (📞), press (💾) (Save), select a group, and press (✅) (Complete).

- If the same phone number has been repeatedly called, only the most recent call is saved in the Redial record. Note, however, that when you originate a PushTalk call, individual PushTalk communication among several persons are recorded.
- If you switch the call between voice and videophone during a call, the call you placed/received first is saved in the Redial/Received record.
- When a caller uses a "Dial-in" phone number, the phone number displayed may be different from the caller's dial-in number.
- When you place a voice or videophone call from the Received record, a Chaku-moji recorded in the Received record is not sent.

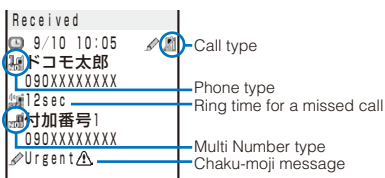
## Displaying the Detailed Information of the Redial/Received Record

- 1 From the call record display, select a call record and press (🔍) (Detail).

### Redial record



### Received record



- The following icons show the Multi Number type.

	基本契約番号 (Basic Number)		付加番号1 (Additional No.1)		付加番号2 (Additional No.2)
---	--------------------------	---	----------------------------	---	----------------------------

- When you select a call record of a PushTalk call, (👤) group name, (👤) caller name (Received record only), and all members are displayed.

## Deleting the Redial/Received Record

The call records are retained even if the FOMA terminal is powered off. If you do not wish others to know the previously dialed records, delete one or all of the call records.


- If you delete either a redial record or a dial frequency record, both records are deleted.

Example: Deleting a call record

- 1 From the call record display, select a call record and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

### To delete several call records

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete], select call records, press  (Complete), and select [Yes].

### To delete all call records

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- 2 Select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes] and press .

The selected call record is deleted.

## Setting the Chaku-moji

<Chaku-moji>

When you place a voice or videophone call, you can send a message (Chaku-moji) that is displayed in the recipient's Incoming call display in order to notify the purpose of the call even before this recipient answers.



Chaku-moji


Chaku-moji disappears when you start talking on the phone.

Chaku-moji can be checked in the detailed information display of the Received Record (P.50).

- Compatible models: 902iS series, SH902iSL, N902iX HIGH-SPEED, N902iL, 903i series, 904i series, 702iS series (excluding N702iS, M702iS, and M702iG), 703i series, 704i series, 601i series (excluding L601i), and D800iDS
- Charge is required for the Chaku-moji sender, but no charge for a recipient.
- Chaku-moji cannot be used for PushTalk calls.
- You cannot send a Chaku-moji to overseas.

## Editing Chaku-moji Messages

You can save up to 10 Chaku-moji messages.

- 1 From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Chaku-moji] → [Create message] and press .

### To delete a Chaku-moji message

Move the cursor to a Chaku-moji message and from the Function menu, select [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete all Chaku-moji messages, from the Function menu, select [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].


- 2 Press  (Edit) and enter a Chaku-moji message.

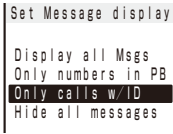
Enter a message within 10 characters regardless of pictographs, symbols, full-width, or half-width. The Chaku-moji message is saved.

## Setting the Display for Chaku-moji Being Received


Default | Only calls w/ID

You can set the display style to be used when you receive a Chaku-moji message.

- 1 From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Chaku-moji] → [Set Message display] and press .



- [Display all Msgs] : Receive and display all Chaku-moji.
- [Only numbers in PB] : Receive and display Chaku-moji sent only from callers who are saved in the Phonebook. You cannot receive Chaku-moji from a caller who is saved in the Phonebook as Secret unless the Secret display is set to [ON].
- [Only calls w/ID] : Receive and display Chaku-moji sent only from callers who notify their caller IDs.
- [Hide all messages] : Do not receive or display any Chaku-moji.

- 2 Select the Chaku-moji display style and press .

The display style for Chaku-moji is set.


## Placing a Call with a Chaku-moji Message

You can place a voice or videophone call together with a Chaku-moji message.

Example: Placing a voice call

- 1 Enter a phone number in the stand-by display and press  (Call).

The Call menu appears.

- 2 Select [Voice call] and press .

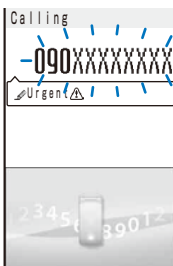


- [No message] : Place a call without a Chaku-moji message.
- [Create message] : Create a Chaku-moji message and place a call. Enter a message within 10 characters regardless of pictographs, symbols, full-width, or half-width.
- [Select message] : Select a saved Chaku-moji message and place a call. (This menu appears only when the Chaku-moji message is saved.)

- 3 Compose/Select a Chaku-moji message.

The Chaku-moji message is composed/selected and the Call condition menu appears.

- 4 Select a call condition and press .



The call is dialed according to the selected Chaku-moji message and call condition.



- When a Chaku-moji is received by the recipient, “✂” appears in the sender’s terminal display and charge is required.
- If the recipient does not receive the Chaku-moji, “✂” appears. In this case, there is no charge. (For example, when the recipient’s terminal does not have Chaku-moji support or if the Chaku-moji was received in a condition other than that set using the Set Message display menu.)
- If the recipient’s terminal has the following settings or conditions, Chaku-moji cannot be delivered to this recipient and the call is not saved in the Received record of the recipient’s terminal. “✂” or “✂” is not displayed on the sender’s terminal and there is no charge for this transmission.
  - When the recipient’s terminal is outside of the service area
  - When the recipient’s terminal is powered off
  - When the Public mode (Drive mode) is set
  - When the To answer the Record message is set to 0 seconds, etc.
- Even if a Chaku-moji was delivered successfully to the recipient, “✂” or “✂” may not be displayed in the sender’s terminal display depending on the radio wave condition. In this case, charge is required.
- If you place a videophone call with a Chaku-moji while the Auto redial(voice) is set to [ON], the Chaku-moji is sent even when this call is redialed as a voice call.


## Changing the Caller ID Setting ON/OFF for an Individual Call <186/184>

You can choose whether to notify a recipient of your phone number (caller ID) every time you place a call.

- The caller ID is important personal information. Carefully decide whether you want to notify a recipient of your caller ID.

You can use the following methods to notify or not notify your caller ID.

Presetting for all calls	Use the Set Notification to set [Notify]/[Not notify] (P.41).
Setting in the Phonebook	Add “186/184” to the recipient’s phone number when you save it in the Phonebook (P.87).
Setting when you place a call	Set [Call with ID]/[Call with no ID] from the Call condition menu after dialing a recipient’s phone number (P.53). Enter “186/184” before dialing a recipient’s phone number (P.45). <b>To notify the caller ID</b> Press 186 + [Phone number] +  . <b>Not to notify the caller ID</b> Press 184 + [Phone number] +  .

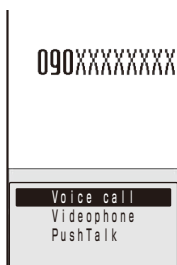
- When you place a call by pressing  after dialing a phone number with “186/184”, the phone number is saved in the Redial record with “186/184”.

## Placing a Call by Specifying a Condition

When you place a call, you can select a call type and call condition from the Call menu or Call condition menu, for example, whether to notify a recipient of your phone number.

Example: Placing a voice call

- 1 Enter a phone number in the stand-by display and press  (Call).



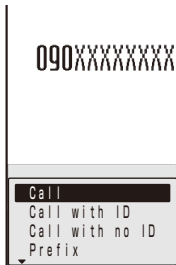
- [Voice call] : Select a call condition for a voice call.
- [Videophone] : Select an image to be sent (My side/Substitute image>Select sub image) and the communication speed (64K/32K) to be used when you place a videophone call.
- [PushTalk] : Select whether to notify your phone number when you originate a PushTalk call.

## 2 Select [Voice call] and press .

The menu for selecting a Chaku-moji message appears.

- For details about how to place a call together with a Chaku-moji message, see P.52.

## 3 Select [No message] and press .



- [Call] : The voice and videophone calls follow the setting of the Set Notification. The PushTalk call follows the setting of the Caller ID.
- [Call with ID] : Your phone number (caller ID) is notified to the recipient.
- [Call with no ID] : Your phone number (caller ID) is not notified to the recipient.
- [Prefix] : Place a voice or videophone call by selecting a saved prefix (P.54). (This item appears only when a prefix is saved and you enter a phone number without a preceding "+".)
- [Int'l prefix] : Place a voice or videophone call by selecting a saved international access number (P.56). (This item appears only when you enter a phone number with a preceding "+".)
- [Country code] : Place a voice or videophone call by selecting a saved country code (P.56).

## 4 Select a call condition and press .

The call is dialed according to the selected call condition.

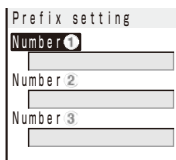
- A call condition which cannot be selected does not appear.
- If the Multi Number call for Multi Number is set to [ON], the Additional No. selection menu appears after step 1. Select an Additional No. to be used and then go to step 2.
- You cannot select [Prefix], [Int'l prefix], or [Country code] from the Call condition menu if a phone number you dialed exceeds 81 digits when the call condition is added.

## Setting a Prefix

<Prefix setting>

You can save up to three specific numbers (prefixes) to be added at the beginning of a phone number when you place a call.

### 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Call assist] → [Prefix setting] and press .



### 2 Select a number and press .

The number input display appears.

### 3 Enter a prefix and press (OK).

Enter a prefix within 26 digits.




# Placing an International Call

<WORLD CALL>

With WORLD CALL, you can place an international call from a DoCoMo mobile phone.

- The users who subscribe to the FOMA services are automatically signed up for the "WORLD CALL" service when the agreement is concluded. (Excluding users who choose to refuse the WORLD CALL service.)


## ■ Placing an international call by entering a phone number

—  —  —  —  

## ■ Placing an international call by using "+"

When you enter "+" at the beginning of a phone number, you can place an international call without entering an international access number such as "009130010" (P.48).

- The Auto conversion of the Int'l dial assist is set to [ON] at the time of purchase. An international access number is entered automatically.

(for over a second) —  —  —  

- You can save the above procedure in the Phonebook of the FOMA terminal.
- If an area code begins with "0", omit the "0" when dialing (except when calling ordinary phones, etc. in Italy).
- You can place calls to about 240 countries and regions in the world.
- Charges for this service are billed together with the monthly call charges.
- No application fees or monthly basic charges are required.
- This service is not available in some service charge plans.
- Change in the dial procedure for international calls.

Since mobile communication such as mobile phones is beyond the scope of the "MYLINE" service, "MYLINE" service is not available also for WORLD CALL. With the introduction of "MYLINE" service, however, the dial procedure for international calls on mobile phones has been changed. Note that the old dial procedure (excluding "010" from the above mentioned dial procedure) is not available.

- For the WORLD CALL details, call the "General Inquiries" on the backcover of this manual.
- To use an international call service company other than DoCoMo, contact them directly.
- If you have an overseas specific 3G mobile phone, you can connect to an international videophone by selecting videophone after the above dialing method.
  - ※ See the NTT DoCoMo's website for information about countries to which a videophone call can be connected and telecommunication companies.
  - ※ A recipient's image displayed on the FOMA terminal may be fuzzy or a call may not be connected successfully depending on the terminal to which the international videophone is connected.

## Setting a Number Other Than WORLD CALL

Default	Auto conversion: ON, Int'l prefix: ① World Call 009130010, Country code: ① Japan +81, ② USA +1, ③ China +86, ④ Thailand +66, ⑤ Philippines +63, ⑥ Taiwan +886, ⑦ South Korea +82, ⑧ France +33, ⑨ Hong Kong +852, ⑩ United Kingdom +44, ⑪ Germany +49, ⑫ Singapore +65, ⑬ Canada +1, ⑭ Indonesia +62, ⑮ Italy +39, ⑯ Australia +61, ⑰ Malaysia +60, ⑱ Vietnam +84, ⑲ India +91, ⑳ Netherlands +31, ㉑ Spain +34, ㉒ Brazil +55
---------	--

You can save up to three international access numbers and up to 30 country codes to be added at the beginning of a phone number in order to place an international call from Japan. You can automatically add the international access number by entering "+" when you place a call.

### 1 From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Int'l dial assist] and press .



- [Auto conversion] : Set whether an international access number is automatically added.
- [Int'l prefix] : Save an international access number and set the Auto assist number. You can also add an international access number by selecting [Int'l prefix] from the Call condition menu.
- [Country code] : Save a country code. You can add a country code by selecting [Country code] from the Call condition menu.

[Voice/Videophone Calls](#)  
Continued

**2** Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Auto conversion].

[ON] : Automatically add the additional number you set for the Int'l prefix.

[OFF] : Do not automatically add the additional number.

**3** Select [Int'l prefix] and press .

The Int'l prefix setting display appears.

**4** Select an input field and press .



**5** Enter a name in the name field and an international access number in the international access number field.

Enter a name within 10 full-width characters or 20 half-width characters and an international access number within 10 digits.

**6** Press  (Complete) and press .


The international access number is saved.

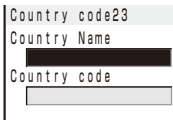
**To set the Auto assist number**

Move the cursor to the input field and press  (Auto). “+” appears to the left of the Auto assist number.

**7** Select [Country code] and press .

The Set country code display appears.

**8** Select an input field and press .



**9** Enter a country name in the country name field and a country code in the country code field.

Enter a country name within seven full-width characters or 14 half-width characters and a country code within five digits.

- “+” is already entered in the country code field.

**10** Press  (Complete).

The country code is saved.


## Placing a Call by Specifying a Sub-address

<Sub-address>

Default ON

You can set to place a call to a specific phone or communication device by specifying a sub-address.

- The sub-address is also used when you select a content in V-Live.

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Call assist] → [Sub-address] and press .




[ON] : Recognize the numbers after “\*” as a sub-address.

[OFF] : Do not recognize the numbers after “\*” as a sub-address.

**2** Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The Sub-address is set.

**To place a call by specifying a sub-address**

In the stand-by display, enter a phone number +  + sub-address and press either   
or  (V.phone).


- Even if the Sub-address is set to ON, “\*” is not recognized as the sub-address separator but as part of a phone number in the following cases: where it is at the beginning of a phone number and immediately after a number entered using Prefix/Int'l prefix/Country code of the Call menu.

## Setting the Alarm When Reconnecting a Dropped Call

<Reconnect alarm>

Default High


This function automatically reconnects the call interrupted during a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call due to the radio wave condition, such as in a tunnel or between buildings, right after the radio wave condition is recovered. You can set an alarm tone when a call is reconnected.

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Call setting] → [Recnct ALM] and press .

[High] : Sound the high alarm tone.

[Low] : Sound the low alarm tone.

[OFF] : Do not sound the alarm tone.

**2** Select the type of the alarm tone and press .



The alarm tone during reconnection is set.

- The recipient does not hear any sound while the radio wave is interrupted.
- The time required for reconnection depends on the usage and radio wave condition. The average reconnection time is about 10 seconds and the caller is charged for the time spent for reconnection.

## Improving Voice Clarity by Suppressing Background Noise <Reduce noise>

Default | ON

You can suppress background noise during a voice or videophone call or during playing back an answering message set for the record message.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Call quality] → [Reduce noise] and press .
- 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The Reduce noise is set.

## Talking Hands-free While Driving <Hands-free mode>

You can place or receive a voice call using a hands-free device by connecting the FOMA terminal to a device such as the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional) or car navigation system.

For details about the operation of the hands-free device, see the user's manual of the device. When you use the In-car Hands-free Kit, you need the FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (optional).

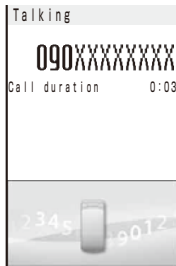
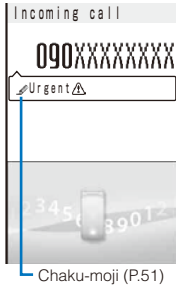
- The incoming call display and ring tone operation follow the FOMA terminal settings.
- When a setting is made for hearing sound from the hands-free device, a ring tone sounds from the hands-free device even if the FOMA terminal is set to the Manner mode or its Ring volume is set to [OFF].
- Even if you connect the FOMA terminal to a hands-free device, the Public mode (Drive mode) and Record message function operate normally.
- When a setting is made for hearing sound from the FOMA terminal, the operation when the FOMA terminal is folded during a call follows the Setting when folded. When a setting is made for hearing sound from the hands-free device, the call continues even if the FOMA terminal is folded regardless of the setting of the Setting when folded.
- When you use the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01, "H" appears. If you use any other commercially available car adapter, "H" may appear.

## Receiving a Voice/Videophone Call

When you receive a voice or videophone call, you are notified by flashing indicator, ring tone, vibrator, etc. The operation for an incoming call varies depending on the settings of the Incoming set, Manner mode, etc.

Example: Receiving a voice call

## 1 When receiving a call, press .



A phone number appears in the display when a caller sends it.

### When you receive a videophone call

Your image is sent to the caller and the call is switched to the hands-free operation that allows you to hear the caller's voice from the speaker.

### When the caller notifies you of the phone number

When saved in the Phonebook, the name and phone number of a caller are displayed. If you saved the same phone number for several names in the Phonebook, the name stored using the smallest memory number is displayed. The Des phone tone, Des call display, and Select phone Illum. saved in the Phonebook are used.

### When the caller does not notify you of the phone number

The reason why the phone number is not displayed appears.

Non-display reason	Description
User Unset	When a call is received from a caller who does not notify the caller's phone number intentionally.
PublicPhone	When a call is received from a public phone, etc.
Unavailable	When a call is received from a caller who cannot notify the caller's phone number, such as from overseas and from an ordinary phone through call forwarding services (however, the caller's phone number may be displayed depending on the intermediary telephone company).

### To connect a call to the Voice Mail Service Center

From the Function menu, select [FWD to Voice Mail].










### To forward a call to a forwarding number

From the Function menu, select [Call Forwarding].

### To reject a call

From the Function menu, select [Call Rejection].

## 2 Press to hang up.


- When you receive a voice call, you can answer it by pressing  (Call) instead of . When you set the Any key answer to [ON], you can also press  to , , or  to answer a call (P.60).
- When you receive a videophone call, you can answer it by pressing  (V.phone) instead of . To answer a call with a substitute image, press  (Sub) (P.70).
- If you receive a videophone call while the Manner mode is set, the screen for confirming whether the hands-free operation is set to ON appears. If you do not want to use the hands-free operation, select [No].
- You can preset the hands-free function of a videophone call to [OFF] (P.71).
- You may hear beeps (ring tone during a call) while talking on the FOMA terminal.  
If [Answer] is set for the Arrival Call Act with the Voice Mail Service, the Call Forwarding Service, or the Call Waiting Service subscribed, the beeps (the ring tone during a call) sound and the following operations are available when there is another incoming call during a call:  
<Contents of subscription>
  - The Voice Mail Service..... Forward a call to the Voice Mail Service Center.
  - The Call Forwarding Service... Forward a call to a forwarding number.
  - The Call Waiting Service..... Put the active call on hold and answer the incoming call.

## Receiving a Call by Switching to/from Voice/Videophone Call

A caller can switch between voice and videophone calls during a call. When the caller switches the voice call to the videophone call, a recipient can select whether to send a camera image.

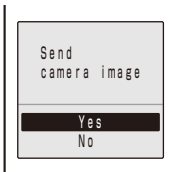
- This function can be used only between terminals that can switch between voice and videophone calls. Preset the V.ph switch notice to [Indication ON] (P.72).

Example: When the voice call is switched to the videophone call

- 1 When the screen for confirming whether to send your own image appears during a voice call, select [Yes] and press .



While the call is switched, an animation is displayed and you hear a guidance notifying you that a call is switched.



[Yes] : Send a camera image to the caller's phone display.

[No] : Send a preinstalled image to the caller.


### When the videophone call is switched to the voice call


The call is automatically switched to the voice call. When the call is switched to the voice call, the hands-free operation is canceled.


When the call is switched to the videophone call, your image is sent to the caller and the call is switched to the hands-free operation that allows you to hear the caller's voice from the speaker.

## Pressing a Key on the Keypad to Receive a Call <Any key answer>






Default ON

You can set to answer a call by pressing a key on the keypad instead of pressing  when you receive a voice or PushTalk call.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Call assist] → [Any key ans] and press .

[ON] : Enable to answer a voice or PushTalk call also by pressing  to , , or .

[OFF] : Disable to answer a voice or PushTalk call by pressing  to , , or .

To answer a voice call, press  or  (Call) (, , or  (Answer) for a PushTalk call).


- 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The Any key answer is set.

## Setting the Operation for the FOMA Terminal Being Folded during a Call <Setting when folded>

Default | Voice call/V.phone: Disconnect, PushTalk: Speaker call

You can end a call or put a call on hold by just folding the FOMA terminal during a voice or videophone call. You can also end a call or switch a call to the hands-free operation by folding the FOMA terminal during PushTalk communication.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Call setting] → [Setting when folded] and press .



[Voice call/V.phone] : Set the operation for the FOMA terminal being folded during a voice/videophone call.

[PushTalk] : Set the operation for the FOMA terminal being folded during PushTalk communication (P.84).

- 2 Select an operation to be set at [Voice call/V.phone].

[Holding] : Put the call on hold. Both you and the recipient hear the melody "Hamabe no uta". During a videophone call, the preinstalled image is sent to the recipient.

[Mute] : Put the call on hold with the voice muted. During a videophone call, a substitute image is sent to the recipient (P.70).

[Disconnect] : Hang up the call.

The operation to be performed when you fold the FOMA terminal during a voice or videophone call is set.

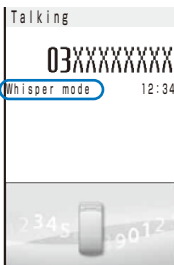
- When the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is connected, the Setting when folded is disabled and the call continues even if you fold the FOMA terminal. If it is during a videophone call that you fold the FOMA terminal, a substitute image is sent.

## Using the Low Voice Feature

<Whisper mode>

You can set the FOMA terminal so that the recipient can hear your voice at a normal volume level even if you speak in low voice during a voice call.

- 1 Press  during a call.



The call is switched to the Whisper mode and the message "Whisper mode" is displayed.

### To cancel the Whisper mode

Press  again.

- When you finish a call, the Whisper mode is canceled automatically.

## Putting a Call on Hold during a Call

<Holding>

The call can be put on hold during a voice or videophone call so that your voice cannot be heard by the recipient.

- Even if the call is put on hold, the caller is charged for the call.

### 1 Press (Func) during a call, select [Holding], and press .

Both you and the recipient hear the melody "Hamabe no uta". During a videophone call, a preinstalled image is sent to the recipient.

To cancel the Holding

Press .

## Putting a Call on Hold

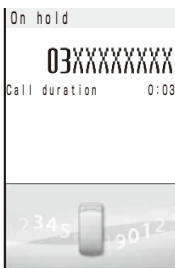
<On hold>

If you cannot answer a voice or videophone call immediately, you can put the call on hold.

- Even if the answer is put on hold, the caller is charged for the calling charge.


Example: Putting a voice call on hold

### 1 When receiving a call, press (HLD).



The beeps sound and the answer is put on hold. While the answer is put on hold, the beeps sound about every 30 seconds.

The guidance to inform the caller that you are currently unable to answer the call is played back. During a videophone call, a preinstalled image is sent to the recipient.

- If you press  while the call is put on hold, the call on hold is disconnected.
- When the Phone volume is [OFF], the beeps do not sound.

### 2 When ready to answer the call, press .

The On hold is canceled and you can talk.

- If you have signed up for the Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service, you can select [FWD to Voice Mail] or [Call Forwarding] from the Function menu while you are receiving a call, in order to use those services.

## Using the Public Mode (Drive Mode)

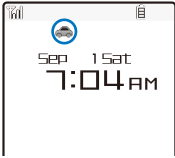
<Public mode (Drive mode)>

The Public mode is an automated answering service which takes into account the manners in highly public places. When the Public mode is set, the guidance is played back to inform the caller that you are unable to answer the call because you are driving or in a place where talking on a mobile phone should be avoided (trains, buses, or movie theaters), and then the call is disconnected.

- The Public mode can be set or canceled even if "圏外" is displayed.
- The Public mode cannot be used during data communication.



# 1 Press **#** (🚗) for over a second in the stand-by display.



The Public mode is set and “🚗” appears.

- When the Manner mode and the Public mode are set simultaneously, the Public mode has priority.

## To cancel the Public mode

Press **#** (🚗) for over a second in the stand-by display. The Public mode is canceled and “🚗” disappears.

### ■ When the Public mode (Drive mode) is set

- Even if there is an incoming call, the ring tone does not sound and you cannot answer it. The notification icon of missed call appears and the call is saved in the Received record. The guidance for the Public mode is played back to inform the caller that you are unable to answer the call because you are driving or in a place where talking on a mobile phone should be avoided (trains, buses, or movie theaters), and then the call is disconnected.
- Even if there is an incoming PushTalk call, you cannot answer it. The notification icon of missed call appears and the call is saved in the Received record. If the received call is for the PushTalk communication among several persons, the message “Driving” appears in the On PushTalk display of the members.
- The call can be placed normally.
- The following tones do not sound and the vibrator, etc. does not operate.
  - Ring tone
  - Alarm
  - Schedule alarm
  - Battery alarm
  - Alarm for the Call cost limit
  - i-αpli software sound
  - Charge sound
  - ToruCa receive completion tone

### ■ Operation for an incoming call when network services and the Public mode (Drive mode) are set

FOMA terminal's operations for an incoming call while the Public mode is set depend on what network services are used, as follows.

Service	When a voice call is received	When a videophone call is received
The Voice Mail Service※1	After the guidance for the Public mode is played back, the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.	The video guidance for the Public mode is not played back and the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.
The Call Forwarding Service ※1※2	After the guidance for the Public mode is played back, the call is forwarded to a forwarding number.	The video guidance for the Public mode is not played back and the call is forwarded to a forwarding number. If the forwarding number of the phone does not support a videophone call, the call is disconnected.
The Call Waiting Service	After the guidance for the Public mode is played back, the call is disconnected.	After the video guidance for the Public mode is played back, the call is disconnected.
The Nuisance Call Blocking Service	After the guidance is played back to inform the caller that the call is not able to be connected, the call is disconnected if the caller is saved as a nuisance caller.	After the video guidance is played back to inform the caller that the call is not able to be connected, the call is disconnected if the caller is saved as a nuisance caller.
The Caller ID Display Request Service	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• After the caller ID request guidance is played back, the call is disconnected if the caller does not notify the phone number.</li> <li>• After the guidance for the Public mode is played back, the call is disconnected if the caller notifies the phone number.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• After the video guidance for the caller ID request is played back to the caller, the call is disconnected if the caller does not notify the phone number.</li> <li>• After the video guidance for the Public mode is played back to the caller, the call is disconnected if the caller notifies the phone number.</li> </ul>

※1 If you set the ring time of the Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service to 0 seconds, the guidance for the Public mode is not played back and a call is not saved in the Received record, either.

※2 You can set whether the guidance is played back to a caller with the “1429” setting of the Call Forwarding Service.

The Public mode (Power off) is an automated answering service which takes into account the manners in highly public places. When the Public mode (Power off) is set, the guidance is played back to inform the caller that you are unable to answer the call because you are in a place where it is required to power off a mobile phone (such as in hospitals, airplanes, and near priority seats in trains), provided that there is an incoming call when the FOMA terminal is powered off, and then the call is disconnected.

**1** Press **\* 2 5 2 5 1 +** .

The Public mode (Power off) is set. (No change appears on the stand-by display.)

**To cancel the Public mode (Power off)**

Press **\* 2 5 2 5 0 +** .

**To check the setting**

Press **\* 2 5 2 5 9 +** .

## ■ When the Public mode (Power off) is set

- If there is an incoming call when the FOMA terminal is powered off or you are outside of the service area or in a location without the radio wave, the guidance for the Public mode (Power off) is played back to inform the caller that you are unable to answer the call because you are in a place where it is required to power off a mobile phone, and then the call is disconnected.
- You cannot answer an incoming PushTalk call. If the received call is for the PushTalk communication among several persons, the message "✕Disconnect" appears in the On PushTalk display of the members.

## ■ Operation for an incoming call when network services and the Public mode (Power off) are set

FOMA terminal's operations for an incoming call while the Public mode (Power off) is set depend on what network services are used, as follows.


Service	When a voice call is received	When a videophone call is received
The Voice Mail Service	After the guidance for the Public mode (Power off) is played back, the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.	The video guidance for the Public mode (Power off) is not played back and the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.
The Call Forwarding Service✕	After the guidance for the Public mode (Power off) is played back, the call is forwarded to a forwarding number.	The video guidance for the Public mode (Power off) is not played back and the call is forwarded to a forwarding number. If the forwarding number of the phone does not support a videophone call, the call is disconnected.
The Nuisance Call Blocking Service	After the guidance is played back to inform the caller that the call is not able to be connected, the call is disconnected if the caller is saved as a nuisance caller.	After the video guidance is played back to inform the caller that the call is not able to be connected, the call is disconnected if the caller is saved as a nuisance caller.
The Caller ID Display Request Service	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• After the caller ID request guidance is played back, the call is disconnected if the caller does not notify the phone number.</li> <li>• After the guidance for the Public mode (Power off) is played back, the call is disconnected if the caller notifies the phone number.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• After the video guidance for the caller ID request is played back to the caller, the call is disconnected if the caller does not notify the phone number.</li> <li>• After the video guidance for the Public mode (Power off) is played back to the caller, the call is disconnected if the caller notifies the phone number.</li> </ul>

✕ You can set whether the guidance is played back to a caller with the "1429" setting of the Call Forwarding Service.

# Checking the Missed Calls

<Missed call>

When you are unable to answer an incoming call or receive new mail, the notification icon (P.28) appears in the stand-by display.


If a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call or 64K data communication is not answered, “” appears in the stand-by display. The received record shows the date/time and the person who called (P.49).

**1** Press  (Link) in the stand-by display and select the notification icon.




The text information for the notification icon appears.

**To check the Received record**

Select “” (Missed call).

**To delete the notification icon**

Press **[CLR]** for over a second. “” also disappears when the Received record is displayed.

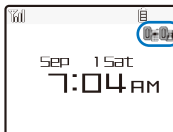
# Recording Caller's Messages When Unable to Answer Calls



<Record message/Videophone message>

When the Record message/Videophone message is set, the FOMA terminal can record a caller's message when you are unable to answer a call.


- The FOMA terminal can record up to three record messages and videophone messages, each for up to about 15 seconds. If three record messages have been recorded, the Record message does not function. Similarly, when three videophone messages have been recorded, the Videophone message does not function. Delete unnecessary record messages or videophone messages.
- When the Public mode (Drive mode) is set, the Record message/Videophone message dose not operate.

**1** Press  for over a second in the stand-by display.



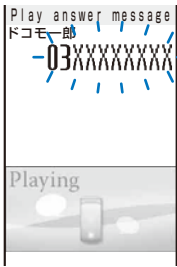
The Record message/Videophone message is set and “”/“” appears.

**To cancel the Record message/Videophone message**

Press  for over a second in the stand-by display. The Record message/Videophone message is canceled.

- It is recommended that you make a separate note of the recorded voice message. The data may be lost as a result of malfunction, repair, change, or other handling of the FOMA terminal. Under no condition will DoCoMo be held liable for any damaged or lost data saved in the FOMA terminal.
- When you are outside of the service area, the Record message does not function. Use the Voice Mail Service (Paid).

## When Receiving a Call



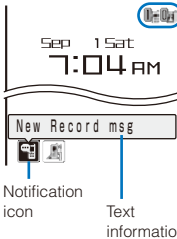
The answering message is played back to the caller after the ring tone sounds for the set duration.

**To talk to the caller**

Press .

**When you receive a videophone call**

The answering message is played back and the answering image is displayed to the caller. Press (V.phone) to talk to the caller. If you press (Sub), you can answer the call with a substitute image.



The notification icon (New Record msg) or (New V.phone msg) appears in the stand-by display.

**To display the text information**

Press (Link) in the stand-by display and move the cursor to or .

**To play back a record message/videophone message**

Press (Link) in the stand-by display and select or .

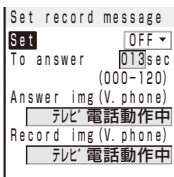
**To delete the notification icon**

Press for over a second. or also disappears when the record message/videophone message is played back.

## Setting the Operation of the Record Message

Default | Set: OFF, To answer: 13 sec, Answer img(V. phone) • Record img(V. phone): テレビ電話動作中

- 1 Press in the stand-by display, select [Set rec msg], and press .



- 2 Enter the time before starting the answering message at [To answer].  
Enter from 000 to 120 seconds.
- 3 Select an image to be sent when answering a call from My picture of the Data Box at [Answer img(V.phone)].

- You can set the following files.

Category	File format	File size	Image size
My picture	GIF/JPEG	Max. 500K bytes	Max. [QCIF(176×144)]

※ You cannot set an image with file restrictions or a frame image.

#### 4 Select an image to be sent when recording the caller's image from My picture of the Data Box at [Record img(V.phone)].

- You can set the following files.

Category	File format	File size	Image size
My picture	GIF/JPEG	Max. 500K bytes	Max. [QCIF(176×144)]

※ You cannot set an image with file restrictions or a frame image.

#### 5 Press (Complete).

The operation of the Record message is set.

- When the Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service and the Record message are set simultaneously, and if you want to give priority to the Record message, set the time before starting the answering message for the Record message shorter than the ring time for the Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service.

### Recording a Caller's Message When Unable to Answer a Call Just Receiving <Quick record message>

You can start the Record message for temporary use when you receive a voice or videophone call even if the Record message is [OFF].

- If three record messages are recorded when the FOMA terminal receives a voice call, the Quick record message function cannot be operated. Similarly, if three videophone messages are recorded when it receives a videophone call, the Quick record message function cannot be operated.

#### 1 Press while receiving a call.





The answering message is played back to the caller.

**To talk to a caller**

Press .

**When you receive a videophone call**

The answering message is played back and the answering image is displayed to the caller. Press  (V.phone) to talk to the caller. If you press  (Sub), you can answer the call with a substitute image.

## Playing Back/Deleting a Record Message/Videophone Message/Voice Memo

You can play back or delete a recorded record message/videophone message and voice memo (P.247).

### Playing Back a Record Message/Videophone Message/Voice Memo

Example: Playing back a record message

- 1 Press **[\*MEMO]** in the stand-by display, select [Play rec msg], and press **[OK]**.



#### To play back a videophone message

Press **[\*MEMO]** in the stand-by display and select [Play Vphone msg].

#### To play back a voice memo

Press **[\*MEMO]** in the stand-by display and select [Play voice memo].

#### To display phone numbers

When saved in the Phonebook, the name and phone type of a caller are displayed instead of the phone number. Press **[#]** to switch the display temporarily between names and phone numbers. The display is not switched when a voice memo is displayed.

- 2 Select a record message and press **[OK]** (Play).



The record message is played back.

#### To stop the playback

Press **[STOP]** (Stop).

#### To play back the previous/next record message

Use **[LEFT]** during playback to play back the previous record message and **[RIGHT]** during playback to play back the next record message.

### Deleting a Record Message/Videophone Message/Voice Memo

You can record up to three record messages, three videophone messages, and three voice memos. Delete unnecessary record/videophone messages or voice memos.

Example: Deleting a record message

- 1 Press **[\*MEMO]** in the stand-by display, select [Play rec msg], and press **[OK]**.

#### To delete a videophone message

Press **[\*MEMO]** in the stand-by display and select [Play Vphone msg].

#### To delete a voice memo

Press **[\*MEMO]** in the stand-by display and select [Play voice memo].

#### To delete all record messages

From the Function menu, select [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- 2 Select a record message and press **[FUNC]** (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 3 Select [Delete one] → [Yes] and press **[OK]**.

The selected record message is deleted.

# Using Chara-den

When you place a videophone call, you can send a character instead of a camera image. You can press keys on the keypad to move a character or some character's mouth to correspond to the voice on the microphone.

- For details about the action lists of the preinstalled Chara-den characters, see P.209.

**1** Press  () in the stand-by display, select [Chara-den], and press .

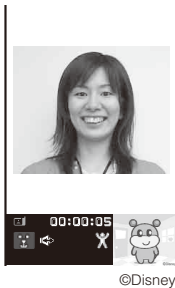
The Chara-den list appears.

**2** Select a Chara-den file, press  (Func), select [Call Chara-den], and press .

The screen for selecting the method of entering the phone number appears.

**3** Select the method, press , and enter the phone number.

**4** Press  (V.phone).



The videophone call is dialed with a Chara-den character set as the substitute image.

**To switch between the full-body action and parts action modes**

Press  (Change).

**To display the action list**

Press  (List).

**To switch to the mode for sending touch-tones (DTMF)**

From the Function menu, select [DTMF send mode].

**To switch to the Chara-den action operating mode**


From the Function menu, select [Action input mode].

- When the mode for sending touch-tones (DTMF) is set, the Chara-den action cannot be operated.

## Setting the Display to Be Used in a Videophone Call

Default | **Main-Other side**

You can set the image to be displayed on the videophone images (Large) and (Small) during a videophone call.

- From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Videophone] → [Display setting] and press .

[Main-Other side] : Display the recipient's/caller's image on the videophone image (Large) and your image on the videophone image (Small).

[Main-My side] : Display your image on the videophone image (Large) and the recipient's/caller's image on the videophone image (Small).

[Other side only] : Display the recipient's/caller's image only on the videophone image (Large).

[My side only] : Display your image only on the videophone image (Large).


- Select a display method and press .

The Display setting is set.

## Setting a Video to Be Sent to the Recipient/Caller

Default | **Camera image: ON, Substitute image: Dimo**

You can set whether to send a camera image to the recipient when you place a videophone call. You can also set an image from either My picture or Chara-den as a substitute image if you do not want to send a camera image.

- From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Videophone] → [Set outgoing image] and press .



- Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Camera image].

[ON] : Send a camera image to the recipient when you place a videophone call.

[OFF] : Send a substitute image to the recipient when you place a videophone call.

- Select a substitute image from My picture/Chara-den of the Data Box at [Substitute image].

- You can set the following files.

Category	File format	File size	Image size
My picture	GIF/JPEG	Max. 500K bytes	Max. [QCIF(176×144)]
Chara-den	—	Max. 100K bytes	—

※ You cannot set an image with file restrictions or a frame image.


The Set outgoing image is set.



## Setting the Videophone Image Quality

Default | Normal

You can set the quality of an image to be sent to the recipient.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Videophone] → [Visual preference] and press .

[Prefer img qual] : Send an image with priority on image quality.

[Normal] : Send an image by keeping a balance between image quality and movement.

[Prefer motion] : Send an image with priority on movement.


- 2 Select the quality of an image to be sent and press .

The Visual preference is set.

## Redialing by Voice Call When the Videophone Is Not Connected

Default | OFF

When the videophone call is not connected, the FOMA terminal automatically redials by voice call. When the videophone call is connected successfully, the FOMA terminal does not redial by voice call.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Videophone] → [Auto redial(voice)] and press .

- 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .


The Auto redial(voice) is set.

- You are charged for a call instead of digital communication when you redial by voice call.

## Using the Hands-free Function

Default | ON

You can set whether to use the hands-free function during a videophone call.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Videophone] → [Hands-free] and press .

[ON] : You hear the recipient's/caller's voice from the speaker during a videophone call.

[OFF] : You hear the recipient's/caller's voice from the earpiece during a videophone call.

- 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The Hands-free is set.

- When the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, you hear a recipient's voice from the Earphone/Microphone, regardless of the Hands-free setting.

## Setting How to Answer a Videophone Call during i-mode

Default | Prefer V,phone

You can set how to answer a videophone call received during i-mode or packet communication, for example, sending or receiving mail.

### 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Videophone] → [V.ph while packet] and press .

[Prefer V,phone] : Receive a videophone call. When you answer the videophone call, the packet communication in progress is disconnected.

[Prefer packet] : Continue the packet communication without receiving a videophone call. The received call is saved in the Received record.

[V.ph voicemail] : Connect a received videophone call to the Voice Mail Service Center.

[Call forwarding] : Connect a received videophone call to a forwarding phone number.

### 2 Select the operation to be performed when you receive a videophone call during i-mode communication and press .

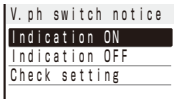
The V.ph while packet is set.

## Setting Notice for Switching between Voice and Videophone Calls <Videophone switch notice>

You can set whether to notify the recipient/caller that the FOMA terminal is capable of switching between voice and videophone calls.

- You cannot perform this setting when you are outside of the service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach, or during a voice or videophone call.

### 1 From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [V.ph switch notice] and press .



### 2 Select [Indication ON] → [Yes] and press .

**When you do not want to notify**

Select [Indication OFF] → [Yes].

**To check the setting**




Select [Check setting].


# PushTalk



What is PushTalk? .....	74
Originating a PushTalk Call .....	76
Adding a Member during PushTalk Communication .....	77
Receiving a PushTalk Call .....	77
Saving Data in the PushTalk Phonebook .....	78
Originating a PushTalk Call Using the PushTalk Phonebook .....	80
Deleting a PushTalk Phonebook Entry .....	81
Using the PushTalk Phonebook .....	<PushTalkPlus> 82
Setting the PushTalk Operation .....	<PushTalk setting> 82

# What is PushTalk?

You can communicate among several persons (up to five persons including yourself) with a simple operation of pressing  to display the PushTalk phonebook, selecting recipients, and pressing . Every time you press  (speak), you are charged for PushTalk communication.

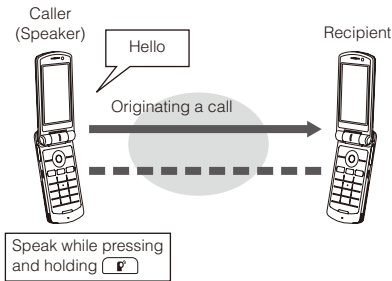
You can speak while you press and hold , and the rest of the members can only listen while you are speaking. You can confirm the status of members, such as who is now speaking, in the display. The PushTalk function is useful for exchanging brief information within a group.

- Compatible models: 902i series, 902iS series, SO902iWP+, SH902iSL, N902iX HIGH-SPEED, N902iL, 903i series, 904i series, P702i, P702iD, SH702iS, P703i, SH703i, and SO703i

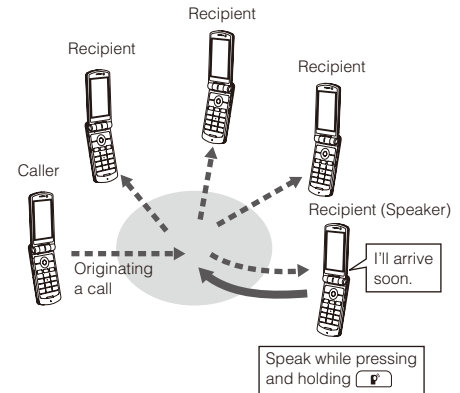
With the following models※, you can add another member and also place a second call to a non-participating member during PushTalk communication.

※ 903i series, 904i series, P703i, SH703i, and SO703i

## ■ Conversation between two persons



## ■ Conversation among several persons

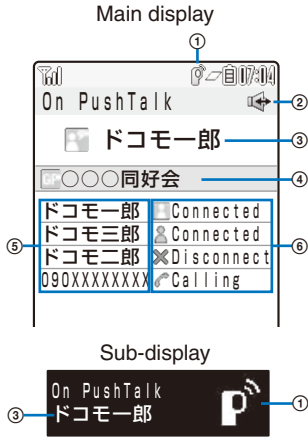


## PushTalkPlus

The PushTalkPlus service allows you to communicate simultaneously with up to 20 persons (including yourself) using the pre-saved phonebook on the network. This service also allows you to check the status of members and has made the PushTalk service even more convenient. You need additional subscription to use PushTalkPlus.

※ For details about the PushTalkPlus operations, see the guidebook that is provided at the time of subscription to the service.

## Using the Display during PushTalk Communication



- ① : During PushTalk communication
  - ② : Hands-free ON
  - ③ Active speaker  
The phone number (or the member name when the speaker is saved in the Phonebook) appears  
[Myself] : You are currently the active speaker (you can speak)  
[User Unset] : The Caller ID of the caller is set to [OFF]  
[?] : The active speaker is not identified  
(No indication) : There is no active speaker (open status)
  - ④ Group name  
Displayed only in the display of the caller who originated a call using a group
  - ⑤ Members  
The phone number (or the member name when the member is saved in the Phonebook) appears  
[User Unset] : The Caller ID of the caller is set to [OFF]
  - ⑥ Communication status  
    - Connected : The caller who originated a PushTalk call
    - Connected : Currently participating in the PushTalk communication
    - Calling※ : The recipient's terminal is ringing
    - Disconnect※ : The recipient ended the PushTalk session, does not answer the call, or is outside of the service area. Otherwise the recipient's terminal is powered off
    - Driving※ : Public mode (Drive mode) is set
- ※ These icons appear only when PushTalk communication is performed from several persons.

## Operations during PushTalk Communication

Operation	Key operation
Speak	When the floor is open, you can speak only while you press and hold . While another member has the floor, you cannot get it even if you press .
Add a member	Press  (Add). This operation is enabled only when you originate a PushTalk call.
Display other members	If all the members cannot be seen on the screen at once, press  (Member ▼) to display the next screen.
Switch ON/OFF of the hands-free operation	Press  (H). Every time you press the key, the ON/OFF setting is switched.
Adjust the volume of the caller's voice	Press  .
Terminate a PushTalk call	Press .
Receive a voice call	Press  (P.59). If you receive a voice call, the PushTalk communication is terminated. The operation for an incoming voice call while using PushTalk can be customized (P.83).

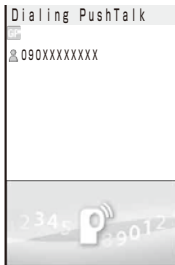
- Each speech session granted by obtaining the floor is time limited. The obtained floor is released after the time limit. The PushTalk communication is terminated if no member takes over the floor within a certain interval.
- When there is any change in PushTalk communication status or a member takes over the floor, the signal tone sounds.
- You cannot use i-mode during PushTalk communication.
- If you receive a voice call or the time set for the Alarm/Schedule alarm is reached while you are speaking in a PushTalk session, the floor you obtained is released.
- When you receive a videophone call, data communication, or a PushTalk call during PushTalk communication, a new call is saved in the Received record and the current PushTalk call is continued.

# Originating a PushTalk Call

- You cannot originate a PushTalk call during a voice call, a videophone call, or data communication.
- If you originate a PushTalk call during i-mode communication, the i-mode communication is terminated. Originating a PushTalk call while running i-αppli also stops the i-αppli.

**1** Enter a phone number in the stand-by display.

**2** Press .






When a PushTalk call is originated, the signal tone sounds.



When the call is answered, it is switched to the hands-free operation that allows you to hear the recipient's voice from the speaker.

### To speak

Press  while the floor is open. You can speak while you press and hold .



**3** Press  to end the communication.

- You cannot use PushTalk to place a call to emergency numbers (110, 119, and 118).


## Originating a PushTalk Call from the Call Record

You can originate a PushTalk call using the Redial and Received records.

Example: Originating a PushTalk call from the Received record

**1** Press  () in the stand-by display.

The Received record display appears.

**2** Select a received record and press .

When a PushTalk call is originated, the signal tone sounds.

- If a member is disconnected during PushTalk communication among several persons, the disconnected member can come back to the session using the Redial/Received record as long as the other members continue it. When the PushTalk communication is already ended, the call is going to be a new one.

## Adding a Member during PushTalk Communication

If you originate a PushTalk call, you can add a member during PushTalk communication. You can add members up to the maximum number allowed for communication (up to five persons including yourself) and also place a second call to a non-participating member.

Example: Selecting a member from the PushTalk phonebook

### 1 Press (Add) during PushTalk communication.

The screen for selecting the method of adding a member appears.

[View PushTalk PB] : Select a member from the PushTalk phonebook.

[View phonebook] : Select a member from the FOMA terminal phonebook.

[Direct input] : Enter a phone number directly.

### 2 Select [View PushTalk PB] and press .



To select a member from a group

Press  and select a group.

### 3 Select a member and press .

“✓” appears for the selected member.

### 4 Press (Complete).

The Members to add display appears.

### 5 Press (Call).



The FOMA terminal starts calling the selected member.

- Members added during PushTalk communication are not displayed in the detailed information of the Redial/Received record.
- You can add a party who uses a PushTalk-compatible model, as a PushTalk group member. However, this added member is not displayed on the displays of other than the following models※ and the signal tone does not sound either.

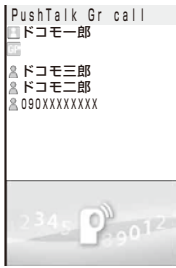
※ 903i series, 904i series, P703i, SH703i, and SO703i

## Receiving a PushTalk Call

When you receive a PushTalk call, you are notified by flashing indicator, ring tone, vibrator, etc. The operation for an incoming PushTalk call varies depending on the settings of the Incoming set, Manner mode, etc.

- If you receive a PushTalk call during a voice call, the PushTalk call is not connected. The notification icon of missed call appears and the call is saved in the Received record. A PushTalk call received during a videophone call or data communication is not connected, either. The call is not saved in the Received record.
- When receiving a PushTalk call during i-mode communication, the setting for the i-mode arrival act is applied.

## 1 When you receive a PushTalk call, press or .



When the call is answered, it is switched to the hands-free operation that allows you to hear the recipient's voice from the speaker.

### When you do not want to answer the call



Press .










The names of the members appear. If the member is not saved in the Phonebook, this member's phone number appears instead.

- When a PushTalk caller sets the caller ID to be notified, the names/phone numbers of all members are displayed. If the caller sets the caller ID not to be notified, all members are displayed as "User Unset".

### To speak

Press  while the floor is open. You can speak while you press and hold .

## 2 Press to end the communication.

- You can answer a PushTalk call by pressing  (Answer) instead of  or . When you set the Any key answer to [ON], you can also press  to , , or  to answer a PushTalk call (P.60).
- A PushTalk call cannot be put on hold.
- When you receive a PushTalk call originated from a caller who is saved as a nuisance caller, the call is rejected. The notification icon of missed call appears and the call is saved in the Received record.

## Saving Data in the PushTalk Phonebook

You can save up to 1,000 members in the PushTalk phonebook.

Members you want to save in the PushTalk phonebook must be also saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook. You can save only one phone number in the PushTalk phonebook for each FOMA terminal phonebook entry. The name of a member displayed in the PushTalk phonebook is diverted from that saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

### 1 Press in the stand-by display and press (Create).

The screen for selecting the saving method appears.

[View phonebook] : Select from the FOMA terminal phonebook.

[Direct input] : Save new data in the FOMA terminal phonebook and then save it in the PushTalk phonebook.

- Follow the same steps as in "Add to FOMA terminal phonebook" (P.87, step 3 to 4).


### 2 Select [View phonebook] and press .

The FOMA terminal phonebook appears.



### 3 Select an entry → a phone number and press .



The phone number is saved in the PushTalk phonebook and “” appears in the entry in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- When you save a person saved as Secret in the FOMA terminal phonebook in the PushTalk phonebook, the entry is not displayed in the PushTalk phonebook. To display the name, set the Secret display to [ON].

## Setting a Group

You can originate a PushTalk call to several recipients by saving them in a group as members beforehand.

You can save up to 20 groups in the PushTalk phonebook, 19 members for each group.


### 1 Press in the stand-by display and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

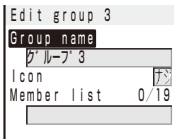
### 2 Select [Group setting] and press .

The Group setting display appears.

#### To display group numbers

When saved, group icons are displayed instead of group numbers. Press  to switch the display temporarily between group icons and group numbers.

### 3 Select a group and press .

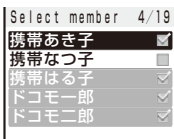


### 4 Enter a group name at [Group name].

Enter a group name within 10 full-width or 21 half-width characters.

### 5 Select a group icon at [Icon].

### 6 Select [Member list] and press .



#### To cancel all selections

Press  (Rel all).

### 7 Select a member, press , and then press .

“✓” appears for the selected member.

### 8 Press (Complete).

The group is saved in the PushTalk phonebook.

## Originating a PushTalk Call Using the PushTalk Phonebook


If you save persons as members in the PushTalk phonebook, you can originate a PushTalk call to several persons.

- 1 Press  in the stand-by display, select a member, and press .

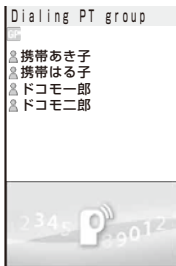


“✓” appears for the selected member.

### To display phone numbers

Press  to switch the display temporarily between names and phone numbers.



- 2 Press .




When a PushTalk call is originated, the signal tone sounds.



### To speak

Press  while the floor is open. You can speak while you press and hold .


- 3 Press  to end the communication.

## Originating a PushTalk Call from the Group

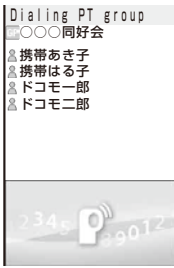
- 1 Press  in the stand-by display and press .



### To display group numbers

When saved, group icons are displayed instead of group numbers. Press  to switch the display temporarily between group icons and group numbers.

## 2 Select a group and press .





When a PushTalk call is originated, the signal tone sounds.

**To originate a call to specific members by selecting them from a group**

Select a group → members and press .



**To speak**

Press  while the floor is open. You can speak while you press and hold .

## 3 Press to end the communication.

- When originating a PushTalk call to a group, you can originate a call to up to four members even if more than five members are saved in the group.


# Deleting a PushTalk Phonebook Entry

You can delete members saved in the PushTalk phonebook using three methods.

Example: Deleting a member

### 1 Press in the stand-by display.


**To delete several members**

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete], select members, press  (Delete), and select [Yes]. Select whether to delete the corresponding entries from the FOMA terminal phonebook.

**To delete all members**

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes]. Select whether to delete the corresponding entries from the FOMA terminal phonebook.

**To reset a group to the default setting**

Press , move the cursor to a group and from the Function menu, select [Reset group] → [Yes].

### 2 Select a member and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

### 3 Select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes] and press .

The screen for confirming whether to delete the corresponding entry from the FOMA terminal phonebook appears.

### 4 Select [Yes]/[No] and press .

The selected member is deleted.

You can connect to the network and use the PushTalkPlus service (P.74).

- To use the PushTalkPlus service, you must subscribe to this service.

**1** Press  in the stand-by display and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

**2** Select [NW connection] → [Yes] and press .

The call is connected to the network.

## Setting the PushTalk Operation



### Setting Whether to Answer a Call Automatically

Default OFF

You can set whether to answer an incoming PushTalk call automatically using the hands-free function.

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Application] → [PushTalk] → [Auto answer setting] and press .

[ON] : A PushTalk call you receive is answered automatically using the hands-free function. When the Manner mode is set, the call is not answered automatically.

[OFF] : A PushTalk call you receive is answered by pressing , , etc.

**2** Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The Auto answer setting is set.

### Setting the Ring Time

Default 30 sec

If you select [OFF] for the Auto answer setting, set the ring time of the PushTalk call.

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Application] → [PushTalk] → [Set ring time] and press .

Enter the ring time within 01 to 60 seconds.

**2** Enter the PushTalk ring time.

The Set ring time is set.

## Sending Your Own and Member's Caller IDs

Default OFF

When originating a PushTalk call or adding a new member during PushTalk communication, your own and all member's phone numbers can be shown in the recipient's display.

- A phone number is an important personal information. Carefully decide whether you want to notify members of your and member's caller ID.

### 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Application] → [PushTalk] → [Caller ID] and press .

[ON] : When you originate a PushTalk call or add members during PushTalk communication, the phone numbers of the caller (yourself) and all the other members are displayed in the incoming call and On PushTalk displays of all the members' terminals.

[OFF] : When you originate a PushTalk call or add members during PushTalk communication, the caller (yourself) and members are displayed as "User Unset".

### 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The Caller ID is set.

- Even if you change [Caller ID] of the PushTalk, [Set Notification] for placing a call is not changed.
- If you specify [Call with ID]/[Call with no ID] as a call condition from the Call condition menu when originating a PushTalk call, the phone numbers of all members including the caller (yourself) or none of the phone numbers are notified to all members depending on which call condition you select (P.53).
- If several settings regarding sending the Caller ID are in conflict with each other when you originate a PushTalk call, the following priority is applied.
  1. Call condition you selected when originating a call
  2. Setting for [Caller ID]

## Setting How to Answer a Voice Call during PushTalk Communication

Default Call Rejection

You can set how to answer a voice call when you receive it during PushTalk communication.

### 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Application] → [PushTalk] → [P-Talk arrival act] and press .

[Answer] : Receive a voice call and you can answer it. If you receive a voice call while you have the floor, you lose the floor.

[Call Rejection] : Reject an incoming voice call. The missed call notification icon appears and the call is saved in the Received record.

[Voice Mail] : Connect an incoming voice call to the Voice Mail Service Center.

[Call Forwarding] : Connect an incoming voice call to a forwarding number.

### 2 Select the operation to be performed when you receive a voice call during PushTalk communication and press .

The P-Talk arrival act is set.

## Setting Whether to Receive a PushTalk Call during i-mode


Default | Prefer PushTalk

You can set whether to receive a PushTalk call by disconnecting i-mode if there is any incoming PushTalk call during i-mode or i-mode communication.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Application] → [PushTalk] → [i-mode arrival act] and press .

[Prefer PushTalk] : Receive the PushTalk call and disconnect i-mode. After the PushTalk call is finished, the previous display reappears.

[Prefer i-mode] : Continue i-mode without receiving a PushTalk call. The missed PushTalk call is not saved in the Received record.

- 2 Select the preferred function and press .

The i-mode arrival act is set.

## Using the Hands-free Function

Default | ON

You can set whether to use the hands-free function during PushTalk communication.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Application] → [PushTalk] → [Hands-free] and press .

[ON] : You hear a member's voice from the speaker during PushTalk communication.

[OFF] : You hear a member's voice from the earpiece during PushTalk communication.

- 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The Hands-free is set.

- When the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, you hear a member's voice from the Earphone/Microphone, regardless of the Hands-free setting.
- When the FOMA terminal is folded, the hands-free call is performed regardless of the Hands-free setting.
- When the FOMA terminal is opened while the Manner mode is set, you cannot answer a call using the hands-free function regardless of the Hands-free setting.

## Setting the Operation for the FOMA Terminal Being Folded during PushTalk Communication

Default | Speaker call

You can hang up a call or switch a call to the hands-free operation by folding the FOMA terminal during PushTalk communication.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Application] → [PushTalk] → [Setting when folded] and press .

[Speaker call] : You hear a member's voice from the speaker during PushTalk communication.

[Finish] : Hang up the PushTalk call.

- 2 Select [Speaker call]/[Finish] and press .

The Setting when folded is set.

- The Setting when folded is disabled when the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal and the call remains connected through the Earphone/Microphone even if you fold the FOMA terminal.

# Phonebook

Phonebooks the FOMA Terminal Can Use .....	86
Saving an Entry in the FOMA Terminal Phonebook .....	<Add to FOMA terminal phonebook> 87
Saving an Entry in the UIM Phonebook .....	<Add to UIM phonebook> 89
Saving the Redial/Received Record in the Phonebook .....	90
Saving a Group .....	<Group setting> 91
Displaying the Phonebook .....	92
Searching the Phonebook .....	<Search phonebook> 93
Setting the Display of the Phonebook .....	<Phonebook setting> 93
Editing a Phonebook Entry .....	<Edit phonebook> 94
Deleting a Phonebook Entry .....	<Delete phonebook> 94
Storing (Restoring/Updating) the Phonebook at the Data Security Service Center .....	95
Checking the Number of Entries Saved .....	<Memory status> 96
Dialing Quickly to Frequently Called Numbers .....	<2-touch dial> 96
Using the Data Security Service .....	<Data Security Service> 97

## Phonebooks the FOMA Terminal Can Use

The FOMA terminal is equipped with two types of phonebooks, the FOMA terminal phonebook, which you can set up with various functions, and the UIM (FOMA card) phonebook, which can be used with other FOMA terminals. Use either phonebook to your convenience.

- You can also use the PushTalk phonebook dedicated for PushTalk that can be created using data saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook (P.78).

The table below shows the data you can save in each phonebook.

Data to be saved	FOMA terminal phonebook	UIM phonebook
Number of data entries	You can save up to 1,000 entries.	You can save up to 50 entries.
Group	You can sort entries in groups from Group 0 to 19.	You can sort entries in groups from Group 0 to 10.
Phone number to be saved	You can save up to three numbers for each phonebook entry and a total of up to 3,000 numbers in the Phonebook. You can save one number for each phonebook entry in the PushTalk phonebook.	You can save one number for each phonebook entry.
	You can select from nine types of icons, such as [Public] and [Mobile1].	
Mail address to be saved	You can save up to three addresses for each phonebook entry and a total of up to 3,000 addresses in the Phonebook. You can also save one Secret code for each address.	You can save one address for each phonebook entry.
	You can select from five types of icons, such as [Mobile1] and [Home].	
Image to be saved	You can save one still image (Des call display) and one Chara-den for each phonebook entry. You can save up to 1,000 each of still image and Chara-den files in the Phonebook.	You cannot save images.
Other data to be saved	You can save one name, reading, memory number, postal code, postal address, and birthday for each phonebook entry. You can also set one type of Des phone tone, Des mail tone, Select phone Illum., Select mail Illum., and Secret for each phonebook entry.	You can save one name and reading for each phonebook entry.
Group to be saved	You can save one group name and group icon for each group.	You can save one group name for each group. You cannot change a group name with [None]. You cannot select icons.
	You can also set one type of Des call display, Des phone tone, Des mail tone, Select phone Illum., and Select mail Illum. for each group.	





- You can use phonebook data saved in your UIM when this UIM is used on another FOMA terminal.

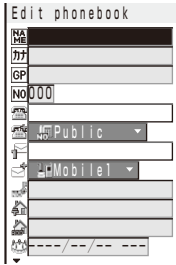
- For the order of priority between call image, ring tone, and incoming indicator color, see P.102.
- When you receive a call or mail from a person saved as Secret, the regular ring tone, incoming image and incoming indicator color are used, and a name of the caller/sender is not displayed. To enable the settings of a person saved as Secret or a group that includes a person saved as Secret, set the Secret display to [ON].
- The saved data may be lost as a result of malfunction, repair, or other handling of the FOMA terminal. Under no condition will DoCoMo be held liable for any damaged or lost data saved in the Phonebook, etc. It is recommended that you make a separate note of the data saved in the Phonebook or make a backup copy of it using the microSD memory card (P.211). If you have a PC, you can save data in your PC using the DoCoMo keitai datalink and the FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- Please note that when you change models and attempt to transfer the saved data to a new mobile phone at our service counter (DoCoMo shop, etc.), you may not be able to copy it to the FOMA terminal depending on the specifications of your new phone.



# Saving an Entry in the FOMA Terminal Phonebook <Add to FOMA terminal phonebook>
















Up to 1,000 entries can be saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.






- 1** Press  () in the stand-by display and press  (Create).
- 2** Select [Main memory] and press .



To save an entry in the UIM phonebook  
Select [UIM] (P.89).

- 3** Save each item.

Icon	Settings
	Enter a name within 16 full-width or 32 half-width characters.
	When entering a name, the reading is automatically entered. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To edit the reading, enter the reading within 32 half-width characters.</li> </ul>
	Select a group. When entering a name/phone number/mail address, group  is automatically entered.
	Enter a memory number from 000 to 999. When entering a name/phone number/mail address, the smallest available memory number is automatically entered.
	Enter within 26 digits per phone number. You can save the pause (P), timer (T), "+", "#", and sub-address separator (*). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If a phone number is saved with the "184" or "186", SMS cannot be sent to this phone number even if you select it.</li> </ul>
	Select a phone number type icon. When entering a phone number, [  Public] is automatically entered.
	Enter within 50 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols per mail address. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When sending mail to an i-mode terminal (including a Movva terminal), you need to specify only the mail address portion before the @ mark.</li> </ul>
	Select a mail address type icon. When you enter a mail address, [  Mobile1] is automatically entered.
	Enter the specified Secret code (P.169) when the recipient saves it. The Secret code is used when sending mail. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When you save a mail address as "phone number + Secret code@docomo.ne.jp" in the Phonebook, if you save a Secret code, you cannot send mail or reply mail to this address. To avoid this problem, change the mail address to "phone number@docomo.ne.jp" and save a Secret code.</li> <li>The Secret code is masked by "XXXX". Only when the Secret display is set to [ON], it is displayed in numbers.</li> </ul>
	Enter a postal code within seven half-width digits.
	Enter a postal address within 64 full-width or 128 half-width characters.
	Enter a birthday within the range from 1900/01/01 to 2050/12/31.



Icon	Settings																							
	<p>Select an image from My Picture/i-motion of the Data Box or record a new one to be used as the Des call display that is displayed when placing/receiving a voice or videophone call or displaying the individual Phonebook entry.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can set the following files.</li> </ul> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Category</th> <th>File format</th> <th>File size</th> <th>Image size</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>My picture</td> <td>GIF/JPEG</td> <td>Max. 100K bytes</td> <td>Max. [QVGA(240×320)]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>i-motion※</td> <td>—</td> <td>Max. 2M bytes</td> <td>[sQCIF(128×96)]/[QCIF(176×144)]</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>※ Some i-motion may not be set.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It may take time to display a large-sized image.</li> <li>To use an image after recording it by the camera, select [Camera]/[Movie] (P.136, 139). You can record an image in the following sizes.</li> </ul> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">Still image</td> <td>Out-camera</td> <td>Max. [QVGA(240×320)]</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>In-camera</td> <td>[sQCIF(128×96)]/[QCIF(176×144)]</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Movie</td> <td></td> <td>[sQCIF(128×96)]/[QCIF(176×144)]</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To specify no image, select [None].</li> <li>To check the image, move the cursor to an image and press <b>[ch]</b> (Play).</li> </ul>	Category	File format	File size	Image size	My picture	GIF/JPEG	Max. 100K bytes	Max. [QVGA(240×320)]	i-motion※	—	Max. 2M bytes	[sQCIF(128×96)]/[QCIF(176×144)]	Still image	Out-camera	Max. [QVGA(240×320)]		In-camera	[sQCIF(128×96)]/[QCIF(176×144)]		Movie		[sQCIF(128×96)]/[QCIF(176×144)]	
Category	File format	File size	Image size																					
My picture	GIF/JPEG	Max. 100K bytes	Max. [QVGA(240×320)]																					
i-motion※	—	Max. 2M bytes	[sQCIF(128×96)]/[QCIF(176×144)]																					
Still image	Out-camera	Max. [QVGA(240×320)]																						
	In-camera	[sQCIF(128×96)]/[QCIF(176×144)]																						
Movie		[sQCIF(128×96)]/[QCIF(176×144)]																						
	<p>Select a Chara-den file to be sent when placing a videophone call from Chara-den of the Data Box.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To specify no Chara-den character, select [None]. A substitute image or your own image set in the Set outgoing image (P.70) is sent.</li> </ul>																							
	<p>Select a ring tone from MUSIC/i-motion/Melody of the Data Box to be used as the Des phone tone/Des mail tone that sounds when receiving a voice or videophone call and right after receiving mail.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can set the following files. You can select a Chaku-Uta® from [i-motion].</li> </ul> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Category</th> <th>File format</th> <th>File size</th> <th>Image size</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MUSIC</td> <td>AAC-LC/HE-AAC</td> <td>Max. 5M bytes</td> <td>—</td> </tr> <tr> <td>i-motion※</td> <td>—</td> <td>Max. 2M bytes</td> <td>[sQCIF(128×96)]/[QCIF(176×144)]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Melody</td> <td>SMF/MFi</td> <td>Max. 350K bytes</td> <td>—</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>※ Some i-motion may not be set.</p> <p>When you select a Chaku-Uta Full® that has a choice of specified playback ranges from [MUSIC], the screen for selecting a type of setting appears. If you select [Full song], the entire track of Chaku-Uta Full® is set for the ring tone. If you select [Point], the specified playback range of Chaku-Uta Full® is set for the ring tone as an i-motion. The i-motion you set is saved in the Data Box.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To specify no ring tone, select [None].</li> <li>To mute the ring tone, select [Silent].</li> <li>To check the ring tone, move the cursor to the ring tone and press <b>[ch]</b> (Play).</li> </ul>	Category	File format	File size	Image size	MUSIC	AAC-LC/HE-AAC	Max. 5M bytes	—	i-motion※	—	Max. 2M bytes	[sQCIF(128×96)]/[QCIF(176×144)]	Melody	SMF/MFi	Max. 350K bytes	—							
Category	File format	File size	Image size																					
MUSIC	AAC-LC/HE-AAC	Max. 5M bytes	—																					
i-motion※	—	Max. 2M bytes	[sQCIF(128×96)]/[QCIF(176×144)]																					
Melody	SMF/MFi	Max. 350K bytes	—																					
	<p>Select a color for the Select phone/mail Illum. that flashes when receiving a voice or videophone call and right after receiving mail. When you move the cursor to a color, the incoming indicator flashes accordingly.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To specify no color, select [None].</li> </ul>																							
	<p>Select [ON]/[OFF] of the Secret.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To display the entry saved as Secret, set the Secret display to [ON].</li> </ul>																							

#### 4 Press **[i]** (Complete).

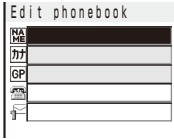
The entered data is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- If you set [None] for the Des call display, Des phone/mail tone, or Select phone/mail Illum., then the call image, ring tone, and indicator color saved for the Group setting are automatically used for the respective function. If these settings are not saved in the Group setting, the Incoming set (P.100) or Animation setting (P.108) is used.
- If you set an i-motion with video and sound tracks for the Des mail tone, the i-motion image appears when mail reception is completed.
- If you set an i-motion for the Des call display, the image set for the Animation setting is displayed when you place a voice or videophone call.
- If you set an i-motion or Chaku-Uta Full® for the Des phone/mail tone or set an i-motion for the Des call display, the settings may be changed in some cases.

Up to 50 entries can be saved in the UIM (FOMA card) phonebook.

**1** Press  () in the stand-by display and press  (Create).







**2** Select [UIM] and press .



To save an entry in the FOMA terminal phonebook

Select [Main memory] (P.87).

**3** Save each item.

Icon	Settings
	Enter a name within 10 full-width or 21 half-width characters. If you use a mixture of full-width and half-width characters or half-width katakana characters for the name, the number of characters that you can save is limited to 10 characters.
	When entering a name, the reading is automatically entered. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To edit the reading, enter the reading within 12 full-width katakana characters or 25 half-width alphanumeric characters. If you use a mixture of full-width and half-width characters for the reading, the number of characters that you can save is limited to 12 characters.</li> </ul>
	Select a group. When entering a name/phone number/mail address, group [  No Group] is automatically entered.
	Enter a phone number within 26 digits (20 digits for some types of UIM).
	Enter a mail address within 50 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols. If you use symbols for the mail address, you may not be able to save up to the maximum allowable number of characters. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When sending mail to an i-mode terminal (including a Mova terminal), you need to specify only the mail address portion before the @ mark.</li> </ul>

**4** Press  (Complete).



The entered data is saved in the UIM phonebook.

● Data copied from the FOMA terminal phonebook or received using a function such as the infrared or iC communication may not be saved correctly.

## Saving the Redial/Received Record in the Phonebook

A phone number saved in the record can be directly added to the Phonebook.

Example: Saving a received record in the FOMA terminal phonebook as a new entry

**1** Press  () in the stand-by display.

To save a number from the redial record

Press  () in the stand-by display.

**2** Select a received record and press  (Save).


The screen for selecting where to save appears.

**3** Select [Ordinary PB] and press .

The screen for selecting how to save to the Phonebook appears.

To save data in the PushTalk phonebook


Select [PushTalk PB] → a PushTalk phone number.

**4** Select [New] and press .

The screen for selecting where to save appears.

When you select [Add]

Select an entry to which you want to add from the Phonebook.

**5** Select [Main memory] and press .

The Edit phonebook display appears.

To save to the UIM phonebook

Select [UIM].

**6** Save other items.

- Follow the same steps as in “Add to FOMA terminal phonebook” (P.87, step 3) or in “Add to UIM phonebook” (P.89, step 3).


**7** Press  (Complete).

The entry is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.


Up to 20 groups can be saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook, and up to 10 groups can be saved in the UIM (FOMA card) phonebook.

- You cannot change [No Group] in the UIM phonebook.

Example: Saving a group in the FOMA terminal phonebook


**1** Press  (Func) in the Phonebook.

The Function menu appears.

**2** Select [Group setting] and press .



**To display group numbers**

When saved, group icons are displayed instead of group numbers. Press  to switch the display temporarily between group icons and group numbers.

**3** Select a group and press .



**4** Enter a group name at .

Enter a group name within 10 full-width or 21 half-width characters. For data in the UIM phonebook, if you use a mixture of full-width and half-width characters or half-width katakana characters for the group name, the number of characters that you can save is limited to 10 characters.

- For data in the UIM phonebook, go to step 7.

**5** Select a group icon at .

**6** Save the Des call display, Des phone tone, and Select phone Illum.

- Follow the same steps as those for the Des call display, Des phone/mail tone, and Select phone/mail Illum. described in the Add to FOMA terminal phonebook (P.87, step 3).

**7** Press  (Complete).

The group is set.

- When the Des call display, Des phone/mail tone, or Select phone/mail Illum. is set for both the Phonebook and Group setting, the setting for the Phonebook has higher priority.

# Displaying the Phonebook

You can use the Phonebook to perform various operations.

Example: Displaying the FOMA terminal phonebook

- 1 Press in the stand-by display.



## To display the UIM phonebook

Press (UIM). Every time you press the key, the display switches between the FOMA terminal and UIM phonebooks. “” appears in the UIM phonebook.

## To switch the display format temporarily

From the Function menu, select [Chg. disp. temp] → [Alphabet]/[Group]/[Number].

## To attach a Phonebook entry to mail

Move the cursor to data and from the Function menu, select [Attach to mail].

- 2 Select an entry and press .



## To place a voice call

Move the cursor to a phone number and press .

## To place a videophone call

Move the cursor to a phone number and press (V.phone).

## To originate a PushTalk call

Move the cursor to a phone number and press .

## To send mail

Move the cursor to a mail address and press (Mail).

## To check the call image

Move the cursor to a call image and press (Play).

## To check a Chara-den character

Move the cursor to a Chara-den file and press (Play).

## To check a ring tone

Move the cursor to a ring tone and press (Play).

## To check an incoming indicator


Move the cursor to an incoming indicator and press (Check).

## To turn on/off the image display

Press to temporarily turn on/off an image.

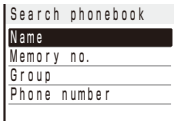
- When data is displayed in the Japanese alphabetical order of readings (あかさたな) or in the order of group numbers, you can use the relevant keys on the keypad to move to each tab page (“あ” to “わ”) or to the beginning of each alphabet page. For example, to go to the “は” tab page, press the key marked “は”. By pressing repeatedly, you can move within the “は” tab page in the following order: “は → ひ → ふ → …”. To switch to the “A” or “ETC” tab page, press .

The Phonebook can be searched to display up to 100 entries temporarily.

**1** Press  (Func) in the Phonebook.

The Function menu appears.


**2** Select [Search] and press .



- [Name] : Enter part of a reading within 32 half-width characters. For the UIM phonebook, enter within 12 full-width or 25 half-width characters.
- [Memory no.] : Enter a memory number.
- [Group] : Select a group.
- [Phone number] : Enter part of a phone number within 26 digits.

To search data in the UIM phonebook


Press  (UIM).

**3** Select a search method and press , then enter a search key.

The searching result is displayed.

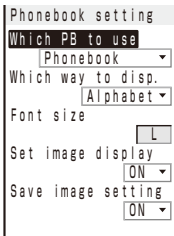
Default Which PB to use: Phonebook, Which way to disp.: Alphabet, Font size: Large, Set image disp.: ON, Save image setting: ON

You can set the display style and font size to be used for the Phonebook when you display it and whether to display an image when you display a single entry of the Phonebook.

**1** Press  (Func) in the Phonebook.

The Function menu appears.


**2** Select [PB setting] and press .



- [Which PB to use] : Select a phonebook to be displayed when you display the Phonebook.
- [Which way to disp.] : Select a display style for Phonebook entries when you display the Phonebook.
- [Font size] : Select the font size of the Phonebook (P.114).
- [Set image display] : Select whether to display the Des call display that was saved when a single entry of the Phonebook is displayed.
- [Save image setting] : Select whether to save an image that is set for the Des call display to the microSD memory card when you save all Phonebook data.

**3** Select [Phonebook]/[UIM phonebook] at [Which PB to use].

**4** Select a display style at [Which way to disp.].

[Alphabet] : Display entries in the Japanese alphabetical order (in the order of the Japanese syllabary) of readings () of a name that was saved.




[Group] : Display entries in the order of group numbers.

[Number] : Display entries in the order of memory numbers.

**5** Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Set image display].

**6** Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Save image setting].



The Phonebook setting is set.

- 1 From the Phonebook, select an entry and press .
- 2 Press  (Edit).  
The Edit phonebook display appears.
- 3 Edit each item.
  - Follow the same steps as in "Add to FOMA terminal phonebook" (P.87, step 3) or in "Add to UIM phonebook" (P.89, step 3).
- 4 Press  (Complete).  
The edited data is saved in the Phonebook.

# Deleting a Phonebook Entry

You can delete Phonebook entries using three methods.

Example: Deleting an entry

- 1 Press  () in the stand-by display.




### To delete several entries

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete], select entries, press  (Complete), and select [Yes].


### To delete all Phonebook entries being displayed

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- 2 Select an entry and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

### When the display style is set to [Group]

Select a group, move the cursor to an entry, and press  (Func).

- 3 Select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes] and press .

The selected entry is deleted.


- When an entry to be deleted is also saved in the PushTalk phonebook, it is automatically deleted from the PushTalk phonebook. When you delete all data of the FOMA terminal phonebook, the Group setting of the PushTalk phonebook is reset to the default setting.



## Storing (Restoring/Updating) the Phonebook at the Data Security Service Center

You can use the Data Security Service to store the FOMA terminal phonebook at the Data Security Service Center.

- For details about updating the Phonebook, see P.97.

**1** Press  (Func) in the Phonebook.

The Function menu appears.

**2** Select [Cnct to Center] and press .

The Security code screen appears.

**3** Enter the Security code and press  (OK).

The screen for confirming whether to connect to the Data Security Service Center appears.

**4** Select [Yes] and press .

The call is connected to the Data Security Service Center and the data is updated. When the update is completed, the update result screen appears.

## Checking the Number of Entries Saved

<Memory status>

You can check the number of entries saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM (FOMA card) phonebook and the number of locations still available or entries saved as Secret.

### 1 Press (Func) in the Phonebook.

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Memory status] and press .

Memory status	
Remained	550
Used	450
Secret	5
Remained (UIM)	30
Used (UIM)	20

[Remained] : Display the number of entries still available for the FOMA terminal phonebook.

[Used] : Display the number of entries saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook (including entries saved as Secret).

[Secret] : Display the number of entries saved as Secret in the FOMA terminal phonebook (this data is displayed only when the Secret display is set to [ON]).

[Remained(UIM)] : Display the number of entries still available for the UIM phonebook.

[Used(UIM)] : Display the number of entries saved in the UIM phonebook.

## Dialing Quickly to Frequently Called Numbers

<2-touch dial>

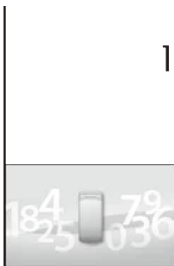
A call can be placed easily to the recipients saved in memory numbers from 000 to 009 by using a shortcut.

It is useful to save frequently used phone numbers in memory numbers from 000 to 009.



- When the Secret display is set to [OFF], the 2-touch dial cannot be used to place a call to a phone number saved as Secret.

Example: Placing a call to the recipient saved in the memory number 001

### 1 Enter the last one digit of the memory number (0 to 9) in the stand-by display.




#### To check a recipient's data saved in a memory number

Enter the memory number (one or two digits) and press  or . A list of used memory numbers and their associated entries appears with the entered memory number highlighted.

### 2 Press .

After about five seconds, the call is connected to the first phone number of the recipient saved in memory number 001.

#### To place a videophone call


Press  (V.phone).

- The call can be placed to the recipients saved in memory numbers from 010 to 099 by entering the last two digits (10 to 99) of the memory numbers.


You can use the Data Security Service to store the FOMA terminal phonebook at the Data Security Service Center. You can update or restore the stored Phonebook by connecting to the Data Security Service Center.

- Data Security Service is a paid service that requires a subscription. For details on this service, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".
- You cannot save the UIM phonebook at the Center.

## Storing/Updating/Restoring the Phonebook

- 1** From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [Data Security Service] → [Connect to Center] and press .

The screen for confirming whether to connect to the Data Security Service Center appears.

- 2** Select [Yes] and press .

The Security code screen appears.

- 3** Enter the Security code and press  (OK).


The call is connected to the Data Security Service Center and the data is updated. When the update is completed, the update result screen appears.

- The automatic update of the Phonebook may fail when another function is executed. In this case, "PB update failed" appears in the stand-by display.

## Setting Whether to Send Images of the Phonebook

Default | No

You can set whether to send a Des call display (JPEG/GIF image) saved in the Phonebook to the Data Security Service Center.

- 1** From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [Data Security Service] → [Service setting] and press .

The Service setting display appears.


- 2** Select [Yes]/[No] at [Send phonebook img].

The Send phonebook img is set.

## Displaying the Communication History

You can save up to 30 history records of communication with the Data Security Service Center.

- When the number of communication history records exceeds 30, the records with the oldest date/time are overwritten, in that order.

**1** From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [Data Security Service] → [Sent/rec'd PB data] and press .

The Sent/rec'd PB data display appears.

**2** Select a record and press .

The update result screen appears.

# Sound/Display/ Light Settings

Setting the Ring Tone/Image/Indicator Color for Incoming Call and Mail ..... <Incoming set> 100

## ■ Setting the Ringer

Setting the Sounds of the FOMA Terminal ..... <Set basic tone> 102

Adjusting the Volume of Caller's Voice ..... <Volume> 103

Adjusting the Volume While Playing Flash Movie ..... <Sound effect> 103

Adjusting the Volume While Running i-appli Software ..... <Volume setting> 103

Setting the Poor Signal Quality Alert ..... <Quality alarm> 104

Setting Earphone Only for the Ring Tone ..... <Earphone> 104

Muting the Ring Tone ..... <Manner mode> 105

Changing the Manner Mode Settings ..... <Manner mode setting> 106

## ■ Setting the Display/Display Light

Setting the Stand-by Display ..... <Stand-by display> 107

Setting Images for Placing a Call/Sending Mail ..... <Animation setting> 108

Setting the Display for Incoming and Outgoing Calls ..... <Call display> 109

Setting the Display for the Sub-display..... <Sub display> 110

Setting the Display and Keypad Illumination ..... <Backlight> 110

Saving Power for the Display ..... <Power saver> 111

Changing the Appearance of the Menu ..... <Menu setting> 112

Using the Menu Pattern ..... <Menu pattern> 112

Informing Missed Call/New Mail with Indicator ..... <Missed call> 113


Setting the Font Size ..... <Font size> 114

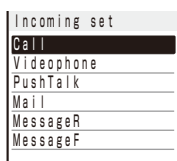
Changing the Screen Display to English ..... <Language> 114

Default	Ring tone: 着信音1, Link incoming call: OFF (Videophone), Link receive mail: ON (MessageR・MessageF), Ring volume: 3, Incoming image/Receiving img: 音声発着信中(voice call)/テレビ電話発着信中(video phone call)/ パケット通信(mail・MessageR・MessageF), Vibrator: OFF, Color: C9:Color9, Ring time: 4 sec (mail・MessageR・MessageF)
---------	--

You can set a ring tone, ring volume, incoming image, vibration pattern, and incoming indicator color for each type of incoming transmission (voice, videophone, or PushTalk call, or mail, etc.).

Example: Performing incoming mail settings

- From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Incoming set] and press .



- Select [Mail] and press .



**To perform the settings for an incoming videophone call**

If you set [Link incoming call] to [ON], the settings for the incoming call are applied.

**To perform the settings for an incoming Message R/Message F**

If you set [Link receive mail] to [ON], the settings for the incoming mail are applied.

- Select a ring tone from MUSIC/i-motion/Melody of the Data Box at [Ring tone].

- You can set the following files. You can select a Chaku-Uta® from [i-motion].

Category	File format	File size	Image size
MUSIC	AAC-LC/HE-AAC	Max. 5M bytes	—
i-motion※	—	Max. 2M bytes	[sQCIF(128×96)]/[QCIF(176×144)]
Melody	SMF/MFi	Max. 350K bytes	—

※ Some i-motion may not be set. You cannot set an i-motion with video track only. You can set only an i-motion with sound track only (i-motion without video track, such as singer's voice) for incoming PushTalk calls.


**When you select a Chaku-Uta Full® that has a choice of specified playback ranges from [MUSIC]**

The screen for selecting a type of setting appears. If you select [Full song], the entire track of Chaku-Uta Full® is set for the ring tone. If you select [Point], the specified playback range of Chaku-Uta Full® is set for the ring tone as an i-motion. The i-motion you set is saved in the Data Box.

**To mute the ring tone**

Select [Silent].

**To check the ring tone**





Move the cursor to the ring tone and press  (Play).

## 4 Set the volume of the ring tone at [Ring volume].

Select from [OFF] and [1 to 5].

- For an incoming voice, videophone, or PushTalk call, you can set [Step down] and [Step up]. [Step down] turns down the volume every six seconds and [Step up] turns up the volume every six seconds.

### To set the ring tone volume to [OFF]

Press  at level 1. When you set the ring tone volume for incoming calls, incoming mail, or both incoming calls and mail to [OFF], “”, “”, or “” appears in the stand-by display respectively.

## 5 Select an image from the Data Box at [Receiving img].

- You can set the following files.

Call/Videophone

Category	File format	File size	Image size
My picture	GIF/JPEG	Max. 500K bytes	Max. [VGA(640×480)]
	Flash	Max. 100K bytes	—
i-motion※	—	Max. 2M bytes	[sQCIF(128×96)]/[QCIF(176×144)]

Mail/MessageR/MessageF

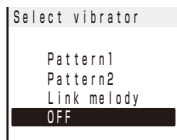
Category	File format	File size	Image size
My picture	GIF/JPEG	Max. 100K bytes	Max. [QVGA(240×320)]
	Flash	Max. 100K bytes	—

※ Some i-motion may not be set.

### To check the incoming image

Move the cursor to the incoming image and press  (Play).

## 6 Set a vibration pattern at [Vibrator].






[Pattern1] : Set a short intermittent vibration.

[Pattern2] : Set a long intermittent vibration.

[Link melody] : Set vibration to be synchronized with the vibration pattern of the melody. When you set the ring tone to [Silent] or the melody is not specified with a vibration pattern, [Pattern1] is used.

[OFF] : Do not set the vibrator.

When you set the vibrator for incoming calls, incoming mail, or both incoming calls and mail, “”, “”, or “” appears in the stand-by display respectively.

### To check the vibration

Move the cursor to the vibration pattern and press  (Confirm).

## 7 Select an indicator color at [Color].

Select from 12 colors plus [C13:ALL] (in which the 12 colors flash in turn).

When you move the cursor through the colors, the incoming indicator flashes accordingly.

## 8 Enter the duration for sounding the ring tone at [Ring time].

Enter the duration within the range from 00 to 30 seconds.

- You can set the ring time for incoming mail, Message R, and Message F.

## ■ Preinstalled melodies

Title
着信音1~4
着信音5 ※
Salut d'amour ※
Afternoon Nap ※
Nordic Sun ※
Aqua Resort ※

Title
After The Rain ※
Fairy Tale ※
Magical Moment ※
Clear Sky ※
Brilliance ※

Title
Bay Breeze ※
Insects'Chorus ※
Shizuku ※
Ice Cube
Vibe x Vibe

※ 3D sound support (P.102)

## ■ Preinstalled music

Title
Atmosphere

- If several ring tones, call images, and incoming indicator colors are set for voice/videophone call/mail, the following priority is applied.
  1. Ring tone of Number Setting (When you receive a call to an Additional No. for the Multi Number)
  2. Des phone tone, Des call display, and Select phone/mail Illum. of an entry saved in the Phonebook
  3. Des phone tone, Des call display, and Select phone/mail Illum. of the Group setting
  4. Ring tone, incoming image, and indicator color of the Incoming set
 However, when you set an i-motion or Chaku-Uta Full® for the ring tone or an i-motion for the incoming image, the order of priority may vary.
- You can adjust the ring volume while receiving a call. The volume last set is applied regardless of whether you adjust the volume in advance or while receiving a call.
- If you set the ring time to 0 seconds, the ring tone does not sound upon reception of mail/message, and the incoming indicator and vibrator do not operate, either.
- When you set an i-motion or Chaku-Uta Full® for the ring tone or set an i-motion for the incoming image, the settings may be changed in some cases.

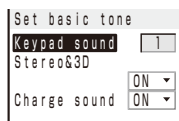
## Setting the Sounds of the FOMA Terminal

<Set basic tone>

Default | Keypad sound: 1, Stereo&3D: ON, Charge sound: ON

You can set to turn on/off the sound effect that can be used when charging starts and is completed. You can also set whether the 3D sound is played back through the stereo speaker and set the keypad sound volume.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [Set basic tone] and press .



- [Keypad sound] : Set the volume of the keypad sound to be heard when you press a key.
- [Stereo&3D] : Set whether to play back 3D sound with 3-dimensional stereophonic reproduction through the stereo speaker.
- [Charge sound] : Set whether the sound effect is heard when charging starts and is completed.

- 2 Set the volume of the keypad sound at [Keypad sound].

Select from [OFF] and [1 to 2].

- 3 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Stereo&3D].

- 4 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Charge sound].

The sounds of the FOMA terminal are set.

- The keypad and Charge sounds may not be heard under some conditions, such as when another sound is active.
- The 3D sound function reproduces a 3-dimensional stereophonic sound or space-wise moving sound, over the stereo speaker (or the Flat-Plug Stereo Earphone Set (optional)). This function lets you enjoy 3D sound i-α ppli games, ring tones, and i-motion with realistic sound. You can feel the effect of this function when you hold the FOMA terminal about 40 cm (this distance depends on the sense of an individual) away and facing toward you. Note that if the FOMA terminal is moved left or right or the distance between the terminal and you is not suitable, you cannot enjoy the effect. The perception of this 3D effect varies depending on the senses of an individual. If you feel uncomfortable in any way, set the Stereo&3D to [OFF].




## Adjusting the Volume of Caller's Voice




<Volume>

Default 3

The volume of caller's voice during a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call can be adjusted in five levels from level 1 (smallest) to level 5 (largest).



**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Call setting] → [Volume] and press .

The Volume display appears.

**2** Use   to adjust the volume and press  (OK).

Select from [1 to 5].

The volume of caller's voice is set.


- The volume can be adjusted by pressing   during a call. Whichever way you may take, the most recently adjusted volume is used until it is adjusted next time.

## Adjusting the Volume While Playing Flash Movie

<Sound effect>

Default 3

The sound volume while playing Flash movie can be adjusted in six levels: OFF (silent), level 1 (smallest) to level 5 (largest).

**1** From the i-mode menu, select [i-mode setting] → [Sound effect] and press .

**2** Set the sound effect volume.

Select from [OFF] and [1 to 5].

The sound volume while playing Flash movie is set.

- You can also adjust the volume by selecting [Sound effect] from the Function menu while playing Flash movie (P.154).
- The sound effect may not be heard depending on Flash movie.

## Adjusting the Volume While Running i-αppli Software

<Volume setting>

Default 3

The sound volume while running i-αppli software can be adjusted in six levels: OFF (silent), level 1 (lowest) to level 5 (highest).

**1** From the Menu, select [i-appli] → [i αppli setting] → [Volume setting] and press .

The Volume setting display appears.

**2** Set the software volume.

Select from [OFF] and [1 to 5].


The sound volume while running i-αppli software is set.

## Setting the Poor Signal Quality Alert

<Quality alarm>

Default OFF

You can set to inform you with alarm of the possibility of the call being disconnected during a voice call due to the radio wave condition.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Call quality] → [Quality alarm] and press .

[High] : Sound a high alarm tone.

[Low] : Sound a low alarm tone.

[OFF] : Do not sound an alarm tone.

- 2 Select the type of alarm tones and press .

The Quality alarm is set.

- If the radio wave condition becomes weak suddenly, the call may be disconnected with no alarm.

## Setting Earphone Only for the Ring Tone

<Earphone>

Default Earph.+speaker

You can set the position where the ring tone sounds when the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal. The other tones, such as the Alarm and Schedule alarm tone also sound from the position you set for the ring tone.

- Even if [Earphone] is set, the ring tone sounds from both the earphone and the speaker if no operations are made for about 20 seconds after it starts sounding.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Earphone] → [Earphone] and press .

[Earphone] : The tone sounds only from the earphone.

[Earph.+speaker] : The tone sounds from both the earphone and the speaker.

- 2 Select [Earphone] and press .

The tone sounds only from the earphone.

All sounds from the FOMA terminal can be disabled to avoid disturbing others by using the Manner mode.




There are three types of the Manner mode. Set the mode by using the Manner mode setting (P.106).

- Even if the Manner mode is set, the shutter sound of the camera can be heard.





## 1 Press for over a second in the stand-by display.



The Manner mode is set and the icon for the current type appears.

	Manner (♥ is pink)
	Silent
	Original manner (♥ is blue)

### To cancel the Manner mode

Press  for over a second in the stand-by display. The Manner mode is canceled and "//

## ■ Functions of each mode

	Manner	Silent	Original manner	
			Initial setting	Setting range
Vibrator (P.101)※1	Follow each setting (Vibrates in Pattern1 when [OFF] is set.)	OFF	OFF	Pattern1/Pattern2/Link melody/Follow each setting/OFF
Phone volume (P.101)※2	OFF	OFF	SD (Step down)	SU (Step up)/SD (Step down)/5 to 1/OFF
Mail volume (P.101)※3	OFF	OFF	3	5 to 1/OFF
Alarm volume (P.242, 245)	OFF	OFF	3	5 to 1/OFF
Keypad sound (P.102)※4	OFF	OFF	1	2 to 1/OFF
Charge sound (P.102)	OFF	OFF	ON	ON/OFF
Battery ALM (P.38)※5	OFF + Vibrator	OFF	ON	ON/OFF※6
Whisper mode (P.61)	ON	OFF	OFF	ON/OFF

※1 Vibrator setting common to voice, videophone, and PushTalk calls, mail, Message R/F, Alarm, and Schedule alarm.


※2 Setting common to the ring volume for voice, videophone, and PushTalk calls and the alarm for the Call cost limit.

※3 Setting common to the ring volume for mail and Message R/F.

※4 Setting common to the battery level confirmation beep.

※5 During a call, the battery alarm is heard from the earpiece regardless of the setting. When a call is put on hold, however, only the display is provided and the battery alarm does not sound.

※6 When the Battery ALM is set to [ON], the vibrator operates regardless of the Vibrator setting.

- Press  during a voice call to set the Whisper mode and press it again to cancel the Whisper mode.

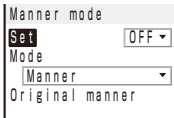
# Changing the Manner Mode Settings


<Manner mode setting>

Default Set: OFF, Mode: Manner

The Manner mode can be selected from three types: “Manner”, “Silent”, and “Original manner”.

- 1 Press  in the stand-by display.





- 2 Select the type of the Manner mode at [Mode].
- 3 Press  (Complete).  
The type of the Manner mode is changed.

## Changing the Original Manner

Default See “Functions of each mode” (P. 105).

The operations of the Original manner can be customized. For the items you can set, see “Functions of each mode” (P.105).

Example: Setting the battery alarm

- 1 Press  in the stand-by display, select [Original manner], and press .

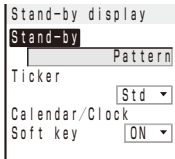


- 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Battery ALM].  
The battery alarm setting is changed.

Default Stand-by: Pattern, Ticker: Std  
Type: LTC/Clock, Font color: Blk, Clock style: 12h, Soft key: ON

You can set the image for the stand-by display, the Telop display for i-Channel, Calendar/Clock display, and whether to show or hide the guide display.

## 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Display] → [Stand-by disp.] and press .



- [Stand-by] : Set an image or i-αppli software to be displayed in the stand-by display.
- [Ticker] : Set the speed of Telop text displayed in the stand-by display for i-Channel or turn off the Telop text display (P.166).
- [Calendar/Clock] : Set the type of calendar and clock to be displayed in the stand-by display and also set the font color and display format of the clock.
- [Soft key] : Set whether to display the guide display in the stand-by display.

To display the explanation about the stand-by display setting

Press  (Help).

## 2 Select an image from My picture/i-motion of the Data Box at [Stand-by].

- You can set the following files.

Category	File format	File size	Image size
My picture	GIF/JPEG	Max. 500K bytes	Max. [VGA(640×480)]
	Flash	Max. 100K bytes	—
i-motion※	—	Max. 2M bytes	[sQCIF(128×96)]/[QCIF(176×144)]/[QVGA(320×240)]

※ Some i-motion may not be set.

### To set the i-αppli stand-by display

Select [i αppli list] and a software supporting i-αppli stand-by display from the list of i-αppli software.

### To display no image

Select [None specified].

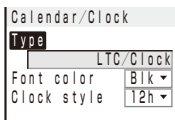
### To display the stand-by display of the Menu pattern

Select [Pattern].

### To check the image

Move the cursor to the image and press  (Play).

## 3 Select [Calendar/Clock] and press .



## 4 Select the type of calendar and clock at [Type].

- [Lifetime Calendar] : Display the Lifetime Calendar (P.240).
- [Calendar] : Display the one-month or two-month calendar.
- [Digital clock] : Display the date/time.
- [LTC/Clock] : Display the Lifetime Calendar and date/time.
- [Calendar/Clock] : Display the one-month or two-month calendar and date/time.
- [OFF] : Do not display the calendar or clock.

5 Press  (Type) to select a position/contents to be displayed and press  (OK).

Every time you press , the position/contents of the calendar/clock changes.

6 Select the font color of the calendar and clock at [Font color].

- You cannot change the font color of Saturdays and holidays in the calendar and Lifetime Calendar.

7 Select the format to display the clock in the main display at [Clock style].

[12h] : Display in 12-hour format.





[24h] : Display in 24-hour format.

8 Press  (Complete).

The calendar and clock display is set.

9 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Soft key].

The Soft key is set.


- If you change the setting so that the i-Channel Telop text is displayed when an i-motion or i- $\alpha$ ppli is set for the stand-by display, the screen for confirming whether to cancel the setting for the stand-by display appears. If you select [Yes], the i-motion or i- $\alpha$ ppli set for the stand-by display is canceled and the image for the stand-by display is changed to that of the Menu pattern.
- If you set an i-motion or i- $\alpha$ ppli for the stand-by display when the i-Channel Telop text is displayed, the screen for confirming whether to cancel the display of the Telop text appears. If you select [Yes], the Telop text is turned off. When you change the setting for the stand-by display to other than an i-motion or i- $\alpha$ ppli, the display of the Telop text is automatically restored.
- Even if the Soft key is set to [OFF], you can operate the FOMA terminal normally.
- If you set an i-motion for the stand-by display, the playback starts in the case, such as when you open the FOMA terminal, return to the stand-by display, or press  in the stand-by display, and the first frame of it is displayed as the stand-by display image. While the i-motion is played back, the Calendar/Clock type setting is disabled.
- If you set a Flash movie or GIF animation for the stand-by display, the playback starts in the case, such as when you open the FOMA terminal, return to the stand-by display, or press  in the stand-by display. The playback stops after a certain period of time. A frame displayed at the time of the playback being stopped is used as the stand-by display image. To restart the playback, press  (however, while displaying the i-Channel Telop text, the playback does not start even if you press ). The sound effect of the Flash movie set for the stand-by display is not heard.

## Setting Images for Placing a Call/Sending Mail <Animation setting>

Default | Calling: 音声発着信中, V.phone calling img: テレビ電話発着信中, Mail sending img: チェック新着メッセージ: パケット通信

You can set an image that appears when you place a voice or videophone call, send mail, and perform other events.

Example: Setting an image to be used when you place a call

1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Display] → [Anim setting] and press .



- [Calling] : Set an image that appears when you place a voice call.
- [V.phone calling img] : Set an image that appears when you place a videophone call.
- [Mail sending img] : Set an image that appears when you send i-mode mail or SMS.
- [Check new message] : Set an image that appears when you check new messages or SMS.

## 2 Select an image from My picture of the Data Box at [Calling].

- You can set the following files.

### Calling/V.phone calling img

Category	File format	File size	Image size
My picture	GIF/JPEG	Max. 500K bytes	Max. [VGA(640×480)]
	Flash	Max. 100K bytes	—

### Mail sending img/Check new message

Category	File format	File size	Image size
My picture	GIF/JPEG	Max. 100K bytes	Max. [QVGA(240×320)]
	Flash	Max. 100K bytes	—

### To check the image

Move the cursor to the image and press **[ch]** (Play).

The image that appears when you place a call is set.

- If you set the Phonebook image of the Set call display to [ON], the Des call display set in the Phonebook is displayed when you place a voice or videophone call regardless of the above setting.

## Setting the Display for Incoming and Outgoing Calls

<Call display>

Default | Phonebook image • Name: ON

You can set whether the Des call display or the name saved in the Phonebook is displayed.

### 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Call display] and press **[OK]**.



[Phonebook image] : Set whether to display the Des call display set for a specific individual/group saved in the Phonebook.

[Name] : Set whether to display the name of a caller/recipient saved in the Phonebook.

### 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Phonebook image].

[ON] : Display the image set for the Des call display in the Phonebook when placing/receiving a voice or videophone call.

[OFF] : Display the image set in the Animation setting or Incoming set when placing/receiving a voice or videophone call.

### 3 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Name].

[ON] : Display the name saved in the Phonebook when placing/receiving a voice or videophone call, or originating/receiving a PushTalk call, or right after receiving mail or SMS.


[OFF] : Do not display the name saved in the Phonebook when placing/receiving a voice or videophone call, or originating/receiving a PushTalk call, or right after receiving mail or SMS.

## Setting the Display for the Sub-display

<Sub display>

Default Ticker: Std, Power saver: 15 sec

You can set the i-Channel Telop text to be displayed in the sub-display. The time before starting the Power saver can be also set for the sub-display.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Display] → [Sub display] and press .



[Ticker] : Set the speed of i-Channel Telop text displayed in the sub-display or turn off the Telop text display (P.166).  
[Power saver] : Automatically turn off the sub-display if no operation is performed for a specific period.

To display the explanation about the Sub display setting

Press  (Help).

- 2 Set a time before starting the Power saver mode at [Power saver].

Select from [15sec], [30sec], [1min], and [2min].


## Setting the Display and Keypad Illumination

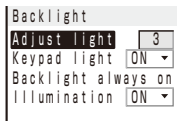
<Backlight>

Default Adjust light: 3, Keypad light: ON

Backlight always on: OFF (Charging • Internet)/ON (Videophone • Pict. Shoot • Movie shoot • Movie play), Illumination: ON

You can set the main display brightness, ON/OFF of the keypad light, and whether to turn on the light or illumination indicator.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Display] → [Backlight] and press .



[Adjust light] : Set the main display light brightness.  
[Keypad light] : Set whether to turn on the keypad light.  
[Backlight always on] : Set whether to keep the main display light on all the time including at the time of charging or recording.  
[Illumination] : Set whether to turn on the illumination indicator.

- 2 Set the main display light brightness at [Adjust light].

Select from [1 to 5].

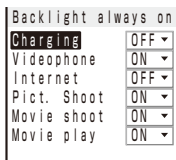
To reset to the default brightness

Press  (Reset).

- 3 Select [ON]/[OFF] of the Keypad light at [Keypad light].



#### 4 Select [Backlight always on] and press .



[Charging] : Set whether to keep the light on during charging.

[Videophone] : Set whether to keep the light on during a videophone call.

[Internet] : Set whether to keep the light on while displaying sites or Internet home pages.

[Pict. Shoot] : Set whether to keep the light on while recording a still image.




[Movie shoot] : Set whether to keep the light on while recording a movie.

[Movie play] : Set whether to keep the light on while playing back a movie.

#### 5 Select [ON]/[OFF] of the Backlight always on for each item and press .

#### 6 Select [ON]/[OFF] of the illumination indicator at [Illumination].

For details about positions and functions of the illumination indicators, see "Part Names and Functions" (P.24, 25).

- It may take time to complete charging when [Charging] of the Backlight always on is [ON].
- Even if the Illumination is set to [OFF], the illumination indicator ( in P.25) flashes while recording a movie. Only some functions of Dreamy Twinkle ( to  in P.25) are terminated.

## Saving Power for the Display

<Power saver>

Default | 1 min

The display is automatically turned off to save battery power when no operations are made for a specific period. You can set the time before turning off the display.

#### 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Display] → [Power saver] and press .

#### 2 Select a time before starting the Power saver mode and press .

Select from [1min], [3min], [5min], [10min], [15min], and [30min].

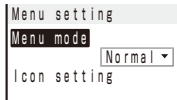
- While a function for which the Backlight always on is set to [ON] is in use, a slideshow is running, the software update (rewrite) is in progress, and the Camera mode is active, the Power saver mode does not work.
- The Power saver mode may be canceled if there is an incoming call, an activation of the Alarm or Schedule alarm, etc.

Default | Menu mode: Normal, Icon setting: Pattern

You can switch the menu display modes, and also set images to customize nine icons displayed in the Normal mode menu.

Example: Setting an image as the icon for i-mode

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Display] → [Menu setting] and press .



[Menu mode] : Switch the menu display mode (P.30).

[Icon setting] : Set the icons to be displayed in the Normal mode menu display (P.30).

**2** Select a display mode at [Menu mode].

[Normal] : Display the Normal mode menu.

[Simple] : Display the Simple mode menu, which lists frequently used functions.

**3** Select [Icon setting] and press .

The Icon setting display appears.

**4** Select an image from My picture of the Data Box at [i-mode].

- You can set the following files.

Category	File format	File size	Image size
My picture	GIF/JPEG	Max. 500K bytes	Max. [VGA(640×480)]

- An image exceeding 40×36 dots in image size is displayed in reduced size.

**To display the icon of the Menu pattern**

Select [Pattern].

**To check the image**

Move the cursor to the image and press  (Play).

- If you set a GIF animation as an icon, the image in the first frame is displayed.

Default | Main body color "PINK": BUTTERFLY, Main body color "PURPLE": STAR, Main body color "SILVER": SHINE

Using the Menu pattern, you can change the images for the stand-by display, menu icons, and task icons all at once. The light expression effect of Dreamy Twinkle for the sub-display, which you can enjoy when receiving a voice/videophone call or mail, etc., is also synchronized with the Menu pattern. Extra menu patterns are available by downloading them from "SO@Planet" (P.158).

- You cannot delete preinstalled menu patterns.

Example: Setting a menu pattern preinstalled at the time of purchase

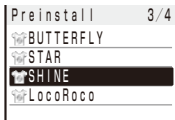
**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Display] → [Menu pattern] and press .

The Menu pattern display appears.

[Download] : Set a menu pattern downloaded from the site.

[Preinstall] : Set a menu pattern preinstalled at the time of purchase.




## 2 Select [Preinstall] and press .




### To set a menu pattern downloaded from the site

Select the [Download] folder.

### To check the design of the stand-by or menu display

Move the cursor to the menu pattern and press  (Play). Every time you press  (Preview1/Preview2), the preview display switches between the stand-by display and menu display. You can also turn on/off the icons and guide display alternately by pressing  (Display).

### To delete a menu pattern

Move the cursor to the menu pattern and from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete several menu patterns, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete] and select menu patterns. Press  (Complete) and select [Yes]. To delete all menu patterns in the folder, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

## 3 Select a menu pattern and press .

The Menu pattern is set.

- You can download menu patterns from "SO@Planet".

[i Menu] → [メニュー/検索] (Menu/Search) → [ケータイ電話メーカー] (Mobile Phone Manufacturers) → [SO@Planet] (Japanese only)



## Informing Missed Call/New Mail with Indicator

<Missed call>

Default ON

The incoming indicator can be set to flash about every five seconds to notify you that there is a missed call or unread mail/SMS/message. The indicator is turned off by checking the missed call or displaying mail/SMS/message.

Also, while the incoming indicator flashes, the illumination indicators (21, 24 in P.25) flash at about 10 seconds interval and the design of the attached Style-Up Panel is emerged.

### 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Missed call] and press .

### 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The Missed call is set.

- The indicator color for a missed call follows that set in the Incoming set. However, it flashes in mixed colors during iC communication (lights in green).
- You can set ON/OFF of the illumination indicators at [Backlight] (P.110).
- The indicator flashes in the following order of priority when there are mix of missed calls and unread mail/messages.
  - Voice call indicator color
  - Videophone call indicator color
  - PushTalk call indicator color
  - Mail indicator color
  - Message R indicator color
  - Message F indicator colorIf there are several calls, mails, messages, etc. of the same priority, the indicator color of the latest one has priority.

## Setting the Font Size

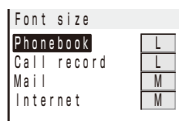
<Font size>

Default | Phonebook • Call record: Large, Mail • Internet: Medium

You can set the size of fonts to be used individually for displaying the Phonebook, Call record, mail/SMS, and sites.

Example: Setting the font size of the Phonebook

### 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Display] → [Font size] and press .



[Phonebook] : Select a font size for the Phonebook from [Largest] and [Large].

[Call record] : Select a font size for the Call record from [Largest] and [Large].

[Mail] : Select a font size for the contents display of an i-mode mail or SMS from [Large], [Medium], and [Small].

[Internet] : Select a font size for the contents display of a site, screen memo, or Message R/F from [Large], [Medium], and [Small].

### 2 Select a font size at [Phonebook].

The Phonebook font size is set.

● Even if you change the mail font size, the size of Deco mail Pict. does not change.

## Changing the Screen Display to English

<Language>

Default | Japanese

Menus, messages, and other displays can be displayed in either Japanese or English.

### 1 From the Menu, select [設定] → [管理] → [バイリンガル] and press .



[Japanese] : Set the display language to Japanese.

[English] : Set the display language to English.

**When the display language is set to English**

Select [Settings] → [Management] → [Language].

### 2 Select [English] and press .

The display language is set to English.

● When you set the display language with the UIM inserted, the setting is recorded to the UIM.

# Security Settings

## ■ About Security Codes

Security Codes Used on the FOMA Terminal .....	116
Changing the Security Code .....	<Change code> 118
Setting the PIN Code .....	<UIM setting> 118
Canceling the PIN Lock.....	119

## ■ Restricting Operations and Functions Available on the Mobile Phone

Various Locking Functions .....	120
Locking the Keypad to Prevent Unauthorized Use .....	<Lock all> 120
Restricting Placing/Receiving Calls .....	<Self mode> 122
Protecting Your Personal Data in the Phonebook, Schedule, etc.....	<PIM lock> 123
Restricting Dialing from the Keypad .....	<Key dial lock> 124

## ■ Restricting Callers and Senders

Setting the Display of the Redial/Received Record .....	<Record display> 124
Displaying the Data Saved as Secret .....	<Secret display> 125
Protecting Mail from Unauthorized Access .....	<Mail security> 125
Specifying Phone Numbers to Accept/Reject Calls .....	<Accept/Reject call> 126
Rejecting Calls with No Caller ID .....	<Denied no ID> 127
Muting the Ring Tone for Calls with No Phonebook Entry .....	<Set ring start time> 127
Rejecting Calls from Callers with No Phonebook Entry .....	<Reject unknown> 128

## ■ Other Measures “For Safety Operation”

Using the Data Security Service .....	<Data Security Service> 128
Other Measures “For Safety Operation” .....	129

## Security Codes Used on the FOMA Terminal

Some functions provided for convenient use of the FOMA terminal require the security code to use them. Besides the Security code for operating the mobile phone, the network security code necessary for the network services, i-mode password, etc. are available. Make use of the FOMA terminal using an appropriate security code according to the purpose.

### Notes on the security codes

- Avoid using a number that is easy to guess, such as “birth date”, “part of your phone number”, “street address number or room number”, “1111”, and “1234”. Make sure to make a note of the security code you set lest you should forget it.
- Be very careful not to let others know your security code. If your security code is known by anyone else, DoCoMo shall have no liability for any loss due to any unauthorized use of it.
- DoCoMo by no means inquires your security code.
- If you forget any of your security codes, you must bring your official identification (such as driver's license), the FOMA terminal, and UIM with you to the nearest DoCoMo shop. For details, call the “General Inquiries” on the backcover of this manual.

## Security Code

The Security code is set to “0000” at the time of purchase. It can be changed by yourself (P.118).



When the Security code screen appears, enter the 4- to 8-digit Security code and press **OK** (OK).

- The entered Security code is displayed as asterisks (\*).

### When you enter the wrong Security code

The message “Invalid security code” appears. Enter the correct Security code.

## Network Security Code

The network security code, a 4-digit number necessary for performing procedures on **ドコモeサイト** (DoCoMo e-site) and using the DoCoMo Network Services, can be set to any number at the time of subscription. It can be also changed later by yourself.

You can change your network security code to the new one using the PC if you have the “DoCoMo ID”/“Password” for the “My DoCoMo” General support site for PC. You can also change it by yourself using i-mode, from “各種手続き” (Applications and Procedures) available on **ドコモeサイト** (DoCoMo e-site).

※ For information on “My DoCoMo” or “DoCoMo e-site”, see the backcover of this manual.

## i-mode Password

The 4-digit “i-mode password” is required when saving/deleting My Menu or subscribing/canceling message service or i-mode charged service, etc.

(There may be other passwords for the i-mode used by IP (information service providers).)

The i-mode password is set to “0000” at the time of subscription. It can be changed by yourself.

You can change the i-mode password using i-mode, by selecting [i Menu] → [English iMenu] → [Options] → [Change i-mode Password].

## PIN1 Code and PIN2 Code

You can set two Security codes, namely PIN1 and PIN2, for the UIM (FOMA card). These codes are set to “0000” at the time of subscription. They can be changed by yourself (P.119).

PIN1 is a 4- to 8-digit number (code) that must be entered for user confirmation to prevent unauthorized use by a third party every time you insert the UIM into the FOMA terminal or when the FOMA terminal is powered on. Only after you enter the PIN1 code, you can use the FOMA terminal for placing/receiving a call and other operation.

PIN2 is a 4- to 8-digit number (code) that must be entered in order to reset the total call cost, use a user certificate, or request the issue of a user certificate.

- If you continue to use the current UIM with a newly purchased FOMA terminal, use the previous PIN1 and PIN2 codes you set for the UIM.



When the PIN1 or PIN2 code input screen appears, enter the 4- to 8-digit PIN1/PIN2 code and press **OK**.

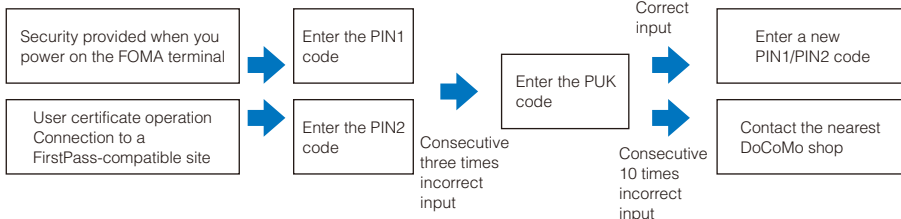
- The entered PIN1/PIN2 code is displayed as asterisks (\*).
- If you enter a wrong PIN1/PIN2 code three times consecutively, the PIN1/PIN2 code is locked and cannot be used anymore. (“X times left” appears on the screen, indicating the remaining number of times for retry operation.)

When you enter the correct PIN1/PIN2 code, the number of times left is reset to 3.

## PUK Code

The PUK code is a 8-digit number for canceling the locked PIN1/PIN2 code. The PUK code cannot be changed by yourself.

- If you enter a wrong PUK code 10 times consecutively, the UIM is locked.



# Changing the Security Code

<Change code>

Default 0000

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [Change code] and press .



- 2 Enter the current Security code and press  (OK).

The entered Security code is displayed as asterisks (\*).

- 3 Enter the new Security code and press  (OK).

Enter a 4- to 8-digit code.

- 4 Select [Yes] and press .

The Security code is changed.

# Setting the PIN Code

<UIM setting>

Default PIN1 code setting: OFF

You can set the FOMA terminal to require the PIN1 code input when powered on. You can change the PIN1 and PIN2 codes.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [UIM setting] and press .

The Security code screen appears.

- 2 Enter the Security code and press  (OK).



- 3 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [PIN1 code setting].

[ON] : You need to enter the PIN1 code when the FOMA terminal is powered on.

[OFF] : Do not need to enter the PIN1 code when the FOMA terminal is powered on.

- 4 Enter a PIN1 code and press  (OK).

The entered PIN1 code is displayed as asterisks (\*).

- The PIN1 code is set to "0000" at the time of subscription.

The PIN1 code setting is set.



## Changing the PIN1 Code/PIN2 Code

Default | Change PIN1 code · Change PIN2 code: 0000

- To change the PIN1 code, set the PIN1 code setting to [ON].

Example: Changing the PIN1 code

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [UIM setting] and press .

The Security code screen appears.


**2** Enter the Security code and press  (OK).

The UIM setting display appears.

**3** Select [Change PIN1 code] and press .



To change the PIN2 code  
Select [Change PIN2 code].

**4** Enter the current PIN1 code and press  (OK).

The entered PIN1/PIN2 code is displayed as asterisks (\*).

**5** Enter a new PIN1 code and press  (OK).

Enter a 4- to 8-digit code.

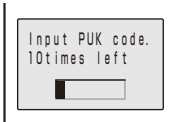
**6** Enter the new PIN1 code again and press  (OK).

The new PIN1 code is set.

## Canceling the PIN Lock

Example: Canceling the PIN1 code lock

**1** Enter the 8-digit PUK code and press  (OK).



The entered PUK code is displayed as asterisks (\*).

**2** Enter a new PIN1 code and press  (OK).

Enter a 4- to 8-digit code.

The entered PIN1 code is displayed as asterisks (\*).

**3** Enter the new PIN1 code again and press  (OK).

The PIN lock is canceled and the PIN1 code is changed to the new one.

## Various Locking Functions

The FOMA terminal offers many lock functions to assure safety operation, such as preventing unauthorized use of the FOMA terminal, protecting the Phonebook from being seen by others. You can use any mix of these functions depending on the purpose.




Functions	Description
Lock all	Prevent others from using the FOMA terminal (P.120).
Omakase Lock	Lock the FOMA terminal to prevent others from using it. For example, this service is useful when you lose or misplace the FOMA terminal (P.121).
Self mode	Disable all functions that involve calls and communication, such as placing/receiving a voice or videophone call, originating/receiving a PushTalk call, sending/receiving mail, infrared communication, or the infrared remote control (P.122).
PIM lock	Disable some functions to prevent others from viewing/editing your personal information such as the Phonebook and Schedule data (P.123).
Key dial lock	Disable the dial keys to prevent placing a voice/videophone call or originating a PushTalk call (P.124).
Record display	Set the Redial, Dial frequency, and Received records not to be displayed (P.124).
Secret display	Display/not display phonebook entries (PushTalk phonebook)/Own number/schedules saved as Secret (P.125).
Mail security	Set the FOMA terminal not to display the saved mail, Receive ranking, etc. (P.125).
Accept/Reject call	Accept/reject a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call from a specific phone number/group when it is received (P.126).
Denied no ID	Set not to accept a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call without the caller's phone number (P.127).
Set ring start time	Set a time interval before performing the receiving operation for a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call from a caller who is not saved in the Phonebook (P.127).
Reject unknown	Reject a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call from a caller who is not saved in the Phonebook (P.128).
IC card lock	Lock the IC card to prevent others from using the IC card function (P.202).

## Locking the Keypad to Prevent Unauthorized Use

<Lock all>

Default | OFF



You can set the Lock all to prevent others from using the FOMA terminal. When the Lock all is set, you cannot perform any operation other than powering on/off the FOMA terminal and answering a voice or videophone call.

- 1** From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Lock/Security] → [Lock all] and press .  
The Security code screen appears.
- 2** Enter the Security code and press  (OK).  
The screen for confirming whether to set the Lock all appears.
- 3** Select [Yes] and press .

The Lock all is set and the message "Lock all" appears in the stand-by display.

### To cancel the Lock all

Enter the Security code and press  (OK).


- To call emergency numbers (110, 119, and 118) when the Lock all is set, enter the emergency number and press . The emergency number is displayed as asterisks (✳) in the security code input field of the Security code screen.
- The FOMA terminal is powered off after five unsuccessful attempts to cancel the Lock all.
- When the Lock all is set, the default ring tone and incoming image are used for an incoming voice or videophone call. In this case, not the caller's name but the caller's phone number is displayed. Chaku-moji, if received, is not displayed, but when you cancel the Lock all, Chaku-moji can be checked in the Received record (P.50).
- When the Lock all is set, you cannot send a substitute image to answer a videophone call. You can only adjust the volume of the caller's voice or switch the camera during a call.
- If there is an incoming PushTalk call when the Lock all is set, the FOMA terminal does not receive the call and the caller hears a busy tone. The call is saved in the Received record. When you cancel the Lock all, the notification icon “” (Missed call) appears.
- When the Lock all is set, i-mode mail, Message R/F, and SMS are still received automatically, however, the receiving operations, such as displaying the incoming mail display or the received mail display or the sounding of the ring tone, are not performed and you are not notified of the reception.
- When you set the Lock all, the Alarm and Schedule alarm do not operate.
- If you set the Lock all, the image of the stand-by display is changed to that set for the Menu pattern. The i-Channel Telop text is not displayed.
- When you set the Lock all, the notification icons are not displayed. When you cancel the Lock all, the icons are displayed again.

## Using the Omakase Lock

Omakase Lock is a service that allows you to lock the FOMA terminal remotely if you lose the FOMA terminal by requesting DoCoMo or using a procedure available on the My DoCoMo website. Use this service to protect your important private information and Osafu-Keitai. You can also request DoCoMo by a call, etc. to unlock the FOMA terminal.

※ Omakase Lock is a paid service. When you subscribe to this service together with your request to suspend the FOMA terminal or while the FOMA terminal is suspended, the service charge is not required.

### Setting/Canceling the Omakase Lock

 0120-524-360

**Service hours: 24 hours**

※ You can also use your PC to set/cancel the lock from the My DoCoMo website.

- For details on how to use/charges, etc. of the Omakase Lock, see the “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Procedures and After-Sales Services]” or call the “General Inquiries” on the backcover of this manual.

おまかせロック中

The message “おまかせロック中” appears and the Omakase Lock is set.

- The Omakase Lock service locks a FOMA terminal if it has an installed UIM card you are currently subscribing to.
- When the Omakase Lock is set, the user can answer a voice or videophone call and power on/off the FOMA terminal, but all keypad operation is locked and all functions (including the IC card function) are disabled.
- When the Omakase Lock is set, the received mail is stored at the Mail Center.
- Although the user can power on/off the FOMA terminal, powering off does not cancel the lock.
- Note, however, that the UIM and microSD memory card are not locked.

- Any other active function is terminated when the Omakase Lock is set.
- The Omakase Lock can be used even when another lock function is set. If you set the Omakase Lock while the Public mode (Drive mode) is set, you cannot receive a voice or videophone call.
- The Omakase Lock cannot be set if the FOMA terminal is outside of the service area, in the Self mode, or powered off.
- The Omakase Lock cannot be set if you subscribe to the Dual Network Service and use the Mova service.
- The Omakase Lock service locks the FOMA terminal upon request from a subscriber of the UIM inserted in the FOMA terminal. Even if this UIM subscriber and user of the FOMA terminal are different, the FOMA terminal is locked if requested by the subscriber.
- You can cancel the Omakase Lock only when the UIM the phone number of which is the same as of the one inserted when you set the lock is inserted in the FOMA terminal. If the lock cannot be canceled, call the "General Inquiries" on the backcover of this manual.
- When the Omakase Lock is set, the default ring tone and incoming image are used for an incoming voice or videophone call. In this case, not the caller's name but the caller's phone number is displayed. Chaku-moji, if received, is not displayed, but when you cancel the Omakase Lock, Chaku-moji can be checked in the Received record (P.50).
- When the Omakase Lock is set, you cannot send a substitute image to answer a videophone call. You can only adjust the volume of the caller's voice and switch the camera during a call.

## Restricting Placing/Receiving Calls

<Self mode>

Default OFF

You can disable all functions that involve calls or communication, such as placing/receiving a voice or videophone call, originating/receiving a PushTalk call, and sending/receiving mail. You cannot use infrared communication, infrared remote control, and iC communication, either.

### 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Self mode] and press .

The screen for confirming Self mode setting appears.

#### To cancel the Self mode

Select [Yes] on the screen for confirming whether to cancel the Self mode.

### 2 Select [Yes] and press .



The Self mode is set and "self" appears.

- Even if the Self mode is set, you can call emergency numbers (110, 119, and 118). The Self mode is canceled after you call an emergency number.
- If there is an incoming voice call when the Self mode is set, the caller hears a guidance informing that the FOMA terminal is outside of the service area or the FOMA terminal is powered off. When using the DoCoMo Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, these services can be used in the same manner as when the FOMA terminal is powered off.
- If you receive a PushTalk call when the Self mode is set, the call is disconnected. If the received call is for the PushTalk communication among several persons, the message "☒Disconnect" appears in the On PushTalk display of the members.

Default OFF

You can disable the following functions to prevent others from viewing/editing your personal information such as the Phonebook and Schedule data.


- MUSIC Player
- Mail
- Own number
- Voice memo
- IC card content
- Data Box
- Animation setting
- Scan function
- Multi Number
- LTC (Lifetime Calendar)
- i-mode
- Phonebook
- Bar code reader
- Alarm
- Stand-by disp.
- Ring tone
- Software Update
- Chaku-moji
- Camera
- i-Channel
- PushTalk phonebook
- Infrared communication
- Schedule
- Sub display
- Incoming image (Receiving img)
- Reset settings
- microSD
- i- $\alpha$ ppli
- Record message
- ToruCa
- Text memo
- Icon settings
- Substitute image
- Reset all data&set

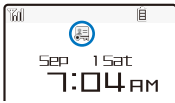
- When the Reject unknown is set, you cannot set the PIM lock.

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Lock/Security] → [PIM lock] and press .

The Security code screen appears.

**2** Enter the Security code and press  (OK).











**3** Select [ON] and press .



The PIM lock is set and “” appears.

**To cancel the PIM lock**


Select [OFF]. The PIM lock is canceled and “” disappears.

- When the PIM lock and Key dial lock are set simultaneously, “” is displayed instead of “”.
- If you set the PIM lock when data other than that of the Menu pattern or that preinstalled in the [Preinstall] folder of the Data Box is set for the image, substitute image, or ring tone in the stand-by or other display, the setting is reset to the default setting. If you cancel the PIM lock, the image or ring tone you set is restored.
- When the PIM lock is set, the regular ring tone, incoming image (excluding PushTalk), and indicator color are used for an incoming voice, videophone, or PushTalk call. In this case, not the caller's name but the caller's phone number is displayed. Chaku-moji, if received, is not displayed, but when you cancel the PIM lock, Chaku-moji can be checked in the Received record (P.50).
- When the PIM lock is set, i-mode mail, Message R/F, and SMS are still received automatically, however, the receiving operations, such as displaying the incoming mail display or the received mail display or the sounding of the ring tone, are not performed and you are not notified of the reception.
- When you set the PIM lock, the name, phone type icon, and Chaku-moji are not displayed in the Redial/Received record.
- When you set the PIM lock, the Alarm and Schedule alarm do not operate.
- When you set the PIM lock, all incoming call is accepted regardless of the Accept/Reject call setting.
- When you set the PIM lock, the i-Channel Telop text is not displayed.
- When you set the PIM lock, the FOMA terminal does not display the notification icons “” (New mail), “” (Mail at center), “” (New ToruCa), “” (New Record msg), “” (New V.phone msg), “” (Voice Mail), “” (PB update failed), and “” (Stand-by SW error). When you cancel the PIM lock, these icons are displayed again.

Default OFF

The keypad is locked to restrict placing a voice or videophone call or originating a PushTalk call. To cancel the Key dial lock temporarily, enter the Security code.


- When you set the Key dial lock, you cannot perform the following functions.
  - Place a call using the keys on the keypad (excluding calls made by the 2-touch dial or using the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch), place a call using the Received record, or [Call back] from i-mode mail
  - Add a member during PushTalk communication using the keys on the keypad
  - Place a call to a recipient who is not saved in the Phonebook using the Redial/Dial frequency record
  - Send i-mode mail or SMS to a recipient who is not saved in the Phonebook
  - Phone To (AV Phone To) or Mail To
  - Save new data or edit/delete data in the Phonebook
  - Operate the Phonebook stored in the microSD memory card

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Lock/Security] → [Key dial lock] and press .  
The Security code screen appears.


**2** Enter the Security code and press  (OK).



**3** Select [ON] and press .



The Key dial lock is set and “” appears.

To cancel the Key dial lock

Select [OFF]. The Key dial lock is canceled and “” disappears.




- When the Key dial lock and PIM lock are set simultaneously, “” is displayed instead of “”.
- Even if the Key dial lock is set, you can call emergency numbers (110, 119, and 118).


## Setting the Display of the Redial/Received Record


<Record display>

Default ON

The Redial, Dial frequency, and Received record can be set not to be displayed. Playback of the Record message is also disabled. To cancel the Record display temporarily, enter the Security code.

**1** Press  (  ) in the stand-by display and press  (Func).  
The Function menu appears.

**2** Select [Set call record] → [Record display] and press .  
The Security code screen appears.

**3** Enter the Security code and press  (OK).  
The Record display appears.

**4** Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .  
The Record display is set.

- The call is saved in the Redial/Received record even if the Record display is [OFF].


## Displaying the Data Saved as Secret

<Secret display>

Default OFF

The Phonebook (PushTalk phonebook), Own number, and Schedule saved as Secret are not displayed unless the Secret display is set to [ON]. Make sure to save the Phonebook, Own number, and Schedule as Secret if you do not want others to see them.

- Even if the Secret display is set to [ON], it is changed to [OFF] when you power off the FOMA terminal.

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Lock/Security] → [Secret display] and press .  
The Security code screen appears.

**2** Enter the Security code and press  (OK).

**3** Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The Secret display is set.

When set to [ON], “” appears.

- When the Secret display is set to [ON], the name and phone type are displayed in the Redial/Received record even if a caller or recipient is saved as Secret in the Phonebook. Even if changed to [OFF] later, the name and phone type are still displayed in the Redial/Received record.

## Protecting Mail from Unauthorized Access

<Mail security>

You can set the FOMA terminal not to display the received/sent/saved mail by folder. You can also use this function not to display the Receive/Send ranking and Sort inbox/outbox. To cancel this function temporarily, enter the Security code.

**1** From the Mail menu, select [Inbox]/[Outbox]/[Draft] and press .

**2** Press  (Func).


The Function menu appears.

**3** Select [Mail security] and press .

The Security code screen appears.

**4** Enter the Security code and press  (OK).

The Mail security set display appears.

**5** Select a folder to be locked and press .

“” appears.

To lock all folders

Press  (Slct all).

To unlock the selected folder

Press  (Rel.).

**6** Press  (Complete).

The Mail security is set and “” (yellow)/“” (blue)/“” appears (P.178).


# Specifying Phone Numbers to Accept/Reject Calls <Accept/Reject call>


Default | Set: OFF

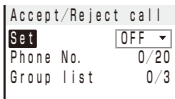
You can set to accept/reject voice, videophone, or PushTalk calls only from specific phone numbers. For the Accept/Reject calls, up to 20 phone numbers can be saved (Phone No.). You can also set to accept/reject calls only from specific groups in the FOMA terminal phonebook. For the Accept/Reject calls, up to three groups can be saved (Group list). This function is valid only when a caller sends the phone number. It is recommended to set the Caller ID Display Request Service and the Denied no ID together with this function.

- SMS and i-mode mail can be received regardless of this function.
- For an incoming PushTalk call, it is only to the caller's phone number that the Accept/Reject call setting is valid. The Accept/Reject setting does not work even if you set it to a member other than the caller. When you make the Accept/Reject setting through the Group list, a call is accepted/rejected if the caller of it belongs to the specified group in the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- When the PIM lock is set, you cannot set the Accept/Reject calls.

Example: Setting [Accept]/[Reject] for calls from specified phone numbers

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Lock/Security] → [Acpt/Rjct call] and press .  
The Security code screen appears.

**2** Enter the Security code and press  (OK).



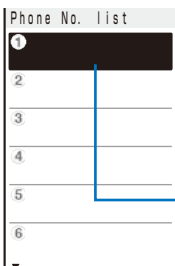
**3** Select [Accept]/[Reject] at [Set].

[Accept] : Set to accept a call. When you receive a call from a phone number/group other than specified, the call is not connected. The missed call notification icon appears and the call is saved in the Received record.

[Reject] : Set to reject a call. When you receive a call from a specified phone number/group, the call is not connected. The missed call notification icon appears and the call is saved in the Received record.

[OFF] : Cancel the Accept/Reject call setting.

**4** Select [Phone No.] and press .



**To specify a group**

Select [Group list] and select a group at the group field.

**To delete a phone number or group**

Move the cursor to the number or group field and from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete all numbers or groups, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all] → [Yes].

**5** Enter a phone number at the number field.

**6** Press .

The list is saved and the Accept/Reject call display is restored.



## 7 Press (Complete).

The Accept/Reject call from specified phone numbers is set.

## Rejecting Calls with No Caller ID

<Denied no ID>

Default OFF

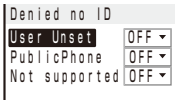
When receiving a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call without the caller's phone number displayed, the reason for not displaying it is shown. You can decide whether to accept a call based on the reason.

- SMS and i-mode mail can be received regardless of this function.
- If you receive a call with no caller ID when the Denied no ID is [ON], the call is not connected. The missed call notification icon appears and the call is saved in the Received record.

### 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Lock/Security] → [Denied no ID] and press .

The Security code screen appears.

### 2 Enter the Security code and press (OK).



### 3 Select [ON]/[OFF] of the Denied no ID for each non-display reason.

The Denied no ID is set.

## Muting the Ring Tone for Calls with No Phonebook Entry

<Set ring start time>

Default Set: OFF, Start time: 4 sec, Missed call display: OFF

You can set a time interval before starting operation of the ring tone, incoming indicator, and vibrator when you receive a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call from a person/group who is not saved in the Phonebook. This function is also useful for blocking a nuisance call such as from a malicious caller.

- When the Reject unknown is set, you cannot set the Set ring start time.

### 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Call assist] → [Set ring start time] and press .



### 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] for the Set ring start time at [Set].

### 3 Enter the time before starting the ring tone for an incoming call at [Start time].

Enter from 01 to 99 seconds.

#### 4 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Missed call display].

[ON] : Display all calls in the Received record.

[OFF] : For a call the start time of which is shorter than the set time, neither the missed call notification icon nor the received record is displayed. The call is saved in the Received record. When the operation of the record message or videophone message is started, the notification icon of missed call appears and the received record is displayed.

#### 5 Press (Complete).

The Set ring start time is set.

- In the following cases, the Set ring start time setting works to a call even if you receive it from a person saved in the Phonebook.
  - A call from a person saved as Secret in the Phonebook (when the Secret display is set to [OFF])
  - A call with no caller ID
  - When the PIM lock is set
- To display all received records when the Missed call display is [OFF], from the Function menu in the Received record display, select [Display all].
- If the time set for the Start time is same as that for the answer or ring times for the Record message, Auto answer, Voice Mail Service, and Call Forwarding Service, the ring tone may sound.

## Rejecting Calls from Callers with No Phonebook Entry <Reject unknown>

Default | OFF

You can set to reject voice, videophone, or PushTalk calls from callers not saved in the Phonebook. It is recommended that you set the Caller ID Display Request Service together with this function.

- SMS and i-mode mail can be received regardless of this function.
- If you receive a call from a caller who is not saved in the Phonebook when the Reject unknown is [ON], the call is not connected. The missed call notification icon appears and the call is saved in the Received record.
- When the Set ring start time or PIM lock is set, you cannot set the Reject unknown.

#### 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Lock/Security] → [Reject unknown] and press .

The Security code screen appears.

#### 2 Enter the Security code and press (OK).

#### 3 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The Reject unknown is set.

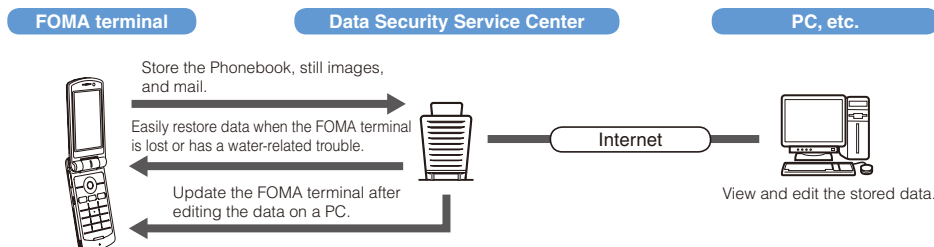
- In the following cases, the Reject unknown setting works to a call even if you receive it from a person saved in the Phonebook.
  - A call from a person saved as Secret in the Phonebook (when the Secret display is set to [OFF])
  - A call with no caller ID

## Using the Data Security Service <Data Security Service>

The Data Security Service is a service that allows you to store the Phonebook, still images, and mail (hereinafter referred to as “stored data”) saved in the FOMA terminal at the Data Security Service Center.

Even if you lose the stored data, for example, if you accidentally lost the FOMA terminal or it had a water-related trouble, you can restore the Phonebook and other stored data at the Center into a new FOMA terminal. Furthermore, you can easily edit the stored data at the Data Security Service Center by accessing the My DoCoMo website on your PC, and save the edited stored data in the FOMA terminal.

※ For details on how to use the Data Security Service, see the “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.



※ Data Security Service is a paid service that requires a subscription. (To apply for this service, you need an i-mode subscription.)

- Saving the Phonebook (P.95)
- Saving the mail (P.180)
- Saving the still images (P.206)

## Other Measures “For Safety Operation”

The following functions and services are also available for safety operation besides those described in this chapter.

Purpose	Function name/Service name	Page
Prevent others from using the IC card function without consent.	IC card lock	P.202
Do not receive a “nuisance call” such as a prank call and malicious sales call.	Nuisance Call Blocking Service	P.261
Do not receive a call without a caller ID.	Caller ID Display Request Service	P.262
Use the electronic authentication service to perform secure and reliable data communication (available only when accessing FirstPass-compatible sites).	FirstPass	P.162
Update of the FOMA terminal software when it is necessary.	SW Update	P.299
Protect the FOMA terminal from data that could cause trouble.	Scan function	P.303
Choose to receive only necessary mail when receiving i-mode mail.	Recv option setting	P.175, 183
Register or check information about your or someone’s condition using i-mode in the event of a disaster.	i-mode Disaster Message Board Service	See the “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.
Change or confirm the mail address.	Change/Confirm Mail Address	
Reject mail that contains URLs.	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject Mail with URL)	
Receive/reject mail from specific domains.	Spam Mail Prevention (Receive/Reject Mail Settings)	
Receive/reject mail only from i-mode users.		
Receive/reject mail from specific addresses.		
Do not receive SMS messages.	Spam Mail Prevention (SMS Rejection Settings)	
Do not receive mail from an i-mode compatible mobile phone if the number of mail sent from it reaches 200 a day.	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
Do not receive advertising mail sent without prior agreement.	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
Limit the size of received mail.	Limiting mail size	
Confirm the current settings of the mail function.	Confirm Settings	
Disable the mail function temporarily.	Suspend Mail	



# Camera

Before Using the Camera .....	132
Recording Still Images .....	<Shoot by photo> 136
Recording Movies .....	<Movie shoot> 139
Changing the Camera Settings .....	140
Adjusting the Camera during Recording .....	142
Setting the Camera Operation .....	145
Using the Bar Code Reader .....	<Bar code reader> 149

## Before Using the Camera

You can record images by the FOMA terminal's built-in camera, which you can send by attaching to i-mode mail and set for the stand-by display, etc.

To use the microSD memory card, you need to obtain a microSD memory card separately. If you do not have a microSD memory card, you can purchase one at a home electric appliance store or other similar store (P.211).

- The image recorded by the camera may differ from actual color or brightness of object.

### About Using the Camera

#### Notes Before Using the Camera

- Clear images cannot be obtained if the camera lens is stained with fingerprints or grease. Wipe the camera with a soft clean cloth before recording an image.
- Leaving the FOMA terminal in a place exposed to direct sunlight or high temperature for a long period of time may deteriorate the image quality.
- You cannot start the Camera mode when the battery level is very low. To use the camera, charge the battery sufficiently.
- The Camera mode may not be activated when the FOMA terminal is charged electrostatically.

#### Notes on Using the Camera

- To prevent shaking, hold the FOMA terminal firmly or place it on a stable place and use the Auto timer when recording.
- When you try to record a strong light source directly, such as the sun or a lamp, the screen may black out or the image on the screen may be distorted.
- The camera is manufactured based on the leading edge technologies, and black and bright points or lines may appear constantly in the display. Additionally, increased noise may appear as white lines when recording in a low-light environment. These are not malfunctions.
- When the battery level becomes very low in the Camera mode, the Camera mode is terminated.


### About the Copyright

Objects, such as movies, still images, and sounds, recorded using the FOMA terminal are prohibited from reproduction, transformation and transmission over public lines without consent of the copyright holders, unless intended for personal use or any other purpose permitted by law.

Note that some performances, shows, and exhibitions may not allow photography, movie shooting, or sound recording even for personal use.

⚠ Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

### About the Camera Mode

To use the camera, open the FOMA terminal and press the shutter  for over a second in the stand-by display. The Camera mode is activated, an image through the camera lens appears in the display, and the photo light is turned on (low light).

To terminate the Camera mode, press .

- The Camera mode is terminated automatically if the keypad is not pressed for about two minutes.

## About Still Image/Movie

Item	Still image	Movie
File format	JPEG (Exif format)	MP4 (MobileMP4)
File name	<p><b>When saved to [Data Box]</b> YYYYMMDDhhmmss</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The recorded year, month, date, hour, minute, second is displayed. For example, when a still image is recorded at September 1, 2007, 18:02:10, it appears as "20070901180210".</li> <li>When using the Continuous mode, 00 to 03 is added after the year, month, date, hour, minute, second, resulting in a format like "20070901180210_00".</li> </ul> <p><b>When saved to [microSD]</b> DSC0nnnn</p>	<p><b>When saved to [Data Box]</b> YYYYMMDDhhmmss</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The recorded year, month, date, hour, minute, second is displayed. For example, when a movie is recorded at September 1, 2007, 18:02:10, it appears as "20070901180210".</li> </ul> <p><b>When saved to [microSD]</b> MOLnnn</p>
File number	<p>NNN-nnnn</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The file number is displayed when saved to [microSD]. You can reset the file number (P.147).</li> </ul>	—

- A number "100 to 999" is assigned to "NNN", "001 to FFF" is assigned to "nnn", and "0001 to 9999" is assigned to "nnnn" in the order of recorded time.
- If you have not set the date/time, the file name is displayed as "-----".

## Number of Still Images You Can Save

The number of still images that can be saved in the Data Box or microSD memory card varies depending on the image quality and size, recording conditions, and object of shooting.

### ■ Estimated number of still images you can record and save in the Data Box

Image size Image quality	sQCIF (128×96)	QCIF (176×144)	QVGA (240×320)	Stby (240×432)	CIF (352×288)	VGA (640×480)	1M (1280×960)	2M (1632×1224)
Fine	About 1,280	About 853	About 466	About 342	About 366	About 197	About 52	About 34
Standard	About 1,500	About 1,024	About 640	About 512	About 569	About 285	About 80	About 52
Economy	About 1,500	About 1,280	About 1,024	About 732	About 853	About 427	About 122	About 80

### ■ Estimated number of still images you can record and save in the microSD memory card (64MB)

Image size Image quality	sQCIF (128×96)	QCIF (176×144)	QVGA (240×320)	Stby (240×432)	CIF (352×288)	VGA (640×480)	1M (1280×960)	2M (1632×1224)
Fine	About 3,738	About 1,883	About 1,259	About 945	About 945	About 541	About 151	About 97
Standard	About 3,738	About 1,883	About 1,883	About 1,259	About 1,259	About 757	About 237	About 151
Economy	About 3,738	About 3,738	About 1,883	About 1,883	About 1,883	About 1,259	About 344	About 237

## About Recording Time of Movie

The recording time of movie that can be saved in the Data Box or microSD memory card varies depending on the recorded image quality, Shoot mode, image size, file size restriction settings as well as the recording conditions and object of shooting.

### ■ Estimated recording time of movie you can record and save in the Data Box

(m: minute, s: second)

File size restriction	Image size	Shoot mode	Recording time available for each movie				Total recording time available			
			Image quality				Image quality			
			Super fine	Fine	Standard	Economy	Super fine	Fine	Standard	Economy
Attach(S)	—	Sound only	About 304s				About 197m			
	QVGA (320×240)	Image only	About 10s	—	—	—	About 390s	—	—	—
		Image+Sound	About 10s	—	—	—	About 390s	—	—	—
	QCIF (176×144)	Image only	About 21s	About 32s	About 77s	About 168s	About 13m	About 20m	About 50m	About 109m
		Image+Sound	About 20s	About 29s	About 68s	About 130s	About 13m	About 18m	About 44m	About 84m
	sQCIF (128×96)	Image only	—	About 63s	About 130s	About 214s	—	About 40m	About 84m	About 139m
Image+Sound		—	About 53s	About 105s	About 155s	—	About 34m	About 68m	About 100m	
Attach(L)	—	Sound only	About 20m				About 187m			
	QVGA (320×240)	Image only	About 43s	—	—	—	About 387s	—	—	—
		Image+Sound	About 41s	—	—	—	About 369s	—	—	—
	QCIF (176×144)	Image only	About 89s	About 132s	About 317s	About 11m	About 13m	About 19m	About 47m	About 103m
		Image+Sound	About 83s	About 120s	About 279s	About 534s	About 12m	About 18m	About 41m	About 80m
	sQCIF (128×96)	Image only	—	About 261s	About 534s	About 14m	—	About 39m	About 80m	About 131m
Image+Sound		—	About 217s	About 434s	About 10m	—	About 32m	About 65m	About 95m	

### ■ Estimated recording time of movie you can record and save in the microSD memory card (64MB)


(m: minute, s: second)

File size restriction	Image size	Shoot mode	Recording time available for each movie				Total recording time available			
			Image quality				Image quality			
			Super fine	Fine	Standard	Economy	Super fine	Fine	Standard	Economy
Attach(S)	—	Sound only	About 304s				About 663m			
	QVGA (320×240)	Image only	About 10s	—	—	—	About 21m	—	—	—
		Image+Sound	About 10s	—	—	—	About 21m	—	—	—
	QCIF (176×144)	Image only	About 21s	About 32s	About 77s	About 168s	About 45m	About 69m	About 168m	About 366m
		Image+Sound	About 20s	About 29s	About 68s	About 130s	About 43m	About 63m	About 148m	About 283m
	sQCIF (128×96)	Image only	—	About 63s	About 130s	About 214s	—	About 137m	About 283m	About 467m
Image+Sound		—	About 53s	About 105s	About 155s	—	About 115m	About 229m	About 338m	
Attach(L)	—	Sound only	About 20m				About 644m			
	QVGA (320×240)	Image only	About 43s	—	—	—	About 22m	—	—	—
		Image+Sound	About 41s	—	—	—	About 21m	—	—	—
	QCIF (176×144)	Image only	About 89s	About 132s	About 317s	About 11m	About 45m	About 68m	About 163m	About 358m
		Image+Sound	About 83s	About 120s	About 279s	About 534s	About 42m	About 62m	About 144m	About 275m
	sQCIF (128×96)	Image only	—	About 261s	About 534s	About 14m	—	About 134m	About 275m	About 454m
Image+Sound		—	About 217s	About 434s	About 10m	—	About 112m	About 224m	About 329m	
No limit	—	Sound only	About 60m				About 665m			
	QVGA (320×240)	Image only	About 22m	—	—	—	About 22m	—	—	—
		Image+Sound	About 22m	—	—	—	About 22m	—	—	—
	QCIF (176×144)	Image only	About 47m	About 60m	About 60m	About 60m	About 47m	About 70m	About 169m	About 369m
		Image+Sound	About 44m	About 60m	About 60m	About 60m	About 44m	About 64m	About 148m	About 285m
	sQCIF (128×96)	Image only	—	About 60m	About 60m	About 60m	—	About 139m	About 285m	About 469m
Image+Sound		—	About 60m	About 60m	About 60m	—	About 116m	About 232m	About 340m	

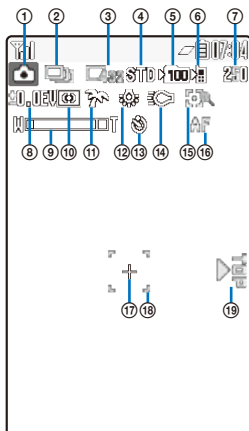


## Icons in the Camera Mode

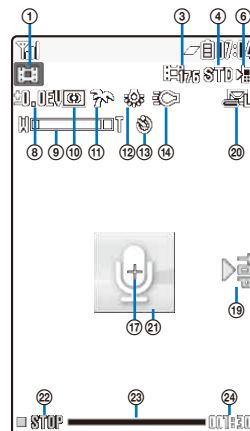
In the Camera mode display, the following icons appear depending on the settings and functions selected.










- You can use  (Display) to switch the display of the icons and guide display (Standard, Simple, or Display off). Even if you select "Display off", related icons are displayed when you perform any operations.

When recording a still image



When recording a movie




- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>① Shoot mode (P.148)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•  appears when recording a still image.</li> </ul> <p>② Shoot mode (P.137, 138)</p> <p>③ Image size (P.140)</p> <p>④ Image quality (P.146)</p> <p>⑤  100 The number of a folder to save to</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when saving data to/playing data from the microSD memory card (does not appear when no microSD memory card is inserted).</li> </ul> <p>⑥ Save to (P.145)</p> <p>⑦ Estimated number of images that can be recorded</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the number of images that can be recorded is higher than 9,999, "99999" appears.</li> </ul> <p>⑧ EV (P.144)</p> <p>⑨ Zoom (P.142)</p> <p>⑩ Photometry (P.144)</p> <p>⑪ Select scene (P.143)</p> <p>⑫ White balance (P.143)</p> | <p>⑬ Auto timer ON (P.141)</p> <p>⑭ Photo light ON (P.141)</p> <p>⑮ Auto focus ON (P.147)</p> <p>⑯ During the Auto focus operation</p> <p>⑰ Spot photometry (P.144)</p> <p>⑱ Auto focus frame</p> <p>⑲ Recording direction indication (P.140, 142)</p> <p>⑳ File size restriction (P.148)</p> <p>㉑  Recording sound only</p> <p>㉒ Recording status</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> Stopped</li> <li> During image recording</li> <li> During image playing</li> <li> During pausing</li> <li> During image fast-forwarding</li> <li> During image reversing</li> </ul> <p>㉓ Progress bar</p> <p>㉔ Estimated recordable time</p> |
|--|---|

When recording with the Out-camera, you can use the Auto focus function to focus on an object at the center of the display and record still images.

- The minimum allowable distance for the Auto focus between the camera and an object is 20 cm using [Normal mode] and 10 cm using [Closeup mode].
- You cannot use the Auto focus when you set the Select scene to [Night scene]/[Low Light] for recording still images.

**1** Press  for over a second in the stand-by display.

The Camera mode display appears.



**2** Point the camera at the object and press  (Shoot).



The white-framed focusing window is used to adjust the focus. When the image comes into focus, the confirmation sound is heard, and the focusing window turns green. A still image is recorded with the shutter sound and the screen for confirming whether to save the image appears.

- When failed to adjust the focus, the white-framed focusing window turns red.

**To focus on an area other than the center of the display**

Press  first to activate the Auto focus, point the camera at the object, and press .

**To switch to the In-camera**

From the Function menu, select [Shoot] → [Switch camera] → [In camera]. When using the In-camera, the white-framed focusing window does not appear, indicating that the Auto focus function is disabled.


**To record images using **

Press .

**3** Press  (Save).

The still image is saved.

**To attach to mail**

Press  (Func) for over a second. The still image is saved and the Edit mail display appears.

**To cancel a recorded image**

Press  and select [Yes].

**To save as a mirror image during In-camera recording**



From the Function menu, select [Save mirror img]. To switch between Normal-img and Mirror-img, from the Function menu, select [Mirror image]/[Normal image].

- When there is not enough memory or the number of saved images exceeds the maximum number, the message appears. Change the place to save the image or delete unnecessary images.
- When you switch to the Shoot by photo mode from the Movie shoot mode, the following items are reset.



Item	Default setting	Item	Default setting
Change screen	to vertical	Auto timer	OFF
Zoom magnification	× 1	Picture effect	OFF

- The image may not be saved when you receive a call before the shutter sound ends.
- Depending on the ON/OFF setting of the photo light set before using the camera, the photo light flashes in the following way and its status of lighting that is set before using the camera is restored after a still image is saved.
  - Record at [ON] (full light) : Before starting/after completing recording, the photo light flashes once for each and is turned off.
  - Record at [OFF] (low light) : After completing recording, the photo light flashes once and is turned off.
- Depending on the object of shooting and the recording conditions, you may not be able to adjust focus or an unexpected portion may be brought into focus.
- When you record an object under the following conditions, the Auto focus may not be able to adjust the focus of the object.
  - The object does not have color contrast.
  - The object is moving.
  - You are recording in a dark place.
  - You are recording while moving the FOMA terminal.
  - There is a light within range of the camera view.

## Recording Still Images in the Continuous Mode

You can record four still images continuously at an interval of about 0.2 seconds with a single press of  (Shoot) or .


- The size of the images in the Continuous mode is [QVGA(240×320)]. You cannot change the size of images.
- If you set the Shoot mode to [Continuous mode] while the Select scene is set to [Night scene] or [Low Light], the Select scene is changed to [AUTO].

**1** Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Shoot] → [Shoot mode] → [Continuous mode], and press .

**2** Press  (Close).



The Shoot mode is set to [Continuous mode] and “” appears.

**3** Point the camera at the object and press  (Shoot).

The white-framed focusing window is used to adjust the focus. When the image comes into focus, the confirmation sound is heard, and the focusing window turns green. Images are recorded continuously with the burst sound, and the screen for confirming whether to save the images appears.



**4** Press  (Save).

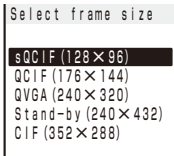
Four continuous images are saved.


## Recording Images with Frames

You can record an image with a frame, which can be selected from the preinstalled frames or downloaded frames.

- For Out-camera recording, you can select a frame size of [sQCIF(128×96)], [QCIF(176×144)], [QVGA(240×320)], [Stand-by(240×432)], and [CIF(352×288)]. For In-camera recording, you can select the frame size of [sQCIF(128×96)], [QCIF(176×144)], and [CIF(352×288)].
- The size of images recorded with a frame is determined according to the frame you selected and cannot be changed.

- 1** Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Shoot] → [Shoot mode] → [Shoot with frame], and press .



- 2** Select a frame size and press .

The Stamp&Frame display appears.


- 3** Select a frame and press .

### To check a frame

Move the cursor to a frame and press  (Play).

- 4** Press  (Close).

The Shoot mode is set to [Shoot with frame] and "" and the selected frame appear.

- 5** Point the camera at the object and press  (Shoot).



The white-framed focusing window is used to adjust the focus. When the image comes into focus, the confirmation sound is heard, and the focusing window turns green. A still image is recorded with the shutter sound and the screen for confirming whether to save the image appears.

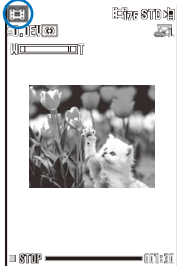
- 6** Press  (Save).

The image is saved.


You can make movie recordings with the built-in camera.

- The movie recording time varies depending on where to save a movie (P.134).


- 1 Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Shoot] → [Switch mode] → [Movie shoot], and press .






The display switches to the Movie shoot display and “” appears.

- 2 Point the camera at the object and press  (Shoot).

The recording start tone is heard and the movie is recorded. “ STOP” changes to “ REC”.


- While you record a movie, the photo light lights, the illumination indicator ( in P.25) flashes, and the estimated recordable time is displayed by both a bar and numbers under the image.

#### To pause recording

Press  (Pause). The recording pause tone sounds and “ PAUSE” appears. To restart the recording, press  (Record).

#### To record movies using

Press . To end the recording, press .

- 3 Press  (Stop) to end recording.

The recording end tone is heard, the recording is stopped, and the screen for confirming whether to save the movie appears.

- Both the photo light and the illumination indicator ( in P.25) are turned off.

- 4 Press  (Save).


The movie is saved.

- After the completion of saving a still image, the status of lighting for the photo light that is set before using the camera is restored.

#### To cancel movie recording

Press  and select [Yes].

#### To check before saving

Press  (Play).

#### To attach to mail

Press  (Mail). The movie is saved and the Edit mail display appears.

- When there is not enough memory or the number of recorded time of saved movies exceeds the maximum number, the message appears. Change the place to save the movie or delete unnecessary movies. Even if recording is possible, the maximum recording time may not be achieved.
- When you switch to movie recording from still image recording, the following items are reset.

Item	Default setting	Item	Default setting
Shoot mode	Regular	Select scene※	AUTO
Auto timer	OFF	EV※	±0.0EV
Zoom magnification	× 1	Photometry※	Center
Picture effect	OFF	White balance※	AUTO

※ The setting is reset when the Select scene is set to [Night scene] or [Low Light].

- If you fold the FOMA terminal while you are recording a movie, the recording is stopped and the screen for confirming whether to save the movie appears. When the Auto save is set to [ON], the movie is saved automatically.
- Noise in the form of a mosaic may appear in an image or the image or sound may be interrupted while you are recording a movie. Note that this is not malfunction.
- The movie sound is recorded via the microphone of the FOMA terminal. If you operate the keys or block the microphone during recording, the recording may be affected by the sound of the keys and other noise.
- The motion of the recorded movie may be rough depending on the object you are shooting and the recording conditions.



## Changing the Camera Settings

### Selecting an Image Size

Default | Still image(Out-camera): Stby(240×432), Still image(In-camera) • Movie: QCIF(176×144)


You can select the size of a still image and movie to be recorded from eight and three types, respectively.

- When the Shoot mode of the still image is set to [Continuous mode] or [Shoot with frame], you cannot select the image size.
- The sizes of images that can be recorded by the In-camera are [sQCIF(128×96)], [QCIF(176×144)], and [CIF(352×288)] (Still image only).
- When the size of a movie is set to [QVGA(320×240)], the image quality of the movie is changed to [Super fine]. When the size of a movie whose image quality is [Super fine] is set to [sQCIF(128×96)], the image quality of the movie is changed to [Standard].

**1** Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Shoot] → [Select size], and press .

The menu for selecting an image size appears.









- You can also display the menu for selecting an image size by pressing  in the Camera mode display.

**2** Select an image size and press .

The image size is set and the icon for the current image size appears.

- When the image size for recording still images is set to [VGA(640×480)] or larger, the recording direction indication appears. Make sure that "↑" on the screen points upward.

Still image

 sQCIF(128×96)	 Stby(240×432)	 1M(1280×960)
 QCIF(176×144)	 CIF(352×288)	 2M(1632×1224)
 QVGA(240×320)	 VGA(640×480)	



Movie

 sQCIF(128×96)	 QCIF(176×144)	 QVGA(320×240)
---	---	---


## Switching the Camera Used for Recording

You can switch between the Out- and In-cameras for recording.

- When the Shoot mode is set to [Continuous mode], you cannot switch the camera.
- When the Shoot mode is set to [Shoot with frame] and the image size is set to [QVGA(240×320)] or [Stby(240×432)], you cannot switch the camera from the Out-camera to In-camera.
- When you switch the camera from the Out-camera to In-camera, the image size is changed to [QCIF(176×144)] if it is not supported by the In-camera.

**1** Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Shoot] → [Switch camera], and press .

The menu for switching the camera appears.



- You can also display the menu for switching the camera by pressing  in the Camera mode display.

**2** Select [Out camera]/[In camera] and press .


The camera is switched.

## Using the Auto Timer


The Auto timer allows you to record yourself or others without holding the FOMA terminal. You can also set the interval until recording is started after you press the shutter.

**1** Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Shoot] → [Auto timer], and press .

The menu for selecting a time for the Auto timer appears.

**2** Select a time until recording is started after you press the shutter and press .

Select from [OFF], [10sec], [5sec], and [2sec].

The Auto timer is set and “” appears.


- If there is an incoming call or you fold the FOMA terminal when you are recording with the Auto timer, the recording stops.
- While activating the Auto timer, the photo light flashes.
- After recording, the Auto timer is automatically reset to [OFF].

## Turning on Photo Light

The FOMA terminal's built-in photo light is turned on (full light) when recording by the Out-camera in a dark place, etc.

**1** Press  (  ) in the Camera mode display.

Every time you press  (  ), the photo light is switched to [ON]/[OFF].

When switched to [ON], the photo light is turned on (full light) and “” appears.

When switched to [OFF], the photo light is turned on (low light).



- The photo light is for helping you record in a dark place. You cannot expect as much amount of light from the photo light as from the electric flash of a normal camera.
- During the camera mode, regardless of the OFF setting of the photo light, instead of being completely turned off, it is turned on (low light).

## Switching the Direction for Recording Movies



Default | to vertical

You can switch the direction for recording movies of [QVGA(320×240)] size.

- When the image size is set to [sQCIF(128×96)] or [QCIF(176×144)], you cannot select the Change screen.

**1** Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Shoot] → [Switch mode] → [Movie shoot], and press .


The display switches to the Movie shoot display.

**2** Press  (Func), select [Shoot] → [Change screen], and press .

The menu for switching the screen appears.

[to vertical] : Record a movie while holding the FOMA terminal in the landscape orientation.

[to horizontal] : Record a movie while holding the FOMA terminal in the portrait orientation. Make sure that  on the screen points upward.

**3** Select the recording direction and press .

The direction for recording a movie is set.

## Adjusting the Camera during Recording

### Adjusting Zoom

You can adjust the zoom of an image when you record using the Out-camera. The zoom magnifications that can be adjusted for each image size are as follows.

When recording a still image

Image size	Maximum magnification display
[sQCIF(128×96)]	About ×4.5 (23 levels)
[QCIF(176×144)]	About ×3.2 (18 levels)
[QVGA(240×320)]	About ×2.4 (14 levels)
[Stby(240×432)]	About ×1.7 (9 levels)
[CIF(352×288)]	About ×2.4 (14 levels)
[VGA(640×480)]	About ×1.7 (9 levels)
[1M(1280×960)]	×1
[2M(1632×1224)]	×1

When recording a movie

Image size	Maximum magnification display
[sQCIF(128×96)]	About ×4.5 (23 levels)
[QCIF(176×144)]	About ×3.2 (18 levels)
[QVGA(320×240)]	to vertical: About ×1.7 (9 levels) to horizontal: About ×2.5 (14 levels)

**1** Use   in the Camera mode display.



- Use  to increase the zoom and  to decrease it. When you press these keys for over a second, an image is zoomed in/out continuously.



The zoom is adjusted and the current magnification is indicated on the zoom bar.

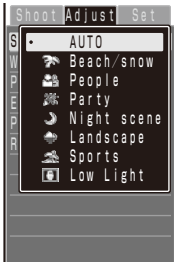



## Switching the Recording Scene

When you record a movie by the Out-camera, you can automatically adjust the camera settings in accordance with a scene. When you change a scene, the White balance, Photometry, EV, and Picture effect settings are reset.

- When the Shoot mode is set to [Continuous mode] or while recording a movie, you cannot select [Night scene] and [Low Light].
- When the Shoot mode of movie is set to [Sound only], you cannot use the Select scene.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Adjust] → [Select scene], and press .



- The Select scene display can be also displayed by pressing  in the Camera mode display.

- [AUTO] : Record an image by automatically adjusting the color and brightness.
- [Beach/snow] : Record the bright colors of the ocean, lake, and snow scene even more vividly.
- [People] : Make a clear recording of a person's skin in bright and warm tones of color.
- [Party] : Make a clear recording of a party scene by enhancing the mood of the illumination in a room.
- [Night scene] : Record night scenes without compromising the atmosphere of darkness.
- [Landscape] : Make a clear recording of an outdoor scene with a vivid expression of the color of ocean, sky, and trees.
- [Sports] : Record an object that is moving in a brightly lit place such as the outdoors.
- [Low Light] : Increase the film speed in a dark place to record the scene as brightly as possible.

- 2 Select a scene and press .



The Select scene is set and the icon for the current scene type appears.

- No icon appears for [AUTO].

	Beach/snow		People		Party		Night scene
	Landscape		Sports		Low Light		

## Adjusting White Balance

The color balance of the image can be adjusted depending on the lighting condition. If a recording image appears in unnatural colors, set the white balance in accordance with the recording environment.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Adjust] → [White balance], and press .

The menu for selecting a white balance appears.

- You can also display the menu for selecting a white balance by pressing  in the Camera mode display.

- [AUTO] : Adjust the color balance automatically.
- [Bulb] : Set when recording under bulbs or incandescent lamps.
- [Fluorescent] : Set when recording under fluorescent lamps.
- [Fine] : Set when recording outdoors on a clear day.
- [Cloudy] : Set when recording outdoors on a cloudy day or in the shade.

- 2 Select a white balance type and press .



The White balance is set and the icon for the current white balance type appears.

- No icon appears for [AUTO].


	Bulb		Fluorescent		Fine		Cloudy
---	------	---	-------------	---	------	---	--------

## Setting a Position for Automatic Adjustment of the Exposure

You can set what position on the screen to use as a reference for the image brightness (EV) adjustment.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Adjust] → [Photometry], and press .

The menu for selecting a photometry mode appears.

- You can also display the menu for selecting a photometry mode by pressing  in the Camera mode display.  
[Center] : Photometry mode for centerweighted metering of the display, including the periphery.  
[Average] : Photometry mode for average metering of the whole display.  
[Spot] : Photometry mode for metering only a part in the center of the display. Aim the object at the Spot photometry point “+” in the center of the display. You can use this mode effectively when recording an object against light or an object with the strong contrast to the background.

- 2 Select a photometry mode and press .

The Photometry mode is set and the icon for the current photometry mode appears.



## Adjusting Brightness

The image brightness (EV: Exposure Value) can be adjusted according to the ambient condition. The exposure can be adjusted in 13 levels from -2.0EV to +2.0EV for recording with the Out-camera and in seven levels from -1.0EV to +1.0EV for recording with the In-camera.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Adjust] → [EV], and press .

The menu for selecting the EV value appears.

- You can also display the menu for selecting the EV value by pressing  in the Camera mode display.

- 2 Select the EV value and press .



The brightness is adjusted and the icon “-2.0EV” to “+2.0EV” for the current EV value appears.

- When the place is extremely bright or dark, the brightness may not be changed even after being adjusted.


## Adding a Picture Effect


The images can be recorded with a special effect.

- When you record an image using the In-camera, you cannot select the [Negative art] and [Solarization].

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Adjust] → [Pict. Effect], and press .

The menu for selecting a picture effect appears.

- You can also display the menu for selecting a picture effect by pressing  in the Camera mode display.  
[OFF] : Cancel the picture effect.  
[Negative art] : Set the color and brightness of the image as in a negative.  
[Solarization] : Set the image as an illustration with sharp tones.  
[Sepia] : Set the image sepia-toned like an old photograph.  
[Black&White] : Set the image monochrome (black and white).



- 2 Select a special effect and press .

The Pict. Effect is set.


## Restoring the Default Camera Settings

You can reset the camera settings to the default settings. The camera settings listed below can be reset.

Item	Default setting	Item	Default setting
Select scene	AUTO	EV	±0.0EV
Zoom magnification	× 1	Photometry	Center
Picture effect	OFF	White balance	AUTO

**1** Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Adjust] → [Reset all], and press .

The screen for confirming whether to perform the Reset all appears.

- You can also display the screen for confirming whether to perform the Reset all by pressing  in the Camera mode display.

**2** Select [Yes] and press .

The default settings are restored.



## Setting the Camera Operation

### Selecting Where to Save Images

Default Still image: [Camera] folder in My picture of the Data Box, Movie: [Camera] folder in i-motion of the Data Box

You can set the place to save recorded images.

Example: Selecting the microSD memory card to save the recorded still images

**1** Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Set] → [Select save to], and press .

The menu for selecting a place to save to appears.

[Data Box] : Save images in the Data Box. Select a folder for saving still images and movies from My picture and i-motion, respectively.

[microSD] : Save images in the microSD memory card. Still images are saved in the [Camera] folder in My picture, movies with video and sound tracks and with video track only in the [Distribute contents] folder in i-motion, and movies with sound track only in MM file, respectively.

**2** Select [microSD] and press .

The place to save images is set and the icon for the selected place appears.



	Data Box		microSD memory card
---	----------	---	---------------------

※ Does not appear when no microSD memory card is inserted.

### Setting Whether Recorded Images Are Automatically Saved

Default OFF

You can set the save method of an image recorded.

**1** Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Set] → [Auto save], and press .

The menu for selecting whether to automatically save the recorded images appears.

[ON] : After recording, the image is automatically saved.

[OFF] : After recording, press  (Save) on the screen for confirming whether to save the image if you want to save it.

## 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The image save method is set.

## Selecting the Image Quality

Default | Standard

You can select the image quality for recording images.

- When the size of a movie is set to [QVGA(320×240)], you can only select [Super fine] for the image quality. When the size of a movie is set to [sQCIF(128×96)], you cannot select [Super fine] for the image quality.

### 1 Press (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Set] → [Image quality], and press .

The menu for selecting an image quality appears.

#### Still image

[Fine] : Higher image quality mode. The file size is larger.

[Standard] : Standard image quality mode.

[Economy] : Lowest image quality mode. The file size is smaller.

#### Movie

[Super fine] : Higher image quality mode. The file size is larger and the recording time is shortest.





[Fine] : Image quality mode for smoother movement in movies.

[Standard] : Standard image quality mode.

[Economy] : Lowest image quality mode. The file size is smaller and the recording time is longest.

## 2 Select the image quality and press .

The image quality is set and the icon for the current image quality appears.

	Super fine (Movie only)		Standard
	Fine		Economy

## Changing the Shutter Sound

Default | Shutter sound1

The shutter sound can be selected from three types when the Shoot mode for still images is [Regular] or [Shoot with frame].

- The shutter sound volume is fixed and cannot be adjusted or muted. The shutter sound is heard even if the Manner mode is set.

### 1 Press (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Set] → [Shutter sound], and press .

The menu for selecting a shutter sound appears.

### 2 Select a shutter sound and press .

The Shutter sound is set.



#### To check the shutter sound

Move the cursor to the shutter sound and press  (Play).

## Setting the Effective Distance of the Auto Focus

Default | Normal mode

You can set the effective distance of the Auto focus function when you record still images with the Out-camera.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Set] → [Auto focus], and press .

The menu for selecting the Auto focus type appears.

[Normal mode] : Record an image by focusing the object. The minimum focusing distance is about 20 cm.

[Closeup mode] : Record an image by focusing a close object. The minimum focusing distance is about 10 cm.

[OFF] : Record an image without using the Auto focus.

- 2 Select the Auto focus type and press .

The Auto focus is set and the icon for the current Auto focus type appears.



- No icon appears for [Normal mode].




## Resetting File Numbers

When a still image with the file number (P.133) “999-9999” is saved in the microSD memory card, no more still images can be saved even if there is a vacant space in these memories. The Reset file No. allows you to reset the file numbers up to the largest file number saved in the microSD memory card. To reset the file numbers, delete still images that have file numbers larger than that you want to reset beforehand.

- The images cannot be saved even if the file numbers are reset when the microSD memory card has no free space. In this case, change the microSD memory card or delete data saved in the microSD memory card.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Set] → [Reset file No.], and press .

The screen for confirming whether to perform the Reset file No. appears.



- 2 Select [Yes] and press .

The file numbers are reset.

## Restricting the Size of a File Used for Movie Recording

Default | Attach(L)

You can restrict the size of a movie file to a file size that can be attached to i-mode mail.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Shoot] → [Switch mode] → [Movie shoot], and press .

The display switches to the Movie shoot display.

- 2 Press  (Func), select [Set] → [File size], and press .

The menu for selecting a file size restriction appears.

[Attach(S)] : You can record up to about 500K bytes.

[Attach(L)] : You can record up to about 2M bytes.

[No limit] : No file size restriction. You can record up to about one hour. Selectable when [microSD] is set as the place to save to.

- 3 Select a file size restriction type and press .

The file size restriction for movie is set and the icon for the current file size restriction type appears.

- No icon appears for [No limit].





- Depending on the recording conditions and object of shooting, the recording may be stopped before the maximum file size set in the file size restriction is reached.

## Selecting the Shoot Mode of Movie

Default | Image+Sound

You can select the shoot mode of movie from three types.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Camera mode display, select [Shoot] → [Switch mode] → [Movie shoot], and press .

The display switches to the Movie shoot display.


- 2 Press  (Func), select [Set] → [Shoot mode], and press .

The menu for selecting a shoot mode appears.

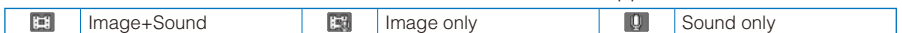
[Image+Sound] : Record a movie with video and sound tracks.

[Image only] : Record a movie with video track only. No sound is recorded.

[Sound only] : Record a movie with sound track only. No movie is recorded.

- 3 Select a shoot mode and press .

The Shoot mode is set and the icon for the current shoot mode appears.



You can use the Out-camera to scan JAN or QR code. The scanned text data can be used for Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To and i-appli To functions, Bookmark and Phonebook entries, and also for displaying and copying/pasting text. You can also obtain a ToruCa card, and play and save the scanned images and melodies.

- To scan the JAN/QR code, hold the Out-camera more than about 20 cm in [Normal mode] and 10 cm in [Closeup mode] away from the code to be scanned.
- The FOMA terminal may not be able to scan JAN or QR code if it is scratched, smudged, damaged, of poor print quality, too small in size, or in certain light reflection conditions. It also may not be able to scan some QR code versions.
- The FOMA terminal cannot scan a bar code/2-dimensional code other than JAN and QR codes.

## ■ What is JAN code?

A bar code that represents numbers using vertical lines (bars) of different widths.

The FOMA terminal can scan 13-digit and 8-digit JAN codes.



"Example: 4942857130584"

## ■ What is QR code?

One of the 2-dimensional codes that represent data in the vertical and horizontal directions. This data includes alphanumeric characters, character strings (kanji, kana, pictographs), melodies, still images, and ToruCa cards.

- Up to 16 QR codes can be scanned serially so that they connect to each other and saved as a single data set. When scanning multiple segmented QR codes, the message prompting you to scan the next QR code appears after you scan the first one. Scan the QR code in response to the message.



"Example: FOMA SO704i"

## Scanning JAN/QR Code

You can scan JAN or QR code and save the maintained data for later use. Specifically, you can use text data from the scanned JAN or QR code to enter information in a textbox while entering text (P.256).

### 1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [BC reader] → [Bar code reader] and press

The bar code reader is activated and " " appears.

#### To change the effective distance of the Auto focus

Press (Normal/Closeup). Every time you press this key, the mode is switched between [Normal] and [Closeup].

### 2 Locate the JAN/QR code at the center of the display and press .



The scanning of the JAN/QR code starts.

When the scanning is completed, the end sound is heard and the data that has been scanned is displayed in the normal display.

#### To save scanned data such as a phone number

Move the cursor to data such as a phone number and from the Function menu, select [Add to phonebook] → [Yes] and save the scanned data in the Phonebook.

- Follow the same steps as in "Add to FOMA terminal phonebook" (P.87, step 3 to 4) or "Add to UIM phonebook" (P.89, step 3 to 4).

#### To save a scanned URL as a bookmark

Move the cursor to the URL and from the Function menu, select [Add bookmark] → [Yes] → a folder.

### 3 Press (Save).

The data from the scanned JAN/QR code is saved.


- Some QR codes allow you to save data such as a name, phone number, and mail address all at once in the Phonebook just by scanning them.
- When scanned characters cannot be entered in the text editing display, they are replaced with as many spaces (blanks).
- A scanned image may not be saved depending on its image or file size.

## Displaying the Saved Data


You can save up to 10 data entries for JAN or QR codes that are scanned.

- When a total of 10 data entries is saved and a new JAN/QR code is scanned, unprotected data is overwritten from the oldest.


### 1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [BC reader] → [Saved data] and press .

Data list	
	2007/09/14 13:56
	2007/09/07 23:13
	2007/08/28 14:25
	2007/08/28 10:42
	2007/08/23 16:21
	2007/08/12 13:29
	2007/08/03 19:28
	2007/08/03 09:47
	2007/07/30 14:05
	2007/07/30 13:50

#### To delete data

Move the cursor to the data and from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete several data, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete], select data, press  (Complete), and then select [Yes]. To delete all data, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

#### To protect data

Move the cursor to the data and from the Function menu, select [Protect ON/OFF] → [Yes]. “

### 2 Select the data and press .

2007/09/14 13:56
Add to phonebook
Name: DoCoMo Taro
Reading: DoCoMoTaro
TEL: 03XXXXXXXX
E-mail: docomo.taro.Δ
Δ@docomo.ne.jp



# i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel

※ i-mode is a paid service that requires a subscription.

What is i-mode? .....	152
Displaying the i-mode Menu .....	<i-mode menu> 152
<b>■ Displaying a Site</b>	
Displaying Sites .....	152
Using Sites .....	153
Saving a Site in My Menu .....	<My Menu> 154
Changing the i-mode Password .....	<Change i-mode password> 155
Displaying Internet Sites .....	<Internet connection> 155
Saving a Site to Display It Quickly .....	<Bookmark> 155
Saving a Site in the Screen Memo .....	<Screen Memo> 157
<b>■ Downloading Graphics, Melodies or Other Data from Sites</b>	
Obtaining Graphics from a Site/Message .....	<Save image> 157
Downloading Data from Sites .....	<Download> 158
<b>■ Useful Functions for Using i-mode</b>	
Using the Phone To/Mail To/Web To/i-αpli To .....	158
<b>■ Make Settings for i-mode</b>	
Setting i-mode .....	<i-mode setting> 159
<b>■ Using the Message Service</b>	
Receiving a Message .....	<Receive message> 160
Checking a New Message .....	<Check new messages> 160
Displaying a Message .....	<Message R/Message F> 161
<b>■ Using Certificates</b>	
Operating the SSL List .....	<SSL certificate> 162
Setting the FirstPass .....	<User certificate> 162
Changing the Host for Certificate Issue .....	<Select host> 163
<b>■ Using i-motion</b>	
What is i-motion? .....	164
Downloading an i-motion from Sites .....	<Download i-motion> 164
Setting Auto Replay of i-motion and i-motion Type to Download .....	<i-motion setting> 164
<b>■ Using i-Channel</b>	
What is i-Channel? .....	165
Displaying the i-Channel .....	166
Changing the i-Channel Settings .....	166

## What is i-mode?

i-mode allows you to use the i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (hereinafter referred to as i-mode terminal) to access various online services such as site (program) connection, Internet connection, and i-mode mail.


- i-mode is a paid service that requires a subscription. For inquiry about subscription, see the backcover of this manual.
- For details on this service, see the latest "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

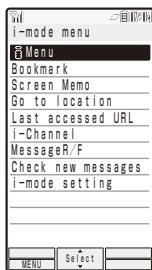
### Important information about using i-mode

- The data on sites (programs) or Internet sites is generally protected by the copyright laws. Part or all of the data such as documents and graphics obtained to the i-mode terminal from these sites (programs) or Internet sites cannot be sold or redistributed, whether they are changed or not, without consent of the copyright holders except for personal use.
- The data saved in the i-mode terminal (such as mail, messages, screen memos, i-αppli, and i-motion) and saved information including bookmarks may be lost as a result of malfunction, repair, or other handling of the i-mode terminal. It is recommended that you always keep the saved data and the important data in a separate note. Under no condition will DoCoMo be held liable for any damaged or lost data saved in the i-mode terminal.
- When the UIM is switched to another card, or the i-mode terminal is powered on without inserting the UIM, some of the terminal models may not be able to display/play back still images/movies/melodies downloaded from sites, attached files (still images/movies/melodies, etc.) sent/received by mail, screen memos, and Message R/F.
- If you set a file whose display/playback is restricted by the UIM for the stand-by display, ring tone, and/or other applications, those settings are reset to the initial settings if the UIM is switched to another card or the FOMA terminal is powered on without inserting a UIM.

## Displaying the i-mode Menu

<i-mode menu>

- 1 Press  (i-mode) in the stand-by display.




Menu name	Function
i Menu	Connect the FOMA terminal to the i-mode center (P.152).
Bookmark	Display favorite sites and Internet sites (P.155).
Screen Memo	Display sites saved in the FOMA terminal (P.157).
Go to location	Connect the FOMA terminal to the Internet (P.155).
Last accessed URL	Display sites and Internet sites displayed last (P.153).
i-Channel	Display the channel menu (P.166).
MessageR/F	Display the list of Message R/Message F received (P.161).
Check new messages	Check if the i-mode center holds mail, Message R, and Message F (P.160, 176).
i-mode setting	Set the i-mode settings on the FOMA terminal (P.103, 114, 159, etc.).

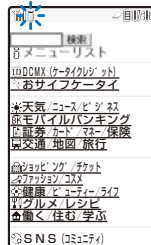
### To display i Menu while displaying a site

From the Function menu, select [i Menu].

## Displaying Sites

Various sites offered by IP (information service providers) can be displayed (the subscription is necessary for some sites).

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [i Menu] → [メニュー/検索] (Menu/Search) and press .



- 2 Select a site and press .

The FOMA terminal is connected to the site.

- Some of the connected sites may request you to send the "manufacturer's serial number of the mobile phone/UIM (FOMA card)" before you access the site. The "manufacturer's serial number of the mobile phone/UIM (FOMA card)" that you send is used by IP (information service providers) to identify you in order to provide information customized for you and to determine whether the content provided by IP is compatible with the mobile phone. Since the "manufacturer's serial number of the mobile phone/UIM (FOMA card)" is sent to IP via the Internet, it might be accessed by a third party. Note, however, that IP is not notified of your phone number, address, age, and sex by this operation.

## Reconnecting to the Web Page Displayed Last

The site displayed when you last connected to i-mode is recorded as the Last accessed URL. You can directly connect to this site from the Last accessed URL.

- Some web pages cannot be recorded as Last accessed URL.

1 From the i-mode menu, select [Last accessed URL] and press **⊙**.



- To delete the Last accessed URL**  
Press **⊗** (Delete) and select [Yes].
- To copy the Last accessed URL**  
Press **Ⓜ** (Copy).

2 Press **⊙** (Cnct).

The FOMA terminal is connected to the site displayed last.

## Displaying SSL Site

You can display SSL-compatible sites (SSL page) using an operation similar to that for general sites.

- To display an SSL site, make sure to set the date and time with the Date/time setting beforehand.



The message on the left appears when connecting to an SSL site. "Ⓜ" appears when displaying an SSL site.

- To display the certificate**  
From the Function menu, select [Certificates].



The message on the left appears when moving from an SSL site to a non-SSL site. "Ⓜ" disappears when displaying a non-SSL site.

- The confirmation message may appear when the connected site may not be secure. Select [Yes] to connect to the SSL site, or select [No] to cancel connecting to the SSL site.
- If there are any problems such as an invalid certificate of the server, the SSL site may not be displayed.

## Using Sites

### Selecting Links or Other Items of Choice

When using a site, you may display a linked site, enter texts (textbox) or select an item from multiple options (radio button, check box, and pull-down menu).

- Link**  
Go to the related web page.
- Textbox**  
Enter a text.
  - The mode and number of characters you can use depend on the textbox.
  - When you enter a code such as the i-mode password, it may be masked by "X".
- Radio button**  
Select one item. "⊙" of the selected item changes to "⊙".
- Pull-down menu**  
Select an item from the item list.
- Check box**  
Select one or more items. "☐" of the selected items changes to "☑".
  - To cancel the selection, select the check box again.

### Displaying the Previous/Next Page

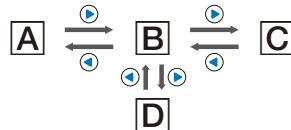
The FOMA terminal stores up to 20 most recently displayed site pages in its cache.

Site pages stored in the cache are cleared when you terminate i-mode. When the left or right arrow is displayed in the guide display, the pages stored in the cache can be used for display using **⏪** **⏩** without accessing the site. Note, however, that if the recorded site pages exceed the cache size or when a site page is programmed always to download the latest information, network communication is performed.

- The text or setting you entered in a site is not stored in the cache.
- The cache is a place in the terminal used for temporarily storing the displayed screen data.

- ◀ : Indicates that the previous page is recorded. Use **⏪** to display the previous page.
- ▶ : Indicates that the next page is recorded. Use **⏩** to display the next page.



Example: When viewing site pages in the order of **A**→**B**→**C** →**B**→**D**



Assuming that you view site pages in the order of **A**→**B**→**C** and go to a new site page **D** after going back to **B** as shown in the above illustration, the history for **B**→**C** is cleared and starts afresh for **B**→**D** at the time you go to a new site page **D**.

## Reloading a Page



The page, which is displayed incorrectly or updated frequently, can be reloaded so that the latest data is displayed.

- 1 While displaying a site, press  (Func).  
The Function menu appears.
- 2 Select [Reload] and press .

The display of the page is updated.

## Displaying a Site URL



The URL of the currently displayed site can be displayed.

- 1 While displaying a site, press  (Func).  
The Function menu appears.
- 2 Select [URL] and press .

The URL of the site is displayed.



## Sending a URL by Mail

The URL of the currently displayed site can be sent by mail.

- 1 While displaying a site, press  (Func).  
The Function menu appears.
  - 2 Select [Compose message] and press .
- The Edit mail display appears.  
The site URL is already entered in the main body.
- 3 Compose mail and send it.
    - Follow the same steps as in "Compose and send mail" (P.170, step 2 to 5).

## Displaying a Site Correctly


If the display of the text is incorrect on a site, you can reload the page after changing the character code.

- 1 While displaying a site, press  (Func).  
The Function menu appears.
  - 2 Select [Word translate] → [Convert]/[Auto select] and press .
- [Convert]:  
Sequentially convert the character codes and display the page again. If the text is still incorrectly displayed, repeat this operation. The original display reappears when you repeat [Word translate] → [Convert] several times.
- [Auto select]:  
Automatically select and convert the character code and display the page.  
The character code is converted and the page is displayed again.



- The page may not be displayed correctly even if the character code is changed. Note that changing the character code when the page is displayed correctly may cause the page to be displayed incorrectly.

## What is Flash?

Flash is an animation technology that uses animation and sound. Flash movies enhance site content for richer expression. You can set a Flash movie for the stand-by display and other applications.

- The operation of a site that uses Flash movies may be the same but the display may be different.
- Even if  is displayed, you may not be able to use the Select function.
- Some Flash movies may be accompanied by a sound effect. To mute the sound effect, set the Sound effect to [OFF].
- If you do not operate the FOMA terminal for more than about 30 seconds while the Flash movie is played back, the playback pauses. To operate a Flash movie again, from the Function menu, select [Retry].
- Even if a Flash movie is displayed, it may not operate properly in some cases.
- When you save a Flash movie using the Save image function or save it in Screen Memo, a portion of it may not be saved or it may appear differently from the one you viewed on the site.
- If an error occurs during a Flash movie playback, this Flash movie cannot be saved.
- Some of the Flash movies vibrate the FOMA terminal during playback. Note that this could happen even if the vibrator is set to [OFF].
- Some Flash movies may have to use data saved in the i-mode terminal. To allow such a Flash movie to use saved data, set the Use phone info of the i-mode setting to [Yes] (P.159). This item is set to [Yes] at the time of purchase. Saved data that may be used by a Flash movie is as follows.
  - Battery level
  - Reception level
  - Clock information
  - Sound effect setting
  - Language setting
  - Terminal type
  - Model information



## Terminating i-mode

- 1 Press  during i-mode, select [Yes], and press .
- i-mode is terminated and "i" disappears.

## Saving a Site in My Menu <My Menu>

If you save the frequently used sites in My Menu, you can access them easily from next time. Up to 45 sites can be saved in My Menu.

- Only i-mode sites can be saved in My Menu. To save Internet sites, use the Bookmark.

- 1 While displaying a site, select [マイメニュー登録] (Save My Menu) and press .
- The location of [マイメニュー登録] (Save My Menu) and the menu structure may vary depending on each site.
- 2 Enter the i-mode password at [ i モードパスワード] (i-mode Password).  
The password is masked by "\*\*\*\*".
  - 3 Select [決定] (OK) and press .
- The site is saved in My Menu.

- The site is saved automatically in My Menu when you subscribe to a paid site.

## Changing the i-mode Password

<Change i-mode password>

The "i-mode password" is used for saving/deleting My Menu and changing i-mode mail settings, etc. The i-mode password is set to "0000" at the time of subscription. Change it to your own i-mode password. Make sure to keep the i-mode password confidential.

- If you forget the i-mode password, you must bring your official identification (such as driver's license), the FOMA terminal, and UIM with you to the nearest DoCoMo shop.

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [i Menu] → [English iMenu] → [Options] → [Change i-mode Password] and press **⏏**.



- 2 Enter the current i-mode password at [Current Password].

The password is masked by "\*\*\*\*".

- 3 Enter the new password at [New Password].

- 4 Enter the new password at [New Password (Confirmation)].

- 5 Select [Select] and press **⏏**.

The i-mode password is changed.

## Displaying Internet Sites

<Internet connection>

i-mode compatible Internet site can be displayed from the i-mode terminal.

- Sites that are not compatible with i-mode may not be displayed correctly.

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [Go to location] → [Enter URL] and press **⏏**.

The Enter URL display appears.

- When the URL has been entered before, the URL entered previously is displayed.
- The beginning of the URL "http://" is entered beforehand.

- 2 Press **⏏** (Edit) and enter the URL.

Enter the URL including "http://" within 256 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols.

- 3 Press **⏏** (Cnct).

The FOMA terminal is connected to the site.

- Operations while displaying Internet sites are the same as while displaying the i-mode sites.

## Displaying Using the URL List

Up to 50 sites that have been displayed by entering their URLs are saved in the URL list. The sites can be directly accessed from the URL list.

- If a total of 50 URLs is saved in the URL list, the URL is overwritten from the oldest.

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [Go to location] → [URL list] and press **⏏**.

The URL list display appears.

To delete a URL

Move the cursor to the URL and from the Function menu, select [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete several URLs, from the Function menu, select [Select&delete], select URLs, press **⏏** (Complete), and select [Yes]. To delete all URLs, from the Function menu, select [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- 2 Select a URL and press **⏏**.

The URL list display appears.

To copy a URL

Press **⏏** (Copy).

- 3 Press **⏏** (Cnct).

The FOMA terminal is connected to the site of the selected URL.

## Saving a Site to Display It Quickly

<Bookmark>

Up to 200 URLs of the sites you display frequently can be saved in the Bookmark. The sites can be directly accessed from the Bookmark.

- Both i-mode and Internet sites can be saved as bookmarks, but with some exceptions.
- The text or setting you entered on the site, etc. is not saved in the Bookmark.

## Saving a Site in the Bookmark

A URL including "http://" of up to 256 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols can be saved as a bookmark.

- 1 While displaying a site, press **⏏** (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Add bookmark] → a folder and press **⏏**.

The bookmark is saved in the selected folder.


When the maximum number of bookmarks has been reached

The screen for confirming whether to overwrite a bookmark appears. To overwrite a bookmark, select [Yes] and select a bookmark to overwrite.

- A title of up to 12 full-width or 24 half-width characters can be saved in the Bookmark. If the length of the title exceeds the limit, extra characters are deleted. If there is no title on the bookmark, the URL appears instead.



## Displaying a Site

A site can be displayed using a bookmark.

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [Bookmark] and press .


A list of bookmark folders appears.

- The following icons show the type of folder.

 (Yellow)	Preset folder
 (Blue)	User-created folder

- 2 Select a folder and press .

A list of bookmarks appears.


- 3 Select a bookmark and press  (Cnct).

The FOMA terminal is connected to the site of the selected bookmark.

### To check the URL

Move the cursor to the bookmark and press  (Check).

### To copy a bookmark URL

Move the cursor to the bookmark and press  (Check) and  (Copy).

### To change the title

Move the cursor to the bookmark and from the Function menu, select [Edit title]. Enter the title within 12 full-width or 24 half-width characters.

### To display other site while displaying a site



From the Function menu, select [Bookmark] → a folder → a bookmark.

## Adding/Deleting Folders


Folders in which bookmarks are saved can be added or deleted. Up to 10 folders can be used to manage bookmarks and folder names can also be changed.

- You cannot delete the preset folders.

Example: Adding a folder

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [Bookmark] and press , then press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Edit folder] → [Create folder] and press , then enter a folder name.

Enter a name within eight full-width or 17 half-width characters.

The folder is added.

### To change a folder name

Move the cursor to a folder and from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] → [Edit folder name]. Enter a name within eight full-width or 17 half-width characters.


### To delete a folder

Move the cursor to a folder and from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] → [Delete folder]. Enter the Security code and select [Yes].

## Moving a Bookmark to a Different Folder

Bookmarks can be moved to a different folder using three methods.


Example: Moving a bookmark

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [Bookmark] → a folder and press .

### To move all bookmarks in the folder


From the Function menu, select [Move] → [Move all] → [Yes] → a folder.

### To move several bookmarks

From the Function menu, select [Move] → [Select&move], select bookmarks, and press  (Complete). Select [Yes] → a folder.

- 2 Select a bookmark and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 3 Select [Move] → [Move one] → [Yes] and press .

The Select move to display appears.


- 4 Select a folder and press .

The selected bookmark is moved to the different folder.

## Deleting a Bookmark

You can delete bookmarks using four methods.

Example: Deleting a bookmark

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [Bookmark] and press .

### To delete all bookmarks


From the Function menu, select [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].


- 2 Select a folder and press .

### To delete all bookmarks in the folder


From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

### To delete several bookmarks

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete], select bookmarks, press  (Complete), and select [Yes].

- 3 Select a bookmark and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 4 Select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes] and press .

The selected bookmark is deleted.

## Saving a Site in the Screen Memo

<Screen Memo>


You can save sites as your favorite ones in the Screen Memo. You can also instantaneously call up a saved screen memo.

- You can save up to 100 screen memos, each up to 100K bytes. The number of screen memos that can be saved may decrease depending on the data to be saved.
- The text or setting you entered on the site, etc. is not saved in the Screen Memo.

## Saving a Screen Memo


- 1 While displaying a site, press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Add screen memo] and press .

The screen memo is saved.

### When there is not enough memory



The screen for confirming whether to overwrite a screen memo appears. To overwrite, select [Yes], select unnecessary screen memos, press  (Complete), and select [Yes].


### When the maximum number of screen memos has been reached

The screen for confirming whether to overwrite a screen memo appears. To overwrite, select [Yes] and select a screen memo to overwrite.


## Displaying a Screen Memo

Saved screen memos can be displayed. The following icons show the status of the screen memo.

	Normal screen memo
	Protected screen memo

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [Screen Memo] and press .

A list of screen memos appears.

- 2 Select a screen memo and press .

The screen memo is displayed.

### To check the URL

Move the cursor to the screen memo and from the Function menu, select [URL].


### To change the title

Move the cursor to the screen memo and from the Function menu, select [Edit title]. Enter the title within eight full-width or 17 half-width characters.

- To operate the Flash movie or GIF animation again, from the Function menu, select [Retry].

## Protecting a Screen Memo

You can protect screen memos from being overwritten. You can protect up to 50 screen memos.

- 1 Select a screen memo from the screen memo list and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

### To cancel the protection

Move the cursor to the protected screen memo and press  (Func).


- 2 Select [Protect ON/OFF] → [Yes] and press .

The screen memo is protected and "□" changes to "Ⓜ".

## Deleting a Screen Memo

You can delete screen memos using three methods.

Example: Deleting a screen memo


- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [Screen Memo] and press .

### To delete all screen memos

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

### To delete several screen memos

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete], select screen memos, press  (Complete), and select [Yes].

- 2 Select a screen memo and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 3 Select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes] and press .

The selected screen memo is deleted.

## Obtaining Graphics from a Site/Message

<Save image>


You can obtain images and frames from sites and screen memos, and save them in My picture.

- You can save up to 100K bytes for each image entry. The number of images that you can save varies depending on the free memory space on the place to save to and data size.

Example: Saving a graphic displayed in a site

- 1 While displaying a site, press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Save image] → a graphic and press .

The selected image is displayed in a frame and the screen for selecting the place to save to appears.

### [Data Box]:

Save an image in the Data Box. Select a folder to save to.

### [microSD]:


Save an image in the microSD memory card.

### To save the frame/stamp/Deco-mail pictograph

Select [Save image] → an image. The image is saved in an appropriate folder in My picture of the Data Box.


### To save the background image

Select [Save backgnd img].

- 3 Select a place to save to and press .

The graphic is saved in the selected place to save to and the screen for confirming whether to set to the stand-by display appears.

### When there is not enough memory or the maximum number of graphics has been reached

The screen informing insufficient memory or that the maximum number has been reached appears. To save the new graphic, select [Slct delete file] → a folder → a file, press  (Complete), and select [Yes].

- 4 Select [Yes]/[No] and press .

Select [Yes] to set the graphic for the stand-by display.

- You cannot save a GIF image exceeding [UXGA(1600×1200)] and a GIF animation exceeding [Stby(240×432)] in the Data Box. You may also not be able to save some JPEG images in the Data Box.

## Downloading Data from Sites <Download>

You can download melodies, Chara-den, ToruCa cards, Deco-mail templates, dictionaries, menu patterns, and mail (vMessage format) from related sites.

### Files that can be downloaded

Type	Maximum downloadable size
Melody (SMF/MFI)※	100K bytes
Chara-den	100K bytes
ToruCa※	1K bytes
ToruCa(detail)※	100K bytes
Deco-mail template	200K bytes
Dictionary data	100K bytes
Menu pattern	500K bytes
Mail (vMessage)※	200K bytes

※ The number of files that you can save varies depending on the free memory space on the place to save to and data size.

Example: Downloading a melody from a related site

#### 1 While displaying a site, select a melody and press .



The melody is downloaded and the screen for confirming whether to save the melody appears.

To check the melody before saving

Select [Play].

To cancel the saving

Select [Back] → [Yes].

#### 2 Select [Save] and press .

The screen for selecting where to save appears.

[Data Box]:

Save melodies in the Data Box of the FOMA terminal.  
Select a folder for saving melodies.

[microSD]:

Save melodies in the microSD memory card.

#### 3 Select a place to save to and press .

The melody is saved.

To download a Chara-den/Deco-mail/template/dictionary data/menu pattern

While displaying the site, select data and select [Save].

To download a ToruCa card

While displaying the site, select a ToruCa card and select [Yes] → a folder.

To download mail

While displaying the site, select mail and select [Save] / [Save in mail box].

- When you select [Save in mail box], the mail is saved in the Mail box. If the data contains several mails, only the first mail is saved.

When there is not enough memory

The screen for confirming whether to overwrite the data appears. To overwrite, select unnecessary data (P.224).

● Downloaded melodies may not be played back properly.

● If you have deleted preinstalled Chara-den files, you can download them from "SO@Planet".

[ Menu ] → [ ×メニュー/検索 ] (Menu/Search)  
→ [ ケータイ電話メーカー ] (Mobile Phone Manufacturers)  
→ [ SO@Planet ] (Japanese only)



## Using the Phone To/Mail To/ Web To/i-αppli To

You can use highlighted information in a site, message, mail main body, i-motion Telop text, i-αppli, ToruCa card, and i-Channel channel list to place a call, compose mail, display an Internet website, or start i-αppli.

- Sometimes, you may not be able to select an item for establishing a link to the displayed phone number/mail address/URL/i-αppli. Whether you can use the function depends on sites, mail, messages, i-motion, software, ToruCa cards, and i-Channel contents.

### Placing a Call from the Current Display

You can place a voice or videophone call or originate a PushTalk call from a phone number currently displayed in the display (Phone To, AV Phone To).

#### 1 Select a phone number in the display and press .

The screen for confirming whether to place a call appears.

#### 2 Select [Yes] → [Voice call]/[Videophone]/[PushTalk] and press .

- Follow the same steps as in "Placing a call by specifying a condition" (P.53, step 1 to 4).

### Composing/Sending Mail from the Current Display

You can compose/send mail to a mail address currently displayed in the display (Mail To).

#### 1 Select a mail address in the display and press .

The Edit mail display appears.

The selected mail address is entered as the address.

#### 2 Compose mail and send it.

- Follow the same steps as in "Compose and send mail" (P.171, step 3 to 5).

### Accessing a Site from the Current Display

You can connect to a site from a URL currently displayed in the display (Web To).

#### 1 Select a link (URL) in the display and press .

The FOMA terminal is connected to the linked site.

### Running i-αppli from the Current Display

You can start i-αppli software from a link currently displayed in the display. The software can also be started using the infrared communication (i-αppli To).

- Download software that can be started by the i-αppli To beforehand.
- i-αppli cannot be started to run when the i-αppli To is set to [No] (P.191).

#### 1 Select i-αppli link in the display and press .

The screen for confirming whether to start i-αppli appears.

#### 2 Select [Yes] and press .

The software is started to run.




## Setting i-mode

<i-mode setting>

### Setting the Connection Timeout

Default 60 sec

The duration before disconnecting the FOMA terminal automatically can be set when you cannot send or receive data due to heavy traffic at the i-mode center.

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [i-mode setting] → [Common setting] → [Connection timeout] and press .

[60sec]:


Disconnect automatically when unable to send/receive data for 60 seconds.

[90sec]:

Disconnect automatically when unable to send/receive data for 90 seconds.

[Unlimited]:

Do not set the connection timeout (however, the connection can be disconnected due to the radio wave condition or other reasons).

- 2 Select the waiting duration and press .

The Connection timeout is set.


### Changing the i-mode Host (ISP Connection Communication)

Default i-mode(UIM)

※ You do not need to change the Host setting when using the i-mode service of DoCoMo.

You can set up to 10 hosts for receiving services other than the services provided by i-mode (DoCoMo). When you change a host to other than [i-mode(UIM)], you cannot use i-mode.

- You must always enter [Host name], [Host number], and [Host address].

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [i-mode setting] → [Common setting] → [Host selection] and press .



**To edit the settings of the set host**

Move the cursor to the set host and from the Function menu, select [Edit], and enter the Security code. Edit each item.

**To delete the set host**

Move the cursor to the set host and from the Function menu, select [Delete one], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- 2 Press  (Create).

The Security code screen appears.

- 3 Enter the Security code and press  (OK).



[Host name]:

Enter a host name within eight full-width or 16 half-width characters.

[Host number]:

Enter a host number within 99 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols.

[Host address]/[Host address2]:

Enter a host address within 30 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols.

- 4 Enter each item.

- 5 Press  (Complete).

The entered host is saved.

- 6 Select the host and press .


The host is changed.

- Note that packet communication is not covered by the Pake-Houdai service if a host of the packet communication is set to other than [i-mode(UIM)].

### Setting Whether to Use the Saved Data for Flash Movies

Default Yes

You can set whether to use the saved data (P.154) when you play back a Flash movie displayed on a site or saved in the Screen Memo.

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [i-mode setting] → [Use phone info] and press .

- 2 Select [Yes]/[No] and press .

The Use phone info is set.

### Disabling the Display of Graphics

Default ON

You can set whether to display graphics when displaying sites or screen memos.

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [i-mode setting] → [Display img] and press .

- 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The Display img is set.


When set to [OFF], "🚫" is displayed instead of a graphic.

- Some graphics may not be displayed correctly even if the Display img is [ON].

### Displaying a Site Automatically with the Correct Character Code

Default ON

You can set to identify the character code of a site automatically.

1 From the i-mode menu, select [i-mode setting] → [Auto detect.] and press .

2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The Auto detect. is set.

- Even if the Auto detect. is [ON], some sites may not be displayed correctly.

## Receiving a Message <Receive message>

When a message is received while in the stand-by display, the contents of the message are automatically displayed. Up to 20 Message R and Message F each can be saved in the FOMA terminal.



When receiving a message, "R" or "F" flashes.

When receiving is completed, "R" or "F" is displayed, the indicator flashes, the ring tone sounds, and the number of received messages is displayed.

The contents of the message appear automatically after about 15 seconds. The display before receiving reappears after about 15 seconds when no operations are made.


- Messages that are automatically displayed are saved as unread.

- When the number of saved received messages has reached 20 and a new message is received, the unprotected message is overwritten from the oldest.
- You can also disable Auto-display of messages (P.160).
- Messages are held at the i-mode center when "R" or "F" appears (sometimes "R" and "F" do not appear even if messages are held at the i-mode center). If the maximum number of messages is held at the i-mode center, "R" or "F" appears. In this case, perform the Check new messages after checking contents of the unread messages, delete unnecessary messages, and cancel protection of the messages.
- Message R/F that has been sent to you in the following situations is held at the i-mode center.
  - During a videophone call
  - When the FOMA terminal is powered off
  - When the FOMA terminal is outside of the i-mode service area
  - During PushTalk communication
  - While receiving SMS
  - While the Self mode is set
  - While the Omakase Lock is set
  - During the infrared communication
  - During the iC communication
  - While connected to the FirstPass Center
  - While connected to the Data Security Service Center
  - While updating the software

## Setting Auto-display

Default | Prefer msgR

You can set to display the contents of the message automatically when it is received while in the stand-by display. You can also select which message should be displayed first when receiving both Message R and Message F at the same time.

1 From the i-mode menu, select [i-mode setting] → [Auto-display] and press .

[Prefer msgR]:

Display automatically Message R first when receiving Message R and Message F at the same time.

[MessageR only]:

Display automatically Message R only.

[Prefer msgF]:

Display automatically Message F first when receiving Message R and Message F at the same time.

[MessageF only]:

Display automatically Message F only.

[Display off]:

Do not display automatically.

2 Select a display method and press .


The Auto-display is set.

## Checking a New Message

<Check new messages>

New messages held at the i-mode center while the FOMA terminal is powered off or outside of the i-mode service area can be checked.

- Depending on the radio wave condition, you may not be able to check new messages.

1 Press  (Mail) for over a second in the stand-by display.

The FOMA terminal is connected to the i-mode center, and an inquiry result is displayed.


To check messages

Select [MessageR] or [MessageF].

- You can select an inquiry item (P.183).







## Displaying a Message <Message R/Message F>

The list of received messages can be displayed.

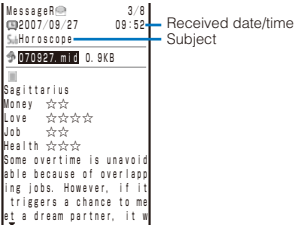
- From the i-mode menu, select [MessageR/F] → [MessageR]/[MessageF] and press .





- The following icons show the status and type of the message.

	Unread message
	Read message
	Protected read message
	With melody attachment
	With still image attachment
	With ToruCa card attachment








- Select a message and press .



The message appears and "" changes to ".

- The following icons show the details of a message. Other icons are the same as in step 1.



### File attachment type

	Failed to obtain the image
	With invalid image attachment With image attachment (When the UIM is not inserted or other than that used when the message was received)
	With SMF-format melody attachment
	With MFI-format melody attachment
	With invalid MFI-format melody attachment
	With image attachment
	With ToruCa card attachment

※ "Ⓜ" appears when the UIM is not inserted.

- For details about the operation of the file attachment, see P.177.

### To display the previous or next message


Use  to display the previous message or  to display the next message.

## Protecting a Message

Message R or Message F can be protected from being overwritten.


- An unread message cannot be protected.

Example: Protecting Message R

- From the i-mode menu, select [MessageR/F] → [MessageR] and press .


### To protect Message F

From the i-mode menu, select [MessageR/F] → [MessageF].

- Select a message and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

### To cancel the protection

Move the cursor to the protected message and press  (Func).


- Select [Protect ON/OFF] → [Yes] and press .

The message is protected and "" changes to ".

## Deleting a Message

You can delete messages using four methods.

Example: Deleting Message R

- From the i-mode menu, select [MessageR/F] → [MessageR] and press .

### To delete Message F

From the i-mode menu, select [MessageR/F] → [MessageF].


### To delete all messages


From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

### To delete all read messages

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete read msg], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

### To delete several messages

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete], select messages, press  (Complete), and select [Yes].

- Select a message and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.


- Select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes] and press .

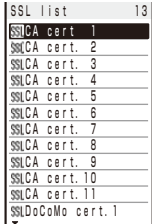
The selected message is deleted.

## Operating the SSL List <SSL certificate>

Default CA cert. • DoCoMo cert.1: Valid

You can set to validate/invalidate the certificate that is required to connect to an SSL site.

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [i-mode setting] → [SSL list] and press .



### [CA cert.]:

An authentication company issues these certificates. They are saved in the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.

### [DoCoMo cert.]:

This certificate is required for connecting to the FirstPass Center and FirstPass-compatible sites and is saved on the UIM (green/white).

### [User cert.]:

This certificate is downloaded from the FirstPass Center by [User certificate] and is saved in the UIM (green/white).

### To check the certificate

Move the cursor to the certificate and press .

- 2 Select an SSL certificate and press  (Set).

The Security code screen appears.

- 3 Enter the Security code and press  (OK).

The Valid/Invalid display appears.

- 4 Select [Valid]/[Invalid] and press .

The SSL certificate is set.


When set to [Invalid], "SSL" changes to "SSL". The SSL communication is canceled when connecting to an SSL site that requires a certificate.

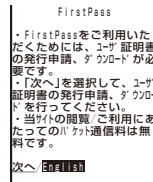
## Setting the FirstPass <User certificate>

You can issue and download the user certificate from the FirstPass Center.

The user certificate certifies that you are a FOMA subscriber. The downloaded user certificate is saved on the green/white UIM (FOMA card) and enables you to use FirstPass-compatible sites.


- You cannot use the user certificate using the blue UIM.
- To connect to the FirstPass Center, set the date and time (P.40).
- The screens and operation methods displayed by the FirstPass Center may change.
- While the FOMA terminal is connected to the FirstPass Center, you cannot send/receive mail or receive Message R/F.

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [i-mode setting] → [User certificate] and press .



- 2 Select [English] and press .



- 3 Select [Request your certificate] → [Continue] and press .

The PIN2 code input screen appears.

### To void the issued certificate

Select [Other settings] → [Revoke your certificate] → [Yes], enter the PIN2 code, and select [Continue] → [Continue] → [Continue].

- 4 Enter the PIN2 code and press  (OK).

- If you do not enter the PIN2 code within 15 seconds, the request for issuing your certificate is canceled.

- 5 Select [Download] → [Continue] and press .



The user certificate is downloaded and added to the list of SSL certificates (P.162).

## Precautions on the use of FirstPass

- The packet communication charge is free when you connect to the FirstPass Center.
- The packet communication performed when connecting to a FirstPass-compatible site is covered by the Pake-Houdai service. However, data communication with a PC connected is not covered by the Pake-Houdai service.
- FirstPass is an electronic authentication service provided by DoCoMo. Using FirstPass enables client authentication, which is performed between the site and FOMA terminal user by exchanging certificates and verifying the received certificate of the other side for mutual authentication.
- FirstPass can be used for Internet communication from the FOMA terminal as well as for Internet communication by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC. To use on a PC, you must install the FirstPass PC software on the supplied CD-ROM.
- When you request the user certificate to be issued, carefully read the displayed "FirstPass Agreement" and then make the request if you accept the terms.
- You need to enter the PIN2 code in order to use the user certificate (P.117). You are liable for all operations performed after you enter the PIN2 code. Therefore, exercise care to prevent the use of your UIM or PIN2 code by others.
- If you have lost or stolen your UIM, you can invalidate your user certificate at the "General Inquiries" numbers provided on the backcover of this manual.
- DoCoMo shall have no liability for any content and information provided by FirstPass-compatible sites. Any problem must be resolved between you and the FirstPass-compatible site.
- DoCoMo and the authentication company do not guarantee the security for using FirstPass and SSL. Therefore, you must use them at your own discretion and responsibility.

## Changing the Host for Certificate Issue


<Select host>

Default | ドコモ

※ Normally, you do not need to change the setting.

When you want a service other than FirstPass services, you can set one host. Note that if you change the setting, you cannot connect to the FirstPass Center.

- You cannot set this function during i-mode connection.

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select [i-mode setting] → [Select host] and press .



### To edit the set host

Move the cursor to the set host and from the Function menu, select [Edit] and enter the Security code. Edit each item.

### To restore the default host setting

From the Function menu, select [Reset], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- 2 Press  (Create).

The Security code screen appears.

- 3 Enter the Security code and press  (OK).



### [Host name]:

Enter a host name within 99 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols.

### [Host address]:

Enter a host address within 100 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols.

- 4 Enter each item.

- 5 Press  (Complete).

The entered host is saved.

- 6 Select a host and press .

The host is changed.

## What is i-motion?

i-motion is movie data that contains both video and sound tracks. You can play back an i-motion on the FOMA terminal and set a saved i-motion for the stand-by display. The i-motion can be of the following types. The type of i-motion varies depending on a site and cannot be selected.

Category		Description
Type	Playback method	
Standard type (Allowed to be saved※)	Playback is performed while loading data (500K bytes maximum)	Playback starts after halfway downloading i-motion data and proceeds while downloading the rest of the data.
	Playback is performed after loading data (500K bytes maximum)	Playback starts after all i-motion data is downloaded.
Streaming type (Not allowed to be saved)	Playback is performed while loading data (2M bytes maximum)	Playback starts after halfway downloading i-motion data and proceeds while downloading the rest of the data. The i-motion data is deleted once it is played back.

※ Some i-motion cannot be saved.

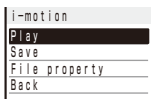
## Downloading an i-motion from Sites

<Download i-motion>

You can download i-motion from a site and save it to the FOMA terminal.

- You can save up to 150 i-motion, each up to 500K bytes. The number of i-motion that can be saved may decrease depending on the data to be saved.

### 1 While displaying a site, select an i-motion and press .



The i-motion is downloaded to the FOMA terminal. When the Auto replay is set to [ON], playback of the i-motion starts automatically after the downloading is completed. (For i-motion that can be played back while being downloaded, playback starts after halfway downloading data.)

- The operations during playback is the same as those described for i-motion in the Data Box (P.207).
- Even if you stop playback while the downloading is in progress, the downloading continues.

### 2 Select [Save] and press .

The screen for selecting where to save appears.

[Data Box]:

Save the i-motion in i-motion of the Data Box of the FOMA terminal. Select a folder for saving data.

[microSD]:

Save the i-motion in the microSD memory card.

To play back data

Select [Play].

To display detailed information

Select [File property].

When a link is set in the Telop text

When you stop or pause playback, a confirmation screen appears and you can use the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, and Web To functions.

### 3 Select a place to save to and press .

The i-motion is saved.

- Some i-motion may not be played back/saved properly even if its data is downloaded successfully.
- The playback may be stopped or the image may be distorted when you play back i-motion while downloading data depending on the radio wave condition, communication line conditions, or the communication speed. A standard type i-motion allows you to play back as many times as you want after downloading (using the saved data). However, a streaming type i-motion does not allow further playback once it is played back (unless you download it again).
- If you fold the FOMA terminal or execute another function while downloading/playing back an i-motion, the downloading/playing back may be stopped depending on some i-motion.
- You cannot download or play back an i-motion in the ASF format.

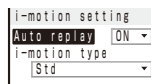
## Setting Auto Replay of i-motion and i-motion Type to Download

<i-motion setting>

Default | Auto replay: ON, i-motion type: Std

You can set whether to automatically play back standard type i-motion. You can also set the type of i-motion to be downloaded.

### 1 From the i-mode menu, select [i-mode setting] → [i-motion setting] and press .



[Auto replay]:

Set whether to automatically play back a standard type i-motion during or after downloading.

[i-motion type]:

Set the type of i-motion to be downloaded.

### 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Auto replay].

[ON]:

Automatically play back the i-motion during or after downloading.

[OFF]:

Do not automatically play back the i-motion during or after downloading and display the download completion screen.

### 3 Select the type of i-motion at [i-motion type].

[Std]:

Download standard type i-motion only. Streaming type i-motion cannot be downloaded.

[Std./Streaming]:

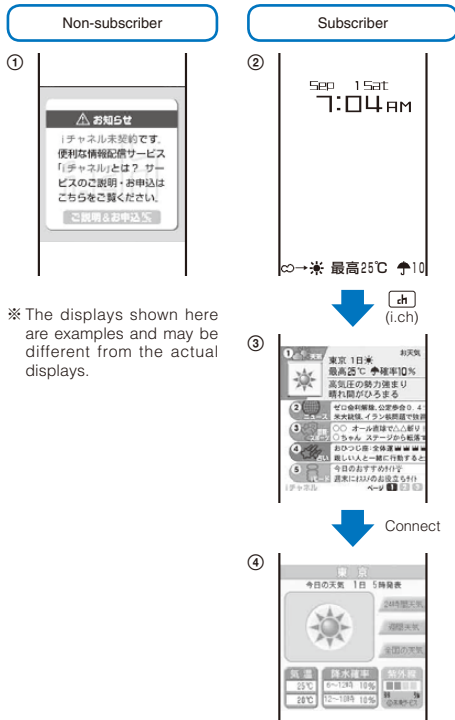
Download both standard type and streaming type i-motion.

# What is i-Channel?

The i-Channel service provided by DoCoMo or another IP (information service providers) distributes news, weather, etc. as graphics-based information to i-Channel-compatible terminals.

You can run the latest information updates in the main display and sub-display as Telop text by automatically getting this information on a regular basis. You can also display a list of channels and view the channel you want by pressing **[ch]** (P.166). The channel you select from the channel list gives you access to rich and detailed information.

- i-Channel is available only in Japanese.
- For details about precautions on the use of i-Channel and operating procedure, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".



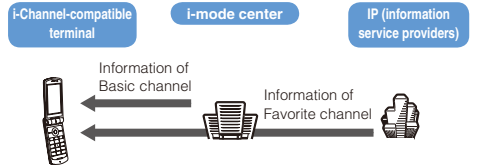
- ① When you are not subscribing to i-Channel
- ② After you start subscribing to i-Channel, the Telop text appears automatically on the stand-by display whenever you receive information or display the channel list.
- ③ When you press **[ch]** (i.ch), the channel list appears. You can view the information for each channel, displayed by the running Telop text, in a list form instead.
- ④ You can select a channel and view the detailed information display for each channel.

※ The displays shown here are examples and may be different from the actual displays.

There are two types of channels: "Basic channel" and "Favorite channel". "Basic channel" is provided by DoCoMo and is pre-registered, and therefore you can use it from the moment you start using the i-Channel service. The packet communication charge required for automatic updates of information distributed for the "Basic channel" is included in the i-Channel service charge. IP (information service providers) other than DoCoMo offers "Favorite channel" that you can register and use according to your needs. The packet communication charge required for automatic updates of information distributed for "Favorite channel" is not included in the i-Channel service charge.

You can display the information for "Basic channel" and "Favorite channel" as Telop text in the main display and sub-display.

- The information may be charged in order to use some "Favorite channel".
- You may need to apply separately for access to a "Favorite channel" to IP that provides it.
- The packet communication charge is required in addition to the i-Channel service charge when you view detailed information of "Basic channel" and "Favorite channel" from the channel list.



i-Channel is a paid service you have to subscribe to. (To apply for the i-Channel service, the subscription to i-mode is required.)

- Operation method (P.166)

## ● Trial service

If you are subscribing to i-mode and have an i-Channel-compatible terminal but have not applied for an i-Channel subscriber's line for i-Channel-compatible terminals, you can use the "Basic channel" service free of charge for a specific period. You must, however, pay a packet communication charge required for viewing detailed information from the channel list.

- For details about precautions on the use of the trial service and operating procedure, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

As a rule, the trial service starts automatically following a specific period after you insert the UIM and start using the i-Channel-compatible terminal. If the trial service does not start automatically, press **[ch]** to start it.

You can use the trial service only once per subscriber line.

The trial service automatically expires following a specific period after you start using it. For the procedure to stop the trial service before it expires, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

- You can set the display speed of the Telop text and also turn off the Telop text (P.166).

## Displaying the i-Channel

- 1 Press **[ch]** (i.ch) in the stand-by display.



The channel list appears.

- 2 Select a channel and press **[OK]**.



- You may receive specific information when the channel list is displayed, depending on the terms of use.

## When You Receive i-Channel



When you receive information, the information is automatically run as Telop text on the stand-by display.

**To display the channel list**

Press **[ch]** (i.ch).

**To display the Telop text on the sub-display**

Fold the FOMA terminal and press **[6]** (P.29).

- When you receive i-Channel information, "i"→"i" flashes. Even if you receive information, the FOMA terminal does not sound the ring tone or vibrate, and the incoming indicator does not operate, either.
- If you change the host, the Telop text may be turned off and information may not be automatically updated. To receive latest information, press **[ch]** (i.ch) and display the channel list. The Telop text starts running automatically.
- You can change the i-Channel host using the Host selection (P.159). Normally, you do not need to change the host.
- When the FOMA terminal is powered off, outside of the service area, or in poor radio wave condition, you may not be able to receive information. When you receive information by pressing **[ch]** (i.ch), the Telop text is automatically displayed in the stand-by display.
- Telop text is not displayed in the following cases.
  - When the Lock all is set
  - When the PIM lock is set
  - When the Omakase Lock is set
  - When the Public mode (Drive mode) is set
  - When the UIM is not inserted
  - When the i-Channel or i-mode service is canceled

## Changing the i-Channel Settings

### Setting the Telop Text

Default | Std

You can set the display speed of the Telop text and also turn off the Telop text.

- 1 From the i-mode menu, select **[i-Channel]** → **[Ticker]** and press **[OK]**.  
The Ticker display appears.  
**[Stand-by]:**  
Set the Telop text of the stand-by display used for the main display.  
**[Sub display]:**  
Set the Telop text used for the sub-display.
- 2 Set the speed for displaying the Telop text at **[Stand-by]/[Sub display]**.  
Select from [Fast], [Std], and [Slow].  
**To turn off the Telop text**  
Select [OFF].

### Restoring the Default Settings

You can delete saved i-Channel data and reset the Ticker settings to the default settings.

- If an i-motion or i-appli is set for the stand-by display, the Ticker settings are not reset.
- 1 From the i-mode menu, select **[i-Channel]** → **[Reset i-Channel]** and press **[OK]**.  
The screen for confirming whether to reset the i-Channel data appears.
  - 2 Select **[Yes]** and press **[OK]**.  
The i-Channel is reset.



# Mail

Mail Function of the FOMA Terminal .....	168
What is i-mode Mail? .....	168
Displaying the Mail Menu .....	<Mail menu> 170
<b>■ Composing i-mode Mail/Deco-mail</b>	
Composing and Sending i-mode Mail .....	<Compose and send mail> 170
Composing and Sending Deco-mail .....	<Compose and send Deco-mail> 171
Using a Template to Send Mail .....	173
File Attachment .....	<File attachment> 174
Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later .....	<Save mail> 175
<b>■ Receiving/Manipulating i-mode Mail</b>	
Receiving i-mode Mail .....	<Auto receive> 175
Selecting to Receive i-mode Mail .....	<Receive option> 175
Checking New i-mode Mail .....	<Check new messages> 176
Replying to i-mode Mail .....	<Reply to mail> 176
Forwarding i-mode Mail .....	<Forward mail> 176
Saving the Mail Address/Phone Number in the Phonebook .....	177
Playing Back/Saving a File Attachment Received in i-mode Mail .....	177
<b>■ Manipulating the Mail Box</b>	
Displaying Received/Sent/Saved Mail .....	178
<b>■ Setting Mail</b>	
Setting the Mail Function of the FOMA Terminal .....	<Mail setting> 182
<b>■ Using SMS (Short Message Service)</b>	
Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message Service) .....	<Compose and send SMS> 185
Receiving SMS (Short Message Service) .....	<Receive SMS> 186
Checking New SMS (Short Message Service) .....	<Check new SMS> 186
Setting SMS (Short Message Service) .....	<SMS setting> 186

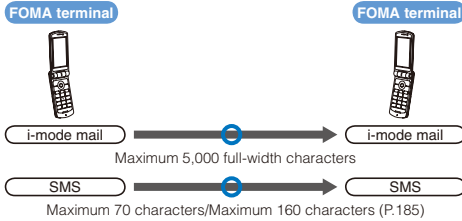
## Mail Function of the FOMA Terminal

The FOMA terminal provides two types of mail functions: i-mode mail and SMS. To use i-mode mail, you need to subscribe to i-mode.

### Mail Transmission Function

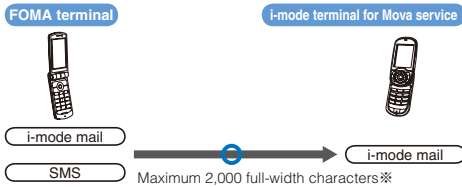
#### ■ FOMA terminal → FOMA terminal

You can use i-mode mail or SMS to send a message from a FOMA terminal to another FOMA terminal.



#### ■ FOMA terminal → i-mode terminal for the Movia service

You can use i-mode mail or SMS to send a message from a FOMA terminal to an i-mode terminal for the Movia service. The i-mode terminal for the Movia service receives SMS sent from a FOMA terminal as i-mode mail.

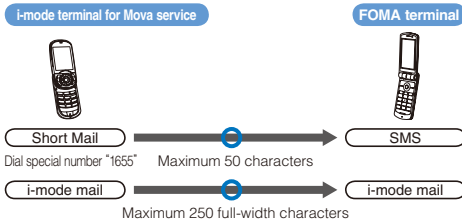


\* The maximum number of characters varies depending on the setting of the i-mode terminal for the Movia service.

- You cannot send SMS to an i-mode terminal for the Movia service when the SMS report is set (P.186).

#### ■ i-mode terminal for the Movia service → FOMA terminal

You can use i-mode mail and Short Mail\* to send a message from an i-mode terminal for the Movia service to a FOMA terminal. The FOMA terminal receives Short Mail sent from an i-mode terminal for the Movia service as SMS.



\* Short Mail is a service that allows text messages to be exchanged between mobile phones for the Movia service.

[Mail](#)

## What is i-mode Mail?

When subscribing to the i-mode service, mail can be exchanged with i-mode terminals (including Movia terminals) as well as e-mail over the Internet.

In addition to the main body of text, you can attach up to 10 files (JPEG, ToruCa, etc.) of up to 2M bytes in total. The i-mode mail function also provides Deco-mail support, and you can change the font color/size and background color of the mail main body text. Since there are many preinstalled Deco-mail pictographs that can be inserted in an i-mode mail message in the same manner as other pictographs, you can easily compose and send expressive mail.

The mail address when subscribing to i-mode is as follows.

#### If you are a new subscriber to the i-mode service

The portion of your mail address before the @ mark is a random combination of alphanumeric characters and symbols. Check your mail address after subscribing to the i-mode service.

(Example) abc1234~789xyz@docomo.ne.jp

#### <Checking your mail address>

[i Menu] → [English iMenu] → [Options] → [Mail Settings] → [Confirm Mail Address]

- Users of i-mode terminals (including Movia terminals) need to enter only the mail address portion before the @ mark to exchange mail.
- PC users need to enter the full mail address (i.e. including "@docomo.ne.jp") to send e-mail to i-mode terminals (including Movia terminals).
- Sending i-mode mail (P.170)
- Receiving i-mode mail (P.175)
- For details on the i-mode services, see the latest "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

#### ● Receive option

You can check the subjects of mail held at the i-mode center, and select specific mail that you want to receive, or delete mail held at the i-mode center before receiving it (P.175, 183).

### Make Settings for Mail

The following settings are available.

#### <Access to the individual setting>

[i Menu] → [English iMenu] → [Options] → [Mail Settings] → [Individual setting item]

- For details on this service, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" you receive when you sign up for i-mode.

#### ● Changing your mail address [Mail Address (Change Mail Address)]

The portion of your mail address before the @ mark can be changed as you want, such as "docomo.△△\_ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp".

#### ● Checking your mail address [Mail Address (Confirm Mail Address)]

The current mail address can be checked.

● **Saving a Secret code** [Mail Address (Other Settings) → Register a Secret Code]

The 4-digit Secret code can be saved in addition to the mail address when the address is set to "phone number@docomo.ne.jp". As mail without this Secret code attached is not received, you can prevent receiving unwanted mail.

● **Resetting the mail address** [Mail Address (Other Settings) → Reset Mail Address]

The mail address can be set to "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp".

● **Spam Mail Prevention**

You can use the following reject/receive mail settings to restrict receiving mail.

① **Rejecting Mail with URL** [Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention) → Reject Mail with URL]

You can reject mail containing URLs of sites which are judged as belonging to such categories as dating, adult, illegal, and security by NetSTAR Inc.

② **Receiving/Rejecting mail** [Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention) → Reject/Receive Mail Settings]

You can specify the companies to receive mail from DoCoMo, au, SoftBank, Tu-Ka, and WILLCOM.

You can also set to receive mail from specified domains or addresses. Even if the companies or domains are set the receiving options, you can reject mail from the addresses by specifying each by each. Please note that you can even reject mail from other companies (Internet) that impersonates mail addresses of mobile phone or PHS domains.

③ **Rejecting SMS** [Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention) → SMS Rejection Settings]

You can restrict receiving SMS by selecting from the following four types of rejections: [Reject All SMS], [Reject Anonymous SMS], [Reject Intl. SMS], [Reject Anonymous and Intl. SMS]. You can also check the current setting.

④ **Restricting Receiving Mail from Mass i-mode Mail Senders** [Receiving Mail (Other Settings) → Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders]

If the number of mail sent from an i-mode terminal (including a Movia terminal) exceeds 200 per day, you can reject further mail from that terminal. By default, this option is set to "拒否する" (Reject). No additional setting is required for rejecting further mail.

⑤ **Rejecting Unsolicited Ad Mail** [Receiving Mail (Other Settings) → Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail]

You can reject mail sent without recipient's agreement for the purpose of advertising products or services, which has "未承諾広告※" written at the beginning of the subject field. By default, this option is set to "拒否する" (Reject). No additional setting is required for rejecting unsolicited ad mail (the senders of such mail are required to add "未承諾広告※" (six full-width characters) at the beginning of the mail subject by law).

● **Restricting the mail size** [Receiving Mail (Limit Mail Size)]

You can preset the maximum size of the i-mode mail you receive.

● **Confirming the settings** [Receiving Mail (Confirm Settings)]

You can check the current mail settings such as the reject/receive mail settings.

● **Suspending the mail function** [Suspend Mail]

When you do not want to use the mail function provided by the i-mode center, you can disable it.

**If Unable to Receive Mail**

The i-mode center delivers mail to the i-mode terminal right after receiving it. When the i-mode terminal is powered off or cannot receive radio waves because it is outside of the i-mode service area or due to other reasons, the i-mode center sends mail repeatedly to the i-mode terminal until it is received for 720 hours for which mail is held at the center.

※ Mail that is not received is held for 720 hours at the i-mode center.

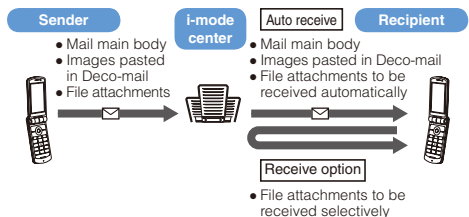
※ The option to resend mail varies depending on the reasons why the mail is not received.

You can also use the Receive option setting to select and receive i-mode mail held at the i-mode center.

**Other Features**

● **File transmission/reception**

When using i-mode mail (2M bytes file transmission supported), there is no restriction on the file type of received file attachments. You can attach and send up to 10 files of up to 2M bytes in total. When you receive mail as i-mode mail (2M bytes file transmission supported), you can receive all file attachments. Files of up to 100K bytes are received automatically (auto-received file attachments). Any of remaining files of up to 2M bytes can be received selectively according to whether it is necessary (selectively received file attachments). Even files of up to 100K bytes can be received selectively regardless of their size using the Attached file pref. function provided on the FOMA terminal. When you use a mobile phone of other terminal model, file attachments that can be received are restricted to those of the file types supported by the terminal, and also to the capacity of the terminal in number and size.



## ● Deco-mail

You can compose and send original mail by changing the font size or background color and pasting an image in the main body of the mail when you edit i-mode mail. You can also receive decorated mail. Since there are many preinstalled Deco-mail pictographs that can be inserted in an i-mode mail message in the same manner as pictographs, you can easily compose and send expressive mail. (When the i-mode terminal receives decorated mail from a PC, the operation may not be the same as mail operation on a PC if there are some decorations that are not supported by the terminal.)

When Deco-mail is sent to a Deco-mail non-compatible terminal and Deco-mail compatible terminals with a capacity of up to 10,000 bytes, the received mail may be shown with a URL. The recipient can view the Deco-mail by selecting the provided URL.

- Editing Deco-mail (P.171)
- Sending Deco-mail (P.171)
- Compatible models : Deco-mail is available on the Deco-mail compatible models. For details, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".
- If you forward mail that contains a URL for viewing Deco-mail or send mail in which you enter the URL directly, the recipient of the mail cannot view the Deco-mail.

## About SMS (Short Message Service)

You can exchange messages between FOMA terminals without subscribing to i-mode.

- Sending SMS (P.185)
- Receiving SMS (P.186)
- Checking new SMS (P.186)
- See DoCoMo's website to send/receive SMS to/from an overseas telecommunication company other than DoCoMo.

## If Unable to Receive SMS (Short Message Service)

The SMS received at the SMS center is immediately sent to the FOMA terminal. When the FOMA terminal is powered off or cannot receive radio waves because it is outside of the i-mode service area or due to other reasons, the SMS is held at the SMS center.

## Displaying the Mail Menu

<Mail menu>

- 1 Press  (Mail) in the stand-by display.




Menu name	Function
Inbox	Display, reply to or forward received mail (P.178).
Outbox	Display or edit sent mail (P.178).
Draft	Display mail that was saved without being sent and sent unsuccessfully (P.178).
Compose message	Compose and send new i-mode mail (P.170).
Compose SMS	Compose and send new SMS (P.185).
Templates	Display the list of Deco-mail templates (P.173).
Check new messages	Obtain mail, Message R, and Message F held at the i-mode center (P.160, 176).
Check new SMS	Obtain SMS held at the SMS center (P.186).
Receive option	Select and receive mail held at the i-mode center (P.175).
Mail setting	Set items relating to i-mode mail and SMS on the FOMA terminal (P.114, 182, 186, etc.).

## Composing and Sending i-mode Mail

<Compose and send mail>

Sent mail is saved in [Outbox].

- Mail may not be displayed correctly on the recipient's phone depending on the radio wave condition.

- 1 From the Mail menu, select [Compose message] and press .



- 2 Enter an address at [To].

Enter an address within 50 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols.

### 3 Enter a subject at [5].

Enter a subject within 15 full-width or 30 half-width characters.

### 4 Enter the main body at [≡].

Enter the main body within 5,000 full-width or 10,000 half-width characters. You can enter a Deco mail Pict. to compose Deco-mail (P.171).

To display the preview image

From the Function menu, select [Preview].

### 5 Press [ ] (Send).

The mail is sent.

To save the main body of text as signature

From the Function menu, select [Save signature].

- When the number of saved draft mail has reached 50 or there is not enough memory left for draft mail, you cannot compose new mail nor edit draft mail.
- If new mail is sent when the number of saved sent mail has reached 500 or there is not enough free space, the unprotected sent mail is overwritten from the oldest.
- If mail you send to several addresses is sent successfully to some and unsuccessfully to other addresses, the same mail is saved in [Outbox] as sent mail and in [Draft] as unsent mail/mail sent unsuccessfully.
- Even if the mail is sent successfully, you may receive the error message "Transmission failed" depending on the radio wave condition and the mail is saved in [Draft].

## Adding an Address

You can send i-mode mail containing the same information up to five addresses all at once by adding these addresses. You can select the type of address from To, Cc, and Bcc.

### 1 Press [ ] (Func) in the Edit mail display.

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Add receiver] → address type (To/Cc/Bcc) and press [ ].

The address field of the selected address type ([To]/[Cc]/[Bcc]) is added.

### 3 Enter an address in the added address field [To]/[Cc]/[Bcc].

To delete an address

Move the cursor to an address and from the Function menu, select [Delete receiver] → [Yes].

To change the address type

Move the cursor to an address and from the Function menu, select [Change addr type] → an address type (To/Cc/Bcc).

### 4 Compose mail and send it.

- Follow the same steps as in "Compose and send mail" (P.171, step 3 to 5).

- The mail addresses entered in To and Cc are displayed in the recipient's terminal display. Note, however, that they may not be displayed depending on the terminal, device, or mail software of the recipient. The mail addresses entered in Bcc are not displayed in the recipient's terminal display.

## Entering an Address from the Mail List

You can send mail to several recipients saved in the mail list.

### 1 Press [ ] (Func) in the Edit mail display.

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Mail list] → a mail list and press [ ].

All the members in the list are entered in the address box.

To select a specific address from the mail list

Press [ ] (Each) in the Mail list display and select a member.

### 3 Compose mail and send it.

- Follow the same steps as in "Compose and send mail" (P.171, step 3 to 5).

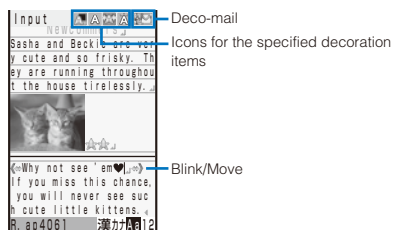
## Composing and Sending Deco-mail

<Compose and send Deco-mail>

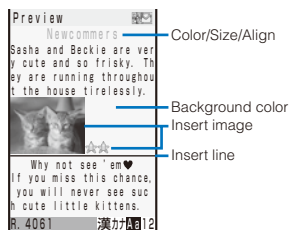
You can compose and send Deco-mail, i-mode mail that has a decorated main body.

- Deco-mail may not be received or displayed correctly depending on the recipient's terminal model.

Main body input display



Preview display



### 1 From the Mail menu, select [Compose message] and press [ ].

The Edit mail display appears.

### 2 Enter an address and subject.

- Follow the same steps as in "Compose and send mail" (P.170, step 2 to 3).

### 3 Enter/decorate the main body at [≡].

Enter the main body within 5,000 full-width or 10,000 half-width characters.

- Number of characters permitted in the main body may be reduced depending on the type and volume of decoration you use.

Press (Pict/Sym) to enter Deco mail Pict.※  
 Press (Func) in the Input text display, select [Deco. slcted txt]/[Quick deco. Mail]/[Decorate mail], and set decorations using the Cross Deco-palette. The table below indicates items that you can use for decoration and associated icons that appear on the title bar of the Input text display after completing decoration.

※ Deco mail Pict. is a Deco-mail pictograph that can be entered only in the Edit mail, Edit template, and Edit signature displays.

Function menu	Icon	Description
Deco. slcted txt	—	After specifying the range of the main body, you can decorate it. You can decorate the mail using [Color/Size] and [Blink/Move/Align], one after the other (P.172).
Quick deco. Mail	—	You can specify the background and font colors of Deco-mail all at once and also insert a decoration line above and below the text by selecting a pattern image and its color scheme (P.172).
Decorate mail	—	After specifying decoration, you can enter the main body (P.173).
Color/Size		You can select the font and line colors from 20 colors. The color of a pictograph is also changed. To reset to the normal pictograph color, select [None].
		You can select the font size from three types, large/medium/small. You cannot change the size of the Deco-mail pictograph.
Blink/Move/Align		The characters blink.
		The characters run from right to left in Telop text format.
		The characters swing to the right and left.
		The position of characters and images is left justified.
		The position of characters and images is centered.
		The position of characters and images is right justified.
Insert image	—	You can insert up to 20 types of images (90K bytes) from My picture of the Data Box. You can also select a Deco-mail pictograph.
Insert line	—	The line in the color set in [Color/Size] is inserted.
Background color	—	You can select the background color from 20 colors.

#### To cancel all decoration settings

From the Function menu, select [Decorate mail] → [Reset all].

#### To check the decoration settings

From the Function menu, select [Preview].

### 4 Press (Send).

#### To save the composed Deco-mail as a template

From the Function menu, select [Save template] → [Yes]. The Deco-mail is saved in Templates.

- Even if you delete a decorated character, the data used for decoration may not be erased and the number of characters in the mail main body that you can enter could be reduced. After canceling the decoration, delete the character. When you press for over a second, both the character and the decoration data are deleted.

- Blinking, motion, and animation stop automatically after a certain period of time.

- When Deco-mail exceeding 10,000 bytes is sent to a terminal of other than the following models※, it is received as ordinary mail in which a URL for viewing the Deco-mail is included. However, some terminals may receive mail only of the main body in which no URL for viewing the Deco-mail is included.

※ 903i series, 904i series, 703i series (excluding P703iμ), and 704i series

## Specifying Decoration After Entering the Main Body

### 1 Press (Func) in the main body input display.

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Deco. slcted txt] and press .

### 3 Select the decoration start point and press .

The first character to be decorated is set.

### 4 Select the decoration end point and press .

The range of the text to be decorated is set and the Cross Deco-palette appears.

### 5 Select the font size/color and press .

Use to select the font size (large/medium/small) and to select the font color.

- If you do not set the font size/color, press .

### 6 Select the text blink/move/alignment and press .

Use to select whether or not to allow the text to blink (ON/OFF) and to select the alignment (left justified/centered/right justified) or move (none/Telop text/swing).

- If you do not set the text blink/move/alignment, press .

## Specifying Decoration All at Once

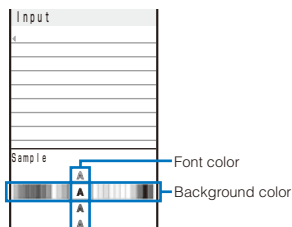
- If you select [Quick deco. Mail] from the Function menu, all the specified decorations are canceled.

### 1 Press (Func) in the main body input display.





The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Quick deco. Mail] and press .

The Cross Deco-palette appears.



### 3 Select the font/background color and press .

Use   to select the font color and   to select the background color.

- If you do not set the font/background color, press .



### 4 Select a pattern image/color scheme and press .

Use   to select a pattern image to be inserted above and below the text and   to select a pattern image/color scheme.

- If you do not set a pattern image/color scheme, press .

### 5 Enter the main body.

Enter text within 5,000 full-width or 10,000 half-width characters.

- Number of characters permitted in the main body may be reduced depending on the type and volume of decoration you use.

- You can also select the Quick deco. Mail after entering the main body.

## Entering the Main Body After Specifying Decoration

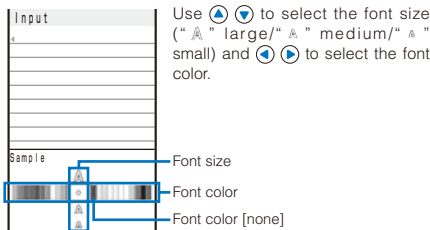
#### 1 Press (Func) in the main body input display.

The Function menu appears.

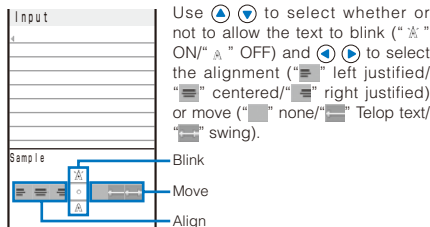
#### 2 Select [Decorate mail] → the decoration and press .

The Cross Deco-palette appears.

When you select [Color/Size]



When you select [Blink/Move/Align]



When you select [Insert image]

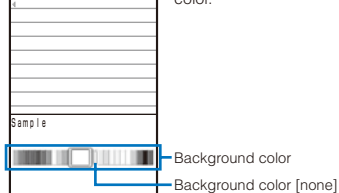
Select an image from My picture of the Data Box.

When you select [Insert line]

Insert a line at the line where the cursor is displayed.

When you select [Background color]

Use   to select the background color.



### 3 Enter the main body.

Enter text within 5,000 full-width or 10,000 half-width characters.

- Number of characters permitted in the main body may be reduced depending on the type and volume of decoration you use.

## Using a Template to Send Mail

A template is a model used for Deco-mail, which is preset with decorations for the main body. You can use templates to easily compose/send Deco-mail.

You can download a template from a site and also save up to 50 composed/received/sent Deco-mails as templates (P.172).

- You cannot edit or delete a preinstalled template.

#### 1 From the Mail menu, select [Templates] and press .




To check a template

Select a template.

To change the title

Move the cursor to a template and from the Function menu, select [Edit title]. Enter the title within 15 full-width or 30 half-width characters.

To delete a template

Move the cursor to a template and from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete several templates, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete], select templates, press  (Complete), and select [Yes]. To delete all templates, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To edit a template

Move the cursor to a template and press  (Edit).

#### 2 Select a template and press (Mail).

The Edit mail display appears.

#### 3 Compose mail and send it.

- Follow the same steps as in "Compose and send Deco-mail" (P.171, step 2 to 4).

- When you save Deco-mail containing an image that cannot be sent as a mail attachment or Deco-mail with a file attachment as a template, the image or file attachment is not saved.

## File Attachment

<File attachment>

You can send i-mode mail with up to 10 file attachments, 2M bytes in total, including still images, movies/i-motion, melodies, ToruCa cards, Phonebook, Schedule, Bookmark, My data, and other files.

### Files that can be attached

Type	Restrictions, etc.
Image (GIF/JPEG)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A JPEG image exceeding 2M bytes is automatically converted to a file of 2M bytes or less. (It is only the first file attachment that can be selected for conversion.)</li> </ul>
Movie/i-motion (MP4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A movie/i-motion file exceeding 2M bytes is automatically clipped from the beginning within 2M bytes. (It is only the first file attachment that can be selected for conversion.)</li> <li>An attached movie may appear grainy or may be displayed after being converted into several continuous still images depending on the recipient's terminal model.</li> <li>Some i-motion files may not be attached.</li> </ul>
(Green) Melody (SMF) (Orange) Melody (MFI)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A melody may not be sent properly to mobile phones other than SO704i.</li> </ul>
ToruCa	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You may not be able to send some ToruCa cards.</li> </ul>
Tool data	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Phonebook, My data, Schedule, and Bookmark data can be attached.</li> </ul>
Other files	—

- Files that cannot be attached to mail and files prohibited from being retrieved out of the FOMA terminal cannot be attached.

#### 1 Press (Func) in the Edit mail display.

The Function menu appears.

#### 2 Select [Add attach file] and press .

The Select attach file display appears.

##### [Image]:

Select an image from My picture of the Main memory/microSD.

##### [i-motion]:

Select a movie/i-motion from i-motion of the Main memory/microSD.

##### [Melody]:

Select a melody from Melody of the Main memory/microSD.

##### [ToruCa]:

Select data from ToruCa of the Main memory.

##### [Phonebook]:

Select data from Phonebook of the Main memory/microSD.

##### [My data]:

Attach My data.

##### [Schedule]:

Select data from Schedule of the Main memory/microSD.

##### [Bookmark]:

Select data from Bookmark of the Main memory/microSD.

##### [Others]:

Select data from Others of the microSD.

##### [Activate camera]:

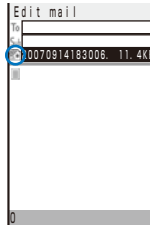
Select [Camera]/[Movie] and record images/movies using the camera (P.136, 139).

#### 3 Select a file type and press .

To check the contents of a file

Move the cursor to a file and press (Play).

#### 4 Select a folder → a file and press .



The file is attached and , , (Green), (Orange), , or appears.

#### 5 Compose mail and send it.

- Follow the same steps as in "Compose and send mail" (P.170, step 2 to 5).

It may take time to send mail depending on the size of a file attachment.

- When you send mail to an i-mode terminal which does not support 2M-byte file transmission, you can only attach files of the supported types and size within the capacity of the recipient's terminal. If you attach files of unsupported types or size exceeding the capacity, the file attachments are deleted and only the mail main body is sent to the recipient.

When you send a movie as a file attachment to i-mode terminals of other than the following models\*, a movie that is recorded with the image size [QCIF(176×144)], image quality [Fine] or higher, and a restricted file size of [Attach(S)] is recommended.

\* 903i series, 904i series, 703i series (excluding P703iμ), and 704i series

- When you send mail to an i-mode terminal for the Mova service, file attachment is restricted to one JPEG image, melody of the MFI format, or i-motion file. The recipient receives it as mail with a URL linked to the file. If you attach multiple files or an unsupported file, the attached files are deleted and only the mail main body is sent to the recipient.

### Deleting a File Attachment

#### 1 Select a file in the Edit mail display and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

#### 2 Select [Dlt attach file] → [Yes] and press .

The file attachment is deleted.



## Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later

<Save mail>

If you do not want to send composed mail immediately, you can save it in [Draft].

### 1 Press [Func] (Func) in the Edit mail display.

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Save] and press [OK].

The composed mail is saved as unsent mail in [Draft].

#### To edit saved mail

From the Mail menu, select [Draft] → [Draft] → mail.

## Receiving i-mode Mail

<Auto receive>

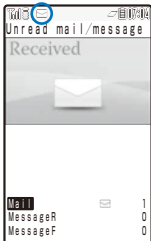
When mail is sent to the i-mode center, the FOMA terminal automatically receives them.



While receiving mail, "☀" flashes.

#### To cancel receiving mail

Press [Cancel]. "☀" appears in the next display informing the completion of reception. Receiving may be completed depending on the timing of cancellation.



When receiving is completed, "☀" is displayed, the indicator flashes, the ring tone sounds, and the number of received mail is displayed. The display before receiving reappears after about 15 seconds.

- When returning to the stand-by display, the notification icon "☀" (New mail) appears. Press [Link] and select "☀" to display the Inbox display.

- You can automatically receive up to 100K bytes of data in each mail, including the file attachment. You have to manually obtain a file attachment exceeding 100K bytes from the i-mode center (P.178).
- If new mail is received when the number of saved received mail has reached 1,000 or there is not enough free space, the unprotected read mail is overwritten from the oldest.
- When you receive multiple mail at the same time, the ring tone, call picture, and indicator color of the last received mail have priority.
- Mail that has been sent to you in the following situations is held at the i-mode center.
  - During a videophone call
  - When the FOMA terminal is powered off
  - When the FOMA terminal is outside of the i-mode service area
  - During PushTalk communication
  - While receiving SMS
  - While the Self mode is set
  - While the Omakase Lock is set
  - During the infrared communication
  - During the iC communication
  - While connected to the FirstPass Center
  - While connected to the Data Security Service Center
  - While updating the software

- Some mail is held at the i-mode center when "☀" appears (sometimes "☀" does not appear even if mail is held at the i-mode center).

If the maximum number of mail is held at the i-mode center, "☀" appears. In this case, check the contents of unread mail, delete unnecessary received mail, or cancel protection of received mail before performing the Check new messages.

- When the size of received mail (number of characters and file attachment size) has exceeded the number of characters (data size) specified at Limit Mail Size accessible through [i Menu] → [English iMenu] → [Options] → [Mail Settings], the file attachment cannot be received automatically.

## Selecting to Receive i-mode Mail

<Receive option>

You can check through mail held at the i-mode center, where you can select mail to receive and delete mail without receiving it based on the information such as mail subject. To use this function, set the Recv option setting to [ON]. When the Recv option setting is set to [ON], i-mode mail is not received automatically.

- When the Recv option setting is set to [ON], the Mail tone does not sound and when the Manner mode or Vibrator is set, the vibrator does not operate.




When receiving mail, the notification icon "☀" (Mail at center) appears.

#### To check mail

Press [Link] in the stand-by display and select "☀" → [Yes]. The FOMA terminal is connected to the i-mode center.

## Receiving i-mode Mail after Selecting






Connect to the i-mode center and select mail to receive.


- 1 From the Mail menu, select [Receive option] and press .



The call is connected to the i-mode center and the list of i-mode mail saved at the center appears.

- When the mail contains a file attachment, the following icons appear.

	Still image file attachment
	i-motion attachment
	Melody attachment
	ToruCa card attachment
	Other file attachment

- 2 Select [保留] (Holding) for the mail and press .

[受信] (Receive):

Receive a selected i-mode mail.

[削除] (Delete):

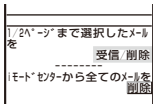
Delete a selected i-mode mail.

[保留] (Holding):

Hold a selected i-mode mail at the i-mode center.

- 3 Select [受信] (Receive) and press .

- 4 Select [受信/削除] (Receive/Delete) and press .



To delete all mail

Select [削除] (Delete) below [ i モードセンターから全てのメールを] (All mail from the i-mode center).

- 5 Select [決定] (OK) and press .


The selected mail is received.

## Checking New i-mode Mail

<Check new messages>

New mail held at the i-mode center while the FOMA terminal is powered off or outside of the i-mode service area can be checked.

- Depending on the radio wave condition, you may not be able to check new mail.

- 1 Press  (Mail) for over a second in the stand-by display.

The FOMA terminal is connected to the i-mode center, and an inquiry result is displayed.

To check mail


Select [Mail].

## Replying to i-mode Mail

<Reply to mail>

You can compose and send replies to the received mail.

- You may not be able to reply to some received mail.

- 1 From the received mail list, select mail and press  (Quote).

The Edit mail display appears.



The mail address as address, "Re: title of the received mail" as subject, and ">main body of the received mail" as main body are entered beforehand.

- When the subject including "Re:" exceeds 15 full-width or 30 half-width characters, the extra characters are automatically deleted.

To reply to mail without the sender's message

Move the cursor to mail and press  (Reply).

To reply to broadcast mail

Select mail, press  (Quote) or  (Reply), and select [Reply to sender]/[Reply all].

- 2 Compose mail and send it.

- Follow the same steps as in "Compose and send mail" (P.171, step 3 to 5).


The reply mail is sent and  appears.

- No quote is used for a file attachment, a melody or i-α ppli To link that is inserted in the mail main body, and an image in Deco-mail that cannot be redistributed.

## Forwarding i-mode Mail

<Forward mail>

You can forward received mail to another person. A file attachment is also forwarded.

- 1 From the received mail list, select mail and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Forward] and press .

The Edit mail display appears.

"Fw: title of the received mail" as subject and "main body of the received mail" as main body are entered beforehand.

- When the subject including "Fw:" exceeds 15 full-width or 30 half-width characters, the extra characters are automatically deleted.

- 3 Compose mail and send it.

- Follow the same steps as in "Compose and send mail" (P.170, step 2 to 5).

The mail is forwarded and  appears.


- A melody or i-α ppli To link inserted in the mail main body, an image in Deco-mail that cannot be redistributed, and a file not yet downloaded are not forwarded.

## Saving the Mail Address/Phone Number in the Phonebook

### Saving the Sender's/Recipient's Mail Address in the Phonebook

You can save the mail address of a received mail sender and recipient or sent/saved mail recipient in the Phonebook.

Example: Saving the mail address of a received mail sender to the FOMA terminal phonebook as a new entry

- 1 From the received mail list, select mail, press , and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Save address] and press .

The screen for selecting how to save to the Phonebook appears.

- 3 Select [New] and press .

The screen for selecting where to save appears.

When you select [Add]

Select an entry to which you want to add the mail address from the Phonebook.

When there are multiple mail addresses

Select mail addresses → [New]/[Add].

- 4 Select [Main memory] and press .

The Edit phonebook display appears.

To save to the UIM phonebook

Select [UIM].

- 5 Save other items.

- Follow the same steps as in "Add to FOMA terminal phonebook" (P.87, step 3) or in "Add to UIM phonebook" (P.89, step 3).

- 6 Press  (Complete).



The entry is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

### Saving the Phone Number/Mail Address in Display in the Phonebook

The mail addresses or phone numbers currently displayed in the site, received mail/sent mail, or ToruCa card can be saved in the Phonebook.

- Depending on the site, the displayed phone number or mail address may not be saved.

Example: Saving the phone number contained in the main body of the received mail to the FOMA terminal phonebook as a new entry

- 1 From the received mail list, select mail and press , and then select the phone number and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Add to phonebook] and press .


The screen for selecting how to save to the Phonebook appears.

- 3 Select [New] and press .

The screen for selecting where to save appears.

When you select [Add]

Select an entry to which you want to add the phone number from the Phonebook.

- 4 Select [Main memory] and press .

The Edit phonebook display appears.

To save to the UIM phonebook

Select [UIM].

- 5 Save other items.

- Follow the same steps as in "Add to FOMA terminal phonebook" (P.87, step 3) or in "Add to UIM phonebook" (P.89, step 3).

- 6 Press  (Complete).

The entry is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

## Playing Back/Saving a File Attachment Received in i-mode Mail

You can display/play back/save/delete a file that is attached or pasted in i-mode mail or a message including an image, melody, ToruCa card, movie/i-motion, Phonebook, Schedule, Bookmark, and My data.

### File attachments that can be played back and saved

Format	Restrictions
Image (JPEG/GIF)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can save a Deco-mail pictograph and stamp/frame in the Data Box only.</li> </ul>
Movie/i-motion (MP4)	—
Melody (SMF/MFI)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot play back a melody of 100K bytes or more. You can save a melody of 100K bytes or more in the microSD memory card only.</li> <li>• You may not be able to play back correctly a melody sent from a mobile phone other than SO704i.</li> </ul>
ToruCa card	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot play back a ToruCa card of 1K bytes or more and a ToruCa(detail) card of 100K bytes or more. You can save ToruCa cards only in the Main memory.</li> </ul>
Tool data	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can save the Phonebook, Schedule, and Bookmark data.</li> <li>• When you save a file using [Save attached], you cannot select the Main memory.</li> </ul>
Other files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can save other files in the microSD memory card only.</li> </ul>

- The number of files that you can save varies depending on the free memory space on the place to save to and data size.

Example: Saving a file attachment received in mail

**1** From the received mail list, select mail and press .

**2** Select a file attachment and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

To display/play back a file attachment

Move the cursor to the file attachment and press .

**3** Select [Save attached] and press .

The Save to display appears.

[Data Box]:

Save a file attachment in the Data Box. Select a folder to save to.

[microSD]:

Save a file attachment in the microSD memory card.

To play back a melody pasted in a message

Select [Play melody].

To save a melody pasted in a message

Select [Save melody] → a place to save to.

To check a melody title


Select [Confirm title].

To display details about an inserted image

Select [Insert img info] → an image. The detailed information appears.


To save an inserted image

Select [Save insert img] → an image → a place to save to.


**4** Select a place to save to and press .

The file is saved.

To display Tool data

Move the cursor to the file attachment, press , and select [Confirm].

To save Tool data in the FOMA terminal

Move the cursor to the file attachment, press , select [Register], enter the Security code, and select [Add]/[Overwrite].

When there is not enough memory

The screen for confirming whether to overwrite the data appears. To overwrite, select unnecessary data (P.224).



- Some of the received image and movie/i-motion may not be played back correctly.

## Receiving a File Attachment Selectively

You can obtain a file attachment exceeding 100K bytes and one for which the Attached file pref. is set to [Invalid].

- You cannot obtain a file attachment whose retention period is expired.

**1** From the received mail list, select mail and press .

**2** Select  and press .

The obtaining operation starts and the file attachment is obtained.

- If you obtain a file attachment not yet existing when there exist already 1,000 received mails or there is no more free memory space in the FOMA terminal, the obtained data overwrites the unprotected read mail from the oldest one. Depending on the size of the file attachment to be obtained, multiple mails may be overwritten by it.

## Deleting a File Attachment

You can delete a file that is attached to i-mode mail.

- You cannot delete an i- $\alpha$ ppli To link that is displayed in the mail main body.

Example: Deleting a file attached to the received mail

**1** From the received mail list, select mail and press .

**2** Select a file attachment and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

**3** Select [Del attach file] → [Yes] and press .


The file attachment is deleted.

## Displaying Received/Sent/Saved Mail

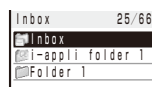
Default | Inbox: 1(ドコモからのお知らせ)

You can display received/sent/saved mail any time you want to. Received and sent mail can be saved in [Inbox] and [Outbox], respectively. Mail that was saved without being sent or sent unsuccessfully, is saved in [Draft].




- You can save up to 1,000 received mails, up to 500 sent mails, and up to 50 saved mails. The number of files that can be saved may decrease depending on the data to be saved.
- For SMS saved in the UIM, some function menu items are not available.

**1** From the Mail menu, select [Inbox]/[Outbox]/[Draft] and press .

Received mail



- The number of saved mail in the folder at the cursor/the total number of mail is displayed at the right end of the title line.
- The following icons show the status of the folder. Next to the icon, the folder name is displayed.

 (Yellow)	Preset folder/Mail security is set
 (Blue)	User-created folder/Mail security is set
	Folder created by i- $\alpha$ ppli with mail/Mail security is set

- If there is unread mail,  appears at the lower left of the icon.

To display the SMS list in the UIM

Press  (UIM).

## 2 Select a folder and press

The received/sent/saved mail list appears.

### Received mail

Inbox	1/25	Received date/time
15:51	ドコモ一郎	Sender
Photo contest		Subject
12:34	ドコモ二郎	
Concert ticket next		
09/13	携帯なつ子	
Yesterday's sub		
09/12	携帯なつ子	
Happy Birthday		
09/12	docomo. taro	
Place set for mee		
09/10	携帯はる子	
Sorry, 20 minutes l		

### Sent mail

Outbox	1/25	Sent date/time
20:12	携帯はる子	Recipient
Departure date an		Subject
10:24	docomo. taro	
It's a long time si		
09/13	ドコモ一郎	
Present		
09/12	携帯はる子	
New melody		
09/12	ドコモ二郎	
Snapshots during		
09/10	携帯なつ子	
Schedule for tomorr		

### Saved mail

Draft	1/25	Saved date/time
15:51	ドコモ二郎	Recipient
I've got the tick		Subject
09/13	docomo. taro	
Give me a call!		
09/13	携帯はる子	
How about ski in		
09/12	ドコモ二郎	
Sorry!		
09/12	ドコモ一郎	
Souvenir for you		
09/10	携帯はる子	
Map to the event		

- The received/sent/saved date/time field indicates the time when the mail is received/sent/saved today, and otherwise the date.
- For SMS, the beginning of the mail main body is displayed instead of the subject.
- The following icons show the status and type of the mail and the type of the file attachment.

#### Mail status

	Unread mail
	Read mail (Protect ON)
	Replied mail (Protect ON)
	Forwarded mail (Protect ON)
	Sent mail (Protect ON)
	Unsent mail/mail sent unsuccessfully

#### Mail type

	SMS
	SMS in the UIM (Received/sent mail only)
	Unable to reply mail (Received mail only)
	Mail used by i-αppli with mail

#### File attachment type

	With image attachment
	With movie attachment
	With melody attachment
	With ToruCa card attachment
	With i-αppli To
	With Tool data attachment (Phonebook, Schedule, Bookmark)
	With other file attachment

#### To display mail addresses or phone numbers

When saved in the Phonebook, the name is displayed instead of the mail address/phone number. Press to switch the display temporarily between the names and mail addresses/phone numbers.

- When the Secret display is set to [ON], the name is displayed even if a caller or recipient is saved as Secret in the Phonebook.

#### To place a call

When a mail address and phone number is saved in the Phonebook, you can place a call to this number. Move the cursor to the mail and from the Function menu, select [Call back].

## 3 Select mail and press

### Received mail

Inbox	4/25	Address type
2007/09/12	11:54	Received date/time
携帯なつ子		Recipient
Happy Birthday		Sender
		Subject
Happy birthday! It's sli		
eady one year since you		
left. You surely familia		
rize yourself with the l		
ocal culture. I hope yo		
enjoy your coming year.		
Attached is our memorial		
song.		
070912.mld	0.9KB	
- END -		

### Sent mail

Outbox	1/25	Sent date/time
2007/09/14	20:12	Recipient
携帯はる子		Recipient
携帯なつ子		(Cc)
		(Bcc)
Departure date and ti		Subject
Long desired XXX! The l		
ng awaited departure is		
close at hand.		
Let's meet together at X		
XX on 16th at 5:45 pm.		
Toasts to our departure w		
070914.mld	0.9KB	
- END -		

- The following icons show the details of mail. Other icons are the same as in step 2.

#### File attachment type

	Invalid pasted data (when several data is pasted)
	With SMF-format melody attachment (Invalid data)
	With MFI-format melody attachment (Invalid data)
	With image attachment (Invalid data)
	With movie attachment (Invalid data)
	With ToruCa card attachment (Invalid data)
	With Tool data attachment (Phonebook, Schedule, Bookmark) (Invalid data)
	Not loaded file attachment
	File attachment loading in progress
	File attachment loading error
	File attachment already deleted

#### To display the previous or next mail

Use to display the previous mail or to display the next mail.

- You can set the received/sent/saved mail not to be displayed by folder (Mail security) (P.125).
- When you start the i-αppli that is introduced in the “ドコモからのお知らせ”, the communication charge is required for it.

## Storing the Mail at the Data Security Service Center

You can use the Data Security Service to store up to 10 i-mode mails or SMS messages at one time at the Data Security Service Center.

- Data Security Service is a paid service that requires a subscription. For details on this service, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".
- You can also store an image inserted in Deco-mail.
- You cannot store a file attachment and also a mail file exceeding 100K bytes.

Example: Storing received mail

- 1 Press  (Func) in the received mail list.


The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Store at Center] and press .

The Security code screen appears.

- 3 Enter the Security code and press  (OK).


The Select mail display appears.

- 4 Select mail and press .

- To store several mails, repeat step 4.

- 5 Press  (Complete).

The screen for confirming whether to store the mail appears.

- 6 Select [Yes] and press .

The call is connected to the Data Security Service Center and mail is stored. When the storing is completed, the storing result display appears.



- You cannot store SMS report.

## Adding/Deleting Folders


In addition to [Inbox]/[Outbox], you can create up to 20 folders each to manage received and sent mail. Besides these folders, additional five folders are reserved for i-αppli with mail each in [Inbox]/[Outbox]/[Draft]. You can also change a folder name or sort the folders.

- You cannot delete the preset folders, folders including protected mail and mail folders supported by i-αppli with mail software. Folders of i-αppli with mail can be deleted if there is no supporting software for that i-αppli with mail. In this case, the other folders of that i-αppli with mail in the received, sent, or saved mail list are also deleted.
- You cannot change the names of the preset folders and folders of i-αppli with mail.

Example: Adding a folder for received mail

- 1 From the Mail menu, select [Inbox], press , and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.



- 2 Select [Edit folder] → [Create folder], press , and enter a folder name.

Enter a name within eight full-width or 17 half-width characters. The folder is added.

**To change a folder name**

Move the cursor to a folder and from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] → [Edit folder name]. Enter a name within eight full-width or 17 half-width characters.

**To reorder folders**

From the Function menu, select [Edit folder] → [Reorder folders] → a folder. Move the cursor to a position to move to, press  (Move), and press  (Complete).

**To delete a folder**


Move the cursor to a folder and from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] → [Delete folder]. Enter the Security code and select [Yes].

- After downloading i-αppli with mail, the folders of i-αppli with mail are automatically created in [Inbox], [Outbox], and [Draft].

## Moving Mail to a Different Folder

You can move received/sent mail to another folder using three methods.


Example: Moving received mail


- 1 From the Mail menu, select [Inbox] → a folder and press .

**To move all mail in a folder**


From the Function menu, select [Move] → [Move all] → [Yes] → a folder.

**To move several mails**

From the Function menu, select [Move] → [Select&move], select mails, and press  (Complete). Select [Yes] → a folder.

- 2 Select mail and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 3 Select [Move] → [Move one] → [Yes] and press .

The Select move to display appears.

- 4 Select a folder and press .


The selected mail is moved to the different folder.

## Protecting Mail

Received or sent mail can be protected from being overwritten. Up to 500 received mails and 250 sent mails can be protected.

- You cannot set protection for unread mail and unsent mail/ mail sent unsuccessfully.

Example: Protecting received mail

- From the received mail list, select mail and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

To cancel the protection

Move the cursor to the protected mail and press  (Func).

- Select [Protect ON/OFF] → [Yes] and press .

The mail is protected and "🔒/🔓/🔒" appears.

To cancel the protection of all mail

From the Function menu, select [Unprotect all] → [Yes].

## Deleting Mail

You can delete the received or sent mail using the following six methods.

Delete one	Delete a mail in the folder.
Select&delete	Delete several mails in a folder. Up to 30 mails can be selected at a time.
Delete read msg (for received mail only)	Delete all read mail.
Delete all	Delete all mail in the folder.
Delete read msg (for received mail only)	Delete all read mail in the folder.
Delete all	Delete all received or sent mail.

Example: Deleting received mail

- From the Mail menu, select [Inbox] and press .

To delete all received mail

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To delete all read mail

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete read msg], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- Select a folder and press .

The received mail list appears.


To delete all read mail in the folder

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete read msg], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To delete all mail in the folder

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To delete several mails

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete], select mails, press  (Complete), and select [Yes].

- Select mail and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- Select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes] and press .


The selected mail is deleted.

## Displaying i-αppli Mail as Regular Mail

i-αppli mail can be displayed as regular mail. If after the i-αppli with mail software is deleted, mail saved in the folder of the i-αppli with mail can be displayed in the same way as regular mail.

Example: Displaying received i-αppli mail

- From the Mail menu, select [Inbox] and press .

- Select the folder of i-αppli with mail and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- Select [i-mode mail form] and press .

The i-αppli mail can be displayed as regular mail.

## Checking the Number of Mail Saved

The number of mail saved can be checked for each folder.




Example: Checking the number of received mail saved

- From the Mail menu, select [Inbox] and press .

- Select a folder and press  (Func).




The Function menu appears.

- Select [Memory status] and press .

Memory status		
Folder	All	
	1	1
	22	55
	2	10
Ttl	25	66

The number of received mail saved in the selected folder and the total number of received mail saved are displayed.

Received mail

	Number of unread mail
	Number of read mail
	Number of protected read mail

Sent mail

	Number of sent mail
	Number of protected sent mail

Saved mail

The number of saved mail in the selected folders and the total number of saved mail are displayed.

## Sorting Mail

Received or sent mail in a folder can be sorted for display temporarily.

Example: Sorting received mail

- 1 Press **[☑]** (Func) in the received mail list.  
The Function menu appears.
- 2 Select **[Sort]** → a sorting order and press **[⊙]**.

### Received mail

- [Date]:**  
Sort mail from newest to oldest received date.
- [From address]:**  
Sort mail by the sender's mail address in alphabetical order.
- [Subject]:**  
Sort mail by the subject in Japanese alphabetical order.
- [Size]:**  
Sort mail by the mail file size from the largest (including an obtained file attachment).

### Sent mail

- [Date]:**  
Sort mail from newest to oldest sent date.
- [To address]:**  
Sort mail by the recipient's mail address in alphabetical order.
- [Subject]:**  
Sort mail by the subject in Japanese alphabetical order.
- [Size]:**  
Sort mail by the mail file size from the largest (including a converted file attachment).

The mail is listed in the selected order.

- When you select **[Subject]**, sorting may not be performed exactly in Japanese alphabetical order if, for example, some subjects contain a mixture of full-width and half-width characters. For SMS, sorting may not be performed exactly in Japanese alphabetical order because it is treated as mail without the subject.

## Setting the Mail Function of the FOMA Terminal

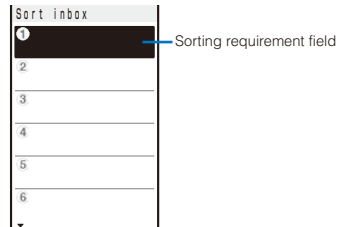
<Mail setting>

## Assigning Separate Folders for Mail

You can save requirements to sort received or sent mail so that they can be automatically assigned to folders. Up to 30 sorting requirements can be saved.

Example: Setting a sorting requirement for received mail

- 1 From the Mail menu, select **[Mail setting]** → **[Sort inbox]** and press **[⊙]**.



### To set a sorting requirement for sent mail

From the Mail menu, select **[Mail setting]** → **[Sort outbox]**.

### To delete a sorting requirement

Move the cursor to the sorting requirement field and from the Function menu, select **[Delete]** → **[Delete one]** → **[Yes]**. To delete several sorting requirements, from the Function menu, select **[Delete]** → **[Select&delete]**, select sorting requirements, press **[⏏]** (Complete), and select **[Yes]**. To delete all sorting requirements, from the Function menu, select **[Delete]** → **[Delete all]**, enter the Security code, and select **[Yes]**.

### To reorder the sorting requirements

From the Function menu, select **[Reorder]** → a sorting requirement → a folder to move to and press **[⏏]** (Complete).

### To cancel editing

From the Function menu, select **[Cancel]**.

- 2 Select the sorting requirement field and press **[⊙]**.



- 3 Select the sorting method at **[Sorting criteria]**.

### [Address]:

Specify a mail address. The mail address portion after the @ mark is required. However, when you set the mail address to "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", enter the phone number only.

### [Group]:

Specify a group.

### [Subject]:

Enter a subject or a part of it within 15 full-width or 30 half-width characters.

### [None]:

Sort mail that does not meet any specified sorting requirement.

- 4 Select a folder to be used for sorted mail at **[Folder to sort into]**.

### When no folder is specified

Mail is sorted to **[Inbox]**/**[Outbox]**.



## 5 Press (Complete).

The sorting requirement is saved.

- If mail satisfies several sorting requirements, the sorting requirement with a lower number in the list has higher priority. If you set [None] for sorting requirement, the sorting requirements lower than the number you set become invalid, and mail is sorted to the folder for which [None] is set.
- If you delete a folder for which the sorting requirement was set, [Inbox]/[Outbox] is used as a sort destination folder.
- If data saved as Secret is contained in a group that has been set as a sorting requirement, and if you receive mail from a sender or send mail to a recipient who is relevant to the data, it is saved in [Inbox]/[Outbox]. To enable the sorting requirement, set the Secret display to [ON].
- An *i-αppli* with mail is automatically sorted to the corresponding *i-αppli* with mail folder regardless of the sorting requirement.
- Mail received before the sorting requirement is set is not sorted automatically.

## Adding a Signature to Mail

When saved beforehand, your signature can be attached at the end of the main body of mail.

### Saving a Signature

The signature attached to mail can be created and saved.

#### 1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] → [Edit signature] and press .

The Edit signature display appears.

- If you have saved a signature before, it is displayed.

#### 2 Press (Edit) and enter a signature.

Enter a signature within 5,000 full-width or 10,000 half-width characters.

You can enter a Deco mail Pict. to compose Deco-mail.

#### 3 Press (Complete).

The signature is saved.

- You can also decorate a signature (P.171).

## Adding a Signature Automatically

Default Auto

The saved signature can be automatically attached to the main body when you compose mail.

#### 1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] → [Signature] and press .

#### 2 Select [Auto]/[No] and press .

The Signature is set.

- Even if the Signature is set to [No], you can attach the signature manually. From the Function menu in the Input text display, select [Add signature].
- Even if the Signature is set to [Auto], you cannot attach a signature to a reply mail using the Quote function or a forwarded mail.

## Setting the Type of Mail/Message to be Checked

Default Valid

You can set whether to receive mail, Message R, and Message F when making inquiries to the i-mode center.

Example: Setting the i-mode inquiry set for mail

#### 1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] → [Common setting] → [i-mode inquiry set] and press .

i-mode inquiry set	
Mail	Valid
MessageR	Valid
MessageF	Valid

#### 2 Select [Mail] → [Valid]/[Invalid] of the i-mode inquiry set.

The i-mode inquiry set is set.

## Setting to Select and Receive Mail

Default OFF

You can set whether to selectively receive i-mode mail.

- Even if the Recv option setting is [ON], all mail is received if you use the Check new messages. If you do not want to receive mail, set [Mail] to [Invalid] in the i-mode inquiry set (P.183).

#### 1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] → [Recv option setting] and press .

The Recv option setting display appears.

[ON]:

Sent mail is held at the i-mode center and not received by the FOMA terminal. To receive, use the Receive option (P.175).

[OFF]:

Sent mail is received automatically by the FOMA terminal.


#### 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The Recv option setting is set.

## Setting a Mail List

Default | List: List0 to 9, Member list: None


By saving mail addresses in a mail list, you can send mail to all members in the list at the same time. Up to 10 mail lists can be saved. Up to five mail addresses can be saved in each mail list.

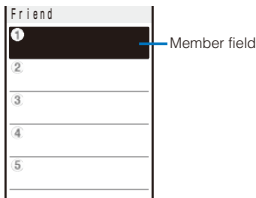
- 1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] → [Mail list] → a mail list and press .



- 2 Enter a list name at [List].

Enter a list name within eight full-width or 16 half-width characters.

- 3 Select [Member list] and press .



### To delete a member

Move the cursor to the member field and from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete all members, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- 4 Enter the mail address or the phone number in the member field.

Enter a mail address or phone number within 50 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols.


- 5 Press  (Complete).

The member list is set.

- 6 Press  (Complete).

The mail list is set.

### To delete a mail list



Move the cursor to a mail list in the Mail list display and from the Function menu, select [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete several mail lists, from the Function menu, select [Select&delete], select mail lists, press  (Complete), and select [Yes]. To delete all mail lists, from the Function menu, select [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- Even if you change the contents of the Phonebook after saving a member to the mail list, the saved contents on the mail list do not change.

## Playing a Melody Automatically from Mail

Default | ON

The melody can be set to be played back automatically when displaying mail or message.


- 1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] → [Common setting] → [Melody auto play] and press .
  - 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .
- The Melody auto play is set.

- When mail has several melody attachments, the melodies are played back in the order they were attached to the mail. Melodies in the MFI format has lower priority than those in the SMF format.
- When the Manner mode is set or when the message is displayed automatically, the Melody auto play is disabled.

## Setting the Receiving Operation during Multitasking

Default | Prefer alarm

You can set whether the incoming mail or received mail display should appear when you receive mail, SMS, or Message R/F while you are using the FOMA terminal for other tasks.

- 1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] → [Common setting] → [Dur multi task disp] and press .

[Prefer alarm]:

Display the incoming mail or received mail display.

[Prefer operat.]:

Do not display the incoming mail or received mail display. "☐", "☐", or "☐" flashes while you are receiving mail/message and "☐", "☐", "☐", or "☐" appears after reception.

- 2 Select [Prefer alarm]/[Prefer operat.] and press .


The receiving operation during multitasking is set.

- Regardless of the setting, SMS is received with [Prefer operat.] while placing (originating)/receiving a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call, during a voice call, videophone call, or PushTalk communication, while recording a still image/movie, running i-αppli, or receiving mail.

## Enabling the Receiving of a File Attachment

Default Valid

You can set whether to automatically receive the file attached to i-mode mail.

- 1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] → [Attached file pref.] and press .

Attached file pref.	
Image	Valid ▾
Melody	Valid ▾
i-motion	Valid ▾
ToruCa	Valid ▾
Tool data	Valid ▾
Others	Valid ▾

- 2 Select [Valid]/[Invalid] for each item.

[Valid]:

Automatically receive a file attachment.

[Invalid]:

Do not automatically receive a file attachment. To obtain a file attachment, from the Inbox display, select "F" (P.178).

The Attached file pref. is set.

- Even if you set the Attached file pref. to [Valid], a file attachment exceeding 100K bytes is not received automatically.

## Deleting the Send/Receive Ranking List


Up to 20 each of most frequent senders and recipients are automatically saved in the Send and Receive ranking lists. You can select a recipient from this list when you compose mail. The Send and Receive ranking lists can be cleared at once.

Example: Deleting the Receive ranking list

- 1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] → [Clear Recv ranking] and press .

To delete the Send ranking list

From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] → [Clear Send ranking].


- 2 Select [Clear all] and press .

All Receive ranking list data is deleted.

## Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message Service) <Compose and send SMS>

Regardless of whether you subscribe to i-mode, you can send/receive text messages between FOMA terminals.

- You can exchange SMS with recipients/senders who subscribe to an overseas telecommunication company other than DoCoMo. See the NTT DoCoMo website for information about countries and overseas telecommunication companies you can use for sending/receiving SMS.
- Even if the Notify caller ID is set to [Not notify], an SMS recipient is notified of the sender's phone number.
- The text of sent message may not be displayed correctly on the recipient's terminal depending on the radio wave condition or the type of characters to be sent.


- 1 From the Mail menu, select [Compose SMS] and press .



- 2 Enter a phone number at [To].

Enter a phone number within 21 digits.

**When a recipient subscribes to an overseas telecommunication company other than DoCoMo**

Enter "+" (press  for over a second), "Country code", and "recipient's mobile phone number", in this order. When the mobile phone number starts with "0", enter the number without "0". You can also send SMS by entering "010", "Country code", and "recipient's mobile phone number", in this order. (To reply to SMS received from overseas, use the latter method using "010".)

- 3 Enter a main body at [ ].

When you set [Language] to [JPN] for the SMS setting, enter the SMS main body within 70 characters regardless of full-width or half-width.

When you set it to [ENG], enter the main body within 160 half-width characters (excluding ', ., [ , ], ., ;, ", and \* ). Use of the symbols (^{}[]~¥) reduces the number of characters that can be sent.

- 4 Press  (Send).

The SMS is sent.

To save SMS without sending it

From the Function menu, select [Save]. The SMS is saved in [Draft].

- When you subscribe to the Multi Number Service, set [Basic Number] for the Set Multi Number.

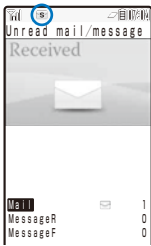
## Receiving SMS (Short Message Service)

<Receive SMS>

The FOMA terminal automatically receives SMS. You can save up to 1,000 received SMS including i-mode mail in [Inbox].



While receiving SMS, "☎" flashes.



When SMS reception is completed, "☎" is displayed, the incoming indicator flashes, the ring tone sounds, and the number of received SMS appears. After about 15 seconds, the display prior to the SMS reception reappears.

After about 15 seconds, the display prior to the SMS reception reappears.

- When returning to the stand-by display, the notification icon "☎" (New mail) appears. Press **☎** (Link) and select "☎" to display the Inbox display.

- You can compose and send a reply to the received SMS and forward it (P.176).
- Some characters in a received SMS message are replaced with as many spaces (blanks).

## Checking New SMS (Short Message Service)

<Check new SMS>

New SMS held at the SMS center while the FOMA terminal is powered off or outside of the service area can be checked.

- Depending on the radio wave condition, you may not be able to check new SMS.

- 1 Press **☎** from the Mail menu, select [Check new SMS] and press **☎**.

The FOMA terminal is connected to the SMS center and receives SMS if some are held at the center.

- Even if you check new SMS, it may take time to receive SMS.

## Setting SMS (Short Message Service)

<SMS setting>

Default Language: JPN, SMS report: Invalid, Validity: 3 days, SMSC: DoCoMo, Type of Number: International, Address: 81903101652

※ Normally, you do not need to change the SMSC, Type of Number, and address settings.

- 1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] → [SMS setting] and press **☎**.



[Language]:

Select whether a message to be sent is going to be displayed in Japanese or English. The number of characters that can be sent varies depending on the type of characters.

[SMS report]:

Set whether you require a delivery report when SMS is sent.

[Validity]:

Select the period for holding your SMS at the SMS center when a recipient is unable to receive the SMS you sent.

[SMSC]:

Set when you receive SMS services provided by companies other than DoCoMo.

[Type of Number]:

When you select [Others] at [SMSC], select [International]/[Unknown].

- When "✳" or "#" is included in the address entered at [Address], select [Unknown].

[Address]:

When you select [Others] at [SMSC], enter an address. You can enter up to 20 half-width digits.

- 2 Set each item.

- 3 Press **☎** (Complete).

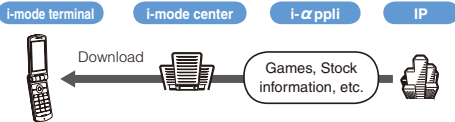
The SMS setting is set.

# i-α ppli

What is i-α ppli? .....	188
Downloading i-α ppli from a Site .....	189
Running i-α ppli .....	<Run i-α ppli> 190
Running i-α ppli Automatically .....	<Auto start> 194
Setting i-α ppli for the Stand-by Display .....	<i-α ppli stand-by> 194
Managing i-α ppli .....	195
Displaying i-α ppli Data in microSD memory card .....	<i-α ppli(microSD)> 196
Using Various i-α ppli Functions .....	196

## What is i-αppli?

By downloading i-αppli from its site, the i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (hereinafter referred to as i-mode terminal) can be made more useful in many ways. For example, you can enjoy many kinds of games by downloading them to it. Downloading i-αppli for stock information allows you to check the stock price automatically at the set time. In another aspect, i-αppli for maps enables the smooth scrolling by downloading only necessary data. There are also i-αppli from which you can directly save data to the Phonebook and Schedule, as well as i-αppli that can be linked with Data Box for saving/loading images.



- Downloading i-αppli (P.189)
- Running i-αppli (P.190)
- Running i-αppli automatically (P.194)
- Some software may use the serial number of the mobile phone/UIIM (FOMA card) of the i-mode terminal.
- Some software performs network communication while running. The setting can be made not to perform it (P.191).

### ■ Using Saved Data

Some i-αppli software can refer to, save or operate the i-mode terminal information (Phonebook, Bookmark, Schedule, pictures, and icon information). Operations using the saved data are as follows.

- Save in Phonebook
- Use icon information
- Save in Bookmark
- Save in Schedule
- Obtain picture from Data Box
- Save picture in Data Box
- Save ToruCa card

## What is i-αppli DX?

i-αppli DX enables you to enjoy i-αppli more conveniently by working in conjunction with the i-mode terminal information (mail, Redial/Received record, Phonebook, etc.). For example, you can compose mail with your favorite character in the display, or set a character to notify you of the caller when receiving a call. Furthermore, information you need such as stock prices or game results can be provided in real time using mail.

### ■ Using Saved Data

Some i-αppli DX software can refer to, save or operate data such as mail, Redial/Received record, and ring tones, in addition to data that can be used with the usual i-αppli (Phonebook, Bookmark, Schedule, pictures, and icon information). Operations using the saved data are as follows.

- Save in Phonebook
- View Phonebook
- Use icon information
- Save in Bookmark
- Save in Schedule
- Use Mail menu
- Use i-mode mail compose display
- View latest redial record
- View latest received record
- View latest unread mail
- Save ring tone
- Change ring tone (call, videophone call, mail, message)
- Obtain picture from Data Box
- Save picture in Data Box
- Save new ToruCa card, select, obtain ToruCa card
- Change display settings (stand-by display, placing/receiving a call, receiving/sending mail, receiving message R/F)
- With i-αppli DX, the network transmission may be performed regardless of the software's transmission setting in order to confirm the validity of software. The number and timing of transmission varies depending on the software.
- To start i-αppli DX, the current date and time must be set.

## What is i-αppli with Mail?

The i-αppli with mail is a type of i-αppli DX. By exchanging information using i-mode mail, you can use i-αppli more conveniently. For example, information such as stock prices or game results can be provided in real time.

- i-αppli mail used by i-αppli with mail software may not be displayed correctly in some cases.

## What is Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli?

You can use an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli for various useful functions. For example, you can download e-money or a train ticket by reading/writing data on an IC card. You can also use your mobile phone to check the balance or purchase history on your IC card.

- When you use the Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli, your IC card information is sent to IP (information service providers) of the service that you are subscribing to.
- What is Osaifu-Keitai? (P.198)

## Other Features

### ● i-αppli stand-by display

i-αppli stand-by display enables you to set i-αppli for the stand-by display and to receive mail or place a call from that display. The i-αppli stand-by display provides convenient use of the stand-by display. For example, you can display the latest news or weather information in the stand-by display, or set your favorite character to notify you of the mail reception or the alarm (P.194).

- This function is available with the software supporting the i-αppli stand-by display.

### ● Auto start of i-αppli

The software can be started automatically by specifying the time, date or day of the week. Some software can be started automatically at intervals set by the software (P.194).

### ● Camera recording

The images can be recorded from the software using the camera of the i-mode terminal (P.196).

- This function is available with the software supporting the camera function.

### ● Infrared communication

Data exchange with the devices equipped with the infrared communication function can be operated from software. Much more in conjunction with the devices equipped with the infrared communication function is possible (P.196).

- This function is available with the software supporting the infrared communication.
- Depending on the other device, some data cannot be exchanged even if it is equipped with the infrared communication function.

### ● Infrared remote control

Various devices or equipment such as home electric appliances compatible with the infrared remote control can be operated from the software (P.226).

For example, you can turn your mobile phone into an AV remote control linked with a TV program list for the preinstalled "G-GUIDE TV Program List Remote Control" (P.193).

- This function is available with the software supporting the infrared remote control. The software must support the other device.

## Downloading i-αppli from a Site

You can download i-αppli software from sites and save it.

- You can save up to 100 i-αppli software, each software maximum 1M bytes. The number of i-αppli software that can be saved may decrease depending on the data to be saved.
- When downloading ends in failure due to the radio wave condition, the software is not saved.
- When downloading i-αppli with mail, software cannot be downloaded if there are already five mail folders for i-αppli with mail or if software using the same mail folder already exists.

### 1 While displaying the site, select the software and press .

The software is downloaded.

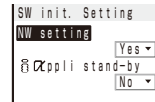
When the screen for confirming whether to download the software appears

Select [Yes] or [Download].

### 2 Select a folder and press .

The downloaded software is saved in the selected folder.

### 3 Perform the Software setting.



- There are items that cannot be changed depending on the software.

To connect to the network automatically when the software is started

Select [NW setting] → [Yes].

- Settings you made are applied to the NW setting and Stand-by NW setting of the Individual set (P.191).

To set the software for the i-αppli stand-by display

Select [i-αppli stand-by] → [Yes].

### 4 Press (Complete).

The screen for confirming whether to run the software appears.

### 5 Select [Yes] and press .



The downloaded software is started.

- If you have deleted preinstalled software, you can download it from "SO@Planet".  
[i Menu] → [メニュー/検索] (Menu/Search) → [ケータイ電話メーカー] (Mobile Phone Manufacturers) → [SO@Planet] (Japanese only)
- The message "Terminal and UIM ID will be sent" may appear when downloading. Select [Download] to download. Since the "serial number of your mobile phone/UIM (FOMA card)" is sent to IP (information service providers) via the Internet, it might be accessed by a third party.
- The message "This software uses saved data" may appear when downloading. Information on the saved data to be used can be confirmed by pressing [Description]. Select [Download] to download the software. The i-αppli uses the saved data in this case.
- If you lock the IC card function while downloading an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli, the downloading is stopped.
- After downloading i-αppli with mail, i-αppli with mail folder is automatically created in Inbox, Outbox, and Draft. The folder is named based on the downloaded i-αppli with mail and cannot be changed.
- If only the mail folder to be used remains when downloading i-αppli with mail, that folder can be used. If a folder name is different from the name of a downloaded i-αppli, this folder name is changed to the downloaded i-αppli name. If the i-αppli with mail does not use that folder, it can be deleted and a new folder can be created. Note that the i-αppli with mail cannot be downloaded without creating a new folder.
- Even if there is enough memory, you may not be able to download an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli depending on the volume of data saved on your IC card. If you cannot perform a download, delete unnecessary software data in accordance with the confirmation screen and download the i-αppli again. (You may not be able to delete some software data.) In some cases, you may need to start up the software before deleting related data on the IC card.

## Checking i-αppli Information When Downloading

Default No


The software information can be displayed when i-αppli software is downloaded from a site.

- From the Menu, select [i-αppli] → [i-αppli setting] → [SW description] and press .
- Select [Yes]/[No] and press .  
The SW description is set.

## Running i-αppli



<Run i-αppli>

i-αppli software can be set to run manually.

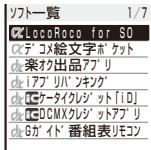
- Press  (i-mode) for over a second in the stand-by display.

The i-αppli folder list appears.

- The following icons show the type of folder.










	(Yellow) Preset folder
	(Blue) User-created folder

- Select a folder and press .



The list of i-αppli software appears.



- A combination of the following icons shows the type of i-αppli software.

	※ Software supporting i-αppli stand-by display (While setting)
	※ Software supporting i-αppli DX stand-by display (While setting)
	※ Software supporting i-αppli with mail stand-by display (While setting)
	※ Software not supporting i-αppli stand-by display
	※ Software not supporting i-αppli DX stand-by display
	※ Software not supporting i-αppli with mail stand-by display
	※ Osafu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli software (While the service is unavailable)
	※ Software downloaded from an SSL site
	※ Software set for automatic startup

※ “=” appears to the lower right of the icon for the software while downloading in progress.

- Select the software and press .



The software is started up and “” or “” appears.

To quit i-αppli software

Press  and select [Yes].

To check the detailed information

Move the cursor to the software and from the Function menu, select [Soft description].



- Displayed items may vary depending on the software.
- The name of the software listed in the Soft description display cannot be changed.

To display the certificate

Move the cursor to the software and from the Function menu, select [Certificates].


- Some software applications start up immediately from the site. This means that the software has been downloaded, but not saved. Also note that you cannot save some downloaded software.

- Some software applications that start up immediately from the site may require NW setting while it is running.

- The software is interrupted when the Alarm or Schedule alarm time comes while running the software. Press  or  to return to the previous display.

- The software can be interrupted and the phone can be answered when you receive a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call while running the software. The previous display returns when a call is finished. When receiving a videophone or PushTalk call while i-αppli communication is in progress, the setting for the V.ph while packet or the i-mode arrival act is applied, respectively.

- When you receive mail/message while running the software, “”, “”, or “” appears.

When the Receive option setting is [ON], “” (Mail at center) appears when you display the stand-by display. To check mail, use the Receive option (P.175).

- Images used by i-αppli software※ and some of the data you entered may be automatically sent to a server via the Internet.

※ Images used by i-αppli software include those recorded by the camera activated from within i-αppli software with camera interface, obtained using the infrared communication function of i-αppli software, obtained from sites or Internet home pages using i-αppli software, and obtained from the Data Box by i-αppli software.


- You can save data of some software applications in a microSD memory card. The data saved in a microSD memory card may not be used by other terminal models.

- There is i-αppli software that starts the specified software so that you can enjoy the software without returning to the software list. If software to start is not specified, you need to select it. Even if software to start is specified, however, you need to download it if it is not included in the software list.




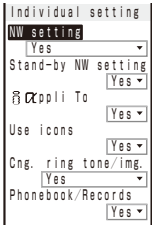
## Setting i-αppli Operating Conditions

- It may not be possible to change some items of the saved software.

1 From the list of i-αppli software, select the software and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

2 Select [Individual set] and press .



### [NW setting]:

Set whether to permit the software that uses network communication to connect to the network or alternatively set it to ask confirmation every time you start it.

### [Stand-by NW setting]:

Set whether the FOMA terminal should connect to the network when you set an i-αppli software that uses network communication as the stand-by display.

### [i-αppli To]:

Set whether to start the software from the currently displayed i-αppli link.

### [Use icons]:

Set whether to use icon information (mail, message, radio wave condition, battery level, and Manner mode).

### [Cng. ring tone/img.]:

Set whether to permit the software to change the ring tone or image. Otherwise, set the software to ask for your permission every time before changing it.

### [Phonebook/Records]:

Set whether to permit the software to look up the Phonebook, Redial/Received record, unread mail, or ToruCa cards.

3 Set each item.

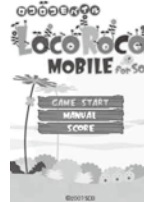
- If you set the NW setting or Stand-by NW setting to [No], the software may not be started and information may not be provided in a timely manner.
- If you set the NW setting or Stand-by NW setting to [Yes], i-αppli automatically connects to the network. When the FOMA terminal is connected to the network, the packet communication charge is required.
- When you set [Yes] for the Use icons, icon information might be accessed by a third party since it is sent to IP (information service providers) via the Internet just as it is the case with the "serial number of your mobile phone/UIM (FOMA card)".
- Depending on the settings of the Individual set, the network connection and use of icon information (such as unread mail and battery level) from i-αppli software may not be available.



## Preinstalled Software




Default settings of the preinstalled software are indicated in the table below.




Item	Default setting	
Stand-by display	None specified	
NW setting	Yes	
Stand-by NW setting	Yes	
i-αppli To	Yes	
Use icons	Yes	
Cng. ring tone/img.	Yes	
Phonebook/Records	Yes	
Auto start	User set	OFF
	SW set	Invalid

### ● LocoRoco Mobile for SO



"LocoRoco Mobile for SO" is an action game where you use   to tilt the land left and right to roll the LocoRocos to and fro and eventually bring them to the goal.

The "Planet" where the LocoRocos live is caught off guard and invaded by the "Moja Troop" coming from outer space during a nap. You, as a player, act as the "planet" and use   and  to rescue the LocoRocos.

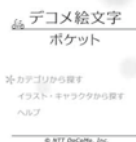
- : Press to tilt the land left.
- : Press and release to immediately trigger the LocoRocos to jump.
- : Press to tilt the land right.



- : Press to split the LocoRoco into smaller ones or join them into a larger one.



## ● デコメ絵文字ポケット (Deco-mail Emoji Pocket)



“Deco-mail Emoji Pocket” is i- $\alpha$ ppli software dedicated for handling Deco-mail pictographs and provides a facility for easily searching and saving Deco-mail pictographs and you can use just like any ordinary pictographs in i-mode mail.

“Deco-mail Emoji Pocket” allows you to search for Deco-mail pictographs provided by IP (information service providers) starting from a theme like “カテゴリ” (Category) or “イラスト・キャラクター” (illustrations and characters) and easily save them in the FOMA terminal. You can also save multiple Deco-mail pictographs at a time. Once you find a Deco-mail pictograph of your preference, you can see the introductory letter issued by the providing site, in which you can also get access to the site.

- The monthly information charge for “Deco-mail Emoji Pocket” is free. An additional information charge may be required for viewing a site provided by IP (information service providers).
- An additional packet communication charge is required for using this function.
- For details, see the “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

## ● 楽オク出品アプリ (Appli for selling items at Rakuten Auction)



※ The display shown is an image for explanatory purpose and may be different from the actual display.

“楽オク出品アプリ” (Appli for selling items at Rakuten Auction) is a convenient appli for selling items at “楽オク” (Rakuten Auction) from anywhere and at anytime easily.

The appli helps you sell an item with the guide display, making it easy even for first-time users. Also, there are functions such as shooting a photo, editing a photo, and saving a history to sell an item faster than doing it from the site.

- When you use the “Appli for selling items at Rakuten Auction” for the first time, you need to accept “利用規約” (Terms of use).
- An additional packet communication charge is required for using this function.
- For details, see the “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.
- To sell items at “楽オク” (Rakuten Auction), you need to sign up for the Rakuten Membership and register as an auctioneer.
- For information on “楽オク” (Rakuten Auction), see the i-mode site for “楽オク” (Rakuten Auction) or its Internet home page.

i-mode site : [i Menu] → [楽オク<sup>★</sup>-オークション]

Home page : <http://a.rakuten.co.jp/>



## ● i アプリバンキング (i- $\alpha$ ppli Banking)



※ The display shown is an image for explanatory purpose and may be different from the actual display.

This i- $\alpha$ ppli is for using the mobile banking service conveniently. Mobile banking is a service that allows you to check the balance and usage details of deposit or withdrawal, transfer between accounts, and make a transfer, from anywhere and at anytime. By entering the password which you set when you start this i- $\alpha$ ppli, you can use up to two mobile banking services provided by financial institutions.

- To use a mobile banking service by i アプリバンキング (i- $\alpha$ ppli Banking), you need to open an account at a financial institution which provides the mobile banking service and subscribe to a mobile banking service of each financial institution.
- An additional packet communication charge is required for using this function.
- For details, see the “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.
- For information on i アプリバンキング (i- $\alpha$ ppli Banking), see the i-mode site for i アプリバンキング (i- $\alpha$ ppli Banking).

## ● ケータイクレジット「iD」 (Mobile Credit “iD”)



※ The display shown is an image for explanatory purpose and may be different from the actual display.

The mobile credit “iD” is a credit service that enables you to make payments for shopping and cash withdrawals by simply holding up your Osaifu-Keitai to a reader. It provides you with a convenient way of shopping because you need neither to take a card out of your purse nor give your signature as you did before.

- To use iD, a subscription to a credit card that adopts the iD brand, the iD appli, and a Card appli (the latter is provided by each credit card issuing company) are required.
- When you start the iD appli for the first time, you are asked to agree with “ご利用上の注意” (Note on using the program) and you need to download the Card appli after making preparations for using the iD appli.
- A fee for using a credit service that adopts the iD brand (annual membership fee, etc.) varies depending on the credit card issuing company.
- The packet communication charge is required for downloading the iD appli and a Card appli that is provided by each credit card issuing company.
- For information on iD, see the i-mode site for iD or its Internet home page.

i-mode site : [i Menu] → [メニュー/検索] (Menu/Search) → [ケータイクレジット「iD」] (Mobile Credit “iD”)

Home page : <http://id-credit.com>



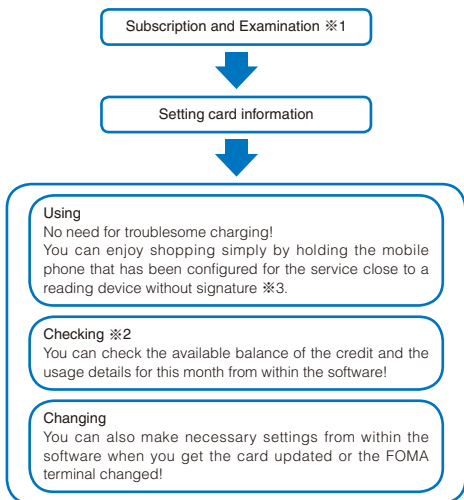
● 「DCMX」クレジットアプリ (“DCMX” credit appli)



※ The display shown is an image for explanatory purpose and may be different from the actual display.

“DCMX” is an “iD” compatible credit service provided by NTT DoCoMo group. Two types of services are available in DCMX: DCMX mini in which the total amount of credit is limited to ¥10,000 per month and DCMX which allows you to use more amount than DCMX mini as well as get DoCoMo points. DCMX mini provides immediate use of a mobile credit service with an easy subscription that can be made from within this software.

What you can do on this software



※1 We make an online examination for your qualification when we receive your subscription to DCMX mini. If your subscription is to other than DCMX mini, the connection is redirected to the i-mode site for subscription information.

※2 A function, such as for checking the usage status is available only when you are a member of DCMX mini.

※3 You may be asked to enter a security code at a given condition.

- For information on the contents of the service and on how to subscribe to the service, see the following.

DCMX's home page

From i-mode : [i Menu] → [DCMX]

From PC, etc. : <http://dcmx.jp/>

- For information on this service itself, call the “General Inquiries” on the backcover of this manual.



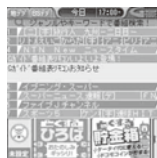
- When you start this software for the first time, you are asked to agree with “ご利用上の注意” (Note on using the program). Agree with it to continue.

- Packet communication charge is required for settings and operations on this software.

Precautions on the Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αappli software

- Under no condition will DoCoMo be held liable for any information set in the IC card.

● Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Program List Remote Control)



※ The display shown is an image for explanatory purpose and may be different from the actual display. The TV program list is displayed according to your location.

This convenient i-αappli is a TV program list integrated with an audiovisual remote control function and it is free.

It enables you to get analog/digital ground-based TV program information for your preferred hour from anywhere, any time. The information includes a TV program title, details of the program, start/end time, etc.

If you find any program interesting, you can let the DVD recorder to schedule recording of it remotely via the Internet. (A DVD recorder with a hard disk that features a remote scheduling function is required. Before using this function, the initial setting for this appli is also required.)

You can also search for program information by entering a keyword such as a TV program category or your favorite TV personality.

Furthermore, you can also perform remote control operation of a TV/video player/DVD player (P.226). (Some models are not compatible with this function.)

- When you use the “G-GUIDE TV Program List Remote Control” for the first time, you need to perform initial registration and accept the Terms of Use.
- An additional packet communication charge is required for using this function.
- For details, see the “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

About the remote timer recording function

If you have a DVD recorder that supports a remote timer recording function, you can book recording of a program from the program list provided by this appli.

To use this function, the initial setting for this appli is required.

- Making initial setting
  1. Set the DVD recorder to connect to the Internet.  
(For more information, see the user’s manual supplied with your DVD recorder.)
  2. Start this appli, select “リモート録画予約” (Remote timer recording) from the menu, and continue the initial setting as instructed by the displayed guidance.

- Booking recording of a program  
Once you complete the initial setting, by selecting a desired program and selecting “リモート録画予約” from the menu, you can connect to the DVD recorder that has an entry in this appli via the Internet and let it to schedule recording of the program.

※ If the time for the program has been scheduled for another program, the message appears in the program list.

- An additional packet communication charge is required for using this function.



# Running i- $\alpha$ ppli Automatically

<Auto start>

## Enabling/Disabling Auto Start


Default Yes

You can set whether to start i- $\alpha$  ppli software automatically on the FOMA terminal.

- 1 From the Menu, select [i-appli] → [i  $\alpha$  ppli setting] → [Auto start] and press .
- 2 Select [Yes]/[No] and press .  
Whether to enable the Auto start is set.

## Setting the Start Date and Time

The i- $\alpha$  ppli software can be started automatically. You can set the starting date/time and day of the week and whether to use the software's automatic start for each i- $\alpha$  ppli software.

- 1 From the list of i- $\alpha$  ppli software, select the software and press  (Func).  
The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Auto start] and press .



[User set]:

Set the starting date/time and day of the week for each software.

[SW set]:

Set whether to start the software using the software's auto start function.

- 3 Select [User set] and press .



- 4 Select a style of the Auto start time at [Style].

[OFF]:

Do not set the start time.

[D/T]:

Start the software automatically at the specified date and time.

[Eyd]:

Start the software automatically at the specified time everyday.


[Week]:

Start the software automatically at the specified time on every specified day of the week.

- 5 Enter the date/time/day of the week.

- Enter the date/time/day of the week according to the style of the auto start time selected in step 4.

- 6 Press  (Complete).

- 7 Select [SW set] and press .

The SW set display appears.

- 8 Select [Valid]/[Invalid] of the Auto start function of the software at [Set].


The Auto start is set.

- The Auto start does not operate in the following cases.


- When the FOMA terminal is powered off
- During a call/communication
- When the date/time is not set
- When another function is executed
- When the Alarm/Schedule alarm is set to start at the same time as the Auto start
- When the Lock all/PIM lock is set
- When the Omakase Lock is set

## Setting i- $\alpha$ ppli for the Stand-by Display

<i- $\alpha$  ppli stand-by>

Only one supporting software can be set for the i- $\alpha$  ppli stand-by display. The software that supports the i- $\alpha$  ppli stand-by display is identified by "".


- When the software using network transmission is set for the i- $\alpha$  ppli stand-by display, it may not operate properly depending on the radio wave condition.
- When you set the i- $\alpha$  ppli stand-by display from the i- $\alpha$  ppli software list display, the image set for the stand-by display in the Stand-by display is also changed.

- 1 From the list of i- $\alpha$  ppli software, select the software and press  (Func).


The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Stand-by display] → [Yes] and press .

The i- $\alpha$  ppli stand-by display is set and the icon (P.190) changes to indicate that the software is set for the stand-by display.


To operate the software set for the i- $\alpha$  ppli stand-by display Press  () in the i- $\alpha$  ppli stand-by display.

- The message confirming whether to start the i- $\alpha$  ppli stand-by display appears when the FOMA terminal is powered on if the i- $\alpha$  ppli stand-by display is set. Select [No] not to start it. Select [Yes] or leave it for a while to start the i- $\alpha$  ppli stand-by display.
- If the Lock all or PIM lock is set while you set the i- $\alpha$  ppli stand-by display, the i- $\alpha$  ppli stand-by display is temporarily terminated. When you cancel the Lock all or PIM lock, the i- $\alpha$  ppli stand-by display reappears.

- The Web To cannot be used from the i- $\alpha$  ppli stand-by display.
- If an error which could terminate the i- $\alpha$  ppli stand-by display occurs, the time of error occurrence can be checked in the stand-by error history.
- If a security error occurs in the i- $\alpha$  ppli stand-by display, " (Stand-by SW error) appears in the stand-by display.

## Terminating the i- $\alpha$ ppli Stand-by Display

The i- $\alpha$  ppli stand-by display is terminated and the normal stand-by display is set.

- 1 From the list of i- $\alpha$  ppli software, select the software and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

## 2 Select [Stand-by display] → [Cancel] and press .

[End]:


End the i-αppli stand-by display once and redisplay without terminating it.

[Cancel]:

Terminate the i-αppli stand-by display.

The i-αppli stand-by display is terminated.

## Managing i-αppli

- For some software, IP (information service providers) may access the software saved in the mobile phone and directly stop the use of it. In this case, most operations including starting the software, setting the software for the stand-by display, and upgrading the software are disabled and only deleting the software and displaying the software information are available. To use the software again, you need to request IP to resume the use of the software. For more details, contact IP.
- For some software, IP (information service providers) may send data to the software saved in the mobile phone.
- When IP (information service providers) sends a stop/resume request or data to the software, the mobile phone starts to communicate with IP and “” flashes. No packet communication charge is required.

## Upgrading i-αppli

The software saved in the FOMA terminal can be upgraded if a newer version of the downloaded software is available on a site.

### 1 From the list of i-αppli software, select the software and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Upgrade] → [Yes] and press .

Download of the new version of the software starts.

- Some software can be upgraded automatically when it is started.
- When the FOMA terminal is connected to the network for software upgrade, the packet communication charge is required.

## Adding/Deleting Folders

Folders in which software are saved can be added or deleted. Up to 10 folders can be used to manage software and folder names can also be changed.

- You cannot delete the preset folders.

Example: Adding a folder

### 1 Press (i-mode) for over a second in the stand-by display and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Edit folder] → [Create folder], press , and enter a folder name.

Enter a name within eight full-width or 17 half-width characters. The folder is added.

**To change a folder name**

Move the cursor to a folder and from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] → [Edit folder name]. Enter a name within eight full-width or 17 half-width characters.

**To delete a folder**

Move the cursor to a folder and from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] → [Delete folder]. Enter the Security code and select [Yes].

## Moving i-αppli to a Different Folder

You can move software to a different folder using three methods.


Example: Moving a software

### 1 Press (i-mode) for over a second in the stand-by display, select a folder, and press .

**To move all software in the folder**

From the Function menu, select [Move] → [Move all] → [Yes] → a folder.

**To move several software**

From the Function menu, select [Move] → [Select&move]. Select software and press  (Complete). Select [Yes] → a folder.

### 2 Select the software and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

### 3 Select [Move] → [Move one] → [Yes] and press .

The Select move to display appears.

### 4 Select a folder and press .

The selected software is moved to the different folder.

## Deleting i-αppli

You can delete software using four methods.

Example: Deleting a software

### 1 Press (i-mode) for over a second in the stand-by display.

**To delete all software**


From the Function menu, select [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

### 2 Select a folder and press .

**To delete all software in the folder**

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

**To delete several software**

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete] and select software. Press  (Complete) and select [Yes].

### 3 Select the software and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

### 4 Select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes] and press .

The selected software is deleted.

- When deleting i-αppli with mail or deleting all software including i-αppli with mail, you can select whether to delete the automatically created mail folder at the same time. However, if the i-αppli with mail folder contains protected mail at the time you select to delete both of them, neither the software nor the folder can be deleted. When you select to delete only the software and keep the folder intact, you can display only the mail main body from the Function menu (P.181).
- Some Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli software may not be deleted. Some software requires to run i-αppli software and delete data stored in the IC card before you can delete the software.
- When the IC card lock is set, you cannot delete an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli.

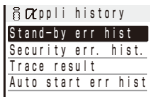
## Checking Error History and Trace Result

The error histories for the i-αppli stand-by display and the results output by the i-αppli trace feature can be displayed.

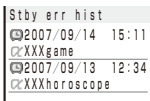
Stand-by err hist	When an i-αppli stand-by display is terminated by an error, such as being unable to continue operation, up to 10 records including the time of error occurrence, etc. are displayed.
Security err. hist.	When i-αppli software is terminated by an error, such as being unable to use the saved data, up to 10 records including the time of error occurrence, etc. are displayed.
Trace result	When i-αppli software supporting the trace feature is terminated, up to 16 trace results are displayed.
Auto start err hist	When i-αppli software fails to operate the Auto start, up to 10 records including the time of error occurrence, etc. are displayed.

Example: Displaying the stand-by error history

- From the Menu, select [i-appli] → [i αppli history] and press **⏏**.



- Select [Stand-by err hist] and press **⏏**.



To display the security error history

Select [Security err. hist.].

To display the trace result

Select [Trace result].

To display the auto start error history

Select [Auto start err hist.].

To delete the error history or trace result

Press **⏏** (Delete) and select [Yes].

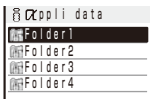
- To i-αppli authors

If the software does not operate properly during its programming, the trace result may be useful as a reference.

## Displaying i-αppli Data in microSD memory card <i-αppli(microSD)>

You can display i-αppli data saved in the microSD memory card, using a folder name.

- From the Menu, select [i-appli] → [i αppli(microSD)] and press **⏏**.



The i-αppli(microSD) folder list display appears.

To delete a folder

Move the cursor to a folder and from the Function menu, select [Delete folder]. Enter the Security code and select [Yes].

- Select a folder and press **⏏**.

The SW description display appears.

**i-αppli**

## Using Various i-αppli Functions

### Using the Camera Function from i-αppli

You can use the camera function (P.136) from the software running on the FOMA terminal.

- Images are used and saved in the software.
- Items that can be set and the startup procedure of the camera vary depending on the software.

- While running the software, start the camera function.

The Camera mode display appears.

- Point the camera at the object and press **⏏**.

The image is recorded.

### Using the Bar Code Reader from i-αppli

You can use the bar code reader (P.149) from the software running on the FOMA terminal.

- The startup procedure of the bar code reader varies depending on the software.
- The scanned data may be used in the software.

- While running the software, start the bar code reader.

The bar code reader display appears.

- Locate at the JAN/QR code at the center of the display and press **⏏**.

The JAN/QR code is scanned.

### Using Infrared Communication from i-αppli

You can use the infrared communication (P.224) from the software running on the FOMA terminal.

- There are some data that cannot be exchanged even if the other device is equipped with the infrared communication function.
- The startup procedure of the infrared communication varies depending on the software.

- While running the software, start the infrared communication.

- Select [Yes] and press **⏏**.

The infrared communication is started.

### Obtaining a ToruCa Card from i-αppli

You can obtain ToruCa cards from the software running on the FOMA terminal and save them.

- You can obtain up to 100 ToruCa or ToruCa(detail) cards each up to 1K bytes for a ToruCa card or 100K bytes for a ToruCa(detail) card. The number of cards that can be obtained may decrease depending on the data to be obtained.
- The obtaining method of ToruCa cards varies depending on the software.

- While running the software, select a ToruCa card and press **⏏**.

The screen for confirming whether to save data appears.

- Select [Yes] and press **⏏**.

The ToruCa card is obtained.

# Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

What is Osaifu-Keitai? .....	198
What is the iC transfer service? .....	198
Starting an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αpli .....	198
What is ToruCa? .....	199
Obtaining a ToruCa Card .....	<Obtain a ToruCa card> 199
Displaying a ToruCa Card .....	<Display ToruCa> 200
Managing ToruCa Cards .....	200
Setting the ToruCa Details .....	<ToruCa setting> 201
Setting Whether to Notify That within the Communication Range .....	<IC act. Notice> 202
Locking the IC Card Function .....	<IC card lock> 202

## What is Osaifu-Keitai?

"Osaifu-Keitai" provides convenient i-mode functions (i-mode FeliCa) that can be performed using the IC card inserted in an i-mode terminal.

FeliCa adopts a contactless IC card technology that enables data to be read/written just by scanning.

You can simply hold up your Osaifu-Keitai to a reading device in stores that provide the FeliCa service to pay using e-money, or use it as an airplane ticket or point card. With features like Osaifu-Keitai, your mobile phone becomes an increasingly handy tool.

This latest FeliCa is even more convenient to use compared with previous versions of the FeliCa-compatible contactless IC card. For example, you can deposit e-money in Osaifu-Keitai on the IC card, and check the balance and purchase history using communications.

※ To use Osaifu-Keitai-compatible services, you need to make the necessary settings using i-αppli software (IC appli) supporting IC card function (check with IP (information service providers) for more details).

※ For precautions on the use of each Osaifu-Keitai-compatible service, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

● The data on the IC card could be lost/changed due to an Osaifu-Keitai trouble (Note that, as a rule, when your Osaifu-Keitai is left with us such as for repairs, we can take it only when all data is deleted. Therefore, you are requested to delete the data yourself). You are requested to use the backup services provided by IP (information service providers) to support for reissuing, restoring, holding temporarily, or transferring data except transferring data by the iC transfer service. Check with IP (information service providers) whether the backup service is provided, for the usage conditions (such as necessary prior procedures or fees), or whether the iC transfer service is supported beforehand because those vary from one service to another. Please make sure to use the services supporting the backup services for important data.

● DoCoMo shall not be liable for any data loss/change of the information saved on the IC card or any damage occurred relating to using Osaifu-Keitai-compatible services regardless of any reasons such as trouble or changing to another FOMA terminal.

● If you should lose the Osaifu-Keitai or have it stolen, immediately contact the Osaifu-Keitai-compatible service provider you use for operations which have to be done in this situation. For this FOMA terminal, both the Omakase Lock (P.121) and IC card lock (P.202) can be used.

## What is the iC transfer service?

The iC transfer service※1 is a service provided for transferring all data stored on the IC card at once※2 to a new Osaifu-Keitai※3 when the Osaifu-Keitai is replaced such as for changing to another FOMA terminal or trouble repair. Once the data stored in the IC card is transferred to the new Osaifu-Keitai, you can use Osaifu-Keitai-compatible services by simply downloading the Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli.

You can use the iC transfer service at our service counter of your local DoCoMo shop, etc.

For details, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

[Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa](#)

※1 There is a processing charge for the use of the iC transfer service. (There are some cases where no charges apply.) Packet communication charges apply for IC appli downloads and various settings.

※2 There are some Osaifu-Keitai-compatible services that do not support the all data transfer function. Unsupported services are deleted when you use the iC transfer service. Therefore, utilize the backup service of each Osaifu-Keitai-compatible service or delete them before you use the iC transfer service.


※3 The iC transfer service can be used only the Osaifu-Keitai where the data is transferred to has to be the compatible model with the iC transfer service.

## Starting an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli

You have access to useful functions, for example, reading/writing data on the IC card using an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli in order to deposit e-money (such as train ticket deposit) or look up the balance or purchase history from the mobile phone.

● When you start an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli software for the first time or download one, the message "Current UIM necessary to use IC card?" appears. If you select [Yes], you cannot use the IC card function without inserting the associated UIM.

When you use the FOMA terminal with another UIM, you once need to delete all Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli software with the associated UIM inserted in the FOMA terminal to use the IC card function.

1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [IC card content] and press .



2 Select the software and press .


The software is started up and "読" or "書" appears.

● Reading/writing of data on the IC card from the software is interrupted in the following cases. Partially read/written data may be discarded.

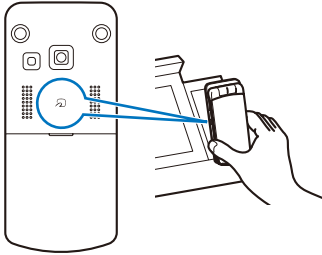
- When the time preset for the Schedule alarm or Alarm occurs
- When receiving a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call (The operation that takes place after you hang up the call may be different depending on the service you use.)
- When the battery runs out



## Using the Osaifu-Keitai

When you hold up and show the FeliCa mark “” side of the FOMA terminal to a reading device, you can use the FOMA terminal for payment as e-money or use it in place of a train ticket. You can use this function without starting up the associated software.

- You can use Osaifu-Keitai by holding up and showing the FeliCa mark to a reading device during a call or i-mode connection. You cannot start the software.
- Holding up and showing the FeliCa mark to a reading device may cause the associated software to be executed.



When the FOMA terminal comes within the communication range with the reading device, the FeliCa Sign lights in green. The vibrator vibrates when the communication starts.

- The FeliCa Sign lights in yellow when you hold up and show the FeliCa mark side to a reading device while charging the battery.
- If the FeliCa mark on the FOMA terminal is not recognized by a reading device, move the terminal back and forth and side to side as you hold it up to the device.
- Even if the FOMA terminal is powered off, you can use the Osaifu-Keitai by holding up and showing the FeliCa mark to a reading device. You cannot use it if the battery pack is not attached. You may not be able to use Osaifu-Keitai if the attached battery pack has not been used for a long period of time or has not been charged after the battery alarm was sounded. In this case, charge the battery pack and power on the FOMA terminal. When the FOMA terminal is powered off, you cannot start an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli to read/write data on the IC card.
- Note that if you leave the FeliCa Sign lighting, the battery drains faster.

## What is ToruCa?

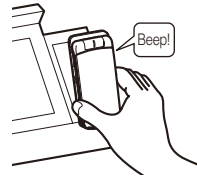
ToruCa is an e-card that can be obtained using Osaifu-Keitai. This convenient e-card can be used for applications such as flier, restaurant card, or coupon.

You can obtain ToruCa cards from a reading device or site. These e-cards can be easily exchanged by way of e-mail, infrared communication, or the microSD memory card.

The ToruCa card you obtained is saved in [ToruCa] of the [LifeKit] menu.

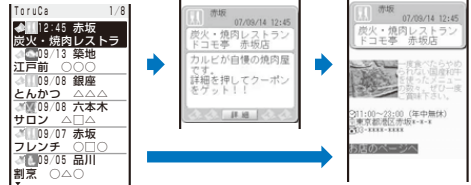
You need a ToruCa-compatible terminal to use ToruCa. For details, see the “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

## Flow of ToruCa Operation



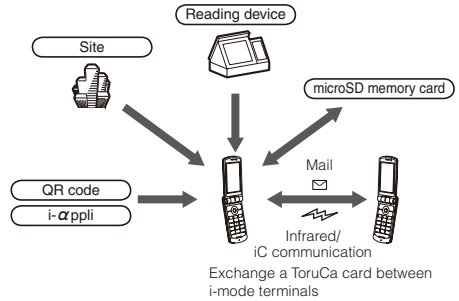
Hold up and show the Osaifu-Keitai to a reading device in order to obtain a ToruCa card.

When the FOMA terminal comes within the communication range with the reading device, the FeliCa Sign lights in green. The vibrator vibrates and the FeliCa Sign flashes when the communication starts.



Select an obtained ToruCa card from the ToruCa list.

## Methods for Obtaining a ToruCa Card



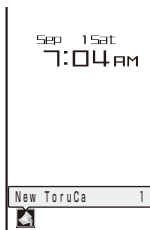
- When you exchange a ToruCa card using i-mode communication, the regular packet communication charge is required.
- Some ToruCa cards may not allow you to update or redistribute using mail or infrared communication, etc. depending on the settings by IP (information service providers).

## Obtaining a ToruCa Card

<Obtain a ToruCa card>

You can hold up and show the FOMA terminal to a reading device to obtain a ToruCa or ToruCa(detail) card.

- You can obtain up to 100 ToruCa cards, each up to 1K bytes for a ToruCa card and up to 100K bytes for a ToruCa(detail) card. The number of ToruCa cards that can be obtained may decrease depending on the data to be obtained.
- While the IC card lock is set, you cannot obtain a ToruCa card from a reading device.



When you obtain a ToruCa card from a reading device, the FeliCa Sign flashes in green, a beep sounds to notify you that the card has been obtained, the ToruCa card is displayed, and the previous display reappears after about 15 seconds. The notification icon "👉" (New ToruCa) appears in the stand-by display.

#### To display the ToruCa card

Press **[Link]** in the stand-by display and select "👉".

- Some ToruCa cards may not allow you to send mail with ToruCa cards attached, send data using iC or infrared communication, or copy them to the microSD memory card.

## Displaying a ToruCa Card

<Display ToruCa>

You can display a saved ToruCa or ToruCa(detail) card any time. You can also obtain a ToruCa(detail) card from the ToruCa card.

- From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [ToruCa] and press **[OK]**.



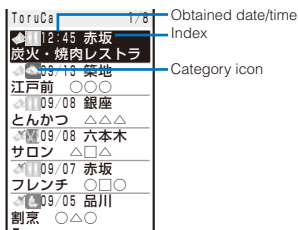
The ToruCa folder list appears.

- The following icons show the status of the folder.

	Preset folder
	User-created folder

- If there is an unread ToruCa card, "👉" appears at the lower right of the icon.

- Select a folder and press **[OK]**.



The ToruCa list appears.

- The following icons show the status of the ToruCa card.

	Unread ToruCa card/Expired unread ToruCa card
	Read ToruCa card/Expired read ToruCa card

- Select a ToruCa card and press **[OK]**.



- Select **[詳細]** (Detail) → [Yes] and press **[OK]**.



You obtain a ToruCa(detail) card.

**To update a ToruCa(detail) card to the latest status**

From the Function menu, select [Updated ToruCa] → [Yes].

**To save data such as a phone number in the Phonebook**

Move the cursor to the phone number, etc. and from the Function menu, select [Add to phonebook].

- Follow the same steps as in "Saving the Redial/Received Record in the Phonebook" (P.90, step 4 to 7).

- When you obtain a ToruCa card from a reading device while displaying a list such as the ToruCa list, select [ToruCa] once again to display the obtained ToruCa card.

## Managing ToruCa Cards

- You cannot move, sort, or search a ToruCa card in the [Used] folder.

### Adding/Deleting Folders

You can create and delete a folder for saving a ToruCa card. You can manage up to 22 folders. You can also change the name of a folder or sort folders in the list.

- You cannot delete or change the names of the preset folders.

Example: Adding a folder

- Press **[Func]** (Func) in the ToruCa folder list.

The Function menu appears.

- Select [Edit folder] → [Create folder], press **[OK]**, and enter a folder name.

Enter a folder name within eight full-width or 17 half-width characters.

The folder is added.

**To change a folder name**

Move the cursor to the folder and from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] → [Edit folder name]. Enter a folder name within eight full-width or 17 half-width characters.

**To reorder the folders**

From the Function menu, select [Edit folder] → [Reorder folders] → a folder. Move the cursor to a position to move to, press **[Move]** (Move), and press **[Complete]** (Complete).

**To delete a folder**

Move the cursor to the folder and from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] → [Delete folder], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

### Moving a ToruCa Card to Another Folder

You can move ToruCa cards to another folder using three methods.

- You cannot move a ToruCa card to [Used].


Example: Moving a ToruCa card


- 1 From the ToruCa folder list, select a folder and press .

To move all ToruCa cards in the folder


From the Function menu, select [Move] → [Move all] → [Yes] → a folder.

To move several ToruCa cards

From the Function menu, select [Move] → [Select&move], select ToruCa cards, and press  (Complete). Select [Yes] → a folder.

- 2 Select a ToruCa card and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 3 Select [Move] → [Move one] → [Yes] and press .

The Select move to display appears.

- 4 Select a folder and press .

The selected ToruCa card is moved to another folder.

## Deleting a ToruCa Card

You can delete ToruCa cards using four methods.

Example: Deleting a ToruCa card

- 1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [ToruCa] and press .

To delete all ToruCa cards


From the Function menu, select [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- 2 Select a folder and press .

To delete all ToruCa cards in the folder

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To delete several ToruCa cards

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete], select ToruCa cards, press  (Complete), and select [Yes].

- 3 Select a ToruCa card and press  (Func).


The Function menu appears.

- 4 Select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes] and press .

The selected ToruCa card is deleted.

## Sorting the List

You can temporarily sort the ToruCa cards in a folder and display them.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the ToruCa list.

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Sort] → a sorting order and press .

[Date]:

Sort by obtained date/time from newest to oldest.

[Genre]:

Sort by genre that identifies the type of ToruCa.

[Index]:

Sort by index in Japanese alphabetical order.

[By kana]:


Sort by "kana" in the data saved on a ToruCa card.

The ToruCa cards are displayed in accordance with the selected sort method.

- When you sort ToruCa cards using [Index], the order of sorting may not follow the Japanese alphabetical order if both full-width and half-width characters are used.

## Searching a ToruCa Card

You can search for ToruCa cards by genre.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the ToruCa folder list.

The Function menu appears.


To search for ToruCa cards in the folder

Press  (Func) in the ToruCa list.

- 2 Select [Search] and press .



Category icons

- 3 Select a genre and press  (OK).

The search result appears.

To delete all searched ToruCa cards

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all item], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To move all searched ToruCa cards

From the Function menu, select [Move] → [Move all item] → [Yes] → a folder.

## Setting the ToruCa Details

<ToruCa setting>

## Setting Whether to Obtain a ToruCa Card

Default Yes

You can set whether to obtain ToruCa cards from a reading device or using the iC communication.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Application] → [ToruCa] → [ToruCa receive] and press .

[Yes]:

Obtain a ToruCa card from a reading device or using the iC communication.

[No]:

Do not obtain a ToruCa card from a reading device or using the iC communication.

- 2 Select [Yes]/[No] and press .

The ToruCa receive is set.

## Setting Whether to Automatically Recognize a ToruCa(Detail) Card

Default OFF

You can set whether to let a reading device recognize available ToruCa cards automatically when you hold up and show the FOMA terminal to it in order to use ToruCa.

- Up to 20 ToruCa cards are saved in [Used]. When the number of saved cards exceeds 20, the cards with the oldest date/time are deleted, in that order.

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Application] → [ToruCa] → [Auto recognition] and press .

[ON]:

Available ToruCa cards are automatically recognized by the reading device and saved in [Used].

[OFF]:

Available ToruCa cards are not recognized by the reading device.

To display the explanation about the Auto recognition

Move the cursor to [Auto recognition] and press  (Help).

**2** Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The Auto recognition is set.

When you select [ON]

Select [Yes].


When the Lock all or PIM lock is set, a ToruCa card does not move to [Used] even if it is to be deleted regardless of the Auto recognition being set to [ON].

If you hold up and show the FOMA terminal to a reading device with the Auto recognition set to [OFF], a message confirming whether to use the Automatic reading function or stating that the Automatic reading function is OFF may appear. To use the Automatic reading function, select [Yes] to set the Auto recognition to [ON].

## Setting Whether to Check the Duplication of a ToruCa(Detail) Card

Default | ON

You can set the FOMA terminal to check if the ToruCa(detail) card you are trying to obtain has been obtained already when you obtain the card from a reading device.

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Application] → [ToruCa] → [Duplication check] and press .

[ON]:

Check if a target ToruCa(detail) card is already obtained. Do not obtain a ToruCa card that you have obtained already. Obtain a ToruCa card only when you have not obtained it yet.

[OFF]:

Do not check if a target ToruCa(detail) card is already obtained.

**2** Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .

The Duplication check is set.

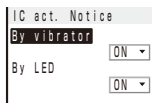
## Setting Whether to Notify That within the Communication Range

<IC act. Notice>

Default | ON

You can set the FOMA terminal whether to notify you of being within the FeliCa communication range or the FeliCa communication being started by vibration or the FeliCa Sign when you are close to a reading device with the FOMA terminal powered on.

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Application] → [IC act. Notice] and press .



[By vibrator]:

Set whether to activate the vibrator when the communication starts.

[By LED]:

Set whether to turn on the FeliCa Sign when you enter the range in which communication is enabled or when the communication starts.

**2** Select [ON]/[OFF] of the vibrator at [By vibrator].

**3** Select [ON]/[OFF] of the FeliCa Sign at [By LED].

- When the Public mode (Drive mode) is set, the FeliCa Sign does not light and the vibrator does not operate even if the By vibrator and By LED are set to [ON].

## Locking the IC Card Function

<IC card lock>



You can lock the IC card function to prevent others from using it.

**1** Press  (☒) for over a second in the stand-by display.



The IC card function is locked and  appears.


To cancel the IC card lock

Press  (☒) for over a second in the stand-by display, enter the Security code, and press  (OK).

## Locking the IC Card Function When the FOMA Terminal Is Powered Off

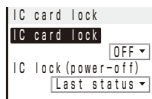
Default | IC card lock: OFF, IC lock(power-off): Last status

You can set to automatically lock the IC card function when the FOMA terminal is powered off.

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Lock/Security] → [IC card lock] and press .

The Security code screen appears.

**2** Enter the Security code and press  (OK).



[IC card lock]:

Set whether to lock the IC card function.

[IC lock(power-off)]:

Set whether to automatically lock the IC card function when the FOMA terminal is powered off.

**3** Select [Last status]/[Locked] at [IC lock(power-off)].

[Last status]:

Keep the current status even after the FOMA terminal is powered off.

[Locked]:

Lock the IC card function when the FOMA terminal is powered off.

# Data Display/Edit/ Management

## ■ Using Still Image

Displaying the Saved Image .....	<My picture> 204
Editing Still Images .....	<Edit photo> 205

## ■ Using Movie

Playing Back Movie/i-motion .....	<i-motion> 207
Editing Movies .....	<Edit movie> 208

## ■ Using Chara-den

What is Chara-den? .....	<Chara-den> 209
--------------------------	-----------------

## ■ Using Music

Playing Back Music Data .....	<Music> 210
-------------------------------	-------------

## ■ Using the Melody

Playing Back a Melody .....	<Melody> 211
-----------------------------	--------------

## ■ Using the microSD memory card

microSD memory card .....	211
Displaying Data on the microSD memory card .....	212
Folder Setup of the microSD memory card .....	213
Data That Can Be Written/Read to and from the microSD memory card .....	215
Saving Data from the FOMA Terminal to the microSD memory card .....	215
Saving Data from the microSD memory card to the FOMA Terminal .....	215
Managing the microSD memory card .....	216
Using the FOMA Terminal with a PC .....	<Memory mode> 217

## ■ Using the UIM

Copying Data from the FOMA Terminal to the UIM .....	218
Copying Data from the UIM to the FOMA Terminal .....	218

## ■ Using Data Box

Managing Data Box .....	<Data Box> 218
Moving Copyrighted Data .....	<Movable contents> 223
Checking the Memory of the FOMA Terminal .....	<Storage information> 223

## ■ Using Infrared Communication

What is the Infrared Communication? .....	<Infrared communication> 224
Data That Can Be Sent/Received via Infrared Communication .....	225
Receiving Data Using the Infrared Communication .....	<Receive Ir data> 226
Sending Data Using the Infrared Communication .....	<Send Ir data> 226
Using the Infrared Remote Control .....	226

## ■ Using iC Communication Function

What is iC Communication Function? .....	227
Receiving Data Using iC Communication .....	227
Sending Data Using iC Communication .....	228

# Displaying the Saved Image

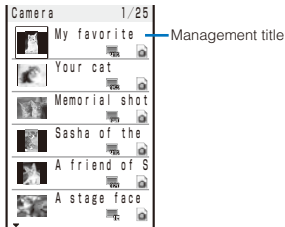
<My picture>

You can display images saved in My picture of the Data Box or microSD memory card.

1 Press (↑) in the stand-by display, select [My picture], and press (⏎).

My picture folder list appears.

2 Select a folder and press (⏎).



My picture file list appears.

The following icons show the type/size of an image.

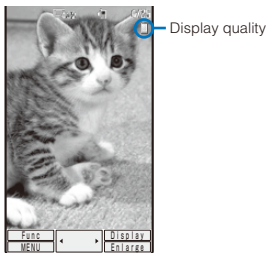
Icon	Type	Size
	JPEG image	sQCIF(128×96)
		QCIF(176×144)
		QVGA(240×320)
		Stby(240×432)
		CIF(352×288)
		VGA(640×480)
		1M(1280×960)
		2M(1632×1224)
		3M(2048×1536 or 2000×1500)
		Others
	Frame image	—
	Stamp image	—
	Deco mail Pict.	—
	GIF image	—
	Flash movie	—

• “” appears on the upper right of the icon for images prohibited from being retrieved out of the FOMA terminal.

To display the saved date/time

Press (#) to switch the display temporarily between the management title and saved date/time.

3 Select an image and press (⏎).



The selected image appears.

[Data Display/Edit/Management](#)

To change the display quality

Press (⏏). By pressing (⏏), you can switch the display quality between Normal/Sharp/Dynamic.

• The following icons show the display quality.

	Normal
	Sharp
	Dynamic

To hide the icons and guide display

Press (⏏) (Display). When you press (⏏) (Display), you can switch the display between standard and simple or turn off the display.

To display the previous/next image

Use (←) to display the previous image and (→) to display the next image.

To display a JPEG or GIF image in enlarged or original size

Press (⏏) (Enlarge/True img). Press (⏏) (True img/Shrink.) to restore the original size.

To display a Flash movie again

Press (⏏) (Retry).

To attach to i-mode mail

Press (Func) for over a second (P.174).

To set an image for stand-by or other displays

From the Function menu, select [Display setting] → a type of display.

To display an image of VGA or higher in the landscape orientation

Press (Horztl).

To activate the camera

From the Function menu, select [Pict. shoot mode].

- It may take time to display a file list or images saved in the microSD memory card.
- If you edit a recorded image on a PC, etc., “” may be displayed instead of the thumbnail.
- When the image cannot be displayed, “” appears.

## Displaying Images as a Slideshow

Default 3 sec

You can automatically switch and display a JPEG image saved in My picture of the Data Box or microSD memory card.

1 Press (Func) in My picture file list.

The Function menu appears.

2 Select [Slideshow] and press (⏎).



3 Select the time during which an image is displayed at [Interval].

• The interval may vary depending on the size of the displayed images.

4 Press (⏏) (Activate).

The slideshow starts.

To stop the slideshow

Press (⏏) (Stop).

## Editing Still Images

<Edit photo>



You can edit a JPEG image saved in My picture by pasting a stamp, a frame, etc.

- You cannot edit preinstalled images or images prohibited from being retrieved out of the FOMA terminal.
- Some images may not be edited.
- Images may become inferior by editing repeatedly.


## Pasting a Frame

A frame can be pasted to an image of [sQCIF(128×96)], [QCIF(176×144)], [QVGA(240×320)], [Stby(240×432)], and [CIF(352×288)].

Example: Pasting a frame and saving by overwriting

- 1 From My picture file list, select an image, press , and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Edit photo] → [Frame] and press .

- 3 Select a frame and press .

To check a frame

Move the cursor to a frame and press  (Play).

- 4 Press  (Save), select [Overwrite], and press .

The image with the frame is saved by overwriting the original image.



To save as a new image

Select [Save new] → a place to save to.

## Pasting a Stamp

A stamp can be pasted to an image of [sQCIF(128×96)], [QCIF(176×144)], [QVGA(240×320)], [Stby(240×432)], and [CIF(352×288)].

Example: Pasting a stamp and saving by overwriting

- 1 From My picture file list, select an image, press , and press  (Func).






The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Edit photo] → [Image stamp] and press .

- 3 Select a stamp and press .

To check a stamp

Move the cursor to a stamp and press  (Play).

- 4 Use   /   to adjust the position and press  (Paste).

To add the same stamp

Repeat step 4.

To paste another stamp

Press  (Retry) and perform step 3 to 4 again.

- 5 Press  (OK).

- 6 Press  (Save), select [Overwrite], and press .

The image with the stamp is saved by overwriting the original image.



To save as a new image

Select [Save new] → a place to save to.

## Pasting Text

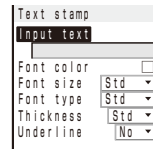
Text can be pasted to an image of [sQCIF(128×96)], [QCIF(176×144)], [QVGA(240×320)], [Stby(240×432)], and [CIF(352×288)]. The style and color of the text can also be specified.

Example: Pasting text and saving by overwriting

- 1 From My picture file list, select an image, press , and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Edit photo] → [Text stamp] and press .



Text stamp
Input text
Font color
Font size Std
Font type Std
Thickness Std
Underline No

[Input text]:

Enter a text to be pasted within 10 full-width or 20 half-width characters.

[Font color]:

Select the color of a font to be pasted.

[Font size]:

Select the size of a font to be pasted.

[Font type]:

Select the type of a font to be pasted.






[Thickness]:

Select the thickness of a font to be pasted.

[Underline]:

Select whether to display a line under a font to be pasted.

- 3 Press  (OK).

- 4 Use   /   to adjust the position and press  (Paste).

To add the same text stamp

Repeat step 4.

To paste another text stamp

Press  (Retry) and perform step 2 to 4 again.

- 5 Press  (OK).

- 6 Press  (Save), select [Overwrite], and press .

The image with the text is saved by overwriting the original image.

To save as a new image



Select [Save new] → a place to save to.

## Trimming Part of an Image After Zoom In


You can specify a part of an image after zooming in on it and trim it into a size of [sQCIF(128×96)], [QCIF(176×144)], [QVGA(240×320)], [Stby(240×432)], or [CIF(352×288)].

- When the image size is [sQCIF(128×96)], you cannot trim this image.



Example: Trimming an image and saving by overwriting

- 1 From My picture file list, select an image, press , and press  (Func).



The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Edit photo] → [Zoom&trim] → a size of an image to be trimmed and press .






- The image size displayed in gray is not available for trimming.

- 3 Press  (Zoom(T))/  (Zoom(W)).



- Press  (Zoom(T)) to enlarge and  (Zoom(W)) to reduce an image.

The zoom is adjusted and the bar is displayed for the zoom magnification you have set.

- 4 Use , , ,  to select the area to be trimmed and press  (OK).

The image is trimmed to the selected size.

- 5 Press  (Save), select [Overwrite], and press .

The trimmed image is saved by overwriting the original image.



To save as a new image

Select [Save new] → a place to save to.


## Rotating an Image



An image of [sQCIF(128×96)], [QCIF(176×144)], [QVGA(240×320)], [Stby(240×432)], [CIF(352×288)], and [VGA(640×480)] can be rotated.

Example: Rotating an image and saving by overwriting

- 1 From My picture file list, select an image, press , and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Edit photo] → [Rotate] and press .

- 3 Press  (Rotate) and press  (OK).

Every time you press  (Rotate), the image rotates clockwise by 90 degrees.

- 4 Press  (Save), select [Overwrite], and press .

The rotated image is saved by overwriting the original image.



To save as a new image

Select [Save new] → a place to save to.


## Converting the Image Size

You can convert an image size into [sQCIF(128×96)], [QCIF(176×144)], [QVGA(240×320)], [Stby(240×432)], or [CIF(352×288)].



Example: Converting an image size and saving

- 1 From My picture file list, select an image, press , and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Edit photo] → [Select size] → a size of an image to be converted and press .

- The image size displayed in gray is not available for size conversion.

- 3 Press , select [Yes] → a place to save to, and press .

The size-converted image is saved.

- Some of the image size cannot be converted into the selected size.

## Storing a Still Image at the Data Security Service Center

You can use the Data Security Service to store up to 10 GIF/JPEG images at one time at the Data Security Service Center.

- Data Security Service is a paid service that requires a subscription. For details on this service, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-model]".
- You cannot store a file that contains an image larger than 100K bytes and a still image that is prohibited from being retrieved out of the FOMA terminal.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the file list of My picture.

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Store at Center] and press .

The Security code screen appears.

- 3 Enter the Security code and press .

The Select&save display appears.

- 4 Select an image and press .

- To store several images, repeat step 4.

- 5 Press  (Complete).

The screen for confirming whether to store the image appears.

- 6 Select [Yes] and press .

The call is connected to the Data Security Service Center and the image is stored. When the storing is completed, the storing result screen appears.



# Playing Back Movie/i-motion

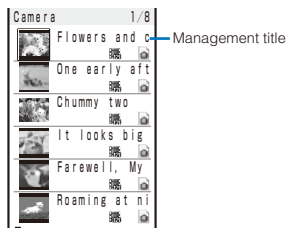
<i-motion>

You can play back movie/i-motion that is saved in i-motion of the Data Box or microSD memory card.

- 1 Press **(Play)** (⏮) in the stand-by display, select [i-motion], and press **(Enter)**.

The i-motion folder list appears.

- 2 Select a folder and press **(Enter)**.



The i-motion file list appears.

- The following icons show the type/size of a movie/i-motion and playback restrictions.

Type and size

Icon	Type	Size
	Movie/i-motion with video and sound tracks	sQCIF(128×96)
		QCIF(176×144)
		VGA(320×240)
		Others
	Movie/i-motion with video track only	sQCIF(128×96)
		QCIF(176×144)
		VGA(320×240)
	Movie/i-motion with sound track only (i-motion without video track, such as singer's voice)	—

- "" appears on the upper right of the icon for movie/i-motion prohibited from being retrieved out of the FOMA terminal.

Playback restrictions

Icon	Playback restrictions
	Movie/i-motion with playback restrictions
	Movie/i-motion whose time limit on playback has expired

To play back movie in a folder repeatedly

From the Function menu, select [Continuous play]. The files displayed in the list are played back sequentially. To stop the playback, press **(Stop)** (⏹).

To display the saved date/time

Press **(F)** to switch the display temporarily between the management title and saved date/time.

- 3 Select a movie/i-motion and press **(Play)**.

The selected movie/i-motion appears.

To change the display quality

Press **(S)**. By pressing **(S)**, you can switch the display quality between Normal/Sharp/Dynamic.

- The following icons show the display quality.

	Normal
	Sharp
	Dynamic

To hide the icons and guide display

Press **(I)** (Display). When you press **(I)** (Display), you can switch the display between standard/simple or turn it off.

To display the previous/next movie/i-motion

Use **(Left)** to display the previous movie/i-motion and **(Right)** to display the next movie/i-motion.

To display an image of [sQCIF(128×96)] or [QCIF(176×144)] in enlarged size

Press **(E)** (Enlarge). To restore the original size, press **(T)** (True img).

To attach to i-mode mail

Press **(F)** (Func) for over a second (P.174).

To set a movie/i-motion for the stand-by display

From the Function menu, select [Stand-by display].

To change the orientation of an image

From the Function menu, select [Play mode change] → [Horizontal].

- You can also select [Horizontal wide] when the image size is [QVGA(320×240)].

To start the camera

From the Function menu, select [Movie shoot mode].

- 4 Press **(Play)**.



The selected movie/i-motion is played back.

Operating method

Operation	Key operation
Play	Press <b>(Play)</b> .
Pause	Press <b>(Pause)</b> .
Stop	Press <b>(Stop)</b> .
Volume adjustment	Use <b>(Up)</b> <b>(Down)</b> .
Fast-forward	Press <b>(Fast-forward)</b> during playback. Pressing and holding <b>(Fast-forward)</b> also provides Fast-forward.
Fast-reverse	Press <b>(Fast-reverse)</b> during playback. Pressing and holding <b>(Fast-reverse)</b> also provides Fast-reverse.
Frame advance	Press <b>(Frame advance)</b> during pause.

- It may take time to display a file list or movie/i-motion saved in the microSD memory card.
- If you edit a recorded movie on a PC, etc., "■" may be displayed instead of the thumbnail.
- If you fold the FOMA terminal during playback of a movie/i-motion, the playback is stopped.
- If you leave the FOMA terminal without a battery pack or with a fully expended battery pack for a long period of time, the date and time is reset, and a movie/i-motion that has a time limit on playback may not be played back.
- A movie/i-motion can be set for the ring tone and/or incoming image when [Ring tone] and/or [Receive display] is set to "Not restricted" as can be checked in the Detail info display. However, the following are the exceptions.
  - A movie/i-motion restored from a PC or another FOMA terminal, which was once transferred to it using the infrared or iC communication or DoCoMo keitai datalink
  - A movie/i-motion saved from the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal (including the one that is restored to the FOMA terminal after once copied/moved from there, except for the movable contents-compatible one)

## Editing Movies

<Edit movie>

You can edit a movie recorded with the FOMA terminal.

- Some movies may not be edited.

### Clipping a Movie

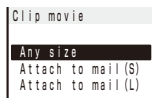
You can clip a portion of a movie of [sQCIF(128×96)], [QCIF(176×144)], and [QVGA(320×240)] image size by specifying the range or size to be clipped.

Example: Trimming a movie image by specifying size and saving by overwriting

- 1 From the i-motion file list, select a movie, press **○**, and press **☐** (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Edit movie] → [Clip movie] and press **○**.



[Any size]:

Clip a movie by specifying the start and end positions.

[Attach to mail(S)]:

Automatically clip a movie to up to 500K-byte length from the specified start position.

[Attach to mail(L)]:

Automatically clip a movie to up to 2M-byte length from the specified start position.

- 3 Select [Attach to mail(S)]/[Attach to mail(L)] and press **○**.



To move forward frame-by-frame

Press **▶**.

- 4 Press **○** (Play), press **○** (Pause) at the clipping start position, and press **☐** (Start).

When you select [Any size]

Press **○** (Play), press **○** (Pause) at the clipping end position, and press **☐** (End).

- 5 Select [Yes] and press **○**.

- 6 Press **○** (Save), select [Overwrite], and press **○**.

The movie clip is saved by overwriting the original movie.

To save as a new movie

Select [Save new] → a place to save to.

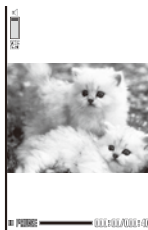
### Clipping a Still Image from a Movie

You can specify any portion of a movie and clip it as a still image.

- 1 From the i-motion file list, select a movie, press **○**, and press **☐** (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Edit movie] → [Clip picture] and press **○**.



To move forward frame-by-frame

Press **▶**.

- 3 Press **○** (Play), press **○** (Pause) at the clipping position, and press **☐** (Clip).

- 4 Select [Yes] and press **○**.



- 5 Press **○** (Save), select [Yes] → a place to save to, and press **○**.

The still image clip is saved in My picture.

## Converting the Image Size


You can convert a [QVGA(320×240)] image size movie into the [QCIF(176×144)] image size.

Example: Converting the image size and saving by overwriting

- 1 From the i-motion file list, select a movie, press , and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Edit movie] → [Select size] and press .

- 3 Select [Yes] and press .

- 4 Press  (Save), select [Overwrite], and press .

The converted movie is saved by overwriting the original movie.

To save as a new movie

Select [Save new] → a place to save to.

- It may take time to convert a large movie/i-motion file.
- When the size of a file after conversion is too large, movie images may be partially clipped into a file of 500K bytes or less.

## What is Chara-den?

<Chara-den>

You can send an avatar of your choice instead of your own image when you use the videophone function. You can make this avatar move by pressing the keys on the keypad. The mouth part of some avatars can be moved in response to the sound heard from the microphone.

### ■ Preinstalled Chara-den characters



### ■ Action lists of the preinstalled Chara-den characters

#### Dimo

Full-body action

- |          |           |       |
|----------|-----------|-------|
| 1: 笑う    | 2: 泣く     | 3: 怒る |
| 4: こんにちは | 5: OK     | 6: NG |
| 7: サメ    | 8: 博士風メガネ | 9: ガー |

#### LocoRoco

Full-body action

- |           |         |               |
|-----------|---------|---------------|
| 1: 喜ぶ(笑顔) | 2: 悲しむ  | 3: 楽しく飛び跳ねる   |
| 4: 怒る     | 5: 寝る   | 6: 唄をうたう      |
| 7: 驚く     | 8: LOVE | 9: ? (不思議に思う) |
| #1: ピンチ   |         |               |

- If you have deleted a preinstalled Chara-den file, you can download it from "SO@Planet".

[i Menu] → [メニュー/検索] (Menu/Search) → [ケータイ電話メーカー] (Mobile Phone Manufacturers) → [SO@Planet] (Japanese only)

## Displaying and Operating Chara-den

You can display Chara-den characters saved in the Chara-den folder of the Data Box.


- 1 Press  ( ) in the stand-by display, select [Chara-den], and press .



The Chara-den file list appears.

- File restriction is set for Chara-den files and " " appears on the upper right of the Chara-den icon.

To place a videophone call

Move the cursor to the Chara-den file and from the Function menu, select [Call Chara-den], enter a phone number, and press  (V.phone).



To set a substitute image of videophone

Move the cursor to the Chara-den file and from the Function menu, select [Set sub image].





- 2 Select a Chara-den file and press .



To display the previous/next Chara-den

Use  to display the previous Chara-den and  to display the next Chara-den.

Operating method

Operation	Key operation
Stop action	Press  while in action.
Switch the action mode	Press  (Change). Every time you press this key, the operation is switched between full-body action and parts action. ⓧ (Full-body action) : The entire body is moved. Ⓚ (Parts action) : A part of the body is moved.
Display the action list	Press  (List). Select an action to check the movement of it. Move the cursor to an action and press  (Detail) to display the action name.
Display other Chara-den file	From the Function menu, select [Set Chara-den] → [Change Chara-den] → a Chara-den file.

- The action that you can perform varies depending on a Chara-den file. Some Chara-den files have no action to be performed.

## Playing Back Music Data <Music>

You can play back music data saved in MUSIC of the Data Box and microSD memory card.

- Press ( ) in the stand-by display, select [MUSIC], and press .



The list of music folder and file appears.

- The following icons show the type of music data and playback restrictions.

### Type

Icon	Type
	Original playlist and imported playlist
	Chaku-Uta Full®
	Chaku-Uta Full® downloaded partway
	3GPP

- File restriction is set for Chaku-Uta Full® and “” appears on the upper right of the icon.

### Playback restrictions

Icon	Playback restrictions
	Music data with playback restrictions
	Music data whose time limit on playback has expired

### To play back music data in a folder

Select a folder and press .

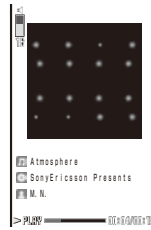
### To switch between the jacket display and list display

From the Function menu, select [Change jackets].

### To switch to the MUSIC Player

From the Function menu, select [Player mode].

- Select music data and press .



The selected music data is played back.

### Operating method

Operation	Key operation
Play	Press .
Stop	Press .
Volume adjustment	Use  .
Rewinding	Press .
Fast-forward	Press  for over a second during playback.
Fast-reverse	Press  for over a second during playback.

### When you select a playlist

It is switched to the MUSIC Player.

- When you fold the FOMA terminal during playback of music data, the playback is stopped.

## Playing Back a Melody

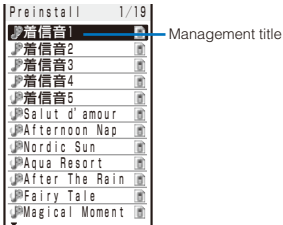
<Melody>

You can play back an SMF/MFI-format melody that is saved in Melody of the Data Box or microSD memory card.

- 1 Press () in the stand-by display, select [Melody], and press .

The melody folder list appears.

- 2 Select a folder and press .



The melody file list appears.

- The following icons show the type of the melody.

Icon	Type
	Melody
	3D sound-compatible melody

- "" appears on the upper right of the icon for melodies prohibited from being retrieved out of the FOMA terminal.

### To play a melody that has specified playback range

Move the cursor to the melody and from the Function menu, select [Play portion].

### To attach to i-mode mail

Move the cursor to the melody and from the Function menu, select [Attach to mail] (P.174).

- 3 Select a melody and press .



The selected melody is played and the indicator flashes.

### To stop playback

Press (Stop).

### To play back the previous/next melody

Use to play back the previous melody and to play back the next melody.

### To adjust the volume

Use .

- When you play back a melody, the FOMA terminal may start vibrating in concert with the melody, regardless of the Vibrator setting (P.101).
- If you fold the FOMA terminal during playback of a melody, the playback is stopped.

## microSD memory card

You can save Phonebook, mail, Bookmark, and other data in the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card, as well as copy data in the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal. In addition, you cannot only view data in the microSD memory card on the FOMA terminal, but also use the FOMA terminal as a reader/writer of a microSD memory card by connecting it to a PC (P.217).

To use the microSD memory card, you are required to obtain a microSD memory card separately. If you have no microSD memory card, you can purchase it at a home electric appliance store or other similar store.

- Data saved in the microSD memory card from other devices may not be displayed/played back on the FOMA terminal. Similarly, data saved in the microSD memory card from the FOMA terminal may not be displayed/played back on other devices.

- SO704i supports the commercially available microSD memory card of up to 2G bytes (as of June 2007).

For the latest information for which normal operation of the microSD memory card is confirmed, such as information about the manufactures and capacities of the microSD memory card, see the following websites. Note that a microSD memory card other than listed in the websites may not operate normally on SO704i.

From i-mode : [SO@Planet] (as of June 2007)

[i Menu] → [メニュー/検索]  
(Menu/Search) → [ケータイ  
電話メーカー] (Mobile Phone  
Manufacturers) → [SO@Planet]  
(Japanese only)



From PC : Website of Sony Ericsson Mobile Communications Japan, Inc.

<http://www.SonyEricsson.co.jp/memorycard/>

Please note that the information listed represents only the result of the operation checks and by no means provides guarantee for all operations of the microSD memory card.

- Do not stick a label, etc. on the microSD memory card. It may be removed when inserting/removing the microSD memory card, resulting in malfunction, etc. of the FOMA terminal.
- When you save data in a microSD memory card, it is recommended to make a backup copy of the saved data and keep it separately in a safe place. Under no condition will DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or modification of the data.

The microSD memory card formatted on a PC or other devices cannot be used on the FOMA terminal. Be sure to use the microSD memory card after formatting it using the FOMA terminal (P.216).

## Inserting and Removing the microSD memory card

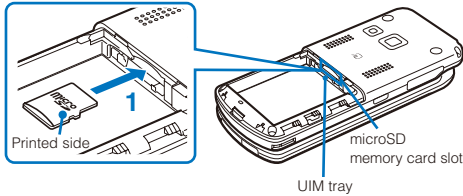
When inserting or removing the microSD memory card, make sure to power off and fold the FOMA terminal, remove the battery pack, and perform the operation with the FOMA terminal held with your hand.

- When inserting the microSD memory card, make sure to insert it in the correct orientation with the printed side facing up as illustrated below. Any insertion in an orientation other than illustrated below may cause malfunction, etc.

### ■ Inserting the microSD memory card

#### 1 Insert the microSD memory card into the slot.

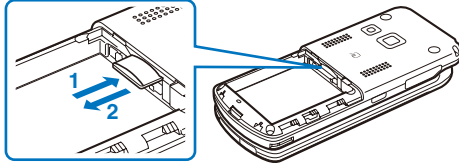
- Insert until it clicks into place.



### ■ Removing the microSD memory card

#### 1 Press the microSD memory card lightly.

It is ejected slightly.



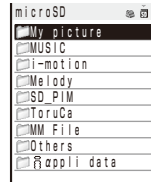
#### 2 Remove the microSD memory card.

- "SD" appears in the display while the microSD memory card is inserted. When it does not appear, the following reasons about the microSD memory card may be considered. Please check them.
  - Dust or other particles are on the metallic terminal portion
  - Insertion is not completed
  - Damaged
  - Using an external memory other than recommended ones (For information about recommended external memories, scan the QR code in P.211 and access to "SO@Planet".)

## Displaying Data on the microSD memory card



Data saved in the microSD memory card can be displayed and checked.

### 1 From the Menu, select [Entertainment] → [microSD] and press .



The category list of the microSD appears.

To switch the contents of a memory to be displayed

Press  (Chg.Mmry). Each time you press , the contents to be displayed are switched between the Data Box/microSD memory card.

### 2 Select a category and press .

- To perform an operation while category/data is displayed, see the description about each function. You may not be able to perform some of the operations using the microSD memory card.
  - My picture (P.204)
  - MUSIC (P.233)
  - i-motion (P.207)
  - Melody (P.211)
  - Phonebook (P.92)
  - Text Memo (P.249)
  - Schedule (P.245)
  - Inbox/Outbox/Draft (P.178)
  - Bookmark (P.155)
  - ToruCa (P.200)
  - MM File (P.207)
  - i appli data (P.196)

### 3 Select data and press .

The contents of the selected data are displayed.

# Folder Setup of the microSD memory card

## When Displaying the Folders on the FOMA Terminal

- When you save a Phonebook entry, text memo, schedule, mail, bookmark, and a ToruCa card from the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal, they are saved as a file formatted for the microSD memory card. Multiple data records of above categories may be contained in a file of the microSD memory card.

○: Allowed to be saved    ×: Not allowed to be saved    △: Only allowed to be moved

Category		Data you can/cannot save in the FOMA terminal			Contents of data
		One file	Selected files	All files	
My picture	Camera	○	○	○	Image recorded with the camera of the FOMA terminal and GIF image
	Deco mail Pict.	○	○	○	Deco-mail pictograph
	Other images	○	○	○	JPEG image and GIF animation
	Movable contents	△	×	×	Movable contents-compatible still image
MUSIC	Distrib. contents	×	×	×	Music data (3GPP)
	Movable contents	△	×	×	Movable contents-compatible music data (Chaku-Uta Full®)
i-motion	Distrib. contents	○	○	○	Movie/i-motion
	Movable contents	△	×	×	Movable contents-compatible movie/i-motion
Melody	Distrib. contents	○	○	○	Melody
	Movable contents	△	×	×	Movable contents-compatible melody
SD_PIM	Phonebook	○	×	×	Phonebook data
	Text Memo	○	×	×	Text memo
	Schedule	○	×	×	Schedule
	Inbox	○	×	×	Received mail
	Outbox	○	×	×	Sent mail
	Draft	○	×	×	Saved mail
	Bookmark	○	×	×	Bookmark
ToruCa		○	×	×	ToruCa card, ToruCa(detail) card
MM File		○	○	○	i-motion with sound track only (i-motion without video track, such as singer's voice)
Others		×	×	×	Other files
i-αppli data		×	×	×	Saved i-αppli data

### ■ Data that cannot be saved in the FOMA terminal

Phonebook	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You cannot save a movie/i-motion set for the Des call display and also a GIF/JPEG image set for the Des call display if it exceeds 100K bytes or [QVGA(240×320)].</li> </ul>
ToruCa	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You cannot save a ToruCa and ToruCa(detail) card exceeding 1K bytes and 100K bytes respectively.</li> </ul>
Melody	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You cannot save a melody exceeding 200K bytes.</li> </ul>
My picture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You cannot save a GIF/JPEG image exceeding 2M bytes.</li> <li>You cannot save a GIF image and a GIF animation exceeding [UXGA(1600×1200)] and [Stby(240×432)] respectively, and some JPEG images.</li> </ul>
MUSIC	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You cannot save music data from the microSD memory card to the Data Box (except for the movable contents-compatible Chaku-Uta Full®).</li> </ul>
i-motion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You cannot save a movie/i-motion exceeding 2M bytes.</li> </ul>

## When Displaying the Folders on a PC

When you save data of the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card, a corresponding folder is created automatically.

- The maximum number of files that can be saved is an estimated number, assuming the blank memory is used.

Category	FOMA terminal folder	File format	FOMA terminal filename	Estimated max. number of files to be saved (64MB)	
DCIM	—	—	—	—	
100SODCF~999SODCF	My picture/Camera	JPEG(Exif), GIF	DSC0n0nnn.JPG/.GIF	P.133	
SD_VIDEO	—	—	—	—	
PRLxxx	i-motion/Distrib. contents	MP4	MOLxxx.MP4/.3GP	P.134	
SD_PIM	Phonebook	vCard	PIM*****.VCF	3,877	
	Mail (Outbox/Inbox/Draft)	vMessage	PIM*****.VMG		
	Schedule	vCalendar	PIM*****.VCS		
	Bookmark	vBookmark	PIM*****.VBM ※		
	Text Memo	vNote	PIM*****.VNT		
PRIVATE	—	—	—	—	
DOCOMO	—	—	—	—	
STILL	SUDnnn	My picture/Other images	JPEG (excluding Exif), GIF animation	STILNnnn.JPG/.GIF	3,875
RINGER	RUDnnn	Melody/Distrib. contents	MFi, SMF	RINGNnnn.MID/.MLD/.SMF	3,875
TORUCA	TRCnnn	ToruCa	vNote	TORUCnnn.TRC	3,875
MMFILE	MUDnnn	MM File/Distrib. contents	MP4	MMFNnnn.MP4/.3GP	P.134
	MUSIC	MUSIC/Distrib. contents	3GPP	Filename.3gp	P.230
		MUSIC/Distrib. contents/Imp. Playlist	M3U	Filename.m3u	P.235
DECOIMG	DUDnnn	My picture/Deco mail Pict.	JPEG, GIF	DIMGnnn.JPG/.GIF	3,875
OTHER	OUDnnn	Others	—	OTHERnnn	3,875
TABLE	DCIM	Additional information management files of each folder	—	—	—
	STILL				
	SD_VIDEO				
	MMFILE				
	RINGER				
	TORUCA				
	DECOIMG				
OTHER					
SD_BIND	—	—	—	—	
SVC*****	—	—	—	—	
*****	My picture/Movable contents	JPEG, GIF, SWF	*****.SB1	3,875	
*****	i-motion/Movable contents	MP4	*****.SB1	3,875	
*****	Melody/Movable contents	MFi, SMF	*****.SB1	3,875	
SVC*****	—	—	—	—	
*****	i αppli data	i αppli data	—	3,875	
SVC*****	—	—	—	—	
*****	MUSIC/Movable contents	Chaku-Uta Full®	*****.SB2	P.230	

※ A “\*.url” file received via data communication is also processed as a bookmark file.

- The numbers “001” to “999” and “0001” to “9999” are assigned to “nnn” and “nnnn” respectively from the smallest available number in the order of their creation.
- The hexadecimal digits “001” to “FFF” are assigned to “xxx” in the order of their creation.
- The numbers “00001” to “65535” and “00000001” to “00065535” are assigned to “\*\*\*\*\*” and “\*\*\*\*\*” respectively from the smallest available number in the order of their creation.
- A file name that can be identified by the microSD memory card is up to 255 bytes including a drive name and path.



## Data That Can Be Written/Read to and from the microSD memory card

- It may take time to save data depending on the data size.
- Data saved from the microSD memory card may not be displayed/played back properly.

Category	Data you can/cannot save from the FOMA terminal			Data you cannot save from the FOMA terminal and other information
	One file	Selected files	All files	
My picture	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot save a frame image, stamp image, and Flash movie.</li> </ul>
MUSIC	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot save data from the Data Box to the microSD memory card (except for the movable contents-compatible Chaku-Uta Full®).</li> </ul>
i-motion	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot save a movie/i-motion with playback restriction.</li> </ul>
Melody	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	—
Phonebook	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot save the Designated Chara-den, Des phone tone, Des mail tone, Select phone Illum., and Select mail Illum.</li> <li>• When you use Save one, you cannot save a Group number and Group name. To save data using Save one, set the Secret to [OFF].</li> <li>• You cannot save a movie/i-motion set for the Des call display.</li> <li>• When you use Save all, the data of the PushTalk phonebook is also saved.</li> <li>• You cannot save the Des call display if the Save image setting is set to [OFF].</li> <li>• You cannot copy the UIM phonebook.</li> </ul>
Text Memo	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	—
Schedule	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot save ON/OFF of the holiday setting for a repeated schedule.</li> <li>• To save data using Save one, set the Secret to [OFF].</li> </ul>
Inbox/Outbox/Draft	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot save a folder name, i-αppli To link, and file attachment not yet obtained.</li> <li>• Mail exceeding 100K bytes is saved after being resized to 100K bytes by deleting a file attachment, etc.</li> <li>• Protected mail and i-αppli mail are saved as regular mail.</li> <li>• You cannot save the SMS report.</li> </ul>
Bookmark	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot save a folder name.</li> </ul>
ToruCa	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You may not be able to save some ToruCa cards.</li> </ul>

- You cannot copy/move a file prohibited from being retrieved out of the FOMA terminal.

- If you edit, add, or delete data stored in the microSD memory card on a device such as a PC, it may not be displayed correctly on the FOMA terminal. If this happens, update the information of the management file in the microSD memory card (P.216).

## Saving Data from the FOMA Terminal to the microSD memory card

You can copy data from the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card.

- While you save the Phonebook, Text memo, Schedule, mail, Bookmark, and ToruCa card data, the status of the FOMA terminal is the same as the outside of the service area status. Therefore, you cannot use call or communication functions, such as placing/receiving a call and using i-mode and data communication.

Example: Saving data


### 1 Select data and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Save] → [Save one] → [Yes] and press .

The selected data is saved.

#### To save several data

Select [Save] → [Select&save] and select data. Press  (Complete) and select [Yes].

#### To save all data in My picture/i-motion/Melody

Select [Save] → [Save all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

#### To save all Phonebook entries

Select [Save] → [Save all] → [Yes]/[No] and enter the Security code.

#### To save all text memos

Select [Save] → [Save all] → [Yes]/[No] and enter the Security code.

#### To save mail/Schedule/Bookmark/ToruCa card

In the data list, from the Function menu, select [Save one] → [Yes]. To save all data, in the folder list or the calendar, from the Function menu, select [Save all] and enter the Security code.

## Saving Data from the microSD memory card to the FOMA Terminal

You can copy data from the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal.

### Saving the Phonebook and Mail

You can save the Phonebook, Text memo, Schedule, mail, Bookmark, and ToruCa card data to the FOMA terminal.

- While you save the Phonebook, Text memo, Schedule, mail, Bookmark, and ToruCa card data, you cannot use call or communication functions, such as placing/receiving a call and using i-mode and data communication, because the FOMA terminal is placed in the same condition as outside of the service area.
- While another function is activated, you cannot save the Phonebook, Text memo, Schedule, mail, Bookmark, and ToruCa card data to the FOMA terminal.

Example: Saving the data by adding to the existing data

### 1 From the microSD category list, select a category and press .

## 2 Select data and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

## 3 Select [Save to main] and press .

The Security code screen appears.

## 4 Enter the Security code and press (OK).

The screen for confirming whether to save data appears.

[Add]:

Save the data by adding to the existing data.

[Overwrite]:

Save the data by overwriting the existing data. The screen for confirming whether to delete the existing data appears.

## 5 Select [Add] and press .

The selected data is saved.

### Saving a Melody and Image

You can save My picture, i-motion, Melody, and MM File data to the FOMA terminal.

Example: Saving data

### 1 From the microSD category list, select a category and press .


### 2 Select data and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

### 3 Select [Save to main] → [Save one] → [Yes] and press .

The selected data is saved in the [Data transfer] folder.

To save several data

Select [Save to main] → [Select&save] and select data. Press  (Complete) and select [Yes].

To save all data

Select [Save to main] → [Save all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- Data created on a microSD memory card compatible device other than SO704i may not be saved correctly.

## Managing the microSD memory card

### Formatting

You can format the microSD memory card to be used with the FOMA terminal.

- If you format the microSD memory card that contains data, the data is deleted. Be careful not to delete important data unintentionally when you start formatting.

### 1 Press (Func) in the microSD category list.

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Format] and press .

The Security code screen appears.

### 3 Enter the Security code and press (OK).

### 4 Select [Yes] and press .

The microSD memory card is formatted.

- Do not format the microSD memory card using a PC, etc. Make sure to format it on the FOMA terminal.

[Data Display/Edit/Management](#)

## Checking the Usage Information

You can check the usage information of the microSD memory card.

- The displayed data amount and total capacity of the microSD memory card are estimated values that may not be accurate.


### 1 Press (Func) in the microSD category list.

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [microSD info] and press .

microSD info	
Full cap.	62,032KB
Using	9,045KB
My picture	2,535KB
MUSIC	1,933KB
i-motion	1,555KB
Melody	685KB

To change the unit

Press  (Unit chg) to switch temporarily between the KB and MB displays.

## Updating the Management Information of the microSD memory card

If you edit, add, or delete data stored in the microSD memory card on a device other than the FOMA terminal, it may not be displayed correctly on the FOMA terminal. If this happens, update the information of the management file in the microSD memory card.

### 1 Press (Func) in the microSD category list.

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Update mng. info] and press .

The Update mng. info display appears.

### 3 Select a category to be updated, press , and press (Complete).

The screen for confirming whether to update the management information appears.

### 4 Select [Yes] and press .

The management information is updated. While the management information is updated, " updating " appears.

- If any data in the microSD memory card has a file name that is not supported by the FOMA terminal, the file name is changed when you update the management information.
- If you update the management information while the screen for confirming whether to save the recorded images is displayed, the image that is being confirmed is discarded when the microSD memory card is set as the place to save to.

# Using the FOMA Terminal with a PC

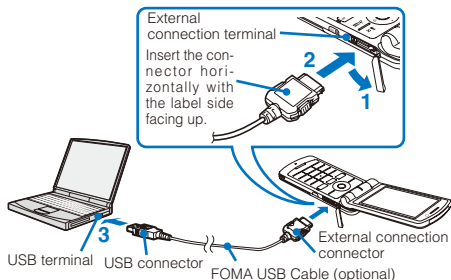
<Memory mode>

When you connect the FOMA terminal to a PC using the FOMA USB Cable (optional), you can use it as an external drive to read/write data on the microSD memory card.

- The operating environment for using the FOMA terminal connected to a PC is as follows.

Item	Required environment
Connection cable	FOMA USB Cable (optional)
PC main unit	PC with a USB port (Universal Serial Bus Specification 1.1 compliant) that can be used to connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional)
OS	Windows 2000 Professional (SP3 or later), Windows XP, Windows Vista (Japanese version)

## 1 Connect the FOMA terminal and PC using the FOMA USB Cable (optional).



The notification icon “” (USB cable cnctd) appears in the stand-by display.

## 2 Press (Link) in the stand-by display, select , and press .



[Communication mode]:

Perform packet and 64K data communication, and send/receive data.

[Memory mode]:

Read and write data from/to the microSD memory card.

## 3 Select [Memory mode] and press .

The Memory mode is set and “” changes to “”. On the PC, “リムーバブル ディスク” is displayed for the microSD memory card.

- If the FOMA terminal is not connected to a PC correctly or the battery level is very low or 0, not only data cannot be sent/received, but also it may be lost in some cases.
- Do not unplug the FOMA USB Cable (optional) during reading/writing data. If you do so, not only data cannot be sent/received, but also it may be lost in some cases.
- Do not format the microSD memory card using a PC, etc. Make sure to format it on the FOMA terminal.

# Terminating the Memory Mode

To remove the FOMA terminal from a PC, perform the procedure to safely remove the hardware on the PC in advance, which is slightly different for each OS.

Example: When using Windows XP

## 1 Double-click the task tray icon (ハードウェアの安全な取り外し) on the Windows desktop.

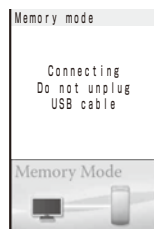


## 2 Move the pointer to [USB大容量記憶装置デバイス] and click [停止].



## 3 Click [OK] and confirm that the hardware is unmounted successfully.

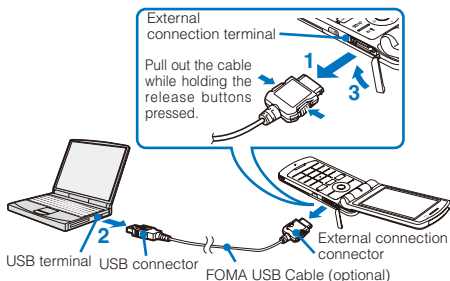
## 4 Press (Quit) in the Memory mode display of the FOMA terminal.



## 5 Select [Yes] and press .

The Memory mode is terminated.

## 6 Remove the FOMA USB Cable (optional) from the FOMA terminal and PC.



## Copying Data from the FOMA Terminal to the UIM

You can copy up to 50 FOMA terminal phonebook entries and up to 20 SMS from the FOMA terminal to the UIM (FOMA card).

- Only the "name", "reading", "first phone number", and "first mail address" can be copied from the FOMA terminal phonebook to the UIM phonebook. The reading is converted from half-width katakana characters to full-width katakana characters. If "+" is included in a phone number, it is deleted.
- If a group with the same name exists in the UIM phonebook, data is saved in it and if not, data is saved in group 0.
- You cannot copy the SMS report.

Example: Copying the FOMA terminal phonebook entries


### 1 From the FOMA terminal phonebook, select data and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

#### To copy all data

From the Function menu, select [Copy to UIM] → [Copy all] → [Yes] and enter the Security code.

#### To copy several data

From the Function menu, select [Copy to UIM] → [Select&copy] and select data. Press  (Complete) and select [Yes].

#### To copy SMS

Move the cursor to the mail in the mail list and from the Function menu, select [Copy to UIM] → [Yes].

### 2 Select [Copy to UIM] → [Copy one] → [Yes] and press .

The selected data is copied.

## Copying Data from the UIM to the FOMA Terminal

You can copy UIM (FOMA card) phonebook data and SMS from the UIM to the FOMA terminal.

- The reading of the UIM phonebook is converted from full-width katakana characters to half-width katakana characters.
- If a group with the same name exists in the FOMA terminal phonebook, data is saved in it and if not, data is saved in group 0.

Example: Copying the UIM phonebook entries


### 1 From the UIM phonebook, select data and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

#### To copy all data

From the Function menu, select [Copy to Main] → [Copy all] → [Yes] and enter the Security code.

#### To copy several data

From the Function menu, select [Copy to Main] → [Select&copy] and select data. Press  (Complete) and select [Yes].

#### To copy SMS

Move the cursor to the mail in the mail list and from the Function menu, select [Copy to Main] → [Yes] → a folder.

### 2 Select [Copy to Main] → [Copy one] → [Yes] and press .

The selected data is copied.

## Managing Data Box

<Data Box>

Data handled by the FOMA terminal, such as downloaded data and data recorded using the camera, are saved in the categories of the Data Box: My picture, MUSIC, i-motion, Melody, and Chara-den. You can display/play back saved data any time.

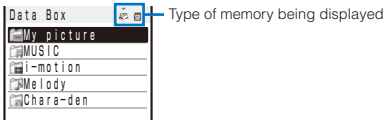
- You may not be able to operate some categories.

### ■ Data saved in the Data Box

Category	Folder name	Contents of data	
My picture	i-mode	Images obtained from a site, i-mode mail, or i-αppli	
	Camera	Images recorded using the camera of the FOMA terminal	
	Deco mail image	Images that can be used when you compose Deco-mail	
	Deco mail Pict.	Deco-mail pictograph	
	Stamp&Frame	Images used for stamps/frames	
	Preinstall	Preinstalled images	
MUSIC	—	User-created original playlist, Chaku-Uta Full® obtained from a site	
	i-motion	i-mode	Movie obtained from a site, i-mode mail, or i-αppli
		Camera	Movie recorded using the camera of the FOMA terminal
		Preinstall	Preinstalled movie
Data transfer	Movie moved/copied from the microSD memory card, movie received using infrared/iC communication, and movie retrieved from a PC, etc.		
Melody	i-mode	Melodies obtained from a site, i-mode mail, or i-αppli	
	Preinstall	Preinstalled melodies	
	Data transfer	Melodies scanned by the bar code reader, melodies moved/copied from the microSD memory card, melodies received using infrared/iC communication, and melodies retrieved from a PC, etc.	
Chara-den	—	Preinstalled Chara-den files, Chara-den files downloaded from a site	

Example: Displaying the file list in the [Preinstall] folder in My picture

**1** Press (Data Box) in the stand-by display.



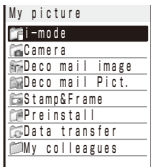
To switch the memory contents to be displayed

Press (Chg.Mmry). Each time you press , the displayed contents are switched between the microSD memory card/Data Box.

- The following icons show the type of memory being displayed.

	Data Box (currently used)
	microSD memory card (currently used)

**2** Select [My picture] and press .

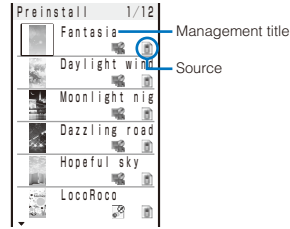


My picture folder list appears.

- The following icons show the status of a folder. The folder name is displayed next to the icon.

	(Yellow) Preset folder
	i-mode
	Camera
	Deco mail image
	Deco mail Pict.
	Stamp&Frame
	Preinstall
	Data transfer
	(Blue) User-created folder

**3** Select [Preinstall] and press .



The file list appears.

- The following icons show the source from where the file was obtained.

Icon	Source
	Preinstalled data
	Data obtained from sites, i-mode mail, or i-α ppli
	Data recorded using the camera of the FOMA terminal
	Data scanned by a bar code reader, data moved/copied from the microSD memory card, data received using infrared/iC communication, and data retrieved from a PC, etc.

To display the saved date/time

Press to switch the display temporarily between the management title and saved date/time.

**Adding/Deleting Folders**

You can create or delete a folder for saving data. Regarding the user-created folder, you can manage files by allocating them in 10 folders per category. You can also change the name of a folder.

- For MUSIC, 10 folders can be created under each folder in MUSIC.
- You can neither delete the preset folders nor change the name of them.

**1** Press (Func) in the category folder list.

The Function menu appears.

**2** Select [Edit folder] → [Create folder], press , and enter a folder name.

Enter a name within eight full-width or 17 half-width characters (seven full-width or 15 half-width characters in case of MUSIC).

The folder is added.

To change a folder name

Move the cursor to the folder and from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] → [Edit folder name]. Enter a name within eight full-width or 17 half-width characters (seven full-width or 15 half-width characters in case of MUSIC).

To delete a folder


Move the cursor to the folder and from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] → [Delete folder], enter the Security code, and select [Yes]. To delete several folders, from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] → [Select&delete], enter the Security code, and select folders. Press (Complete) and select [Yes]. To delete all folders, from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

## Moving Data to a Different Folder

You can use three methods to move data to another folder or the microSD memory card.

- You cannot move the Chara-den and data saved in the [Preinstall] folder.


Example: Moving data from the Data Box to the microSD memory card

- 1 From the Data Box, select a category → a folder and press .


To move all data in the folder

From the Function menu, select [Move] → [Move all] → a place to move to.

To move several data

From the Function menu, select [Move] → [Select&move] → a place to move to and select data. Press  (Complete) and select [Yes].

To move data from the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

Move the cursor to the data and from the Function menu, select [Move to main] → [Move one]. To move several data, select [Move to main] → [Select&move] and select data. Press  (Complete) and select [Yes]. To move all data, select [Move to main] → [Move all].

- 2 Select data and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 3 Select [Move] → [Move one] and press .

The screen for selecting where to move appears.

[Data Box]:

Move data to a folder in the Data Box. To move a folder within the Data Box, select a place to save to → a folder.

[microSD]:

Move data to a folder in the microSD memory card.

[Back to origin]:

Restore data to its original folder.

- 4 Select [microSD] and press .


The selected data is moved to the microSD memory card.

## Deleting Data

You can delete data using three methods.

- You cannot delete some preinstalled data.


Example: Deleting one data item


- 1 From the Data Box, select a category → a folder and press .

To delete all data in the folder

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To delete several data

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete] and select data. Press  (Complete) and select [Yes].

- 2 Select data and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 3 Select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes] and press .


The selected data is deleted.

## Sorting Data

Default Date

Data in a folder can be sorted for display.

- You cannot sort data in MUSIC.

- 1 From the Data Box, select a category → a folder, press , and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Sort] → a sorting order and press .

[Title]:

Sort data by the management title in Japanese alphabetical order.





[Date]:

Sort data from newest to oldest saved date.

[Size]:

Sort data in decreasing order of file size, the largest file first.

[Originated(icon)]:

Sort data by the icon of the source in the order of "  " (Preinstall) → "  " (i-mode) → "  " (Camera) → "  " (Data transfer).

The data is listed in the selected order.

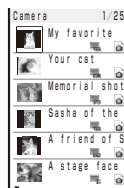
- When you select [Title], sorting may not be performed exactly in Japanese alphabetical order for reasons such as because some titles contain a mixture of full-width and half-width characters.

## Setting How to Display a List of Images

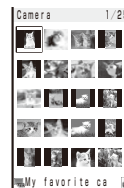
Default 6 images

You can select the display style of My picture and i-motion file list using the following three methods. The set display style is applied to all folders.

6 images



20 images





List only



Display by 6 images

Display by 20 images

Display in the list form

- 1 From the Data Box, select a category → a folder, press , and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Change display] → the display style and press .

The display style of a file list is set.


## Displaying the Data Box/Data Information

### Displaying the Data Box Information



- 1 Press  (Property) in the Data Box.

Data Box info	
Full cap.	28,155KB
Using	13,178KB
My picture	
MUSIC	7,473KB
i-motion	4,638KB
Melody	555KB
	80KB

#### To change the unit

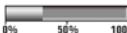
Press  (Unit chg) to switch temporarily between the KB and MB displays.

### Displaying Information of Folders in Data Box


- 1 From the Data Box, select a category, press , and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Folder info] and press .

My picture info	
Remaining	22,388KB
Using	7,473KB
	
Max	1500
Registered	281



#### To change the unit

Press  (Unit chg) to switch temporarily between the KB and MB displays.

## Displaying/Editing Data Information

You can change the data management title and file name, and set file restrictions. The management title is displayed in the file list.

- You may not be able to edit the detailed information of some preinstalled data.

- 1 From the Data Box, select a category → a folder and press . Select a data item and press  (Detail).

Detail info	
[Management title]	Your cat
[File name]	20070912091836
[File format]	JPEG
[Restriction]	Not restricted
[Size]	W 352×H 288
[File size]	35KB

The detailed information of data appears.

- 2 Press  (Edit).

Edit file info	
[Management title]	Your cat
[File name]	20070912091836
[Restriction]	No

- 3 Enter a title at [Management title].

Enter a title within 18 full-width or 36 half-width characters.

#### To reset the management title

Press  (Rset Ttl).

- You can reset the management title only of the data that has an original title to be displayed.

- 4 Enter a file name at [File name].

Enter a file name within 36 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols.

- You cannot use half-width symbols " \* / : < > ? ¥ | . You cannot enter "." at the beginning of a file name.

- 5 Select [Yes]/[No] at [Restriction].

[Yes]:

Set file restriction. Once you send the file as a mail attachment, it cannot be sent or forwarded from the recipient's FOMA terminal.

[No]:

Do not set file restriction.

- 6 Press  (Complete).

## ■ List of display items and items that can be edited

⊙: Can be edited ○: Display only –: Not displayed

Display item	My picture			Chaku-Uta Full <sup>®</sup>	Movie/i-motion	Melody	Chara-den	Description
	JPEG	GIF	Flash					
Management title	⊙	⊙	⊙	–	⊙	⊙	⊙	Title to be displayed on the FOMA terminal
File name	⊙	⊙	○	○	⊙	⊙	○	Name of file to be displayed when the mail has a data attachment.
Original title	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	Original title
File format	○	○	–	–	○	○	–	File type
Restriction								Whether the file can be sent or forwarded from the recipient's FOMA terminal when it is sent as a mail attachment <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You may not be able to change the restriction for an i-motion and melody obtained from a site, etc.</li> <li>You cannot change the restriction for a frame image and stamp image.</li> </ul>
Size	○	○	–	–	○	–	○	Data display size <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This item is not displayed for i-motion with sound track only (i-motion without video track, such as singer's voice).</li> </ul>
File size	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	Data file size
Mail attach size	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	File size of an Exit-format file excluding the size of its thumbnail
Replay restriction	–	–	–	○	○	–	–	Playback restriction
Ring tone	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	Whether setting as the ring tone is permitted
Receive display	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	Whether setting as the receive display is permitted
Full song ring tone	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	Whether setting as the Full song ring tone is permitted※
Point ring tone	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	Whether setting as the Point ring tone is permitted※
Savable Jacket image	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	With/without a CD jacket image that can be saved※
Savable Image	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	With/without a stand-by display image that can be saved※
Savable Lyric	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	With/without a song image that can be saved※
Title	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	Track title
Artist	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	Name of artist
Album	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	Name of album
Year	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	Year composed (Christian calendar)
Genre	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	Genre
Comment	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	Comment
Track number	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	Track number in the album
Composer	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	Name of composer
Lyricist	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	Name of lyricist
Rights holder	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	Copyright holder
Selling agency	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	Distributor
Rights information	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	Copyright information
Label	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	Album label
URL info	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	URL information
Creator	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	Author information of a file
Copyright	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	Copyright information of a file
Description	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	Description of a file
Video	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	Yes/No (with/without video track)/Not supported※
Audio	–	–	–	○	○	–	–	Format and bit rate for Chaku-Uta Full <sup>®</sup> , Audio format/No (without sound track)/Not supported for movies※
Text	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	Yes/No (with/without text track)
Play time	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	Estimated playback time
Originated	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	Source from where the file is obtained
Download date	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	Date on which the file was saved
Create date	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	Date on which the file was created
To Ext. Memory	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	Whether the data can be moved to the microSD memory card※ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[Yes(Same model only)] indicates that the data can be moved only when the same model as used for obtaining the data is used.</li> </ul>
Record time	–	–	–	–	○	–	–	Recording time
Setting	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	Type of stand-by display or ring tone currently set
D.T.Original	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	Date on which the image was recorded
D.T.Digitized	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	Date on which the image was edited
AE	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	The value that indicates the amount of light passing through a lens (F4/F2.8).
Shutter speed	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	Period during which light is stored in CMOS
EV	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	EV correction
ISO	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	The value that indicates the level of sensitivity to light (equivalent to the ISO sensitivity of a film).
Photometry	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	Photometry mode

※ Depending on the data, the displayed contents may not represent exact information about it.

● When there is no information for the displayed item, "unknown" or a blank is indicated.

● Even if "⊙: Can be edited" is indicated for an item in the above table, you may not be able to change some of the data.

● Detailed information of data saved in the microSD memory card may be different from the information displayed on the FOMA terminal.



## Moving Copyrighted Data

<Movable contents>

You can encrypt and move a copyrighted image, i-motion, melody, and Chaku-Uta Full® downloaded from a site to the microSD memory card.

- You cannot move data if it is not permitted by the provider of this data.
- You cannot move images used for stamps/frames.

### Moving Data in the FOMA Terminal to the microSD memory card

- 1 From the Data Box, select a category → a folder and press .

The file list appears.


- 2 Select data and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 3 Select [To Ext. Memory] and press .

The selected data is moved to [SO704i] of [Movable contents] in the microSD memory card.

### Moving Data in the microSD memory card to the FOMA Terminal


- 1 Select a category in the microSD category list and press .

The folder list appears.

- 2 Select [Movable contents] → a folder and press .


The file list appears.

**To move a Chaku-Uta Full®**

Move the cursor to a Chaku-Uta Full®, from the Function menu, select [Move to main] → a position to move to, and press  (Complete).

- 3 Select data and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 4 Select [Move to main] → [Move one] and press .


The selected data is moved to [i-mode] of the FOMA terminal.

## Checking the Memory of the FOMA Terminal

<Storage information>

You can display the memory use status of the FOMA terminal. You can also check the volume used up by the category-specific Data Box and i-αppli memories.

- The displayed data amount is an estimated value and not accurate.

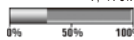
- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [Storage info] and press .

Storage information	
Full cap.	32,768KB
Using	14,289KB
My picture	
MUSIC	7,473KB
i-motion	4,638KB
Melody	555KB
	80KB

To change the unit

Press  (Unit chg) to switch temporarily between the KB and MB displays.

- 2 Select an item and press .

My picture info	
Remaining	22,388KB
Using	7,473KB
	
Max	1500
Registered	281

- Preinstalled i-αppli, [Deco mail Pict.] folder in My picture, and data of MUSIC are included in the data amount.

## In Case of Insufficient Memory

If there is not enough memory when you save or download data or software in My picture, MUSIC, i-motion, melody, and Chara-den of the Data Box, or i-αppli, select and delete data that is no longer required from the same category, allocate the save area, and then save the new data/software.

Example: When there is not enough memory while downloading software

### 1 Download the software.

The screen informing memory shortage appears.

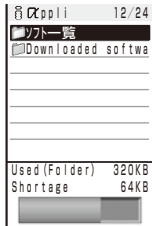
[Slct delete data]:

Delete unnecessary software and continue to download the software.

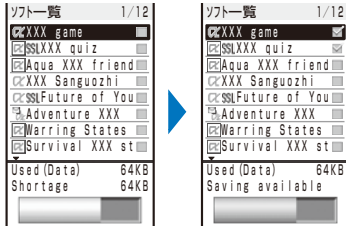
[Cancel]:

Cancel downloading.

### 2 Select [Slct delete data] and press .



### 3 Select a folder → software and press .




To cancel the selection

Press .

### 4 Press , select [Yes], and press .

The selected software is deleted and then downloading starts.

 If you delete preinstalled Chara-den files, it does not help you increase the save area.

## What is the Infrared Communication?

<Infrared communication>

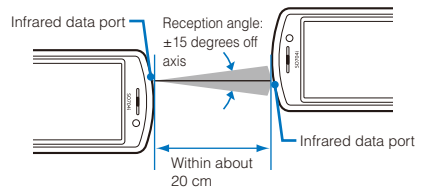
You can send and receive the Phonebook, Schedule, Text memo, Bookmark, mail, image, movie, melody, and ToruCa card to/from a mobile phone equipped with the infrared communication function. To send/receive all entries, you need a 4-digit authentication password preset with a communication target recipient/sender.

The FOMA terminal can also do much more in conjunction with other devices equipped with the infrared communication function by using the infrared communication feature of i-αppli.

- There are some data that cannot be exchanged even if the other device is equipped with the infrared communication function.
- The infrared communication of the FOMA terminal follows IrMC version 1.1. Even if the other device follows IrMC version 1.1, there may be data that cannot be exchanged properly depending on the software.
- You cannot perform infrared communication during a call or i-mode/packet/64K data communication, or when the Lock all, Omakase Lock, PIM lock, or Self mode is set.
- During the infrared communication, the status of the FOMA terminal is the same as the outside of the service area status. Therefore, you cannot place a call or perform i-mode and data communication.

## Using the Infrared Communication

- The FOMA terminal and the other device can be used within about 20 cm apart. The infrared data port must be kept pointed at the other device until the data exchange ends.
- If used under direct sunlight, fluorescent lamp or near other infrared devices, the infrared data exchange may not function properly.



## Data That Can Be Sent/Received via Infrared Communication

You can send and receive your Own number, Phonebook, Schedule, Text memo, Bookmark, mail, image, movie, melody, and ToruCa card between mobile phones and other devices equipped with the infrared communication function.

- It may take time to exchange or save data depending on the data size.
- Data received using the infrared communication may not be displayed/played back properly.

Type of data	Reception		Transmission		Storage for received data	Items that cannot be sent/received, etc.
	One item	All items	One item	All items		
Own number	×	—	○	—	FOMA terminal phonebook※1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot send Additional No.1 and No.2 and images.</li> <li>• Data is sent by setting the Secret to [OFF].</li> </ul>
FOMA terminal phonebook	○	○	○	○	FOMA terminal phonebook※1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot send Des call display, Chara-den, Des phone tone, Des mail tone, Select phone Illum., and Select mail Illum.</li> <li>• When you send one data item, the group number, group name, memory number, and data of the PushTalk phonebook are not sent. Data is sent by setting the Secret to [OFF].</li> <li>• When all data is sent/received, the data of the PushTalk phonebook is also sent/received.</li> <li>• When all data is sent/received, the first Phonebook entry is sent/received as the Own number.</li> </ul>
UIM phonebook	○	○	×	×	FOMA terminal phonebook※1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you receive one data item, the group name is not transmitted.</li> </ul>
Schedule	○	○	○	○	Schedule※2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot send ON/OFF of the holiday setting for a repeated schedule.</li> <li>• When you send one data item, the data is sent by setting the Secret to [OFF].</li> </ul>
Text memo	○	○	○	○	Text Memo※3	—
Bookmark	○	○	○	○	Bookmark※4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot send/receive a folder name.</li> </ul>
Mail	Received	○	○	○	[Inbox]※5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot send a folder name, i-αppli To link, and file attachment not yet obtained.</li> <li>• Mail exceeding 100K bytes is sent until the size being sent reaches 100K bytes after deleting a file attachment, etc.</li> <li>• Protected mail and i-αppli mail are sent as regular mail.</li> <li>• You cannot send the SMS report .</li> </ul>
	Sent				[Outbox]※5	
	Saved				[Draft]※5	
JPEG/GIF image	○	×	○	×	[Data transfer] folder in My picture ※4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot receive an image exceeding 2M bytes.</li> <li>• You cannot receive a GIF image and a GIF animation exceeding [UXGA(1600×1200)] and [Stby(240×432)] respectively, and some JPEG images.</li> <li>• You cannot send a frame image, stamp image, and Flash movie.</li> </ul>
Movie/i-motion	○	×	○	×	[Data transfer] folder in i-motion※4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot receive a movie/i-motion exceeding 2M bytes and that with playback restriction.</li> </ul>
Melody	○	×	○	×	[Data transfer] folder in Melody※4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot receive a melody exceeding 200K bytes.</li> </ul>
ToruCa	○	○	○	○	[ToruCa] folder in ToruCa※4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot receive a ToruCa and ToruCa(detail) card exceeding 1K bytes and 100K bytes respectively.</li> <li>• You may not be able to send some ToruCa cards.</li> </ul>



- When you send/receive bookmark or mail data, the folder allocation setting may not be applied depending on the terminal model of a caller/recipient.
  - You cannot send/receive a file prohibited from being retrieved out of the FOMA terminal.
- ※1 Saved in a memory space with the smallest vacant memory number.      ※2 Saved in the order of date and time when they start.  
 ※3 Saved in the order of date and time when they were created.      ※4 Saved at the top of the list.  
 ※5 Saved in the order of date and time when they were received/sent/saved.


## Receiving Data Using the Infrared Communication

<Receive Ir data>

### Receiving Data


- 1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [Rcv Ir data] → [Receive] and press .

"" changes to "" and the screen for confirming whether to begin the infrared communication appears.

- 2 Select [Yes] and press .

The infrared communication is started and data exchange is started.

The screen for confirming whether to save data appears.

- 3 Select [Yes] and press .

The received data is saved.

#### When you receive Phonebook data

The screen for confirming whether to save data in the PushTalk phonebook appears. If you select [Yes], the data is saved in both the PushTalk and FOMA terminal phonebooks. If you select [No], the data is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook only. When there are several phone numbers, select the phone number to be saved in the PushTalk phonebook.

### Receiving All Data

- It is necessary that you and the sender determine the 4-digit authentication password beforehand.

Example: Adding received data

- 1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [Rcv Ir data] → [Receive all] and press .

"" changes to ".




[Add]:

Save received data by adding to the existing data.

[Overwrite]:

The screen for confirming whether to delete the existing data appears. Note that all existing data is deleted if you select [Yes].

- 2 Select [Add] and press .


The Security code screen appears.

- 3 Enter the Security code and press  (OK).

The Authentication password screen appears.

- 4 Enter the authentication password.

The screen for confirming whether to begin the infrared communication appears.

- 5 Select [Yes] and press .

The infrared communication is started. Data exchange is started and the data is added to the existing data.


To cancel receiving

Press  (Cancel).

## Sending Data Using the Infrared Communication



<Send Ir data>

### Sending Data

- 1 Select data to be sent and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Send Ir data] and press .

"" changes to "" and the screen for confirming whether to begin the infrared communication appears.

To send one entry in the Phonebook/Text Memo


Move the cursor to the data and from the Function menu, select [Send Ir data] → [Send Ir data].

- 3 Select [Yes] and press .

The infrared communication is started and data exchange is started.



### Sending All Data

- It is necessary that you and the receiver determine the 4-digit authentication password beforehand.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the folder list of data to be sent.

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Send all Ir data] and press .

"" changes to "" and the Security code screen appears.

To send all entries in the Phonebook/Text Memo

From the Function menu in the list of data, select [Send Ir data] → [Send all Ir data].

To send all entries in the Schedule

From the Function menu in the calendar display, select [Send all Ir data].

To send all ToruCa cards

From the Function menu in the folder list, select [Send all Ir data] → [Yes] → [Yes].

- 3 Enter the Security code and press  (OK).

The Authentication password screen appears.

- 4 Enter the authentication password.

The screen for confirming whether to begin the infrared communication appears.

- 5 Select [Yes] and press .

The infrared communication is started and data exchange is started.

To cancel sending

Press  (Cancel).

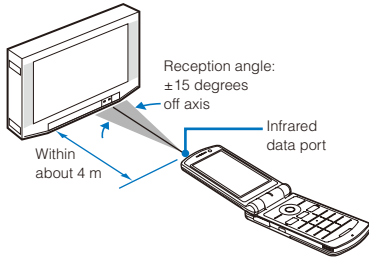
## Using the Infrared Remote Control

Once infrared remote control software is downloaded from a site and saved in the FOMA terminal, the FOMA terminal can be used as the TV or DVD player remote control.

- To use the infrared remote control, it is necessary to download the software corresponding to the target equipment. Even if the corresponding software is used, some equipment may not be operated.
- The infrared remote control key operations vary depending on the software.

## Remote control operation

When using this function, point the FOMA terminal's infrared data port at the remote control receiver of the TV or DVD player and operate the FOMA terminal within about 4 m remote control range. Note that communication may be affected by the target equipment or ambient brightness.



## What is iC Communication Function?

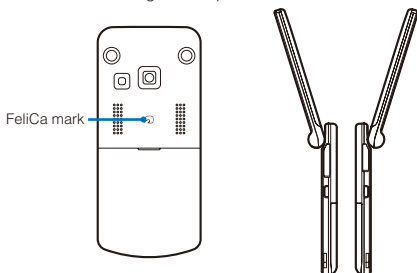
You can send and receive data by placing the FOMA terminal provided with the iC communication function over the FeliCa mark of another FOMA terminal.

- Data that can be sent and received by iC communication is the same as the data exchanged using infrared communication (P.225).
- You cannot perform the iC communication during a call, i-mode/packet/64K data/infrared communication, or when the Lock all, Omakase Lock, PIM lock, Self mode, or IC card lock is set.
- To receive data using iC communication, make sure that the FOMA terminal is in stand-by status. You cannot receive data when operation of another function is in progress.
- During the iC communication, the status of the FOMA terminal is the same as the outside of the service area status. Therefore, you cannot place a call or perform i-mode and data communication.
- Data may not be sent/received depending on the recipients' terminals. In this case, move the FOMA terminals so that both FeliCa marks "㊄" are closer or farther together, or move the FOMA terminals ups and downs or back and forth.

- The FeliCa Sign lights in yellow when you send and receive data to/from the recipients' terminal while charging the battery.

## Performing iC Communication

- Place the FeliCa mark "㊄" of the FOMA terminal over that of the other terminal. Do not move either of the FOMA terminals until the data exchange is completed.



## Receiving Data Using iC Communication

### Receiving Data

- 1 Place the FeliCa mark "㊄" of the FOMA terminal over that of the other terminal in the stand-by display on both terminals.

The vibrator vibrates and the FeliCa Sign lights. "㊄" changes to "㊄EXT" and data exchange is started. The screen for confirming whether to save data appears.

- 2 Select [Yes] and press .

The received data is saved.

#### When you receive Phonebook data

The screen for confirming whether to save data in the PushTalk phonebook appears. If you select [Yes], the data is saved in both the PushTalk and FOMA terminal phonebooks. If you select [No], the data is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook only. When there are several phone numbers, select the phone number to be saved in the PushTalk phonebook.

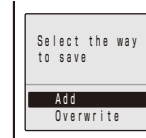
### Receiving All Data

- It is necessary that you and the sender determine the 4-digit authentication password beforehand.

Example: Adding received data

- 1 Place the FeliCa mark "㊄" of the FOMA terminal over that of the other terminal in the stand-by display on both terminals.

The vibrator vibrates and the FeliCa Sign lights. "㊄" changes to "㊄EXT".



[Add]:

Save received data by adding to the existing data.

[Overwrite]:

The screen for confirming whether to overwrite the existing data with the received data appears. Note that all existing data is deleted if you select [Yes].

- 2 Select [Add] and press .

The Security code screen appears.

- 3 Enter the Security code and press  (OK).

The Authentication password screen appears.

- 4 Enter the authentication password.

Data exchange is started and the data is added to the existing data.

#### To cancel receiving


Press  (Cancel).



# Sending Data Using iC Communication

## Sending Data

- 1 Select data to be sent and press  (Func).


The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [iC transmission] and press .

"" changes to "" and the screen for confirming whether to begin data exchange appears.

[To send one entry in the Phonebook/Text Memo](#)

Move the cursor to the data and from the Function menu, select [iC transmission] → [iC transmission].

- 3 Select [Yes] and press .

The message "Crossover the  with counterpart" appears.


- 4 Place the FeliCa mark "" of the FOMA terminal over that of the other terminal.

The FeliCa Sign lights.

Data exchange is started.



## Sending All Data

- It is necessary that you and the receiver determine the 4-digit authentication password beforehand.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the folder list of data to be sent.

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [iC trans.(all)] and press .


"" changes to "" and the Security code screen appears.

[To send all entries in the Phonebook/Text Memo](#)

From the Function menu in the list of data, select [iC transmission] → [iC trans.(all)].

[To send all entries in the Schedule](#)


From the Function menu in the calendar display, select [iC trans.(all)].

- 3 Enter the Security code and press  (OK).

The Authentication password screen appears.

- 4 Enter the authentication password.

The screen for confirming whether to begin data exchange appears.

- 5 Select [Yes] and press .

The message "Crossover the  with counterpart" appears.

- 6 Place the FeliCa mark "" of the FOMA terminal over that of the other terminal.

The FeliCa Sign lights.

Data exchange is started.

[To cancel sending](#)

Press  (Cancel).

# Music Playback

## ■ Listening to Music

What is MUSIC Player?.....	230
Transferring Music Data .....	230
Downloading Chaku-Uta Full® .....	232
Playing Back Music Data.....	233
Managing the Playlist .....	235
Changing the MUSIC Player Settings .....	236

## What is MUSIC Player?

You can use the MUSIC Player to play back Chaku-Uta Full<sup>®</sup> downloaded from an i-mode site. You can also play back music data that was saved from a PC in the microSD memory card inserted in the FOMA terminal using SonicStage.

- You cannot play back music data in the background while operating other functions.

### ■ Music data that can be played back

Data Box

Place to save to	Files that can be played back	Format	Extension
MUSIC	Chaku-Uta Full <sup>®</sup>	AAC-LC/ HE-AAC	.3gp

microSD memory card

Place to save to	Files that can be played back	Format	Extension
[Distrib. contents] folder of MUSIC	3GPP	AAC-LC/ HE-AAC	.3gp
[Movable contents] folder of MUSIC	Chaku-Uta Full <sup>®</sup>	AAC-LC/ HE-AAC	.SB2

### ■ Format supported for playback

Format	Description
AAC-LC	A sound compression technology used in MPEG2 and MPEG4, enabling a high compression rate while keeping the sound quality.
HE-AAC	A sound compression technology used in MPEG4, which is an extended version of AAC and also employed in the Chaku-Uta Full <sup>®</sup> .

### ■ Bit rate supported for playback

File	Format	Bit rate (kbps)
Chaku-Uta Full <sup>®</sup>	AAC-LC	8–128
	HE-AAC(v1)	8–128
	HE-AAC(v2)	8–48
3GPP	AAC-LC	80, 96, 128, 160, 192
	HE-AAC(v1)	40, 48, 64, 80, 96

- Typically, the higher the bit rate is, the better the sound quality, however, also the larger the data size is, resulting in the smaller number of tracks that can be saved.

### ■ Maximum number of tracks that can be stored for operation on the MUSIC Player

Place to save to	Maximum number of tracks
Data Box	50
microSD memory card: 2G bytes	800

- Music data that you purchased on a music distribution site, such as Mora, cannot be transferred to S0704i.

## Transferring Music Data

If you install SonicStage on a PC, you can transfer music data from the PC to the microSD memory card inserted in the FOMA terminal. For more information, see the Help of SonicStage.

- Make sure to install SonicStage from the supplied CD-ROM.

### Installing SonicStage

- Do not connect the FOMA terminal to the PC until the installation is completed.
- Before starting the installation, quit all Windows programs. Especially, make sure to quit the high-load antivirus software.
- If SonicStage is already installed on your PC, it is overwritten and the required functions are newly added. Although the saved music data is inherited, it is recommended to make a backup copy of this data in case of accidental loss. For more information about the backup method, see “マイライブラリをバックアップする” (Making a backup copy of My library) in the Help of SonicStage.
- You can install SonicStage on a PC where SonicStage Premium or SonicStage Burner already exists.

### ■ Operating environment of SonicStage

Item	Required environment
PC main unit	PC/AT compatible <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• CPU: Pentium III 450MHz or higher is recommended.</li> <li>• Drive: CD-ROM drive (Digital playback function with WDM support)</li> <li>• Soundboard</li> <li>• USB port (Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev. 1.1/2.0 compliant)</li> </ul>
OS	Windows 2000 Professional SP4, Windows XP SP2, Windows Vista (Japanese version)
Required memory	128MB or more
Hard drive capacity※	400MB or more free space
Display	High color (65,536 colors) or higher, 800×600 dots or higher (1,024×768 dots or higher is recommended.)
Internet browser	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 or later

※ The required free space must be proportionate to the Windows version or music data volume.

- To use CDDB service, the environment for an Internet connection is required.

#### For Windows Vista Users

To use SonicStage on the Windows Vista operating system, make sure to connect the audio output devices such as headphones or speakers to a PC.

If any audio output devices are not connected to a PC, depending on a PC, you may not be able to play back or transfer music to the FOMA terminal using SonicStage.



## ■ For inquiries on SonicStage

Sony Ericsson Mobile Communications Japan, Inc.  
Customer Support Center

Navidial: 0570-00-2516

(Can be called anywhere in Japan with the same call charge as for the area call)

From mobile phones and PHSs: 0466-31-2516

Operation hours: 10:00–18:00 (Weekday)

10:00–17:00 (Saturday, Sunday, and public holidays)

From home page: [http://www.SonyEricsson.co.jp/so704i/sonicstage\\_help.html](http://www.SonyEricsson.co.jp/so704i/sonicstage_help.html)

- Check the number you call and dial it correctly.

### 1 Set the supplied CD-ROM in the PC.

The "FOMA SO704i CD-ROM" window appears.

- When you set the supplied CD-ROM in the PC, a warning window as shown below may appear. This warning appears because of the security setting on the Internet Explorer, however, causing no problem for use. Click [はい].

※ The window example assumes that Windows XP is used as an operating system. The actual window that appears may differ depending on your PC environment.



### 2 Click [エンターテインメントツール].



### 3 Click [インストール] and double-click [SetupSS] or [SetupSS].

The "SonicStage 4.3 Installer" window appears.

### 4 Click [次へ], check the data in accordance with the display messages, and install SonicStage.

After the installation is completed, be sure to restart the PC.

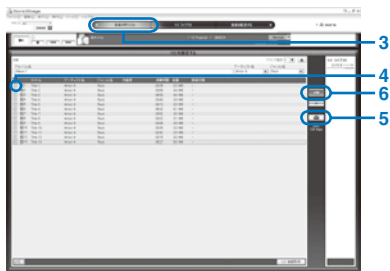
- Installation may take 20 to 30 minutes depending on the operating environment of the PC to be used.

- When you start SonicStage for the first time, the initial configuration window appears. Operate as instructed on the window. For details about the format and bit rate, see P.230.

- When you set the supplied CD-ROM in the PC and if the "FOMA SO704i CD-ROM" window does not appear, click [スタート] → [ファイル名を指定して実行], enter "CD-ROMドライブ名¥SonicStage¥SetupSS.exe" at "名前", and click [OK]. Check the data according to the displayed messages, and install SonicStage.

## Importing Music Data to a PC Using SonicStage

You can use SonicStage to import music data from a music CD to a PC. The imported music data is saved in マイ ライブラリ of SonicStage and can be managed in it.



Example: Importing a music CD using a PC running Windows XP

### 1 Click [スタート] → [すべてのプログラム] → [SonicStage] → [SonicStage].

When Windows 2000 is used

Click [スタート] → [プログラム] → [SonicStage] → [SonicStage].

SonicStage starts.

### 2 Set a music CD in the PC.

### 3 Move the pointer to [音楽を取り込む] and click [CDを録音する].

The list of music data contained in the music CD appears.

### 4 Check that the tracks you want to record are checked with "☑".

When there are tracks you do not want to record

Click "☑" to change it to "☐".

### 5 Click [ ] and set the format and bit rate.

### 6 Click [ ].

The recording starts.

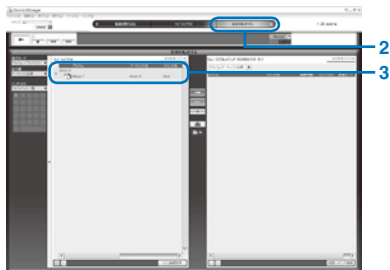
When the recording of a track is completed, the message "録音済み" is displayed for the track under the heading of "録音状態".

To stop recording

Click [ ].

## Transferring Music Data to the microSD memory card

You can use SonicStage to transfer music data from a PC to the microSD memory card inserted in the FOMA terminal.



### 1 Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC and set the FOMA terminal to the Memory mode.

Follow the same steps as in "Using the FOMA Terminal with a PC" (P.217).

### 2 Move the pointer to [音楽を転送する] and click [リムーバブルメディア (SO704i)].

The window for transferring music data appears.

### 3 Click an album that you want to transfer.

To select tracks to transfer

Double-click the album or playlist and select tracks in the list.

### 4 Click [ ] and set the format and bit rate.

Select a format and bit rate that are supported for playback on the FOMA terminal (P.230).

### 5 Click [ ].

The transfer of the music data starts.

When the transferring is completed, the artist name is displayed.

To stop transfer of the music data

Click [ ].

- The FOMA terminal may not be able to display text depending on the type of font or the number of characters that were entered using SonicStage.

## Directly Copying Music Data to the FOMA Terminal on a PC

The microSD memory card can be used as an external drive of a PC by connecting the FOMA terminal to the PC, allowing you to read/write data from/to the microSD memory card.

With an AAC file (.3gp), you can playback it on the MUSIC Player also by saving it directly in the microSD memory card without using SonicStage.

- Music data that is saved in the microSD memory card without using SonicStage may not be played back properly on SO704i.
- Do not delete music data that is saved in the microSD memory card using SonicStage by performing the direct operation of the microSD memory card.
- For details about the folder setup of the microSD memory card, see P.213.

Music Playback

### 1 Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC and set the FOMA terminal to the Memory mode.

Follow the same steps as in "Using the FOMA Terminal with a PC" (P.217, step 1 to 3).

### 2 Double-click [リムーバブル ディスク] of マイ コンピュータ.

### 3 Create folders named "PRIVATE", "DOCOMO", "MMFILE", and "MUSIC" in this order.

- You do not need to create the folders if they already exist.

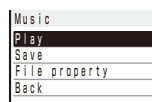
### 4 Save the music data in the "MUSIC" folder created.

## Downloading Chaku-Uta Full®

You can download a Chaku-Uta Full® file of up to 5M bytes and save it in the Data Box or microSD memory card.

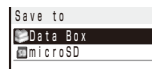
Example: Saving Chaku-Uta Full® in the Data Box

### 1 While displaying a site, select a Chaku-Uta Full® and press [ ].



The Chaku-Uta Full® is downloaded to the FOMA terminal.

### 2 Select [Save] and press [ ].



[Data Box]:

Save data in MUSIC of the Data Box.

[microSD]:

Save data in [Movable contents] of MUSIC in the microSD memory card. (Insert the microSD memory card.)

To play back Chaku-Uta Full®

Select [Play].

To display detailed information

Select [File property].

### 3 Select [Data Box] and press [ ].

### 4 Select a folder and press [ ] (Save).


The downloaded Chaku-Uta Full® is saved.

- If you have deleted preinstalled Chaku-Uta Full®, you can download it from "SO@Planet".  
[i Menu] → [メニュー/検索] (Menu/Search) → [ケータイ電話メーカー] (Mobile Phone Manufacturers) → [SO@Planet] (Japanese only)

## Playing Back Music Data

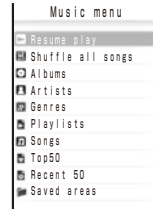
You can use the MUSIC Player to play back music data saved in MUSIC of the Data Box and microSD memory card.

You can also search a song you want to listen to easily by specifying an artist, album, genre, etc. in the Music menu.

- While music data in the MUSIC Player is updated, “” appears. If another function is activated, updating the data may take longer. The MUSIC Player operation may be slower while the data is being updated. While the data is updated, all tracks may not be displayed. After the update is completed, re-display the Music menu.
- It may take time to start playback of some music data.
- Sound skip or noise may occur depending on the format and bit rate of music data.
- When the battery level is low, you may not be able to operate the MUSIC Player. If the battery level becomes low during playback, the player is stopped. Fully charge the battery before using this function.
- If you receive a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call or mail, or the Alarm/Schedule alarm is activated while you are playing back music data on the MUSIC Player, the playback is interrupted and one of the above operations is performed. After the operation is completed, when you return to the MUSIC Player, the playback resumes automatically, however, with some exceptions.


Example: Playing back music data by selecting the artist

### 1 From the Menu, select [Entertainment] → [MUSIC Player] and press .



#### [Resume play]:

When there is music data that was played back last time, the current track is played back from the last stopped position. If you delete the music data or perform other similar operation, however, you cannot select [Resume play].

- When the Music menu is displayed by pressing  during playback, [To playing] appears. Select this option to return to the playback display.

#### [Shuffle all songs]:

Perform random playback of all music data.

#### [Albums]:

Display the list of albums. Select an album → music data.

#### [Artists]:

Display the list of artists. Select an artist → an album → music data.

#### [Genres]:

Display the list of genres. Select a genre → artist → an album → music data.

#### [Playlists]:

Display the playlist. Select [Original playlist]/[Imported playlist] → a playlist → music data.

#### [Songs]:

Display the list of all music data. Select the music data.

#### [Top50]:

Display up to 50 tracks in the order of the number of the playback times, from the highest to the lowest. Select the music data.

#### [Recent 50]:

Display up to 50 tracks in the order of the playback date/time, from the most recent to the oldest. Select the music data.

#### [Saved areas]:

Select a place to save to and select the music data.

### 2 Select [Artists] and press .

The artist list appears.

### 3 Select an artist → an album and press .

#### To display detailed information

Move the cursor to the music data and from the Function menu, select [Detail info].

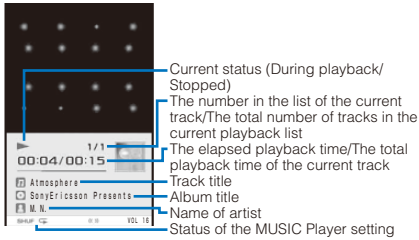
#### To check the jacket

Move the cursor to the music data and from the Function menu, select [Display img].

#### To check the lyrics

Move the cursor to the music data and from the Function menu, select [Display lyrics].

#### 4 Select music data and press (Play).



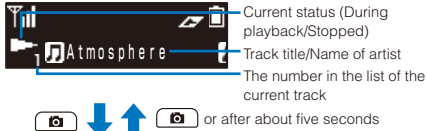
The selected music data is played back.

#### Operating method

Operation	Key operation
Play	Press  (Play).
Stop	Press  (Stop).
Volume adjustment	Use .
Beginning of the next track	Press .
Beginning of the current track	Press .
Beginning of the previous track	Press  repeatedly.
Fast-forward	Press  for over a second during playback.
Fast-reverse	Press  for over a second during playback.
Switch display	Press . The player screen switches between the visualizer display and jacket display.
Move to the previous display	Press .

#### When you fold the FOMA terminal during playback

Press to switch the display of the sub-display between the track information display and clock display.



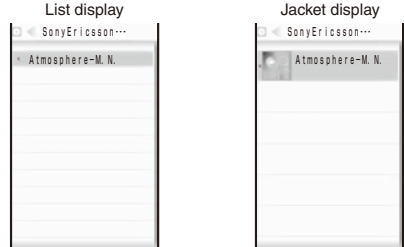
- Some jacket or lyric may be saved. To save it, press (Save) while displaying it and select [Yes] → a folder.
- If you select [File mng. Mode] from the Function menu in the Music menu, you can stop the MUSIC Player to display the music data saved in the MUSIC folder that is to be prepared in each place to save.

## Setting How to Display the Music Data List

Default | Jacket display

You can select how to display the music data list from two types.

- When no jacket information is available in the music data, the jacket is not displayed.



- Press (Func) in the music data list display, select [Change jackets], and press .

The list display is changed to the jacket display or vice versa.

- You may not be able to display the jacket images of some music data.

## Managing the Playlist

There are two types of playlists that can be played back using the FOMA terminal.

### Original playlist

The playlist is created on the FOMA terminal. You can create or edit up to 10 playlists and save up to 36 tracks of music data per file.

### Imported playlist

The M3U-format playlist is created on an external device such as a PC. You can display up to 100 playlists and up to 200 tracks of music data per file. You cannot create or edit an imported playlist on the FOMA terminal. To play back music data on SO704i, create a playlist using SonicStage.


## Creating a Playlist

You can save your favorite music data in an original playlist.

Example: Adding and saving one track of music data in an original playlist


- 1 From the music data list, select music data and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.


- 2 Select [Add to playlist] → [Save one] and press .



#### To create a new original playlist

Press  (Create) and enter a name for the playlist. Enter the name within 10 full-width and 20 half-width characters.

#### To save several music data

From the Function menu, select [Add to playlist] → [Select&save] → music data and press  (Complete).

#### To save all music data

From the Function menu, select [Add to playlist] → [Save all].

- 3 Select an original playlist to be saved and press .

The screen for selecting the saving method appears.

#### [Add]:

Newly add selected music data to the music data saved in a playlist.

#### [Overwrite]:

The screen for confirming whether to overwrite all music data saved in a playlist with selected music data appears. Note that all data existing in the playlist is deleted when you select [Yes].

- 4 Select [Add] and press .


The selected music data is saved in the original playlist.

## Deleting/Reordering Music Data of the Playlist

You can delete music data from a playlist or reorder it within a playlist. Even if you delete music data from a playlist, the files of the music data are not deleted.

- You cannot delete music data from an imported playlist or reorder it in an imported playlist.

Example: Deleting one track


- 1 From the Music menu, select [Playlists] → [Original playlist] → a playlist and press .

The music data list of the Original playlist appears.

#### To delete all music data

From the Function menu, select [Delete from list] → [Delete all] → [Yes].



#### To delete several music data

From the Function menu, select [Delete from list] → [Select&delete] → music data. Press  (Complete) and select [Yes].

- 2 Select music data and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

#### To reorder music data

From the Function menu, select [Reorder] → music data. Move the cursor to the place to move to, press  (Move), and press  (Complete).

- 3 Select [Delete from list] → [Delete one] → [Yes] and press .


The selected music data is deleted from the playlist.

## Deleting/Editing the Name of the Playlist

You can delete a playlist or edit its name.

- You cannot edit the name of an imported playlist.

Example: Deleting one playlist

- 1 From the Music menu, select [Playlists] → [Original playlist] and press .

A list of all playlists appears.


#### To delete an imported playlist


Select [Imported playlist].

#### To delete all playlists

From the Function menu, select [Delete playlist] → [Delete all] → [Yes].

#### To delete several playlists


From the Function menu, select [Delete playlist] → [Select&delete] → playlists. Press  (Complete) and select [Yes].

- 2 Select a playlist and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

#### To edit the name of a playlist



Move the cursor to the playlist and from the Function menu, select [Edit name]. Enter a new name within 10 full-width or 20 half-width characters.

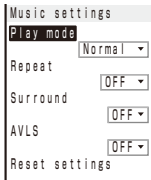
- 3 Select [Delete playlist] → [Delete one] → [Yes] and press .

The selected playlist is deleted.

# Changing the MUSIC Player Settings

Default | Play mode: Normal, Repeat: OFF,  
Surround: OFF, AVLS: OFF

- 1 From the Music menu, press  (Func), select [Music settings], and press .



- 2 Select a playback mode for music data at [Play mode].

[Normal]:

Play back the selected music data list in the order of appearance.

[Shuffle]:

Perform random playback of the selected music data list.

- 3 Select the repeat type at [Repeat].

[All tracks]:

Repeat playback of all tracks in the selected music data list.

[1 track]:

Repeat playback of the selected track.

[OFF]:

Play back only once.

- 4 Select [ON]/[OFF] of the surround playback at [Surround].

- This setting is not available during playback of music data.

- 5 Select whether to restrict the playback volume at [AVLS].

[ON]:

Restrict the playback volume. You cannot turn up the volume to level 16 or higher.

[OFF]:

Do not restrict the playback volume.

**To reset the music settings to the default status**

From the Music settings display, select [Reset settings]

→ [Yes] and enter the Security code.

# Other Convenient Functions

Multiaccess Feature .....	<Multiaccess>	238
Multitask Feature .....	<Multitask>	238
Using the Lifetime Calendar .....	<Lifetime Calendar>	240
Starting the Alarm at a Specified Time .....	<Alarm>	242
Saving Schedules .....	<Schedule>	243
Performing Frequently Used Functions Quickly .....	<My Selection>	246
Recording Recipient's or Your Own Voice .....	<Voice memo>	247
Checking the Call Duration and Charge .....	<Call duration/cost>	247
Setting the Limit for Alert on the Total Call Charge .....	<Cost limit notice>	248
Using the Calculator .....	<Calculator>	249
Using a Memo .....	<Text Memo>	249
Displaying the Settings of Various Functions .....	<Application>	250
Using the Earphone/Microphone with Switch .....	<Earphone/microphone with switch>	250
Receiving a Call Automatically with Earphone .....	<Auto answer>	251
Setting Which Mic to Use .....	<Earphone mic>	251
Resetting to the Default Settings .....	<Reset settings>	251
Deleting All Saved Data .....	<Reset all data&set>	251
List of Reset Items .....		252

## Multiaccess Feature

<Multiaccess>

Multiaccess is a function that enables you to use a voice call, packet communication, and SMS functions at the same time.

- For multiaccess combinations, see P.285.

Voice call	1 line
i-mode, i- $\alpha$ ppli, i-mode mail, packet communication by connecting a PC, and PushTalk	1 line
SMS (Short Message)	1 line

- Charge is required for the use of each communication line during multiaccess.
- You cannot use multiaccess during a videophone call or 64K data communication, but you can receive SMS.

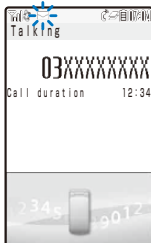
## Main Functions That Can Be Performed Using Multiaccess

### Starting Other Communication during a Voice Call

Example: Connecting to i-mode during a voice call

- 1 Press **[MENU]** (MENU) during a voice call.  
The menu display appears.
- 2 Select [i-mode] → [i Menu] → [メニュー/検索] (Menu/Search) and press **[OK]**.  
You can access i-mode while the call is being connected.  
**To send mail**  
Select [Mail] → [Compose message] and compose mail and send it.  
**To perform packet communication using a connected PC**  
Establish connection for packet communication using PC operation.  
**To switch the display**  
Press **[MENU]** (MENU), press **[OK]**, and select a task icon.

### Receiving Mail during a Voice Call



You receive mail while the call is being connected.

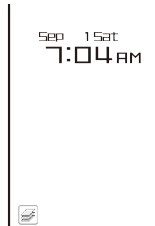
- If you receive i-mode mail, SMS, or Message R/F while you are talking on the phone, the ring tone, incoming indicator, and vibrator do not operate.

## Placing a Voice Call during i-mode/Packet Communication

Example: Placing a voice call during i-mode

- 1 Press **[MENU]** (MENU) during i-mode or packet communication and press **[OK]**.  
The menu display appears and the cursor moves to the multitask bar.

- 2 Select **[Stand-by]** and press **[OK]**.



- 3 Enter a phone number and press **[Call]**.

Place a voice call while you continue to use i-mode or packet communication.

**To switch the display during a call**

Press **[MENU]** (MENU), press **[OK]**, and select a task icon.

- When you place a videophone call while i-mode is being used, the i-mode connection is disconnected and your videophone call is placed.

## Receiving a Voice Call during i-mode/Packet Communication

- 1 When you receive a call, press **[Call]**.

When you receive a voice call, the receive call display appears.

You can answer a voice call while you continue to use i-mode or packet communication.

**To switch the display during a call**

Press **[MENU]** (MENU), press **[OK]**, and select a task icon.

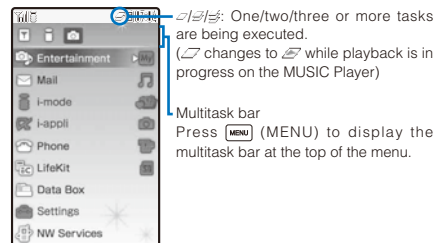
## Multitask Feature

<Multitask>

Multitask is a function that enables you to perform several functions at the same time, each of which you can access by switching the displays.

- For multitask combinations, see P.286.

## Using the Display during the Multitask Operation





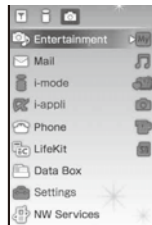
## ■ Task icons

Icon	Function name	Icon	Function name
	Stand-by		Mail setting
	Phone Phone number entry		i-mode
	PushTalk Dial PushTalk		i-Channel
	My Selection		i-appli
	MUSIC Player		Own number
	Display MUSIC folder		Phonebook
	Lifetime Calendar		Call record
	Camera		PushTalk phonebook
	Movie		Record message
	Viewer		Bar code reader
	microSD		ToruCa
	Mail Display mail Message		IC card
	Mail box		Data Security Service
	Compose message		Alarm setting
	Compose SMS		Alarm
	Templates		Schedule
	Receive mail		Text Memo
	Check new messages		Calculator
	Receive SMS		Data Box
	Check new SMS		
	Data transmission		
	Mail/i-mode common setting		NW Services
	i-mode setting		
	Settings		
	Storage information		
	USB mode setting		
	Input method setting		

- The task icons may differ depending on the selected menu pattern.
- If you press **MENU** (MENU) to select another function during playback of music data (when "⏸" is displayed), the playback of music data pauses. When you return to the MUSIC Player, the playback resumes automatically, however, with some exceptions.

## Activating a New Function

- 1 Press **MENU** (MENU) during the activation of a function.

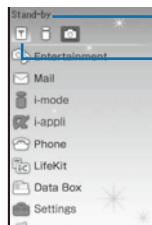


- 2 From the Menu, select a new function and press **OK**.

## Switching Functions

While running multiple functions, you can switch to the display that provides access to the function you want to use.

- 1 Press **MENU** (MENU) and press **Up**.



- 2 Use **Left** **Right** to select a task icon and press **OK**.  
The selected function display appears.

## Stopping All Functions Currently Activated

- 1 Press **MENU** (MENU) and press **Up**.
- 2 Press **Quit** (Quit all).
- 3 Select [Yes] and press **OK**.  
All functions currently activated are stopped.

- When you execute multiple functions, you can press **Quit** to quit the current function.

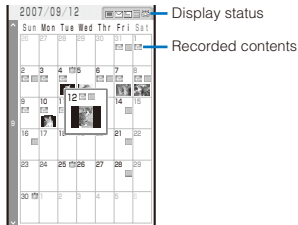
# Using the Lifetime Calendar



<Lifetime Calendar>

The Lifetime Calendar displays an image, mail, Schedule, and birthday data stored in the FOMA terminal in the Calendar format. This function helps you more effectively to keep track of items to remember. You can also automatically display the items to remember, and display mail, Schedule, etc. from the Lifetime Calendar.






## 1 From the Menu, select [Entertainment] → [Lifetime Calendar] and press .

The Lifetime Calendar appears.






- Use  to display the calendar of the next month and  to display the calendar of the previous month.
- The following icons show the displayed or saved items.


### Display status

	Still image (All)/(Selected)/(OFF)
	Received mail (All)/(Selected)/(OFF)
	Sent mail (All)/(Selected)/(OFF)
	Schedule (All)/(OFF)
	Birthday (All)/(OFF)


### Recorded contents

	Received or sent mail
	The saved schedule data
	The saved birthday data

### When the Lifetime Calendar is set as the stand-by display

When you press  (Link) in the stand-by display and select the Lifetime Calendar, the Lifetime Calendar is activated.

### To display the index

Press  (Index). When you select a year and month, the Lifetime Calendar for the selected year and month appears.

### To create a new schedule

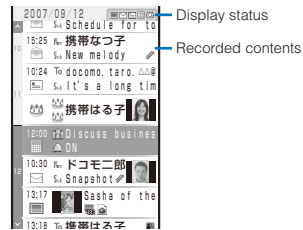
From the Function menu, select [Create new] and save the schedule.

### To display the Lifetime Calendar by specifying a date


From the Function menu, select [Select date] and enter the date. Enter the date within the range from 2000/01/01 to 2050/12/31.

## 2 Select the date and press .

The Lifetime Calendar appears displaying one year including the selected day (Detail view).





### To display the index

Press  (Index). When you select a date, the Lifetime Calendar (Detail view) appears.

### To display a still image

Select  (P.204).

### To display received mail

Select  or  (P.178).


### To display sent mail

Select  (P.178).

### To display the schedule

Select  (P.245).

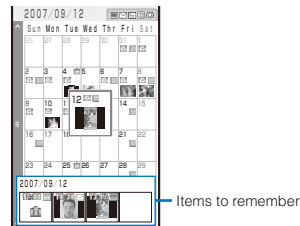
### To display a birthday

Select . The Phonebook display (P.92) or the Own number display (P.41) appears.


- When you set the Mail security, you need to enter the Security code to display the Lifetime Calendar.
- The Phonebook, Own number, and Schedule saved as Secret are not displayed in the Lifetime Calendar. Set the Secret display to [ON] to display the data.
- When you have more still images, mail, and schedule data saved in the FOMA terminal, you can build a more interesting Lifetime Calendar. We recommend saving data in the FOMA terminal using infrared communication and the microSD memory card if you are going to use this function immediately after you purchase SO704i.

## When Items to Remember Are Displayed

If no operation is performed for a specific period, still images, mail, and Schedule data saved in the FOMA terminal are displayed randomly as past memories.



### To display details of the item to remember

Press  (Memory). When you select an item to remember, the Lifetime Calendar (Detail view) appears.

## Data Displayed in the Lifetime Calendar

The following data is displayed in the Lifetime Calendar.

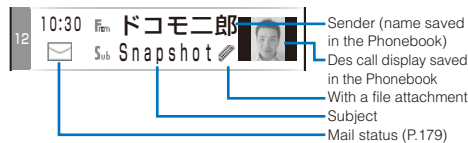
- JPEG and GIF images saved in My picture of the Data Box
- Received and sent mail saved in the FOMA terminal
- Schedule saved in the FOMA terminal
- Name, Des call display, and birthday saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook
- Name, image, and birthday saved in the Own number

### Typical display examples

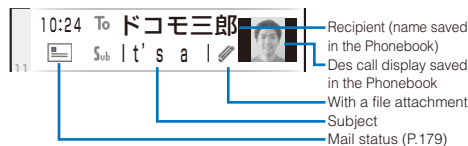
#### Still image



#### Received mail



#### Sent mail



- When you send mail to several recipients using address type "To", "☎" appears next to the address.

#### Schedule



#### Birthday



- Data saved in the microSD memory card cannot be displayed in the Lifetime Calendar.

## Setting the Display of Lifetime Calendar

Default | Display setting: All, Memory auto display: Std

You can set the data to be displayed in the Lifetime Calendar and set whether to automatically display the items to remember.

### 1 Press (Func) in the Lifetime Calendar.

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [LTC setting] and press .

The LTC setting display appears.

#### [Display setting]:

Set the data to be displayed in the Lifetime Calendar.

#### [Memory auto display]:

Set the time before the item to remember is automatically displayed when a key is not operated for a specific period.

#### To display the Help of the LTC setting

Press  (Help).

### 3 Select [Display setting] and press .

The Display setting display appears.

#### [Photo]:

Set the display of the still image to [All]/[Selected]/[OFF]. To display still images saved in a specific folder only, select [Selected] → [Select folder] → a folder.

- You cannot select the [Preinstall] or [Stamp&Frame] folder.

#### [Received mail]:

Set the display of the received mail to [All]/[Selected]/[OFF]. To display mail received from a specific address only, select [Selected] → [Select mail address] and set a mail address.

#### [Sent mail]:

Set the display of the sent mail to [All]/[Selected]/[OFF]. To display mail sent to a specific address only, select [Selected] → [Select mail address] and set a mail address.


#### [Schedule]:

Set the display of the schedule to [All]/[OFF].

#### [Birthday]:

Set the display of the birthday to [All]/[OFF].

#### To restore the default settings

Press  (Reset).

### 4 Select the display for each item.

### 5 Press (Complete).

The LTC setting display appears.

### 6 Set the time before the item to remember is automatically displayed at [Memory auto display].

Select from [Fast], [Normal], [Slow], and [OFF].

#### To disable automatic display of the item to remember


Select [OFF].

# Starting the Alarm at a Specified Time

<Alarm>

Default | Select alarm • Auto power on: OFF,  
Time: 00:00, Repeat: OFF,  
Alarm: Alarm(std), Alarm volume: 3,  
Vibrator: OFF, Color: C5:Colors,  
Snooze: OFF

The alarm is activated for about one minute at a specified time. You can set the alarm to be activated every day at the same time.

- From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [Alarm] and press .



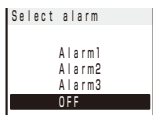
[Select alarm]:

Select one alarm you want to activate and set the details of its operation. You can set up to three alarms, but you can select and activate only one alarm.

[Auto power on]:


Set the operation of the alarm during power off.

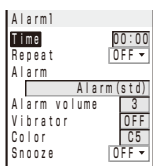
- Select [Select alarm] and press .



To disable the alarm

Select [OFF].

- Select an alarm to be activated and press .



- Enter a time to start the alarm at [Time].

Enter a time in 24-hour format.

- Select the repeat type at [Repeat].


[OFF]:

Do not repeat the alarm.

[Eyd]:

Repeat the alarm every day.

[Day]:

Repeat the alarm on the same day of the week. Select a day of the week and press  (OK).

- Select an alarm tone from MUSIC/i-motion/Melody of the Data Box at [Alarm].

- You can set the following files. You can select a Chaku-Uta® from [i-motion].

Category	File format	File size	Image size
MUSIC	AAC-LC/ HE-AAC	Max. 5M bytes	—
i-motion※	—	Max. 2M bytes	[sQCIF(128×96)]/ [QCIF(176×144)]
Melody	SMF/ MFi	Max. 350K bytes	—

※ Some i-motion may not be set.

When you select a Chaku-Uta Full® that has a choice of specified playback ranges from [MUSIC]

The screen for selecting a type of setting appears. If you select [Full song], the entire track of Chaku-Uta Full® is set for the alarm tone. If you select [Point], the specified playback range of Chaku-Uta Full® is set for the alarm tone as an i-motion. The i-motion you set is saved in the Data Box.

To mute the alarm tone

Select [Silent].

To check the alarm tone

Move the cursor to the alarm tone and press  (Play).

- Set the volume at [Alarm volume].

Select from [OFF] and [1 to 5].

To set the volume to [OFF]

Press  at level 1.

- Select a vibration type at [Vibrator].

[Pattern1]:

Set short intermittent vibration.

[Pattern2]:

Set long intermittent vibration.

[Link melody]:

Vibrates in accordance with the alarm tone. If you have set the alarm tone to [Silent] or to a melody that cannot be synchronized with the vibrator operation, the vibrator vibrates using [Pattern1].

[OFF]:

Do not set the vibrator.

To check the vibration

Move the cursor to the pattern and press  (Confirm).

- Select an indicator color at [Color].

Select from 12 indicator colors or [C13:ALL] (indicator flashes in 12 colors in sequence).

When you move the cursor, the indicator flashes accordingly.

- Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Snooze].

[ON]:

The alarm operates for about one minute and repeats operation up to six times every five minutes.

[OFF]:

Do not repeat the alarm operation.

- Press  (Complete).

The Alarm is set and "🔔" appears in the stand-by display.

## 12 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Auto power on].

### [ON]:

When the alarm time comes during power off, the FOMA terminal is automatically powered on and the alarm sounds.

### [OFF]:

When the alarm time comes during power off, the alarm does not sound.

- When the Alarm and Schedule alarm are set simultaneously, "🔔" is displayed instead of "🕒".
- When the Alarm and Schedule alarm are set to start at the same time, the Schedule alarm has priority.

## At the Alarm Time

The alarm tone sounds for about one minute with the indicator flashing.



### To stop the alarm tone

Press any key.

### When you do not stop the alarm tone

The display informing the release of the alarm appears. To turn off the display, press [M] or [CLR].

### To stop the Snooze

Press [M].

- If you set an i-motion with video and sound tracks to the alarm tone, a movie in the i-motion is displayed.
- If the alarm time comes during a voice call or PushTalk communication, the Alarm(std) sounds from the earpiece. The vibrator does not operate.
- The Alarm does not operate in the following cases.
  - While the Lock all is set
  - While the PIM lock is set
  - While the Omakase Lock is set
  - While updating the software
- If the alarm time comes in the following cases, the Alarm may operate when the status changes to during a call or stand-by.
  - While placing/receiving a voice/videophone call or originating/receiving a PushTalk call
  - During packet communication
  - During the infrared communication/while the infrared remote control is being used
  - During the iC communication
  - During data communication or while reading/writing data from/into a microSD memory card on a PC with the FOMA terminal connected using the USB cable
  - While recording a still image/movie
  - While the Schedule alarm is sounding
- If another function is executed during the Snooze or Alarm operation, the alarm is stopped and the screen informing the release of the alarm appears.
- When the PIN1 code setting and the Auto power on for the Alarm are set to [ON], the FOMA terminal is automatically powered on at the alarm time and the PIN1 code input screen appears after the Alarm operation. If you set any data for which the UIM operation restriction function is set to the alarm tone, the default melody sounds.
- If you leave the FOMA terminal with the battery pack removed or fully expended for a long period of time, the date and time is reset, and the Alarm may not operate correctly.

## Saving Schedules

<Schedule>

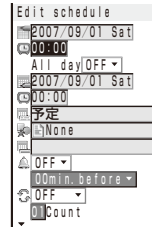
Up to 300 schedules, such as date and events/appointments can be saved for management. When a Schedule alarm is set, the FOMA terminal activates the alarm at the scheduled time.

- An entry is required at [📅] (Event).

### 1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [Schedule] and press [👉].

The calendar is displayed.

### 2 Select a starting date and press [📅] (Create).



The selected date is automatically entered.

### To change the starting date

Select [📅] and change the date. Enter the date within the range from 2000/01/01 to 2050/12/31.

### 3 Enter a starting time at [🕒].

Enter a time in 24-hour format.

### To set the schedule period to all day

Select [ON] at [All day]. When it is set to [ON], you cannot set the starting time, ending date, ending time, and alarm.

### 4 Enter an ending date at [📅].

Enter from the starting date to 2050/12/31.

### 5 Enter an ending time at [🕒].

Enter a time in 24-hour format.

### 6 Enter the event at [📝].

Enter the event within 128 full-width or 256 half-width characters.

### 7 Select a category icon at [📁].

### 8 Enter an event outline at [📝].

Enter an outline within 20 full-width or 40 half-width characters.

### 9 Select [ON]/[OFF] of the alarm at [🔔].

#### [ON]:

Sound the alarm tone. Select how many minutes before the starting time of schedule the alarm should sound. Select [00min.before] if you want to sound the alarm at the same time as the starting time.

#### [OFF]:

Do not sound the alarm tone.

## 10 Select the schedule repeat type at [REPEAT].

[OFF]:

Do not repeat the schedule. Go to step 12.

[Eyd]:

Repeat the schedule every day.

[Week]:

Repeat the schedule on the same day of the week.

[Month]:

Repeat the schedule every month on the same day.

[Year]:

Repeat the schedule every year on the same day of the same month.

**When the schedule repeat type is set to other than [OFF]**

Enter the repeat count within 01 to 99 times.

## 11 Select [ON]/[OFF] of a holiday at [Holiday].

[ON]:

The schedule repeats even on a holiday.

[OFF]:

The schedule does not repeat on a holiday, but it is included in the repeat count.

## 12 Select [ON]/[OFF] of the Secret at [SECRET].

[ON]:

Save the schedule as Secret. Details of the schedule are masked with "X" except for the time at the schedule alarm time.

[OFF]:

Do not save the schedule as Secret.

**To display the data saved as Secret**

Set the Secret display to [ON].

## 13 Press [COMPLETE] (Complete).

The schedule is saved. When the Alarm is set to [ON], "🔔" appears in the stand-by display.

The schedule dates are highlighted on the calendar.

- When the Schedule alarm and Alarm are set simultaneously, "🔔" is displayed instead of "🔔".
- If the repeat type of the schedule set for the 31st is set to [Month], the schedule is set for the last day of the month for months with less than 31 days. It is also applied when the repeat type of the schedule set for the 29th of February in a leap year is set to [Year].

### At the Schedule Alarm Time

The alarm sounds for about 30 seconds with the indicator flashing and the schedule data is displayed. If there are several overlapping schedules with the same start time of the alarm, the number of schedules you have in addition is shown as "XXX" on the upper right of the display.



**To stop the alarm tone**

Press any key.

**When you do not stop the alarm tone**

The Schedule display appears. To turn off the Schedule display, press [OK], [BACK], or [CLR].

- If you set an i-motion with video and sound tracks to the alarm tone, a movie in the i-motion is displayed.
- If the alarm time comes during a voice call or PushTalk communication, the Alarm(std) sounds through the earpiece. The vibrator does not operate.
- The Schedule alarm does not operate in the following cases.
  - When the FOMA terminal is powered off
  - While the Lock all is set
  - While the PIM lock is set
  - While the Omakase Lock is set
  - While updating the software
- If the alarm time comes in the following cases, the Schedule alarm may operate when the status changes to during a call or stand-by.
  - While placing/receiving a voice/videophone call or originating/receiving a PushTalk call
  - During packet communication
  - During the infrared communication/while the infrared remote control is being used
  - During the iC communication
  - During data communication or while reading/writing data from/into a microSD memory card on a PC with the FOMA terminal connected using the USB cable
  - While recording a still image/movie
- If you leave the FOMA terminal with the battery pack removed or fully expended for a long period of time, the date and time is reset, and the Schedule alarm may not operate correctly.

## Setting the Schedule Alarm Operations

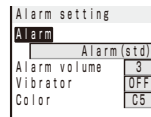
Default Alarm: Alarm(std), Alarm volume: 3, Vibrator: OFF, Color: C5:Color5

You can set the details of the operations of the Schedule alarm.

### 1 Press [FUNC] (Func) in the calendar.

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Schedule setting] → [Schedule alarm] and press [OK].



### 3 Select an alarm tone from MUSIC/i-motion/Melody of the Data Box at [Alarm].

- You can set the following files. You can select a Chaku-Uta® from [i-motion].

Category	File format	File size	Image size
MUSIC	AAC-LC/ HE-AAC	Max. 5M bytes	—
i-motion※	—	Max. 2M bytes	[sQCIF(128×96)]/ [QCIF(176×144)]
Melody	SMF/MFi	Max. 350K bytes	—

※ Some i-motion may not be set.

**When you select a Chaku-Uta Full® that has a choice of specified playback ranges from [MUSIC]**

The screen for selecting a type of setting appears. If you select [Full song], the entire track of Chaku-Uta Full® is set for the alarm tone. If you select [Point], the specified playback range of Chaku-Uta Full® is set for the alarm tone as an i-motion. The i-motion you set is saved in the Data Box.

**To mute the alarm tone**

Select [Silent].

**To check the alarm tone**

Move the cursor to the alarm tone and press [PLAY] (Play).

#### 4 Set the volume at [Alarm volume].

Select from [OFF] and [1 to 5].

To set the volume to [OFF]

Press at level 1.

#### 5 Select a vibration type at [Vibrator].

[Pattern1]:

Set short intermittent vibration.

[Pattern2]:

Set long intermittent vibration.

[Link melody]:

Vibrates in accordance with the alarm tone. If you have set the alarm tone to [Silent] or to a melody that cannot be synchronized with the vibrator operation, the vibrator vibrates using [Pattern1].

[OFF]:

Do not set the vibrator.

To check the vibration

Move the cursor to the pattern and press (Confirm).

#### 6 Select an indicator color at [Color].

Select from 12 indicator colors or [C13:ALL] (indicator flashes in 12 colors in sequence).

When you move the cursor, the indicator flashes accordingly.

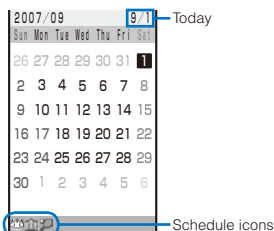
#### 7 Press (Complete).

The Schedule alarm operations are set.

### Displaying the Schedule

The saved schedule can be checked using the calendar.

#### 1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [Schedule] and press .



The calendar is displayed.

- Use to display the calendar of the next month and to display the calendar of the previous month.

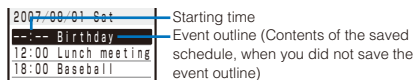
When the calendar is set for the stand-by display

Press (Link) in the stand-by display and select the calendar to start the schedule.

To display the calendar for a specified date

From the Function menu, select [Select date] and enter the date. Enter the date within the range from 2000/01/01 to 2050/12/31.

#### 2 Select a date and press .



The schedule list is displayed.

- Use to display the next day's schedule and to display the previous day's schedule.

#### 3 Select the schedule and press .



The details of the schedule appear.

To edit the saved schedule

Press (Edit).

- If you set a repeat count beyond 2050/12/31, [To 2050/12/31] is displayed as the last day of the repeat when you display the schedule.

### Deleting a Schedule

You can delete schedules using the following five methods.

Delete one	Delete a schedule. If you delete a schedule set to repeat, all its repeats are also deleted.
Select&delete	Delete the selected schedules. You can select up to 30 schedules over days at a time. If you delete a schedule set to repeat, all its repeats are also deleted.
Delete a day	Delete all schedules for the selected date. Schedules set to repeat cannot be deleted.
Del up to ysd	Delete all schedules before the selected date. Schedules set to repeat on and after the selected date cannot be deleted.
Delete all	Delete all schedules.

Example: Deleting a schedule

#### 1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [Schedule] and press .

To delete all schedules

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To delete all schedules before the selected date

Move the cursor to the date and from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Del up to ysd]. Enter the Security code and select [Yes].

To delete all schedules for the selected date

Move the cursor to the date and from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete a day] → [Yes].

#### 2 Select a date and press .

To delete several schedules

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete] and select schedules. Press (Complete) and select [Yes].

#### 3 Select a schedule and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

#### 4 Select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes] and press .

The selected schedule is deleted.


## Setting Holiday

Default	For today: Holidays specified by the National Holidays Law, Day of the week: Sunday
---------	--


You can set a day or a day of the week as a holiday and cancel the holiday settings. A day set as a holiday is displayed in red.

For today	Set a specific day as a holiday or cancel a holiday. Up to 1,000 days can be set or canceled.
Day of the week	Set a specific day of the week as a holiday or cancel a holiday of the week.
Rel up to yesterday	Cancel all holidays set by the For today before the selected date.
Release all	Cancel all holidays set by the For today and Day of the week.
Reset	Reset the holiday settings to the default settings.

Example: Setting a specific day as a holiday or canceling the holiday setting of a day

- 1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [Schedule] and press .

### To set/cancel holidays by a day of the week

From the Function menu, select [Schedule setting] → [Set holidays] → [Day of the week]. Select the day of the week and press  (Complete).

### To cancel all holidays before the selected date


Move the cursor to the date and from the Function menu, select [Schedule setting] → [Set holidays] → [Rel up to yesterday] → [Yes].

### To cancel all holidays


From the Function menu, select [Schedule setting] → [Set holidays] → [Release all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

### To reset to the default settings


From the Function menu, select [Schedule setting] → [Set holidays] → [Reset], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- 2 Select a date and press  (Func).

The Function menu appears.

- 3 Select [Schedule setting] → [Set holidays] and press .

The Set holidays display appears.

- 4 Select [For today] → [Yes] and press .

The selected day is set as a holiday or the holiday setting of the day is canceled.

- The public holidays are based on the "Law Partially Revising the National Holidays Law and the Old-Age Welfare Law" (Law No.59, 2001) and (Law No.43, 2005). Note that the Vernal Equinox Day and Autumn Equinox Day may fall on the dates other than those set on the FOMA terminal because they depend on the announcement by the official gazette on February 1st of the previous year (as of June 2007).  
Perform the required setting when a holiday is changed or newly added.

## Checking the Number of Schedules Saved

The number of schedules saved can be checked as well as the number of schedules still available to be saved or saved as Secret.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the calendar.

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Memory status] and press .

Memory status	
Remained	279
Used	21
Secret	5

[Remained]:

Display the number of schedules still available to be saved.

[Used]:

Display the number of schedules saved (including schedules as Secret).

[Secret]:

Display the number of schedules saved as Secret (this data is displayed only when the Secret display is set to [ON]).



## Performing Frequently Used Functions Quickly

<My Selection>

Default	MUSIC Player, Lifetime Calendar, Receive Ir data, BC reader, Alarm
---------	---


You can save frequently used functions in My Selection and select a saved function directly.

Up to 20 functions can be added to My Selection.


- 1 Press  (i.ch) for over a second in the stand-by display and press  (Add).

Add to My Selection
Entertainment
Mail
i-mode
Ⓜ Appli
Phone
LifeKit
Data Box
Settings
NW Services




### To delete a saved menu


Press  (i.ch) for over a second in the stand-by display. Move the cursor to the menu and from the Function menu, select [Delete one] → [Yes].

### To reset My Selection to the default setting

Press  (i.ch) for over a second in the stand-by display and from the Function menu, select [Reset] → [Yes].

### To reorder menus in My Selection

Press  (i.ch) for over a second in the stand-by display and from the Function menu, select [Reorder] → a menu. Move the cursor to a position to move to, press  (Move), and press  (Complete).

- 2 Select a function and press  (Save).

The screen for confirming whether to add to My Selection appears.

- 3 Select [Yes] and press .

The selected function is added to My Selection.



## Recording Recipient's or Your Own Voice

<Voice memo>

Your own voice during stand-by and the recipient's voice during a voice call can be recorded.

Up to three voice memos of up to about 15 seconds each can be recorded.

- When you record a voice memo during a call in addition to the already recorded three voice memos, the oldest memo is automatically overwritten by the new one. When you record a voice memo during stand-by, the screen for confirming whether to overwrite the oldest voice memo appears.
- For information on playing back and deleting the voice memo, see P.68.

## Recording Your Own Voice during Stand-by

- 1 Press **[MEMO]** in the stand-by display, select [Rec voice memo] → [Yes] and press **[OK]**.



The recording starts. When the recording ends, a beep sounds.

To stop the recording on the way  
Press **[STOP]** (Stop).

- If there is an incoming call/mail or the Alarm/Schedule alarm time comes while recording a voice memo during stand-by, the recording stops and the voice memo recorded until then is saved.

## Recording Recipient's Voice during a Call

- 1 Press **[MEMO]** during a call.

The recording starts. When the recording ends, a beep sounds.

To stop the recording on the way  
Press **[STOP]** (Stop).

- When the FOMA terminal is folded while recording a voice memo during a call, the recording is stopped and the recorded voice memo is saved if the Setting when folded is set to [Holding] or [Disconnect] and the recording is continued if set to [Mute].

## Checking the Call Duration and Charge

<Call duration/cost>

Default	Last call cost – Voice call•Digital: *X*X*X*X*YEN Last call duration – Voice call•Digital: 0:00 Total call cost – Total cost: 0YEN, Reset date/time: ---/---/--- Total calls dur. – Voice call•Digital: 0:00, Reset date/time: ---/---/---
---------	---

You can check the call duration and charge for the last and total voice and videophone calls.

- The call duration and charge displayed are estimated and may not be real values. The call charge does not include consumption tax.

- 1 From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Call Cost/Duration] and press **[OK]**.

The Call Cost/Duration display appears.

[Last call cost]:

Display the call charge for the last voice call at [Voice call] and the last videophone call/64K data communication at [Digital]. The call charge is counted only when you place a call.

[Last call duration]:

Display the call duration for the last voice call at [Voice call] and the last videophone call/64K data communication at [Digital]. The call duration is counted when you receive a call as well as place a call.

[Total call cost]:

Display the total call charge from the last reset to the present time.

[Total calls dur.]:

Display the total call duration from the last reset to the present time.

- 2 Select the item and press **[OK]**.

- When you place a call to a toll-free number such as NTT Free Dial or Directory Assistance (104), "¥0" or "¥X\*X\*X\*X\*" indicated for the call charge.

- The accumulated call charges are stored in the UIM. Therefore, if you switch the UIM, the accumulated total call charge (starting from December 2004) is displayed.

※ FOMA terminals manufactured earlier than the 901i series are not capable of displaying the accumulated call charges stored in the UIM. (The charges, however, are stored in the UIM used by the older terminals.)

- The duration and charge for PushTalk, i-mode, and packet communication are not counted. For details on how to check charges for i-mode, etc., see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" that you receive when you subscribe to i-mode.

- When the call duration for the last voice call or digital communication exceeds 99 hours, 59 minutes, and 59 seconds or the total call duration for voice calls or digital communication exceeds 9,999 hours, 59 minutes, and 59 seconds, "Over" is displayed.

- The ring time for incoming and outgoing calls are not counted.

- The transmission charge for Chaku-moji is not counted.

- When you use WORLD CALL, the international call charge is counted. When you use other international call services other than WORLD CALL, the call charge is not counted.

- When you switch between voice and videophone calls during a call, the call duration and call charge are counted separately for each call type and incremented at [Voice call] or [Digital] alternately every time you switch the call.


Other Convenient Functions

Continued


## Resetting the Total Call Duration and Charge

The display of the total call duration and charge can be reset. The count starts from 0 after the reset.

Example: Resetting the total call duration

- 1 From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Call Cost/Duration] → [Reset] and press .



- 2 Select [Total duration] and press .


The Security code screen appears.

To reset the total call charge

Select [Total cost], enter the PIN2 code, and select [Yes].

- 3 Enter the Security code and press  (OK).

The screen for confirming whether to reset appears.


- 4 Select [Yes] and press .

The total call duration is reset and the reset date/time are updated.

## Automatically Resetting the Total Call Charge

Default OFF

You can set to automatically reset the total call charge at 00:00 a.m. on the first day of every month.

- 1 From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Call Cost/Duration] → [Auto reset] and press .

The PIN2 code input screen appears.

- 2 Enter the PIN2 code and press  (OK).

The Auto reset display appears.

- 3 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press .


The Auto reset is set.

## Setting the Limit for Alert on the Total Call Charge


<Cost limit notice>

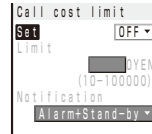
Default Set: OFF, Limit: -, Notification: Alarm+Stand-by

You can set an upper limit amount of call charges to alert yourself with an icon or alarm tone when the total call charge exceeds this limit value.

- 1 From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Call Cost/Duration] → [Cost limit notice] and press .

The Security code screen appears.

- 2 Enter the Security code and press .



- 3 Select [ON]/[OFF] for the Call limit notice at [Set].

- 4 Enter a value at [Limit].

Enter from ¥10 to ¥100,000 (in increments of ¥10).

- 5 Select a notification method at [Notification].

[Alarm+Stand-by]:

Display the icon in the stand-by display and sound an alarm tone to alert you at the same time.

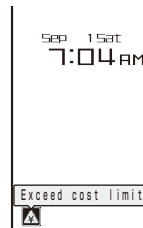
[Stand-by]:

Display the icon in the stand-by display to alert you.

- 6 Press  (Complete).

The Call cost limit is set.


### When the Call Charge Exceeds the Limit



When the upper limit value of the call charge you have set is exceeded during a call or data communication, the notification icon "⚠" (Exceed cost limit) appears in the stand-by display.

When you set the notification method to [Alarm+Stand-by], an alarm tone sounds when the stand-by display reappears.

To check the call charge

Press  (Link) in the stand-by display and select "⚠".

- The alarm for the Call cost limit is heard at the same volume level as set for the incoming call ring volume. It is heard at the volume level 2 when you set the volume of the ring tone to [3] or higher level, [Step down], or [Step up].

## Canceling the Icon for Limit Alert

Turn off the notification icon "▲".

- 1 From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Call Cost/Duration] → [Dlt max cost icon] and press **ⓘ**.

The Security code screen appears.

- 2 Enter the Security code and press **ⓘ** (OK).

The screen for confirming whether to delete the maximum cost icon appears.

- 3 Select [Yes] and press **ⓘ**.

"▲" disappears.

## Using the Calculator

<Calculator>

You can use the FOMA terminal to perform the four basic operations of arithmetic (+, -, ×, ÷) for up to nine digits.

Example: Calculating 64 × 5

- 1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [Calculator] and press **ⓘ**.



- 2 Enter numbers and operators to display the result.

Press **[6]**, **[4]**, **[×]**, **[5]**, and **[=]** in this order.

0 to 9	<b>[0]</b> to <b>[9]</b>
Add (+)	<b>[+]</b>
Subtract (-)	<b>[-]</b>
Multiply (×)	<b>[×]</b>
Divide (÷)	<b>[÷]</b>
Decimal (.)	<b>[.]</b>
Calculate (=)	<b>[=]</b> or <b>ⓘ</b>
Clear (C)/Clear All (AC)	<b>[CLR]</b>

- If the number is indivisible or the result of the calculation contains a decimal point and proves to be 10 digits or more, 10th digit and any more digits than this are discarded for display from the rightmost digit.
- If the result of the calculation is 10 digits or more, or if you attempt an illegal calculation (e.g. division by 0), the error code "OE" appears.
- Minus numbers can be calculated only when you enter a minus number first.

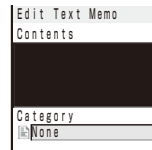
## Using a Memo

<Text Memo>

Necessary information can be saved in the Text Memo. Up to 10 text memos can be saved.

- When you enter [Contents] of a memo, **ⓘ** (Complete) appears and you can save the memo.

- 1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [Text Memo], press **ⓘ**, and press **ⓘ** (Create).



- 2 Enter a memo at [Contents].

Enter a memo within 256 full-width or 512 half-width characters.

- 3 Select a category icon at [Category].

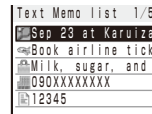
- 4 Press **ⓘ** (Complete).

The memo is saved.

## Displaying a Memo

The contents of a saved memo can be checked.

- 1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [Text Memo] and press **ⓘ**.



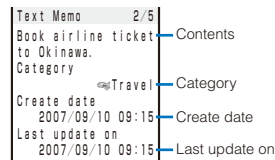
### To copy [Contents] of a memo

Move the cursor to a memo and from the Function menu, select [Copy Text memo] → [Yes].

### To delete memos

Move the cursor to a memo and from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete several memos, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete], and select memos. Press **ⓘ** (Complete) and select [Yes]. To delete all memos, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- 2 Select a memo and press **ⓘ**.



The memo appears.

### To edit the memo


Press **ⓘ** (Edit).

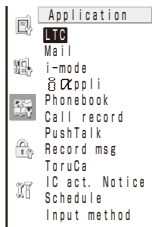
## Displaying the Settings of Various Functions

<Application>

You can directly display the settings of each function and set each item. For more information about settings, see the relevant pages.

Display	Setting data
LTC	Set the data to be displayed in the Lifetime Calendar and set whether to automatically display the items to remember (P.241).
Mail	Set the functions used for i-mode mail and SMS (P.182, 186, etc.).
i-mode	Set the functions used for i-mode (P.103, 159, etc.).
i appli	Set automatic activation of software and software description display during a download (P.103, 190, 194).
Phonebook	Set the display style and font size of the Phonebook (P.93).
Call record	Set the Redial/Received record display ON/OFF (P.124).
PushTalk	Set the operation for originating/receiving a PushTalk call (P.82).
Record msg	Set ON/OFF and the answer time of the Record message and the answering/recording image of the Videophone message (P.66).
ToruCa	Set the operation to be performed when a ToruCa card is obtained (P.201).
IC act. Notice	Set the operation for notifying you that the FOMA terminal comes within the FeliCa communication range (P.202).
Schedule	Set the operation of holidays and the Schedule alarm (P.244, 246).
Input method	Set the function for character input (P.255, 258, etc.).

- From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Application] and press .



- Select a function and press .

The setting display of each function appears.

## Using the Earphone/Microphone with Switch

<Earphone/microphone with switch>

When you connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional), etc. to the Earphone/Microphone Jack, you can answer a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call or place a voice call by simply pressing its switch. You can also set Earphone/Microphone operation.

- Do not wind the cord of the Earphone/Microphone around the FOMA terminal. Doing so may cause the radio wave condition to be degraded.
- Placing the cord of the Earphone/Microphone close to the antenna may cause noise.

## Using the Switch to Place a Call

You can place a voice call to the first phone number saved as the Memory number (P.251) of the Phonebook using the switch on the Earphone/Microphone.

- When the PIM lock is set, the call cannot be placed.

- Connect the Earphone/Microphone to the FOMA terminal.

- Open the cover of the Earphone/Microphone Jack and insert the plug of the Earphone/Microphone into the jack.

- Press the switch on the Earphone/Microphone for over a second in the stand-by display.

The beep sounds and the call is connected to the recipient. Talk when the recipient answers the call.

- Press the switch on the Earphone/Microphone for over a second to hang up.

The beep sounds and the call is disconnected.

- If a Phonebook memory number that is saved as Secret is set for the Memory number, set the Secret display to [ON] if you want to use the switch on the Earphone/Microphone to place a call.


## Using the Switch to Receive a Call

- When receiving a call, press the switch on the Earphone/Microphone for over a second.

The beep sounds and the call is connected.

- Press the switch on the Earphone/Microphone for over a second to hang up.


The beep sounds and the call is disconnected.

- When you answer a videophone call using the switch on the Earphone/Microphone, a substitute image is sent to the caller.
- You cannot end communication using the switch on the Earphone/Microphone during PushTalk communication. Press  to end communication.

## Setting the Operation of the Earphone/Microphone with Switch

Default | Set: OFF, Memory number: 999

You can set whether to permit the switch on the Earphone/Microphone to answer a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call. You can also set a Phonebook memory number to be used for placing a voice call by pressing the switch on the Earphone/Microphone.

- From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Earphone] → [Earphone SW] and press .



## 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] of the switch on the Earphone/Microphone at [Set].

[ON]:

Use the switch on the Earphone/Microphone to place a voice call or answer a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call.

[OFF]:

Do not use the switch on the Earphone/Microphone.

## 3 Enter a memory number from the Phonebook used for placing a voice call at [Memory number].

Enter from 000 to 999.

## 4 Press (Complete).

The Earphone switch is set.

## Receiving a Call Automatically with Earphone

<Auto answer>

Default | Set: OFF, To answer: 5 sec

You can set to automatically answer a voice or videophone call when the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional), etc. is connected.

### 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Earphone] → [Auto answer] and press .



### 2 Select [ON]/[OFF] of the Auto answer at [Set].

### 3 Enter the time before receiving a call automatically at [To answer].

Enter from 000 to 120 seconds.

### 4 Press (Complete).

The Auto answer is set.

- When you receive a videophone call, a substitute image is sent to the caller.
- When the Record message, Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, and Auto answer are set simultaneously, and if you want to give priority to the Auto answer, set the time before starting the answering message for the Auto answer shorter than that for the Record message and the ring time for the Voice Mail and Call Forwarding Services.

## Setting Which Mic to Use

<Earphone mic>

Default | Valid earphone

You can set to use a microphone during a call when the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional), etc. is connected.

### 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Earphone] → [Earphone mic] and press .

[Valid main]:

Use the earpiece (microphone) of the FOMA terminal.

[Valid earphone]:

Use the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional).

### 2 Select a microphone to be used and press .

The Earphone mic is set.

## Resetting to the Default Settings

<Reset settings>

You can reset the settings of each function to the default settings. For the functions that are reset by the Reset settings and the default settings of these functions, see the list of reset items (P.252) and the list of menus (P.270).

### 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [Reset] → [Reset settings] and press .

The Security code screen appears.

### 2 Enter the Security code and press (OK).

The screen for confirming whether to reset all settings appears.

### 3 Select [Yes] and press .

The settings are reset.

## Deleting All Saved Data

<Reset all data&set>

You can delete saved data and reset the settings of each function to the default settings. For the functions to be reset by the Reset all data&set, see the list of reset items (P.252) and the list of menus (P.270).

- The following data is not deleted.
  - Preinstalled data in My picture, MUSIC, i-motion, Melody, and Chara-den of the Data Box
  - Preinstalled Deco-mail templates and pattern data
  - OsaiFu-Keitai-compatible i-α ppli
- The preinstalled received mail “ドコモからのお知らせ”, i-α ppli software “LocoRoco Mobile for SO”, “デコメ絵文字ポケット” (Deco-mail Emoji Pocket), “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G-GUIDE TV Program List Remote Control), “楽オク出品アプリ” (Appli for selling items at Rakuten Auction), and “iアプリバンキング” (i-α ppli Banking) are deleted.
- Even if you delete a preinstalled Deco mail Pict., MUSIC, and Chara-den data files, they are restored if you execute the Reset all data&set.
- The preset folders are not deleted. The folder names at the time of purchase are restored, however.

### 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [Reset] → [Reset all data&set] and press .

The Security code screen appears.

### 2 Enter the Security code and press (OK).

The screen for confirming whether to reset all data and settings appears.

### 3 Select [Yes] and press .

The screen for confirming whether to execute restart operation appears.

### 4 Select [Yes] and press .

The FOMA terminal is initialized and restarts.

## List of Reset Items

The items in which settings, that are made through the associated Function menus, etc., are reset by executing the Reset settings or Reset all data&set are as follows. For functions that can be accessed through the menu display, see the list of menus (P.270).

○: Items restored to their default settings ●: Items deleted

Menu		Default setting	Reset settings	Reset all data&set	Page
Main menu	Menu guide display	Normal mode: OFF, Simple mode: ON	○	○	P.30
Phonebook	Group setting	—		○	P.91
PushTalk phonebook	Group setting	—		○	P.79
Data Box	Sort	Date		○	P.220
My picture	Change display	6 images	○	○	P.220
	Display quality	Normal	○	○	P.204
i-motion	Slideshow	Interval: 3sec	○	○	P.204
	Change display	6 images	○	○	P.220
	Display quality	Normal	○	○	P.207
Melody	Volume adjustment	25	○	○	P.207
	Volume adjustment	3	○	○	P.211
microSD (Same as described for the Data Box)					—
MUSIC Player	Change display	Jacket display	○	○	P.234
	Volume adjustment	16	○	○	P.234
	Music settings	Play mode: Normal, Repeat/Surround/ AVLS: OFF	○	○	P.236
Camera	Select size	Still image (Out-camera): Stby(240×432), Still image (In-camera): QCIF(176×144), Movie: QCIF(176×144)	○	○	P.140
	Select save to	Still image: [Camera] folder in My picture of the Data Box, Movie: [Camera] folder in i-motion of the Data Box	○	○	P.145
	Auto save	OFF	○	○	P.145
	Image quality	Standard	○	○	P.146
	Shutter sound	Sound1	○	○	P.146
	Auto focus	Normal mode	○	○	P.147
	File size	Attach(L)	○	○	P.148
	Shoot mode	Image+Sound	○	○	P.148
Mail	Mail security	—		●	P.125
Alarm	Alarm	Time: 00:00, Repeat: OFF, Alarm: Alarm (std), Alarm volume: 3, Vibrator: OFF, Color: C5:Color 5, Snooze: OFF	○	○	P.242
SW Update	Scheduled update time	—		●	P.302
Public mode (Drive mode)		OFF	○	○	P.62
Input text	Pict/Symbol ranking	—		●	P.256
	Learning data	—		●	P.258
	Clipboard	—		●	P.257

# Character Entry

For kuten codes, see the "Kuten Code List" (PDF format) included in the supplied CD-ROM. You need Adobe Reader (Version 6.0 or later is recommended) to read the "Kuten Code List" (PDF format). If Adobe Reader is not installed on your PC, install it from the same CD-ROM, which also contains the Adobe Reader software.

For details on using Adobe Reader, see the Help that is installed with the software.

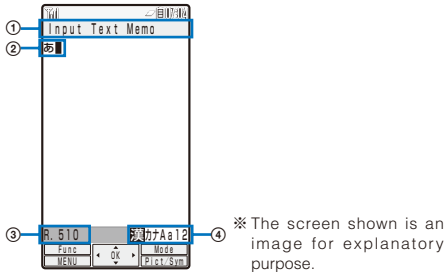
About Entering Text .....	254
Entering Text .....	254
Entering Common Phrases .....	256
Entering Pictographs/Symbols .....	256
Editing/Saving Common Phrases .....	<Edit common phrases> 256
Quoting Data from the Phonebook, etc. ....	256
Cutting/Copying/Pasting Text .....	257
Entering Text Using Kuten Codes .....	<Input kuten> 257
Saving the Frequently Used Kanji Words .....	<Save prediction/user> 257
Restoring the Default Settings .....	<Reset data> 258
Using the Downloaded Dictionary .....	<Download dictionary> 258

## About Entering Text

The overview of the text entry is described here.

- Characters including JIS level 1 and level 2, 6,355 kanji are available.
- Some complicated kanji characters are abridged or simplified in part.

### Text input display



- ① The name of a function for which characters are input
- ② Entered characters
- ③ Number of bytes of characters that can be entered  
A half-width character is counted as one byte and a full-width character as two bytes. The number of characters is displayed for the SMS main body. While composing mail, it appears with a “-” (minus sign) when the number of entered characters exceeds the limit. The word “ap” (approximately) may appear.
- ④ Character mode or pictograph/symbol mode
  - The character mode or pictograph/symbol mode available varies depending on the contents to be edited.

Character mode	
Half-width	Full-width
[漢]: Kanji/Hiragana ※	[漢]: Kanji/Hiragana
[カ]: Half-width katakana	[力]: Full-width katakana
[Aa]: Half-width alphabet	[A]: Full-width alphabet
[12]: Half-width numeric	[1]: Full-width numeric

※ Characters are always entered in full-width in the kanji/hiragana mode even if the character mode is set to half-width.

Pictograph/Symbol mode
[絵]: Pictograph/Symbol ranking
[絵]: Pictograph
[絵]: Deco mail Pict.※
[絵]: Symbols

※ Deco mail Pict. is a Deco-mail pictograph that can be entered only in the Edit mail and Edit signature displays.

### Changing the character mode or pictograph/symbol mode

#### Character mode for half-width

Every time you press **[Mode]**, the character mode changes in the order of [漢] → [カ] → [Aa] → [12].

#### Character mode for full-width

Every time you press **[Mode]**, the character mode changes in the order of [漢] → [力] → [A] → [1].

#### Pictograph/symbol mode

Every time you press **[Pict/Sym]**, the character mode changes in the order of [絵] → [絵] → [絵] → [絵].

### Changing the character mode between full-width and half-width

From the Function menu, select [Multi/Single].

### Entering a character assigned to the same key twice or more in succession

After entering the first character, move the cursor.

### Deleting a character

Move the cursor to the character and press **[CLR]**.

- The character at the cursor is deleted by pressing **[CLR]** for less than a second. The last character is deleted when the cursor is at the end of the text.
- All characters at and after the cursor position are deleted by pressing **[CLR]** for over a second. All characters are deleted when the cursor is at the end of the text.

### Inserting a character

Move the cursor to the position to insert a character and enter the character. The characters after the cursor position are shifted to the right of the inserted character.

### If the matching kanji word does not appear

If you cannot get the desired conversion, change the block of characters to be converted. Moving the cursor with **[Left]** **[Right]** changes the matching words list/conversion target words displayed according to the cursor position.

### Undoing text

If you have performed an incorrect operation, you can select, from the Function menu, [Undo] to cancel the last operation and restore the previous status.

- [Undo] is available for the following actions:
  - Confirming character entry (**[Enter]**) - [Undo]
  - Entering common phrases
  - Entering pictographs/symbols
  - Entering kuten codes (P.257)
  - Cutting or pasting (P.257) - Deleting characters (**[CLR]**)
  - Quoting data from Phonebook, My data, etc. (P.256)

## Entering Text

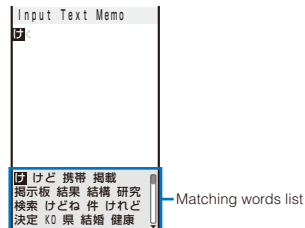
### Entering Text in the Prediction Conversion Mode

Example: Entering “健闘” (けんとう)

#### 1 Check the character mode in the text input display.

Check that the kanji/hiragana mode is selected.

#### 2 Press **[2]** four times.



The first character “け” is entered and the matching words list for “け” is displayed.

#### To return to the previous character

When passing the target character by pressing extra keys, press **[#]**. Every time you press it, the character returns to the previous one.



3 Press **[O]** three times and press **[4]** five times.



The characters “けんとう” are entered and the matching words list for “けんとう” is displayed.

To set the User conversion mode temporarily

When you press **[Alt]** (Alt), the conversion target words for the User conversion mode appear.

4 Select **[健闘]** and press **[Select]**.



“健闘” is entered. A selection of words that are expected to succeed the word “健闘” appears in the matching words list.

5 Select **[閉じる]** and press **[Select]**.

The matching words list closes and “健闘” is finalized.

- The selected words from the matching words list are displayed with priority over other words next time.
- A word entered temporarily in the User conversion mode while in the Prediction conversion mode is automatically saved in the Prediction dictionary. This word is displayed in the matching words list from the next time.

## Entering Text in the User Conversion Mode

Example: Entering “健闘” (けんとう)

1 Change the conversion mode to [User conversion].

- Follow the same steps as in “Changing the Conversion Mode” (P.255).

2 Check the character mode in the text input display.

Check that the kanji/hiragana mode is selected.

3 Enter a text.



Press **[2]** four times: け  
 Press **[O]** three times: ん  
 Press **[4]** five times: と  
 Press **[1]** three times: う

4 Press **[Select]**.



The matching words list for “けんとう” is displayed.

To finalize this word

Press **[Select]** (Select).

5 Select **[健闘]** and press **[Select]**.

“健闘” is finalized.

To cancel the conversion

Press **[Cancel]** (Cancel).

## Changing the Conversion Mode

Default Prediction

Select the conversion mode from Prediction conversion or User conversion when the character mode is the kanji/hiragana mode.

1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Application] → [Input method] → [Select conversion] and press **[Select]**.

[Prediction]:

When entering characters, a selection of words predicted by the characters appears in the matching words list. This is a conversion mode that a look-ahead strategy is applied to by the FOMA terminal.

[User conversion]:

Enter the entire reading of the word before conversion. This is the conventional conversion mode.

2 Select a conversion mode and press **[Select]**.

The selected conversion mode is set.

- To change the conversion mode in the text input display, from the Function menu, select [Input method] → [Select conversion].

## Entering Common Phrases

For common phrases, see P.284.

- Common phrases that are available vary depending on the contents to be edited. Unavailable categories are disabled for selection.

1 Press **[Func]** (Func) in the text input display.

The Function menu appears.

2 Select [Input phrases] → a category → a common phrase and press **[OK]**.



The selected common phrase is entered.

To check a common phrase

Move the cursor to the common phrase and press **[Confirm]**.

## Entering Pictographs/Symbols

Pictographs and symbols you entered are listed in the Pict/Symbol ranking display in the order of number of times you entered them, from which you can select a desired one when you enter characters.

For pictographs and symbols, see P.282.

- Deco mail Pict. is not displayed in the Pict/Symbol ranking display. You cannot enter Deco mail Pict. consecutively.

Example: Entering several pictographs consecutively

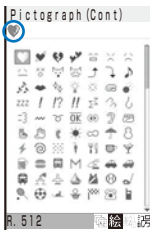
1 Press **[Pict/Sym]** (Pict/Sym) in the text input display.

Every time you press **[Pict/Sym]** (Pict/Sym), the pictograph/symbol mode changes in the order of [猫] → [松] → [桜] → [読].

To enter only one pictograph/symbol

Move the cursor to a pictograph/symbol and press **[OK]**.

2 Press **[Pict/Sym]** (Pict/Sym) → **[Cont]** (Cont), select a pictograph, and press **[OK]**.



The selected pictograph is displayed on the top of the text input display. To select the next pictograph, move the cursor to the desired one and press **[OK]**.

To cancel the selection

Press **[CLR]**. The last pictograph displayed on the top of the text input display is canceled. When you press **[CLR]** for over a second, all selected pictographs are canceled.

3 Press **[OK]** (OK).

The selected pictographs are entered all at once.

- Deco mail Pict. can be entered only in the Edit mail and Edit signature displays. You can enter a Deco mail Pict. to compose Deco-mail (P.171).

## Editing/Saving Common Phrases

<Edit common phrases>

Default | See the list of common phrases (P.284)

The preinstalled common phrases can be edited according to the intended use. Your own common phrases can also be added as new entries.

Example: Editing ".co.jp" saved in the "Internet" category

1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Application] → [Input method] → [Edit common phrases] and press **[OK]**.

The Common phrases display appears.

2 Select [Internet] → [.co.jp] and press **[OK]**.

To reset the common phrase to the default setting

Move the cursor to the common phrase and from the Function menu, select [Reset] → [Reset one] → [Yes]. To restore the default set of common phrases in a category, from the Function menu, select [Reset] → [Reset all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes]. To restore the default set of common phrases in all categories, press **[Rset all]** (Rset all) in the Common phrases display, enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To delete a common phrase

Move the cursor to the common phrase and from the Function menu, select [Delete one] → [Yes].

3 Press **[Edit]** (Edit) and edit the contents.

Enter a common phrase within 64 full-width or 128 half-width characters.

Editing is completed.

## Quoting Data from the Phonebook, etc.

You can quote data saved in the Phonebook or Own number (My data) or characters scanned by the bar code reader to enter in the main body of mail or in the text input display while displaying a site.

Example: Quoting from the Phonebook

1 Press **[Func]** (Func) in the text input display.

The Function menu appears.

2 Select [Quote phonebook] and press **[OK]**.

The Phonebook appears.

To quote the Own number

Select [Quote my data].

To quote texts using the bar code reader

Select [Bar code reader].

### 3 Select a name → an item to be quoted and press .

The selected item appears in the text input display.

- When the selected item contains more characters than the maximum number of characters that can be entered, the extra characters are deleted.

## Cutting/Copying/Pasting Text

The entered characters can be pasted to the other input display by cutting or copying.

The characters cut or copied are saved in the clipboard and pasted when the Paste function is selected. The contents of the clipboard can be pasted as many times as needed.

- The clipboard is a special memory area where cut or copied characters are temporarily saved. The clipboard can hold only one item and it is replaced with new data when copying or cutting next data to it.
- The characters in the clipboard are deleted when the FOMA terminal is powered off.
- A character that cannot be entered to the destination display is replaced with a half-width space when pasted. Any extra characters that exceed the maximum allowable number of characters are deleted.
- You cannot cut/copy and paste Deco mail Pict. or images inserted in the Deco-mail main body.

### ■ Cutting

Cut the selected characters and save them in the clipboard (the selected characters are deleted from the source display).

Function menu	Setting option
Cut	Cut the selected text.

### ■ Copying

Copy the selected characters and save them in the clipboard (the selected characters are not deleted from the source display).

Function menu	Setting option
Copy	Copy the selected text.
Attach No.	Copy a phone number.
Item copy	Copy a phone number, mail address, etc. item by item.
Copy Text memo	Copy the contents of the text memo.

### ■ Pasting

Paste the characters in the clipboard.

Function menu	Setting option
Paste	Paste the copied or cut data.

## Copying/Cutting Text

### 1 Press (Func) in the text input display.

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Copy] and press .

To cut

Select [Cut].

### 3 Select the Start point and press .

The first character to be copied is set.

To select all characters

Press  (Slt all).

### 4 Select the End point and press .

The range of characters to be copied is set and saved in the clipboard.

## Pasting Text

### 1 Select the position to paste in the text input display and press (Func).

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Paste] and press .

The copied/cut text is pasted.

## Entering Text Using Kuten Codes

<Input kuten>

You can enter characters, numbers and symbols using corresponding 4-digit kuten codes as listed in the Kuten code list.

- For kuten codes, see the "Kuten Code List" (PDF format) included in the supplied CD-ROM.

### 1 Press (Func) in the text input display.

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Input kuten] and press .



### 3 Enter a kuten code.

The character corresponding to the entered kuten code is entered.

## Saving the Frequently Used Kanji Words


<Save prediction/user>

Frequently used Kanji words can be saved in the Prediction or User dictionary. Saved words are displayed in the matching words list/conversion target words by priority when you convert characters.

Prediction dictionary	Save words that you want to display in the matching words list by priority when you use the Prediction conversion. Up to 300 words can be saved.
User dictionary	Save words that you want to display in the conversion target words by priority when you use the User conversion. Up to 200 words can be saved.

- The words saved in the User dictionary are automatically saved in the Prediction dictionary, but not vice versa.
- When you delete a saved word, delete it from the dictionary to which it is saved.

Example: Saving a word in the Prediction dictionary


- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Application] → [Input method] → [Edit prediction] and press .

The Prediction dictionary display appears.

To add a word to the User dictionary

Select [Settings] → [Application] → [Input method] → [Edit user dict].

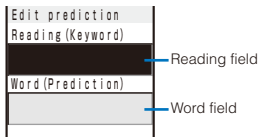
To delete a word

Move the cursor to the word and from the Function menu, select [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete several words, from the Function menu, select [Select&delete] and select words, press  (Complete), and select [Yes]. To delete all words, from the Function menu, select [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To edit a word

Move the cursor to the word and press .

- 2 Press  (Create).



- 3 Enter the reading in the reading field.

Enter a reading within 16 hiragana characters.

- 4 Enter the word in the word field.

Enter a word within 16 full-width or 32 half-width characters.

- 5 Press  (Complete).


The entered word is saved in the Prediction dictionary.

## Restoring the Default Settings

<Reset data>

The FOMA terminal's dictionary has a data learning feature. The data learning feature memorizes the frequency in which individual words are used and give priority to the frequently used words when displaying them in the matching words list/conversion target words.


If you reset the learning data, the order of priority is reset to the default setting.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Application] → [Input method] → [Reset data] and press .

The Security code screen appears.

- 2 Enter the Security code and press  (OK).

The screen for confirming whether to reset the learning data appears.


- 3 Select [Yes] and press .

The learning data is reset.

## Using the Downloaded Dictionary

<Download dictionary>

Up to 20 dictionaries can be downloaded using i-mode for use with the FOMA terminal. When enabling a downloaded dictionary, words saved in it appear in the matching words list.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Application] → [Input method] → [Dictionaries] and press .




To display the detailed information


Move the cursor to the dictionary and from the Function menu, select [Information].

To change the name

Move the cursor to the dictionary and from the Function menu, select [Edit name]. Enter a name within eight full-width or 17 half-width characters.

To delete a dictionary

Move the cursor to the dictionary and from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete several dictionaries, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete] and select dictionaries, press  (Complete), and select [Yes]. To delete all dictionaries, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- 2 Select a dictionary and press  (Set).

The Valid/Invalid display appears.

- 3 Select [Valid]/[Invalid] and press .

When it is set to [Valid], the dictionary is enabled and "■" (gray) changes to "■" (green).

- If many dictionaries are enabled simultaneously, some words may not be displayed in the matching words list.
- The dictionary can be downloaded from "SO@Planet".  
[i Menu] → [メニュー/検索] (Menu/Search) → [ケータイ電話メーカー] (Mobile Phone Manufacturers) → [SO@Planet] (Japanese only)

## Sorting the Downloaded Dictionaries

When you download several dictionaries, you can change the order of the dictionaries in the list to display words of a frequently used dictionary by priority.

- 1 Press  (Func) in the Dictionary folder display.

The Function menu appears.

- 2 Select [Reorder] and press .

- 3 Select a dictionary and press .

The Reorder display appears.

- 4 Select a position to move to and press  (Move).

- 5 Press  (Complete).

The searching priority is set.

# Network Services

This manual provides a brief description of each network service using the approach of operating from the menu of the FOMA terminal. For detailed information on operation of the network services, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]".

Available Network Services .....	260
Using the Voice Mail Service .....	260
Using the Call Waiting Service .....	261
Using the Call Forwarding Service .....	261
Using the Nuisance Call Blocking Service .....	261
Using the Caller ID Display Request Service .....	262
Using the Dual Network Service .....	262
Using the English Guidance Service .....	262
Using the Service Numbers .....	262
Selecting an Operation for an Incoming Call during a Call .....	<Arrival Call Act> 263
Setting Remote Control .....	<Remote Control> 263
Using the Multi Number Service .....	263
Using OFFICEED .....	<OFFICEED> 264
Saving a New Service to Use It .....	<Additional service (USSD) registration> 264

## Available Network Services

You can use the following DoCoMo network services on the FOMA terminal.


For details on the outline and how to use each service, see the relevant pages indicated in the table below.

Service name	Application	Monthly charge	Page
The Voice Mail Service	Required	Paid	P.260
The Call Waiting Service	Required	Paid	P.261
The Call Forwarding Service	Required	Free	P.261
The Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Required	Free	P.261
Notify Caller ID	Not required	Free	P.41
The Caller ID Display Request Service	Not required	Free	P.262
The Dual Network Service	Required	Paid	P.262
The English Guidance Service	Not required	Free	P.262
The Multi Number Service	Required	Paid	P.263
OFFICEED	Required	Paid	P.264
Public mode (Drive mode)	Not required	Free	P.62
Public mode (Power off)	Not required	Free	P.64

- You cannot use the network services when you are outside of the service area or in a location without the radio wave.
- For details, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]".
- For subscription and inquiry, call the "General Inquiries" on the backcover of this manual.
- "Deactivating the service" of the Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service, etc. does not cancel your subscription to the service itself.
- "OFFICEED" is a paid service that requires a subscription. For more information, see the DoCoMo's website for business customers (<http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/>).


## Using the Voice Mail Service

The Voice Mail Service takes messages for you, as long as it answers a call with the answering message, if there is an incoming voice or videophone call when you are in a location without the radio wave, while the FOMA terminal is powered off, or when you are in a situation where you cannot answer a call.





- When the Voice Mail Service and Record Message (P.65) are set simultaneously, and if you want to give priority to the Voice Mail Service, set the ring time for the Voice Mail Service shorter than the time before starting the answering message for the Record Message.
- When the Voice Mail Service is set to "Activate" and if you do not answer an incoming voice or videophone call, the call is saved in the Received record as a "Missed call" and the notification icon  (Missed call) appears in the stand-by display.
- When the Call Forwarding Service is set to "Activate", the Voice Mail Service is automatically deactivated.

### Basic flow of the Voice Mail Service


- Step 1 Activate the service.
- Step 2 The caller leaves a message.
- Step 3 Play back the Voice Mail message.

1 From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Voice Mail] and press .

2 Set each item.

Menu item	Operation	
Activate	Select [Activate] → [Activate]/[Ring+Activate] (→ Enter the ring time) → [Yes]. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When you select [Ring+Activate], you can set the ring time (000 to 120 seconds) and activate the Voice Mail Service.</li> </ul>	
Set ring time	Select [Set ring time] → Enter the ring time (000 to 120 seconds) →  (Complete).	
Deactivate	Select [Deactivate] → [Yes].	
Check setting	Select [Check setting].	
Play messages	Select [Play messages] → [Yes] → Operate as instructed by the guidance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The displayed number is the number that the guidance announces when playing back new Voice Mail messages. Already saved Voice Mail messages are not included.</li> <li>You can also play back the record message by pressing  (Link) in the stand-by display and selecting .</li> </ul>	
Voice Mail setting	Select [Voice Mail setting] → [Yes] → Operate as instructed by the guidance.	
Check messages	Select [Check messages]. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When a new message is stored at the Voice Mail Service Center, the notification icon  (Voice Mail message) appears in the stand-by display.</li> </ul>	
Tone/Vibrate notice (Default: ON)	Set whether to alert you of a new message with the mail tone when it is received at the Voice Mail Service Center. Select [Tone/Vibrate notice] → [ON]/[OFF].	
Delete VM icon	Select [Delete VM icon] → [Yes].	
Missed Call notice	Activate	Notify you of a new message by SMS when it is received while the FOMA terminal is powered off or outside of the service area. Select [Missed Call notice] → [Activate] → [All calls]/[With Caller ID] → [Yes]. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Even if the caller is saved in the Phonebook, the caller ID of the caller is notified and the name saved in the Phonebook is not displayed.</li> </ul>
	Deactivate	Select [Missed Call notice] → [Deactivate] → [Yes].
	Check setting	Select [Missed Call notice] → [Check setting].

### Notes on the service for the videophone

- When the Voice Mail Service takes a videophone message for you, it is notified to you by SMS.
- To change the settings of the Voice Mail Service for videophone support, press **1 4 1 2**  in the stand-by display and operate as instructed by the guidance.
- A videophone of AV32K type is disabled for connection to the Voice Mail Service Center.
- When you connect to the Voice Mail Service Center using Chara-den, the DTMF operation is not available. From the function menu, select [DTMF send mode] (P.69).

## Using the Call Waiting Service





When there is another incoming call while you are on a call, the in-call ring tone notifies you of the second call. You can answer the second call by putting the first call on hold. You can also put your current call on hold and place a call to another party.

- When you receive a videophone call during a voice call, you can answer the videophone call by disconnecting the voice call. You cannot answer a voice/videophone call that arrives during a videophone call. However, it is saved in the Received record.
- To use the Call Waiting Service, set the Arrival Call Act (P.263) to [Answer]. If it is set to other operation, you cannot answer a second voice call received while you are on a voice call even if the Call Waiting Service is activated.

**1** From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Call Waiting] and press .

**2** Set each item.

Menu item	Operation
Activate	Select [Activate] → [Yes].
Deactivate	Select [Deactivate] → [Yes].
Check setting	Select [Check setting].

- To put the current call on hold and answer an incoming call, press  (Call). When you put a call on hold, the message "Connecting" appears. Every time you press  (Switch), you can switch between the calls. To disconnect the put on hold call, from the Function menu, select [Release Hold Call].
- To disconnect the current call and answer an incoming call, press  and .

## Using the Call Forwarding Service

The Call Forwarding Service forwards a voice or videophone call to a preset forwarding number when you are in a location without the radio wave, the FOMA terminal is powered off, or you do not answer the call within the preset ring time.

- When the Call Forwarding Service and Record Message (P.65) are set simultaneously, and if you want to give priority to the Call Forwarding Service, set the ring time for the Call Forwarding Service shorter than the time before starting the answering message for the Record Message.
- When the Call Forwarding Service is set to "Activate" and if you do not answer an incoming voice or videophone call, the call is saved in the Received record as a "Missed call" and the notification icon "☎" (Missed call) appears in the stand-by display.
- When you receive a videophone call, the call is disconnected if the forwarding number does not support a videophone feature compliant with 3G-324M.





### ■ Basic flow of the Call Forwarding Service

- Step 1 Save the forwarding number.  
 Step 2 Activate the Call Forwarding Service.  
 Step 3 Receive a call on the FOMA terminal.  
 Step 4 If you do not answer the call, it is automatically forwarded to the specified forwarding number.

**1** From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Call Forwarding] and press .

**2** Set each item.

Menu item	Operation
Activate	Select [Activate] → [Activate]/[Set+Activate] (→ Enter the forwarding number and ring time) → [Yes]. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you select [Set+Activate], you can set the forwarding number (within 26 digits) and ring time (000 to 120 seconds) and activate the Call Forwarding Service.</li> </ul>
Deactivate	Select [Deactivate] → [Yes].
Change FWD number	Select [Change FWD number] → Enter the forwarding number (within 26 digits) → Select [Set]/[Set+Activate].
If FWD number busy	Set whether to connect to the Voice Mail Service Center when the forwarding number is busy. Select [If FWD number busy] → [Not connect]/[Connect].
Check setting	Select [Check setting].

- To set on/off of the Call Forwarding guidance, press     in the stand-by display and operate as instructed by the guidance.

## Using the Nuisance Call Blocking Service

The Nuisance Call Blocking Service prevents receiving a "nuisance call" such as prank phone calls. When you set the Bar Nuisance Calls, further calls from registered nuisance call numbers are automatically rejected and the call rejection guidance is played back on the caller's phone.

- The ring tone does not sound when there is an incoming call from the saved phone number. The call is not saved in the Received record, either.
- When you receive a videophone call from a caller who is saved as a nuisance caller, it is disconnected after playing back the call rejection video guidance on the caller's phone.

**1** From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Bar Nuisance Calls] and press .

**2** Set each item.

Menu item	Operation
Register Caller	Save the phone number of the last received call. Select [Register Caller] → [Yes].
Reg. selected No.	Select [Reg. selected No.] → Enter the phone number (within 22 digits) → Select [Yes].
Delete all entries	Select [Delete all entries] → [Yes].
Delete last entry	Delete the last saved phone number. You can delete another phone number from the last saved one by repeating the same operation. Select [Delete last entry] → [Yes].
Check No. of entry	Select [Check No. of entry].

## Using the Caller ID Display Request Service

When you receive a voice or videophone call without a caller ID, the Caller ID Display Request Service answers the call with a guidance requesting the caller to send the caller ID and then automatically disconnects the call.

- When there is an incoming call from the caller who does not notify the phone number, the ring tone does not sound. The call is not saved in the Received record either.
- When you receive a videophone call without a caller ID, it is disconnected after playing back the caller ID display request video guidance on the caller's phone.
- When you receive a PushTalk call without a caller ID, the caller ID display request guidance is not played back on the caller's phone and the call is disconnected.

**1** From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Caller ID Request] and press .

**2** Set each item.

Menu item	Operation
Activate	Select [Activate] → [Yes].
Deactivate	Select [Deactivate] → [Yes].
Check setting	Select [Check setting].

## Using the Dual Network Service

The Dual Network Service enables you to use a Mova terminal using the phone number of the FOMA terminal you use at present. This service enables you to select and use both the FOMA and Mova service areas as required.

- You cannot use the FOMA and Mova terminals at the same time.
- Make sure to perform the operation for switching the Dual Network Service from the FOMA terminal not using the service.

**1** From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Dual Network] and press .


**2** Set each item.


Menu item	Operation
Switch Dual Network	Switch the Dual Network Service to enable using the FOMA terminal for this service. Select [Switch Dual Network] → Enter the network security code → Select [Yes].
Check setting	Select [Check setting].

## Using the English Guidance Service

You can set English voice guidance to be played during various network service settings such as the Voice Mail Service and when you are outside of the service area.

If a caller is also using this service, the settings of a call from this caller have priority over the settings on the recipient's phone.

**1** From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [English Guidance] → [Guidance setting] and press .

**2** Select a target for the English Guidance Service and press .

[Call+Income]:


Set both the guidance that you hear when you place a call and that a recipient hears upon receiving your call.

[Call]:

Set the guidance that you hear when you place a call.

[Income]:

Set the guidance that a recipient hears upon receiving your call.

**3** Select a language for the guidance to be played during outgoing calls and press .

**4** Select a language for the guidance played during incoming calls and press .

[Japanese]:

Set the guidance to Japanese.

[Japanese+English]:

Set the guidance in the order of Japanese → English.

[English+Japanese]:

Set the guidance in the order of English → Japanese.

To check the settings

From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [English Guidance] → [Check setting].

## Using the Service Numbers

You can call DoCoMo General Inquiries, Contact for Repairs, etc.

- Depending on the UIM being used, the items to be displayed may be different or some items may not be displayed.

**1** From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Service Numbers] and press .

The Service Numbers display appears.

[ドコモ故障問合せ] (Contact for Repairs):

Call the DoCoMo representative of Contact for Repairs.

[ドコモ総合案内・受付] (General Inquiries):

Call the DoCoMo information desk of General Inquiries (DoCoMo Information Center).

**2** Select a contact number → [Yes] and press .

The call is connected to the contact number.



## Selecting an Operation for an Incoming Call during a Call <Arrival Call Act>

Default Answer

If you are subscribing to the Voice Mail, Call Forwarding, or Call Waiting Service, you can set the operation you want to perform when you receive the second voice or videophone call during a call.

- If you do not subscribed to the Voice Mail, Call Forwarding, or Call Waiting Service, you cannot answer a second incoming call received while you are on a current call.
- To use the Arrival Call Act function, set the In-call arrival act to "Activate".

**1** From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Arrival Call Act] and press .

[Answer]:

You can answer a call or forward it manually to the Voice Mail Service Center or a forwarding number.

[Voice Mail]:


An incoming call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.

[Call Forwarding]:

An incoming call is forwarded to a saved forwarding number.

[Call Rejection]:

An incoming call is rejected.

**2** Select an operation for an incoming call and press .

The operation for an incoming call during a call is set.

## Starting/Stopping the In-call Arrival Act

You can start or stop the operation you have selected for the Arrival Call Act.

**1** From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [In-call arrival act] and press .

**2** Set each item.

Menu item	Operation
Activate	Select [Activate] → [Yes].
Deactivate	Select [Deactivate] → [Yes].
Check setting	Select [Check setting].

## Setting Remote Control <Remote Control>

You can set to be able to operate the Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service, etc. from a general push-button telephone, public phone, DoCoMo mobile phones, etc.

**1** From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Remote Control] and press .

**2** Set each item.

Menu item	Operation
Activate	Select [Activate] → [Yes].
Deactivate	Select [Deactivate] → [Yes].
Check setting	Select [Check setting].

## Using the Multi Number Service

The Multi Number Service enables you to add up to two numbers, Additional No.1 and Additional No.2 in addition to the Basic Number, as your FOMA terminal phone numbers.

### Setting Phone Number Details




Default Multi Number call: OFF,  
Name: 基本契約番号・付加番号1・付加番号2,  
Ring tone: 着信音1

- You cannot change the phone number displayed under "Basic Number". However, you can set the ring tone using the Incoming set, etc.

**1** From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Multi Number] → [Number Setting] and press .



**2** Set each item.

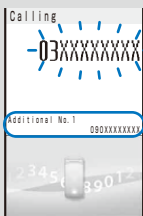
Item	Description												
Multi Number call	Select [ON]/[OFF] of the Multi Number call. [ON] : Enable to select a phone number to be used for placing a call from the Call menu. [OFF] : You cannot select a phone number when you place a call.												
	Enter a name within 10 full-width or 20 half-width characters.												
	Enter a phone number within 26 digits.												
	Select a ring tone from MUSIC/i-motion/Melody of the Data Box. • You can set the following files. You can select a Chaku-Uta® from [i-motion].												
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Category</th> <th>File format</th> <th>File size</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MUSIC</td> <td>AAC-LC/ HE-AAC</td> <td>Max. 5M bytes</td> </tr> <tr> <td>i-motion※</td> <td>—</td> <td>Max. 2M bytes</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Melody</td> <td>SMF/MFI</td> <td>Max. 350K bytes</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Category	File format	File size	MUSIC	AAC-LC/ HE-AAC	Max. 5M bytes	i-motion※	—	Max. 2M bytes	Melody	SMF/MFI	Max. 350K bytes
Category	File format	File size											
MUSIC	AAC-LC/ HE-AAC	Max. 5M bytes											
i-motion※	—	Max. 2M bytes											
Melody	SMF/MFI	Max. 350K bytes											
	※ Some i-motion may not be set. • To mute the ring tone, select [Silent].												

**3** Press  (Complete).

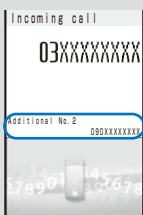
The details of a phone number are set.

- If you do not yet subscribe to the Multi Number Service, use the FOMA terminal with the Multi Number call set to [OFF].

- If the Multi Number call is set to [ON], a phone number and name associated with the Multi Number (Basic Number/Additional No.1/Additional No.2) selected in the Call menu are displayed while placing a call.



- When you receive a call, a phone number and name associated with the used Multi Number (Basic Number/Additional No.1/Additional No.2) being used are displayed.



- If the UIM is removed or changed to another card, the Multi Number setting (name, phone number, etc.) saved in the FOMA terminal may be deleted in some cases. If this happens, set them again.

- When you place a call from the Redial or Received record, the Multi Number previously used for placing/receiving a call is displayed and the call is placed using this number.

## Setting an Originating Phone Number

You can select a phone number to be used when you place a call.

- 1 From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Multi Number] → [Set Multi Number] and press **OK**.

- 2 Select an originating phone number → [Yes] and press **OK**.

The phone number you use for placing a call is set.

To check the phone number you use for placing a call

From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Multi Number] → [Check Multi Number].

- You can select a phone number manually in the Call menu when you place a call (P.53).

## Using OFFICEED

<OFFICEED>

“OFFICEED” is a fixed-rate service within a group provided by IMCS (Indoor Mobile Communication System). You may need to apply separately to use this service.

- For more information, see the DoCoMo’s website for business customers (<http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/>).

## Saving a New Service to Use It

<Additional service (USSD) registration>

When DoCoMo adds a new network service, you can save the service in the Menu and use it.

- 1 From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Additional service] and press **OK**.

- 2 Set each item.

Menu item	Operation
Register USSD	<p>[Register USSD] → [Unregistered] → <b>OK</b> (Edit) → Enter a name of the service at [Service] (within 10 full-width or 20 half-width characters) → Enter a USSD command at [USSD] (within 20 digits) → <b>OK</b> (Complete).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To use a service Select [Register USSD] → a service.</li> <li>● To delete a service [Register USSD] → Move the cursor to a service and press <b>OK</b> (Func) → Select [Delete one] (to delete all services, select [Delete all] → enter the Security code) → Select [Yes].</li> </ul>
Register ans word	<p>[Register ans word] → [Unregistered] → <b>OK</b> (Edit) → Enter an answering message at [Answer wording] (within 10 full-width or 20 half-width characters) → Enter a USSD command at [USSD] (within 20 digits) → <b>OK</b> (Complete).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To delete an answering message [Register ans word] → Move the cursor to an answering message and press <b>OK</b> (Func) → Select [Delete one] (to delete all answering messages, select [Delete all] → enter the Security code) → Select [Yes].</li> </ul>

# Data Communication

For detailed information on Data Communication, see the “Manual for Data Communication” (PDF format) included in the supplied CD-ROM. You need Adobe Reader (Version 6.0 or later is recommended) to read the “Manual for Data Communication” (PDF format). If Adobe Reader is not installed on your PC, install it from the same CD-ROM, which also contains the Adobe Reader software.

For details on using Adobe Reader, see the Help that is installed with the software.

About Data Communication .....	266
Before Using Data Communication .....	267
Preparations and Flow of Data Communication .....	268
AT Commands .....	268
About the Supplied CD-ROM .....	268
Introduction of DoCoMo keitai datalink .....	268

## About Data Communication

You can use the FOMA terminal for three types of data communication, packet communication, 64K data communication, and data transfer.

- The FOMA terminal does not support Remote Wakeup.
- The FOMA terminal does not support FAX communication.
- The FOMA terminal does not support IP connection.
- If you are going to connect the FOMA terminal to DoCoMo's "sigmarion II"/"sigmarion III"/"musea" PDA to perform data communication, you should update "sigmarion II"/"musea". For details about updating, see the DoCoMo's website.

### Packet Communication

A charge applies to this type of communication based on the volume of exchanged data (maximum reception speed 384kbps, maximum transmission speed 64kbps).

You can perform packet communication by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC using the FOMA USB Cable (optional) and making the necessary settings. Use a FOMA packet communication-compliant access point such as DoCoMo's Internet connection service "mopera U"/"mopera". You can also exchange data by accessing an in-house LAN connected to the FOMA network.

- Note that packet communication could be expensive if you exchange large volumes of data such as viewing sites or Internet home pages that contain images or downloading files.

### 64K Data Communication

A charge applies to this type of communication based on the duration of a communication (communication speed 64kbps).

You can perform 64K data communication by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC using the FOMA USB Cable (optional) and making the necessary settings. Use a FOMA 64K data communication-compliant access point such as DoCoMo's Internet connection service "mopera U"/"mopera" or ISDN synchronous 64K access points.

- Note that 64K data communication could be expensive if it is performed for a long period of time.

### Data Transfer

This type of communication is used to exchange data using the infrared or iC communication or the FOMA USB Cable (optional) and no charge is required. Using infrared communication, you can exchange data with a device such as the FOMA terminal or a PC that is equipped with the infrared communication function.

## Precautions on Use

### Usage Fee of Internet Service Provider

When you use the Internet, a usage fee is required for your Internet service provider. This usage fee, which is separate from the FOMA service charges, must be paid directly to the Internet service provider. For details about usage fees, contact your Internet service provider.

You can use DoCoMo's Internet connection service "mopera U"/"mopera".

To use "mopera U", you need to subscribe to this service (paid service). No monthly charge is required to use "mopera" and you do not need to subscribe to it.

### Setting a Host (Such as an Internet Service Provider)

The host for packet communication is different from the host for 64K data communication. To use packet communication, use a packet communication-compliant host; to use 64K data communication, use a FOMA 64K data communication-compliant host or ISDN synchronous 64K-compliant host.

- You cannot connect to a DoPa access point.
- You cannot connect to a PHS 64K/32K data communication access point such as PIAFS.

### User Authentication for Network Access

User authentication (ID and password) may be required when connecting to some hosts. If user authentication is required, enter your ID and password on the communication software (dial-up network) for connecting to the host. The Internet service provider or network administrator of the host assigns an ID and password. For details, contact your Internet service provider or network administrator of the host.

### Access Authentication for the Use of a Browser

When a FirstPass-compatible site that you access through the Internet browser on your PC requires the FirstPass (user certificate) as an access authentication, install the FirstPass PC software from the supplied CD-ROM and perform necessary settings. For details, see "FirstPassManual" (PDF format) in the [FirstPassPCSoft] folder on the CD-ROM. You need Adobe Reader (Version 6.0 or later is recommended) to read "FirstPassManual" (PDF format). If Adobe Reader is not installed on your PC, install it from the same CD-ROM, which also contains the Adobe Reader software. For details on using Adobe Reader, see the Help that is installed with the software.

## Conditions of Packet and 64K Data Communication

The following conditions are necessary to perform communication using the FOMA terminal.

- The FOMA USB Cable (optional) can be used on your PC.
- Your PDA must have FOMA packet and 64K data communication support.
- You must be inside of the FOMA's service area.
- The host for packet communication must have FOMA packet communication support.
- The host for 64K data communication must have FOMA 64K or ISDN synchronous 64K data communication support.

Note, however, that even if you comply with the above conditions, you may not be able to perform communication if the base station is congested or radio wave condition is poor.

## Before Using Data Communication

### About the Operating Environment

Operating environment of a PC to be used for data communication is as follows.

Item	Required environment
PC main unit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• PC/AT compatible machine with a built-in or removable CD-ROM drive</li><li>• USB port (Universal Serial Bus Specification 1.1 compliant)</li></ul>
OS※1	Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP, Windows Vista (Japanese version)
Required memory※2	Windows 2000 Professional: 64MB or more Windows XP: 128MB or more Windows Vista: 512MB or more
Hard drive capacity※2	5MB or more free space
Display	High color (65,536 colors) and high resolution (800×600 dots) or over (recommended)

※1 Operation on a PC running upgraded OS is not guaranteed.

※2 The required memory and hard drive capacity may vary depending on the PC system configuration.

### Other Necessary Items

Other than the FOMA terminal and a PC, the following hardware and software are necessary.

- FOMA USB Cable (optional) or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional)
- Supplied CD-ROM "FOMA SO704i CD-ROM"

● This manual assumes that you use the FOMA USB Cable (optional).

● Purchase the exclusive "FOMA USB Cable" or "FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01". A generic USB cable for a PC connection cannot be used because it has a different connector shape.

### Definition of terms

#### ● Administrator

An administrator is authorized access to all Windows XP, Windows 2000 Professional, and Windows Vista systems. At least one user with Administrator privilege is set for each PC. Normally, a user without Administrator privilege cannot install the communication configuration files (drivers). For more information on Administrator privilege, contact the manufacturer of your PC or a representative of Microsoft Corporation.

#### ● APN (Access Point Name)

A character string used for identifying the Internet service provider host or in-house LAN for packet communication. For example, the APN of "mopera U" is "mopera.net".

#### ● cid (Context Identifier)

A registration number available when you save a packet communication host (APN) in the FOMA terminal. You can save up to 10 numbers from one to 10 for the FOMA terminal.

Default cid of the FOMA terminal

Registration number (cid)	Host (APN)
1	mopera.ne.jp (mopera)
2	Undefined
3	mopera.net (mopera U)
4-10	Undefined

#### ● DNS (Domain Name System)

DNS is a system that converts a domain name (example: nttdocomo.co.jp) into an IP address, which is used by a PC.

#### ● IrDA (Infrared Data Association)

IrDA is an organization that establishes infrared communication-related standards.

#### ● IrMC (Ir Mobile Communication)

Standards established for the purpose of data transfer between mobile phones and between PDAs (personal digital assistant). You can exchange phone numbers and schedule data between mobile phones or PDAs equipped with an IrMC-compliant infrared data port.

#### ● OBEX (Object Exchange)

OBEX is one of the global standards for data communication. You can exchange data between OBEX-compliant mobile phones, PCs, digital cameras, and printers.

#### ● QoS (Quality of Service)

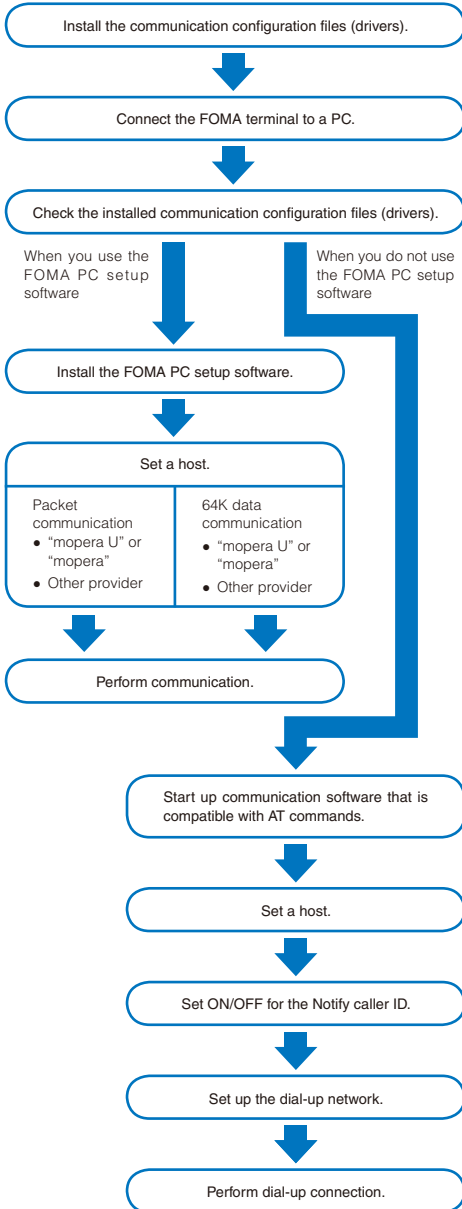
Service quality technology that enables the user to use a communication line in accordance with requirements. If you are using the FOMA terminal, you can set the communication speed for connection.

#### ● 通信設定最適化 (Optimizing the communication settings)

"通信設定最適化" is a "TCP parameter setting" tool that makes optimal use of TCP/IP transmission capabilities for packet communication on the FOMA network. To make the most of the communication performance of the FOMA terminal, you need to configure the communication settings using this software.

## Preparations and Flow of Data Communication

The preparations required for performing packet and 64K data communication by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC are given below.



## AT Commands

AT commands are the commands (instructions) that are executed on a PC for setting and changing the functions of the FOMA terminal.

For more information on the AT commands, see the "Manual for Data Communication" (PDF format) included in the supplied CD-ROM.

## About the Supplied CD-ROM

The supplied CD-ROM contains the software required for data communication using the FOMA terminal and the "Manual for Data Communication"/"Kuten Code List" operation instructions (PDF format). For details, see the supplied CD-ROM.

### <Software/PDF>

- ◆ SO704i communication configuration files
- ◆ FOMA PC setup software
- ◆ FOMA byte counter
- ◆ General information about DoCoMo keitai datalink
- ◆ FirstPass PC software
- ◆ General information about mopera U (mopera U start up tool/mopera U connection & setting tool/mopera U requesting original data)
- ◆ SonicStage CP (SonicStage Ver.4.3)
- ◆ "Manual for Data Communication" in PDF format
- ◆ "Kuten Code List" in PDF format
- ◆ Adobe® Reader® 8.0

- When you set the supplied CD-ROM in the PC, a warning window as shown below may appear. This warning appears because of the security setting on the Internet Explorer, however, causing no problem for use. Click [はい].

※ The window example assumes that Windows XP is used as an operating system. The actual window that appears may differ depending on your PC environment.



## Introduction of DoCoMo keitai datalink

"DoCoMo keitai datalink" software is used to make backup files of the Phonebook and mail, etc. to a PC from your mobile phone and edit the data on the PC. This software is provided on the DoCoMo's website. For more information about this software and how to download this software, see the following website. You can also access the following website from the supplied CD-ROM.

<http://datalink.nttdocomo.co.jp>

For more details about the downloading method, data that can be transferred, supporting OS, operating environment, installation method, operation method, and restrictions, see the above website. For the operation procedure after installing the software, see the Help of the software. A FOMA USB Cable (optional) is required to use the DoCoMo keitai datalink software.

# Appendix/External Devices/Troubleshooting

List of Menus .....	270
Preinstalled Data.....	278
Characters Assigned to Keys .....	281
Special Symbols .....	282
Pictographs .....	282
Face Marks .....	283
Common Phrases .....	284
Multiaccess Combinations .....	285
Multitask Combinations .....	286
Services Available on the FOMA Terminal .....	287
Optional and Related Devices .....	288
<b>■ External Device Interface</b>	
Introduction of Movie Player Software .....	289
<b>■ Troubleshooting</b>	
Troubleshooting .....	289
Error Messages .....	291
Warranty and After Sales Services .....	297
i モード故障診断 (i-mode Trouble Diagnosis) Site .....	298
Updating the Software .....	<Software update> 299
Protecting Your Mobile Phone from Harmful Data .....	<Scan function> 303
Specifications .....	306
Number of Saved and Protected Data Items.....	307
About the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phones, etc. ....	308

# List of Menus

- You can enter the figure next to some menu names listed below in the menu display to execute the associated function.

## ■ Normal mode

○: The default setting/s is/are restored. ●: Items deleted

Menu		Default Setting	Reset settings	Reset all data&set	Page		
Entertainment [1]	My Selection [11]	MUSIC Player, Lifetime Calendar, Receive Ir data, BC reader, Alarm	○	○	P.246		
	MUSIC Player [12]	—			P.233		
	Lifetime Calendar [13]	—			P.240		
	Camera [14]	—			P.136		
	Movie [15]	—			P.139		
	microSD [16]	—			P.211		
Mail [2]	Mail box [21]	Inbox	1(ドコモからのお知らせ)		●	P.178	
		Outbox	—		●		
		Draft	—		●		
	Compose msg [22]	—			P.170		
	Compose SMS [23]	—			P.185		
	Templates [24]	—		●※1	P.173		
	Check new msg [25]	—			P.160, 176		
	Check new SMS [26]	—			P.186		
	Receive option [27]	—			P.175		
	Mail setting [28]	Common setting	Melody auto play	ON	○	○	P.184
			i-mode inquiry set	Mail/MessageR/MessageF: Valid	○	○	P.183
			Connection timeout	60sec	○	○	P.159
			Host selection	i-mode (UIM)	○	○※2	P.159
			Dur multi task disp	Prefer alarm	○	○	P.184
			Edit signature	—		●	P.183
		Signature	Auto	○	○	P.183	
		Mail list	List name: List 0-9, Member list: None			●	P.184
		Font size	Medium	○	○	P.114	
		Sort inbox	Sorting criteria/Folder to sort into: None			●	P.182
		Sort outbox	Sorting criteria/Folder to sort into: None			●	P.182
		SMS setting	Language	JPN			P.186
			SMS report	Invalid			
			Validity	3days			
			SMSC	DoCoMo			
			Type of Number	International			
			Address	81903101652			
		Recv option setting	OFF	○	○	P.183	
Attached file pref.		Image	Valid	○	○	P.185	
		Melody	Valid	○	○		
	i-motion	Valid	○	○			
	ToruCa	Valid	○	○			
	Tool data	Valid	○	○			
	Others	Valid	○	○			
Clear Recv ranking	—			●	P.185		
Clear Send ranking	—			●	P.185		

※1 Preinstalled data is not deleted.

※2 Hosts you added are deleted.



Menu		Default Setting	Reset settings	Reset all data&set	Page			
i-mode [3]	i Menu	—			P.152			
	Bookmark	—		●	P.155			
	Screen Memo	—		●	P.157			
	Go to location	Enter URL	—		●	P.155		
		URL list	—		●	P.155		
	Last accessed URL		—		●	P.153		
	i-Channel	Channel list		○	○	P.166		
		Ticker	Stand-by	Std	○	○	P.166	
			Sub display	Std	○	○		
	Reset i-Channel		—			P.166		
	Message R/F	MessageR		—		●	P.161	
		MessageF		—				
	Check new messages		—			●	P.160, 176	
	Common setting (See [Mail] → [Mail setting] → [Common setting])							
	i-mode setting	Font size		Medium	○	○	P.114	
		Display img		ON	○	○	P.159	
		Auto detect.		ON	○	○	P.159	
		Use phone info		Yes	○	○	P.159	
		i-motion setting	Auto replay	ON	○	○	○	P.164
			i-motion type	Std	○	○		
		Sound effect		3	○	○	P.103	
		i-mode arrival act		Prefer PushTalk	○	○	P.84	
		Auto-display		Prefer msgR	○	○	P.160	
SSL list		CA cert.		Valid	○	○	○	P.162
		DoCoMo cert.1		Valid	○	○		
		DoCoMo cert.2		—				
User certificate		—			P.162			
Select host		ドコモ	○	○※3	P.163			
i-appli [4]	i α ppli list		—		●※4	P.190		
	i α ppli setting	Auto start		Yes	○	○	P.194	
		SW description		No	○	○	P.190	
		Volume setting		3	○	○	P.103	
	i α ppli history	Stand-by err hist		—		●	P.196	
		Security err. hist.		—		●		
		Trace result		—		●		
		Auto start err hist		—		●		
i α ppli(microSD)		—			P.196			
Phone [5]	Own number [51]		—		○	P.41		
	Phonebook [52]		—		●	P.92		
	Call record [53]		—		●	P.49		
	PushTalk phonebook [54]		—		●	P.78		
	Record msg [55]	Play rec msg		—		●	P.68	
		Play vphone msg		—		●	P.68	
		Set rec msg	Set	OFF	○	○	P.66	
			To answer	13sec	○	○		
			Answer img (V.phone)	テレビ電話動作中	○	○		
			Record img (V.phone)	テレビ電話動作中	○	○		
Rec voice memo		—			P.247			
Play voice memo		—		●	P.68			
LifeKit [6]	BC reader [61]	Bar code reader		—		P.149		
		Saved data		—		●	P.150	
	Rcv Ir data [62]	Receive		—		P.226		
		Receive all		—		P.226		
	ToruCa [63]		—		●	P.200		
IC card content [64]		—			P.198			

※3 Hosts you added are deleted.

※4 OsaiFu-Keitai-compatible i-α ppli is not deleted.

Menu			Default Setting	Reset settings	Reset all data&set	Page	
LifeKit [6]	Data Security Service [65]	Connect to Center	—			P.97	
		Sent/rec'd PB data	—			P.98	
	Alarm [66]	Service setting	Send phonebook img	No	○	○	P.97
		Select alarm		OFF	○	○	P.242
		Auto power on		OFF	○	○	
	Schedule [67]		—			●	P.243
	Text Memo [68]		—			●	P.249
Calculator [69]		—				P.249	
Data Box [7]	My picture		—			●※5 P.204	
	MUSIC		—			●※5 P.232	
	i-motion		—			●※5 P.207	
	Melody		—			●※5 P.211	
	Chara-den		—			●※5 P.209	
Settings [8]	Display	Stand-by disp.	Stand-by	Pattern	○	○	P.107
			Ticker	Std	○	○	
			Calendar/Clock	Type: LTC/Clock, Font color: Blk, Clock style: 12h	○	○	
			Soft key	ON	○	○	
	Sub display	Ticker	Std	○	○	P.110	
		Power saver	15sec	○	○		
	Backlight	Adjust light	3	○	○	P.110	
		Keypad light	ON	○	○		
		Backlight always on	Charging/Internet: OFF, Videophone/Pict. Shoot/ Movie shoot/Movie play: ON	○	○		
		Illumination	ON	○	○		
	Power saver		1min	○	○	P.111	
	Menu setting	Menu mode	Normal	○	○	P.112	
		Icon setting	Entertainment/Mail/i-mode/i αppli/Phone/LifeKit/Data Box/Settings/NW Services: Pattern	○	○		
	Menu pattern		Main body color "PINK"; BUTTERFLY, Main body color "PURPLE": STAR, Main body color "SILVER": SHINE	○	○	P.112	
	Anim setting	Calling	音声発着信中	○	○	P.108	
		V.phone calling img	テレビ電話発着信中	○	○		
		Mail sending img	バケット通信	○	○		
		Check new message	バケット通信	○	○		
	Font size	Phonebook	Large	○	○	P.114	
		Call record	Large	○	○		
Mail		Medium	○	○			
Internet		Medium	○	○			
Call	Incoming set	Call	Ring tone: 着信音1, Ring volume: 3, Incoming image: 音声発着信中, Vibrator: OFF, Color: C9:Color9	○	○	P.100	

※5 Preinstalled data is not deleted.

Menu		Default Setting		Reset settings	Reset all data&set	Page	
Settings [8]	Call	Incoming set	Videophone	Link incoming call: OFF, Ring tone: 着信音1, Ring volume: 3, Incoming image: テレビ電話発着信中, Vibrator: OFF, Color: C9:Color9	○	○	P.100
			PushTalk	Ring tone: 着信音1, Ring volume: 3, Vibrator: OFF, Color: C9:Color9	○	○	
			Mail	Ring tone: 着信音1, Ring volume: 3, Receiving img: パケット通信, Vibrator: OFF, Color: C9:Color9, Ring time: 4sec	○	○	
			MessageR	Link receive mail: ON, Ring tone: 着信音1, Ring volume: 3, Receiving img: パケット通信, Vibrator: OFF, Color: C9:Color9, Ring time: 4sec	○	○	
			MessageF				
		Missed call	ON	○	○	P.113	
		Videophone	Display setting	Main-Other side	○	○	P.70
			Set outgoing image	Camera image: ON, Substitute image: Dimo	○	○	P.70
			Visual preference	Normal	○	○	P.71
			Auto redial(voice)	OFF	○	○	P.71
			Hands-free	ON	○	○	P.71
			V.ph while packet	Prefer V.phone	○	○	P.72
		Call display	Phonebook image	ON	○	○	P.109
			Name	ON	○	○	
		Call assist	Sub-address	ON	○	○	P.57
			Prefix setting	—		○	P.54
			Any key ans	ON	○	○	P.60
			Set ring start time	Set: OFF, Start time: 4sec, Missed call display: OFF	○	○	P.127
		Call setting	Volume	3	○	○	P.103
			Recnct ALM	High	○	○	P.57
	Setting when folded		Voice call/V.phone: Disconnect, PushTalk: Speaker call	○	○	P.61	
	Call quality	Quality alarm	OFF	○	○	P.104	
		Reduce noise	ON	○	○	P.58	
	Earphone	Auto answer	Set: OFF, To answer: 5sec	○	○	P.251	
		Earphone	Earph.+speaker	○	○	P.104	
		Earphone SW	Set: OFF, Memory number: 999	○	○	P.250	
		Earphone mic	Valid earphone	○	○	P.251	
	Self mode	OFF	○	○	P.122		
	Application	LTC	Display setting	Photo: Display: All, Select folder: i-mode Received mail/Sent mail: Display: All, Select mail address: None Schedule/Birthday: Display: All	○	○	P.241
			Memory auto display	Normal	○	○	

Menu		Default Setting	Reset settings	Reset all data&set	Page		
Settings [8]	Application	Mail (See [Mail] → [Mail setting])			—		
		i-mode (See [i-mode] → [i-mode setting])			—		
		i α ppli (See [i α ppli] → [i α ppli setting])			—		
		Phonebook	Which PB to use	Phonebook	○	○	P.93
			Which way to disp.	Alphabet	○	○	
			Font size	Large	○	○	
			Set image display	ON	○	○	
		Call record	Save image setting	ON	○	○	
			Record display	ON	○	○	P.124
		Call record	Font size	Large	○	○	P.114
			PushTalk	Auto answer setting	OFF	○	○
		Set ring time		30sec	○	○	P.82
		Caller ID		OFF	○	○	P.83
		i-mode arrival act		Prefer PushTalk	○	○	P.84
		P-Talk arrival act		Call Rejection	○	○	P.83
		Hands-free		ON	○	○	P.84
		Setting when folded		Speaker call	○	○	P.84
		Record msg (See [Phone] → [Record msg] → [Set rec msg])			—		
		ToruCa	ToruCa receive	Yes	○	○	P.201
			Auto recognition	OFF	○	○	P.201
			Duplication check	ON	○	○	P.202
		IC act. Notice	By vibrator	ON	○	○	P.202
			By LED	ON	○	○	
		Schedule	Set holidays	For today: Annual holidays established by the Japanese National Holidays Law, Day of the week: Sun	○	○	P.246
			Schedule alarm	Alarm: Alarm(std), Alarm volume: 3, Vibrator: OFF, Color: C5:Color5	○	○	P.244
		Input method	Edit user dict	—		●	P.258
			Edit prediction	—		●	
			Dictionaries	—		●	P.258
			Select conversion	Prediction	○	○	P.255
			Edit common phrases	See Common Phrases (P.284)	○	○	P.256
			Reset data	—			P.258
		Lock/ Security	Lock all		OFF		
	IC card lock		IC card lock	OFF	○	○	P.202
			IC lock(power-off)	Last status	○	○	
	PIM lock		OFF			P.123	
	Secret display		OFF	○	○	P.125	
	Key dial lock		OFF	○	○	P.124	
	Acpt/Rjct call		Set	OFF	○	○	P.126
			Phone No.	—		●	
			Group list	—		●	
	Reject unknown		OFF	○	○	P.128	
	Denied no ID		User Unset	OFF	○	○	P.127
			PublicPhone	OFF	○	○	
			Not supported	OFF	○	○	
	Management	Date/time	Auto time set	ON	○	○	P.40
			Manual clock set	Date: ---/---/---, Time: ---:--		○	
		Language		日本語			P.114

Menu			Default Setting	Reset settings	Reset all data&set	Page		
Settings [8]	Management	Manner mode	Set	OFF	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	P.106	
			Mode	Manner	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		
			Original manner	Vibrator: OFF, Phone volume: SD (Step down), Mail volume/Alarm volume: 3, Keypad sound: 1, Charge sound/Battery ALM: ON, Whisper mode: OFF	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		
		Change code			0000		<input type="radio"/>	P.118
		UIM setting	PIN1 code setting		OFF			P.118
			Change PIN1 code		--			P.119
			Change PIN2 code		--			
		Scan function	Update		--			P.304
			Set auto-update		--			P.304
			Set scan		Scan function/Message scan: Valid	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	P.303
			Version		--			P.305
		SW Update			--			P.300
		Battery level			--			P.38
		Set basic tone	Keypad sound		1	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	P.102
			Stereo&3D		ON	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	
			Charge sound		ON	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	
		Storage info			--			P.223
		USB mode setting			--			P.217
		Reset	Reset settings		--			P.251
			Reset all data&set		--			P.251
		Init. setting	Date/time		--			P.39
			Change code		Yet (0000)		<input type="radio"/>	
			Keypad sound		1	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	
Font size			Phonebook/Call record: Large, Mail/Internet: Medium	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>			
PushTalk caller ID			OFF	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>			
NW Services [9]	Voice Mail	Activate		--			P.260	
		Set ring time	Ring time	--				
		Deactivate		--				
		Check setting		--				
		Play messages		--				
		Voice Mail setting		--				
		Check messages		--				
		Tone/Vibrate notice		ON	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		
		Delete VM icon		--				
		Missed Call notice	Activate		--			
	Deactivate		--					
	Check setting		--					
	Call Waiting	Activate		--			P.261	
		Deactivate		--				
		Check setting		--				
	Call Forwarding	Activate		--			P.261	
		Deactivate		--				
		Change FWD number		--				
		If FWD number busy		--				
		Check setting		--				
	Bar Nuisance Calls	Register Caller		--			P.261	
		Reg. selected No.		--				
		Delete all entries		--				
Delete last entry		--						
Check No. of entry		--						
Notify Caller ID	Set Notification		--			P.41		
	Check setting		--					

Menu		Default Setting	Reset settings	Reset all data&set	Page	
NW Services [9]	Caller ID Request	Activate	—		P.262	
		Deactivate	—			
		Check setting	—			
Call Cost/ Duration	Last call cost	Voice call	*****YEN		P.247	
		Digital	*****YEN			
	Last call duration	Voice call	0:00		●	
		Digital	0:00			
	Total call cost	Total calls cost	0YEN			
		Reset date/time	---/-/-- --:--		○	
	Total calls dur.	Voice call	0:00		●	
		Digital	0:00		●	
		Reset date/time	---/-/-- --:--		○	
	Reset		—			P.248
	Auto reset		OFF			P.248
Cost limit notice	Set	OFF	○	○	P.248	
	Limit	—	○	○		
	Notification	Alarm+Stand-by	○	○		
	Dlt max cost icon	—			P.249	
In-call arrival act	Activate	—			P.263	
	Deactivate	—				
	Check setting	—				
Arrival Call Act		Answer	○	○	P.263	
Remote Control	Activate	—			P.263	
	Deactivate	—				
	Check setting	—				
Dual Network	Switch Dual Network	—			P.262	
	Check setting	—				
English Guidance	Guidance setting	—			P.262	
	Check setting	—				
Service Numbers	ドコモ故障問合せ (Contact for Repairs)	—			P.262	
	ドコモ総合案内・受付 (General Inquiries)	—				
Additional service	Register USSD	Service: Unregistered, USSD: —		○	P.264	
	Register ans word	Answer word: Unregistered, USSD: —		○		
Multi Number	Set Multi Number	—			P.264	
	Check Multi Number	—			P.264	
Number Setting	Multi Number call	OFF	○	○	P.263	
		Basic Number	Name: 基本契約番号			○
	Additional No.1	Name: 付加番号1, Phone number: —				○
		Ring tone: 着信音1		○		○
	Additional No.2	Name: 付加番号2, Phone number: —				○
Ring tone: 着信音1			○	○		
Chaku-moji	Create message	—		●	P.51	
	Set Message display	Only calls w/ID	○	○	P.52	
Int'l dial assist	Auto conversion	ON	○	○	P.55	
	Int'l prefix	① World Call 009130010		○		
	Country code	See P.55.		○		
V.ph switch notice	Indication ON	—			P.72	
	Indication OFF	—				
	Check setting	—				

## ■ Simple mode

		Menu		Page		
Phone	[1]	Phonebook	[11]	P.92		
		Call record	[12]	P.49		
		Record message	[13]	Set rec msg	[131]	P.66
				Play rec msg	[132]	P.68
				Play Vphone msg	[133]	P.68
Own number	[14]	P.41				
Mail	[2]	Inbox	[21]	P.178		
		Outbox	[22]	P.178		
		Draft	[23]	P.178		
		Compose message	[24]	P.170		
		Check new msg	[25]	P.160, 176		
i-mode	[3]	i Menu	[31]	P.152		
		Bookmark	[32]	P.155		
		Screen Memo	[33]	P.157		
		i-Channel	[34]	Channel list		P.166
				Ticker		P.166
Reset i-Channel				P.166		
Camera	[4]	Shoot	[41]	P.136		
		Play	[42]	P.204		
Settings/Tools	[5]	Stand-by disp.	[51]	P.107		
		Incoming set	[52]	Call	[521]	P.100
				Mail	[522]	P.100
		Alarm	[53]	P.242		
		Calculator	[54]	P.249		
		Call Cost/Durat	[55]	P.247		
Voice Mail	[56]	P.260				
Main menu		[6]	P.270			

# Preinstalled Data

## My picture

### ● Preinstalled

Fantasia



音声発着信中



Daylight wind



テレビ電話発着信中



Moonlight night



テレビ電話(代替)



Dazzling road



テレビ電話動作中



Hopeful sky



パケット通信



LocoRoco



メール受信完了



### ● Stamp&Frame



**HAPPY BIRTHDAY!**

● The color and image for [Fantasia] change in synchronization with the time zone.





## ■ i-motion

- Preinstalled
- Symbol Movie



## ■ Menu pattern



## ■ Templates

ありがとう



おはよう



あそびにいこう



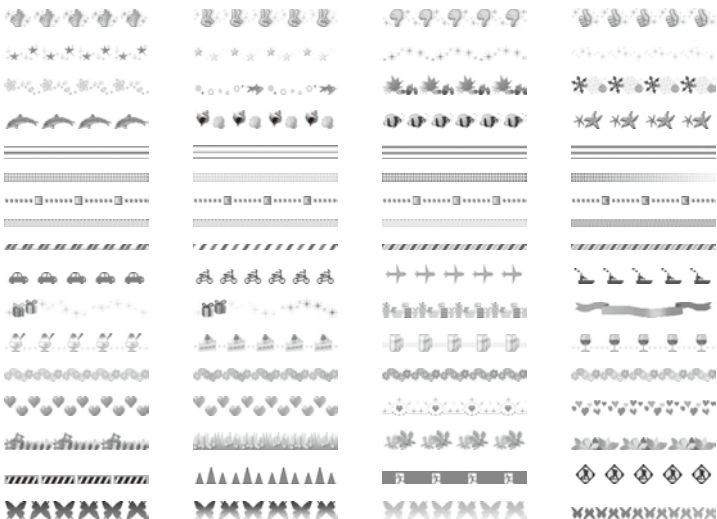
LocoRoco誕生日編



LocoRocoお疲れ様



## ■ Quick deco. Mail



# Characters Assigned to Keys

Character mode Keys	Kanji/Hiragana mode ※	Katakana mode ※	Alphabetic mode ※	Numeric mode
[1]	あいうえお あいうえお	アイウエオ アイウエオ	. @ / : - ~ - 1	1
[2]	かきくけこ	カキクケコ <span style="background-color: #cccccc;">カ</span> <span style="background-color: #cccccc;">ケ</span>	A B C a b c 2	2
[3]	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	D E F d e f 3	3
[4]	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ	G H I g h i 4	4
[5]	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	J K L j k l 5	5
[6]	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	M N O m n o 6	6
[7]	まみむめも	マミムメモ	P Q R S p q r s 7	7
[8]	やゆよゃゅょ	ヤユヨャュョ	T U V t u v 8	8
[9]	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	W X Y Z w x y z 9	9
[0]	わをんわ□、 。 - ・ ! ?	ワヲン <span style="background-color: #cccccc;">ワ</span> □、。 。 - ・ ! ? 「 」	□ ! ? - , ' ; : ( ) " _ ~ - & ¥ 0	0
[*]	、 。 - ・ ! ?	“ ” 、 。 - ・ ! ? 「 」	! ? - , ' ; : ( ) " _ ~ - & ¥	*
[#]	Display character assignments in the reverse order (before acceptance of characters)/Line feed (after acceptance of characters)			#
◀	Move cursor left			
▶	Move cursor right/Insert half-width space (blank) (only when there is no character after the cursor)			

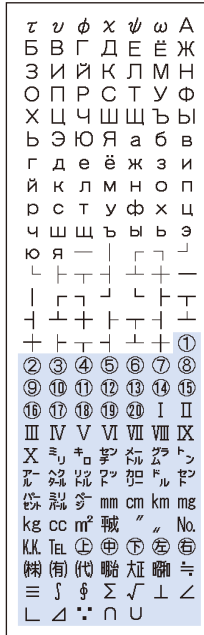
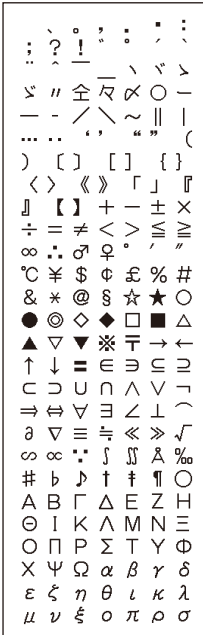
※ If you press a key for over a second, the assigned characters are switched one after another.

- □ indicates a space (blank). A space (blank) is provided in two sizes: a full-width and half-width sizes and counted as one full-width or half-width character.
- Characters marked with ■ appear in the full-width character mode only.
- Blue colored characters appear in the half-width character mode only.
- Every time you press a key, the character changes to the next one that is assigned to that key. If you press and hold the key, the characters change continuously.
- Press [#] after finalizing a character to start a new line. "↵" appears to indicate it. A new line is counted as a full-width character.
- Press [\*] before finalizing a character to insert a voice or semivoice sound symbol and change its case from upper to lower case or vice versa. Press [#] to change the character assigned to a key in the reverse order.
- In the Alphabetic mode, the case attribute of the character entered last or converted by pressing [\*] is inherited to the next character.

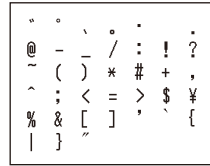
# Special Symbols

- Symbols marked with ■ may not be displayed correctly when sending to i-mode non-compatible mobile phones or PCs.

## ■ Full-width symbols



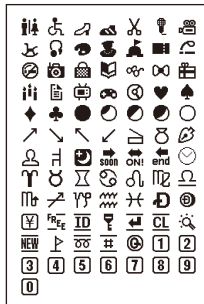
## ■ Half-width symbols



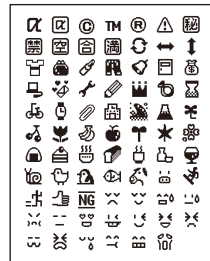
# Pictographs

- Pictographs may not be displayed correctly when sending to i-mode non-compatible mobile phones or PCs.
- "Pictographs 2" may not be displayed correctly depending on the type of recipient's i-mode compatible mobile phone.
- For SMS, pictographs other than "♥", "♥", or "☎" are replaced with a half-width space (blank).

## ■ Pictographs 1



## ■ Pictographs 2



# Face Marks

When you enter the following words in the kanji/hiragana mode, Kao moji (face marks) are entered.

• Some of the following face marks may be different from those actually displayed.

※ Face marks that belong to other than the “かお” category appear only when the Prediction conversion is used.

Word	Kao moji	Word	Kao moji	Word	Kao moji	Word	Kao moji	Word	Kao moji	Word	Kao moji
あいっつ	△△	がーん	(□□)!!	かお※	(^ ^)	すみません	m( )m	にこにこ	:-)	べこり	_( )_
あくび	\(^o^)/		(:ロ:)!!		(o・v・o)	たのしい	(^-)		:->		<m( )m>
	\(θoθ)/		(●d●)		(^▽^)		(^o)	にやり	(^-)		_( )_
あせ	(^_^)	かお※	m( )m		(^ _)		(^)	ねてる	(-)_zzz	ほーい	(^o)
	^_^;		(^o)		(x_x:)		(*(^*))	はーい	(^-)/		(^o)/
	(^^;		o(^-^o		^/		(^-:)	ばいばい	(^-)/^^	ほし	(*o*)
	(-:;		(***)		(^o_0)	たら	(-o:)		(^-)/^	ぼりぼり	(^^)
	(^_A		(^_^);		(..)	ちゆつ	(^・^)	Chu♪	(**o*)/^		f^_;
あら	(/→)/		(^o)		( )_		Chu!(^3)-☆		(:;)/^^	むちゃむちゃ	(^-~)ξ
いっぴく	(-→)y~		(T_T)		(^^)		(^ε^)		(^-)/^^	めかめか	(@_@)
	△△y~		△△	かんばい	(^▽^)(^▽^)	つつこみ	v(^_)	はずかしい	(o^-o)	めもめも	φ( )
	(^^)y~		(ToT)	きず	:-*	てれ	(***)		(***)	よしよし	(T_T)\(-)_
ういんく	(^-)		(●o●)	きやー	o(≥▽≤o	どきどき	(@o@)	ばちばち	(^o)//^^^^^^	らじや	(^^)
うーん	(#+)		(^-)		o(≥▽≤o	どてどて	(o_ )o	ばんざい	\(^o)/		(≥▽≤)
ういぬ	(o・v・o)		)^o(	きやばは	(≥▽≤)/	ながれぬ	★彡		\(^o)/	ひょうかい	(^^)
	(^▽^)		(-:)	←	(o^-)b	なく	(T_T)	びくつ	(***)		(≥▽≤)
うん	(→( )		(:;)	←←	(^-)b		(:;)		(@_@)	わーい	(^o)
えーん	(ToT)		(@_@)	←←	(-)_zzz		(T_T)		(+)		(^u)
えっ	(@_@:)		(^-)	くすん	(:;		(T^T)		(***)		(^o)
	(@_@)		(+)	くたばる	△△	なぜ	(?_?)	ひやあせ	(^o:)		(^v)
えと	(+o)		(^^)		(***)		(?d?)		(^-:)		(●o●)
えへへ	(o^v^o)		(-)		(+)	にげろ	ε=ε:(^▽^)		(^-:)		)^o(
おいおい	v(^_)		^_^;	さあ	=(^~^:)_	にこにこ	(^o)		(^-:)		\(^o)/
おお	(^o^o)/		>^<	さかな	o<<		(**_*)	ぶあいと	p(^)q		p(d(^o^o)b♪
おーい	(^o)/		( )_	さざえ	8(***)8		(^-)		p(^)q		(^o)
	(^o)/		^^;	じーつ	(^-)		(**▽**)	ぶい	(^-)v		o(^o)o
	(^^)/		( )_	しくしく	(T_T)		(**o*)		(^-)v		(**□**)
	(^-)/		△ε△		(:;)		(o^-o)		(^-)v		\(^▽^)/
おこる	△△		△△		(:o)		(^-)		v(^)v		(**▽**)
	(-#)		(-)		(:;)		(=^-)		v(^)v		(^o)
	(-#)		(^-)		(:;)		=^ε=		(^o)v	わーん	o(T□)o
	(^ε^)		(o^-o)		(^-)		8->	ぶつ	\(^-)/	わくわく	o(^o)o
おなかい	△△		(^・ω・^)		(:;)		(#・#)	ぶんぶん	:-<		o(^o)o
おりや	(^>d)/		( )_		(:;)		<!>	べこり	m( )m		o(^o)o
	(^o^o)/		(^d)	じと	(-)		:		( )_	わたわた	σ(^:)?

# Common Phrases

Category	Common phrase	
0 Internet	0 .co.jp	5 .go.jp
	1 .ne.jp	6 @docomo.ne.jp
	2 .com	7 http://
	3 .or.jp	8 https://
1 KAO MOJI1	4 .ac.jp	9 www.
	0 ^^;	5 (>_<)
	1 (^_^)	6 (^_^ ヽ)
	2 >_<	7 (@_@)
2 KAO MOJI2	3 (:_;)	8 m(____)m
	4 (+_+)	9 (^-^)/~~
	0 o(^w^)^o	5 *^0^)/
	1 (o^-')b	6 (^-^)^y-~~
3 KAO MOJI3	2 \(^δ~)/	7 (o`v´o)
	3 (ρ_ )o	8 (`□´)
	4 (▽▽)v	9 (¥△¥:)
	0 (≥ε≤)	5 (^•^)^Chu♪
4 Greetings	1 (≥▽≤)ヽ	6 ˆ(◎_◎)/ヽ
	2 (:□: )!!	7 ε=┐(;▽▽)┘
	3 (u_u)o〃	8 ♪d(〇〇)b♪
	4 =^ε^=	9 へ(^-)又(^o^)/
5 Business	0 おはようございます	5 お疲れさまでした
	1 おやすみなさい	6 お世話になっております
	2 昨日は、どうもありがとうございました	7 こんにちは
	3 行ってきます	8 ごんばんは
6 Private	4 いってらっしゃい	9 よろしくお願い致します
	0 直行します	5 本日の会議は中止となりました
	1 直帰します	6 出欠をご連絡ください
	2 休暇をとります	7 次の指示を待ってください
7 Reply	3 半休します	8 携帯の電源を切ります
	4 電車遅延のため、遅れます	9 メールで連絡してください
	0 遊びに行こう	5 先に行きます
	1 飲みにいきませんか?	6 先に帰ります
8 Original	2 遅れます	7 時間です
	3 変更します	8 何してるの?
	4 中止です	9 どこにいるの?
	0 OKです	5 今忙しい
9	1 NGです	6 後で連絡を入れます
	2 ありがとう	7 保留です
	3 ごめんなさい	8 キャンセルです
	4 待って!	9 時間がありません

# Multiaccess Combinations

The table below indicates whether another event or task is available for each task in progress.

- The FOMA terminal may not operate as indicated in the table below depending on its condition.

○: Available      ×: Unavailable

△: Available if you subscribe to the Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting Service, or Call Forwarding Service

Current status	Another event or task																		
	Voice call		V.phone call		PushTalk		i-mode	i-mode mail		SMS		64K data comm.		Packet comm. (Data comm.)		Software update	Comm. for scanning	Data Security Service	
	Call	Rcv	Call	Rcv	Orig	Rcv		Send	Rcv	Send	Rcv	Call	Rcv	Call	Rcv			Send	Rcv
During a voice call	△※1	△※2	×	△※3,4	×	×※5	○	○	○	○	○	×	×※5	○	○	×	×	○	○
During a videophone call	×	×※5,6	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	×	×※5	×	×	×	×	×	×
During PushTalk communication	×	○※7	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	×※5	×	×	×	×	×	×
During i-mode connection	○	○	○※3	○※9	○※3	○※10	×	○	○	○	○	×	×※11	×	×	×	×	○	○
During sending/receiving i-mode mail	○	○	○※3	○※9	○※3	○※10	○	×	○※12	○※12	○※12	×	×※5	×	×	×	×	○	○
During sending/receiving SMS	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○※12	○※12	○※12	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×
During 64K data communication	×	×※5	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	×	×※5	×	×	×	×	×	×
During packet comm. (Data comm.)	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	×	×※5	×	×	×	×	×	×
Updating software	×	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×※5	×	×	×	×	×	×
Communication for scanning	×	○※3	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×※5	×	×	×	×	×	×
During Data Security Service communication	○	○	○※3	○※9	○※3	○※10	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×

- ※1 If you subscribe to the Call Waiting Service, you can place a call to another recipient while you already have a call in progress.
- ※2 If you subscribe to the Call Waiting Service, you can receive another call while you already have a call in progress. If you do not yet subscribe to the Call Waiting Service, you can receive another call after you disconnect the first call.
- ※3 You can place a voice or videophone call or originate a PushTalk call after disconnecting the current communication.
- ※4 You can select either to continue the current call or to disconnect the current call and accept a call you just received.
- ※5 The FOMA terminal does not perform the receiving operation and a received call is saved in the Received record as a missed call.
- ※6 If you do not yet subscribe to the Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting Service, or Call Forwarding Service, a received call is not saved in the Received record.
- ※7 In either of the following cases, the FOMA terminal notifies you of an incoming voice call and you can select either to "answer a voice call" or to "continue with PushTalk call". (The one that was not selected is terminated.)
  - When the P-Talk arrival act is set to [Answer]
  - When the P-Talk arrival act is set to [Voice Mail] or [Call Forwarding] and you do not subscribe to these services
- ※8 If you originate a PushTalk call, you can place another call to add a member.
- ※9 The FOMA terminal performs the operation set by the V.ph while packet.
  - When the V.ph while packet is set to [Prefer packet] or when the V.ph while packet is set to [V.ph voicemail] or [Call forwarding] and you do not subscribe to these services, the packet communication is continued.
  - When the V.ph while packet is set to [Prefer V.phone], packet communication is disconnected and you can receive a videophone call.
- ※10 The FOMA terminal performs the operation set by the i-mode arrival act.
  - When set to [Prefer i-mode], i-mode communication is continued.
  - When set to [Prefer PushTalk], i-mode communication is disconnected and you can receive a PushTalk call.
- ※11 While you are performing i-mode communication using i-αppli, you can send data after disconnecting the i-mode communication in progress.
- ※12 A combination of the same communication direction, either sending or receiving, is not available.
- ※13 When you set the Host selection to [i-mode(UIM)], "☎" appears.





- ※1 For the multitask combination to the Receive option, see the following functions.  
Recv option setting is [ON] : See "Display site" or "Dur display site".  
Recv option setting is [OFF]: See "Mail setting".
- ※2 Besides the function for displaying a site, functions for displaying the screen memo, Message R/F, and i-Channel are included.
- ※3 When this software update function is executed by reservation, it is performed after a call is disconnected.
- ※4 A displaying function that needs no network communication is executable.
- ※5 When an image recorded using the currently activated Camera/Movie function is not yet saved, the action for "★" is applied.
- ※6 If the i-mode arrival act is set to [Prefer i-mode], the FOMA terminal does not receive a PushTalk call.
- ※7 The Receive option cannot be executed.
- ※8 You cannot execute these functions while [Common setting] is being executed.
- ※9 While a displaying function that uses network communication, such as displaying a site, is being executed, the setting for the i-mode arrival act is applied.
- ※10 [Common setting] cannot be executed.
- ※11 Once you execute another function, you cannot switch to the running i-αppli software.
- ※12 When data exchange is not performed, the action for "●" is applied.
- ※13 If you execute another function during playback of music data, the playback pauses.

## Services Available on the FOMA Terminal

Service	Phone number
Number guide service (paid: service charge + call charge) (Phone numbers of customers who declined to disclose their number information cannot be guided.)	(no area code) 104
Telegram service (paid: telegram fee)	(no area code) 115
Time (paid)	(no area code) 117
Weather (paid)	Area code of the area you want to hear the weather forecast for + 177
Emergency call to Police	(no area code) 110
Emergency call to Fire/Ambulance	(no area code) 119
Emergency call to Maritime rescue	(no area code) 118
Disaster Message Board Service (paid)	(no area code) 171
Collect Call (paid: service charge + call charge)	(no area code) 106

- When placing a Collect Call through 106, the recipient pays for the call charge and a handling fee of 90 yen (94.5 yen including tax) per call (as of June 2007).
- When calling the Directory Assistance at 104, you are required to pay a service charge of 100 yen (105 yen including tax) besides the call charge (as of June 2007). Note that Operator Services are free to the people with impairment in the vision or upper limbs. For more details, contact 116 (NTT Sales Office) from an ordinary phone.
- If you have an ordinary phone with subscription to the Call Forwarding Service and you designate your mobile phone number to forward your calls to, the caller may hear a ringing sound even if the mobile phone is busy, outside of the service area, in the Self mode, or powered off, etc. depending on the settings of the ordinary phone/mobile phone.
- Note that 116 (NTT Sales Office), Dial Q2, Message Dial, Credit calls cannot be called from the FOMA terminal (note that Automatic Credit Calls may be used when calling from ordinary phones to the FOMA terminal).
- This FOMA terminal supports "Emergency call location information".  
If you use the FOMA terminal to place a call to emergency numbers such as 110, 119, or 118, the information of a location where you are calling from (location information) is automatically notified to the Emergency call acceptance organization such as the Police Station. The Emergency call acceptance organization may not be able to figure out your exact location depending on the location where you place a call or radio wave condition.  
If you place a call without the caller ID, such as by entering a phone number with "184" for each call, the location information and phone number are not notified. However, the Emergency call acceptance organization may decide to obtain the location information and phone number regardless of your settings when they consider it is necessary for lifesaving, etc.  
Note that the areas/time for which the "Emergency call location information" is ready to be used vary depending on the preparatory state of each Emergency call acceptance organization.
- When you call the Police (110), Fire/Ambulance (119), or Maritime rescue (118) from the FOMA terminal, clearly indicate that you are calling from a mobile phone, then give your present location and mobile phone number, since the Police or Fire/Ambulance may have to get in contact with you. Also, make a point to call in a stationary position to prevent the call from being dropped. Do not power off the FOMA terminal for at least 10 minutes after the emergency call just in case the Police or Fire/Ambulance may have to get in contact with you.
- Note that you may not connect to the local Fire Department or Police Station depending on where you are calling from. In this case, try to call from a public phone or an ordinary phone in the neighborhood.

## Optional and Related Devices

A variety of commercially available optional devices allows you to expand the FOMA terminal's capabilities by supporting a wide range of applications, including personal and business uses. Some accessories are only available in some areas. For details, please contact our service counter (DoCoMo shop, etc.). For details on optional devices, see the user's manual of each device.

- Battery Pack SO02
- Back Cover SO07
- FOMA AC Adapter 01/02
- FOMA DC Adapter 01/02
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use ※1
- FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
- FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01
- Desktop Holder SO05
- In-Car Holder 01
- Carry Case S 01
- In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 ※2
- FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01
- FOMA USB Cable
- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna (Stand Type)
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01/02
- Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01
- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001/002 ※3
- Stereo Earphone Set P001 ※3
- Earphone Terminal P001 ※3
- Earphone Plug Adapter P001
- Bone conduction microphone/receiver
- Style-Up Panel SO02

※1 For use overseas, a plug adapter that fits the electrical outlets in the country you stay is needed.

※2 FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 is required to connect to FOMA SO704i using USB or charge FOMA SO704i.

※3 The Earphone Plug Adapter is required.

# Introduction of Movie Player Software

To play back a movie (MP4 format file) on a PC, you need QuickTime Player (free) ver. 6.4 or later (or ver. 6.3+3GPP) from Apple Computer, Inc.



You can download QuickTime from the following website.

<http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/>

- To download this software, you need a PC connected to the Internet. A separate communication charge is also required for downloading.
- Check the above website for details about the operating environment, downloading method, operation method, and other information.

## Troubleshooting

First, check if the software update is necessary for the FOMA terminal. If necessary, perform the software update (P.299).

Trouble	Cause and Remedy
Cannot power on the FOMA terminal. (The FOMA terminal cannot be used.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the battery pack is attached properly (P.34).</li> <li>• Check if the battery pack is not run out (P.38).</li> </ul>
The warning tone sounds and does not stop even when you press the Power key, and the FOMA terminal is powered off.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The battery is running out. Charge the battery (P.36).</li> </ul>
The busy tone sounds and the call is not connected, even if you dial up.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if “” appears (P.27).</li> <li>• Check if you enter the area code (P.45).</li> <li>• Check if you dial up in a hurry without hearing the ringing tone (P.45).</li> </ul>
“  ” is displayed and the busy tone sounds.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if you are outside of the service area or in a location with weak radio wave condition (P.27).</li> </ul>
Cannot place a call even if you press the keypad.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the Self mode is set (P.122).</li> <li>• Check if the Key dial lock is set (P.124).</li> </ul>
The dark display appears and cannot operate anything.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the FOMA terminal is powered on (P.39).</li> </ul>
The set stand-by display does not appear and the dark display appears.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the Power saver mode is set (P.111).</li> </ul>
The date is displayed in English.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the Language is set to [English] (P.114).</li> </ul>
Cannot receive a call or the ring tone does not sound.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the Public mode (Drive mode) is set (P.62).</li> <li>• Check if the Ring volume is set to [OFF] (P.101).</li> <li>• Check if the Manner mode is set (P.105).</li> <li>• Check if the Self mode is set (P.122).</li> <li>• Check if the Accept/Reject call is set (P.126).</li> <li>• Check if the Denied no ID is set (P.127).</li> <li>• Check if the Set ring start time is set (P.127).</li> <li>• Check if the Reject unknown is set (P.128).</li> <li>• Check if the ring time of the Voice Mail/Call Forwarding Service is set to 0 seconds (P.260, 261).</li> <li>• Check if the Caller ID Request is set (P.262).</li> <li>• Check if the Mova terminal is enabled for the Dual Network Service (P.262).</li> </ul>

Trouble	Cause and Remedy
The mail and alarm tones sound but the ring tone for an incoming call does not sound.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the Ring volume is set to [OFF] (P.101).</li> <li>• Check if a longer interval (such as 99 sec) is set at [Start time] of the Set ring start time. Set it to a shorter interval (P.127).</li> </ul>
The mail tone sounds but there is no incoming mail.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the Tone/Vibrate notice of the Voice Mail Service is set to [ON]. If it is ON, you are notified of the increase in the number of record messages by the mail tone (P.260).</li> </ul>
An image other than that you set is displayed for an incoming call.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If multiple images are set for the incoming image for voice/videophone call, the image is displayed in the following order of priority (P.88, 91, 101). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Des call display set in the Phonebook</li> <li>2. Des call display set in the Group setting</li> <li>3. Incoming image set in the Incoming set</li> </ol> </li> </ul> <p>When an i-motion or Chaku-Uta Full® is set for the ring tone or an i-motion is set for the incoming image, however, the order of priority may vary.</p>
A ring tone other than that you set sounds for an incoming call.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If multiple ring tones are set for voice/videophone call, the ring tone sounds in the following order of priority (P.88, 91, 100, 263). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ring tone set in the Number Setting (when a call is placed to an Additional No. for the Multi Number)</li> <li>2. Des phone tone set in the Phonebook</li> <li>3. Des phone tone set in the Group setting</li> <li>4. Ring tone set in the Incoming set</li> </ol> </li> </ul> <p>When an i-motion or Chaku-Uta Full® is set for the ring tone or an i-motion is set for the incoming image, however, the order of priority may vary.</p>
A ring tone other than that you set sounds for an incoming mail.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If multiple ring tones are set for mail, the ring tone sounds in the following order of priority (P.88, 91, 100). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Des mail tone set in the Phonebook</li> <li>2. Des mail tone set in the Group setting</li> <li>3. Ring tone set in the Incoming set</li> </ol> </li> </ul> <p>When an i-motion or Chaku-Uta Full® is set for the ring tone, however, the order of priority may vary.</p>
The incoming indicator in the color other than that you set lights for an incoming call or mail.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If multiple incoming indicators are set for voice call/videophone call/mail, the incoming indicator flashes in the following order of priority (P.88, 91, 101). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select phone/mail Illum. set in the Phonebook</li> <li>2. Select phone/mail Illum. set in the Group setting</li> <li>3. Indicator color set in the Incoming set</li> </ol> </li> </ul>
The incoming indicator flashes in certain cycle.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the Missed call is set to [ON] (P.113).</li> </ul>
The charge indicator stays lit.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if [Charging] of the Backlight always on is set to [ON] (P.110). In this setting, it may take time to complete charging, but this is not a malfunction.</li> <li>• Check if you use a function such as the videophone, data communication, and i-αppli while charging the battery. In this case, it may take time to complete charging, but this is not a malfunction.</li> </ul>
The keypad sound is not heard.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the Keypad sound volume is set to [OFF] (P.102).</li> <li>• Check if the Manner mode is set (P.105).</li> </ul>
The display is slow to react on pressing a key.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This may occur when a large amount of data is stored in the FOMA terminal.</li> </ul>
The Total calls cost does not increment.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It does not increment if the counter reaches the upper limit value (about ¥16,770,000) of total calls cost of UIM. Reset the counter to ¥0 (P.248).</li> </ul>

# Error Messages

- In some cases, a 3-digit number may be displayed together with a message. This is a DoCoMo own code that DoCoMo displays on the FOMA terminal.

## A

### Accessing IC card. Cannot delete

- Failed to delete the software because data in the Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-appli IC card is being accessed.

### Address is not valid (451)

- Failed to send the mail because of unknown mail address. Enter the correct mail address and send it again.

### Another function is active. Cannot activate this at the same time

- Another function that cannot be run simultaneously by multitasking is active. Quit the function, if it is not being used, and then retry the operation (P.238).

### Authentication failed

- Failed in verifying the authentication password. Set the password so that it matches the one of the other device and then retry the operation (P.226, 227, 228).
- The authentication type (one/all) does not match the one set for the other device. Set the same authentication type (one/all) on both party to exchange data using the infrared or iC communication (P.226, 227, 228).

### Authentication type is not supported (401)

- Failed to connect to the site, etc. because of the unsupported authentication type.

## C

### Camera function error. Quit the application

- The Camera mode is terminated because of an error occurrence. To continue to use the camera, restart the Camera mode.

### Camera function error. Save the data and quit the application

- The Camera mode is terminated after the image is saved because of an error occurrence. To continue to use the camera, restart the Camera mode.

### Camera function error. Switch to Substitute image

- The videophone image is switched to the substitute image because of an error occurrence. Switch it again to the camera image (P.44).

### Cannot change to memory mode

- Failed to set to the Memory mode because of a communication using the FOMA USB Cable (optional) in progress or a function other than the stand-by display being executed.

### Cannot execute because of memory shortage

- Failed to execute the function because of insufficient memory.

### Cannot move. Not enough memory

- The remaining memory in the microSD memory card is insufficient. Delete unnecessary data (P.156, 157, 181, 201, 220, 245, 249).

### Cannot read. You need to format

- The microSD memory card is not formatted correctly. Format it using the FOMA terminal (P.216).

### Cannot support content

- Data that is not supported by the FOMA terminal is contained in the contents.

### Certificate is rejected (tampered)

- There are some problems with the certificate.

### Check address

- The SMS address exceeds 21 digits or 186/184 is entered at the beginning of the address. Enter the correct address and send it again (P.185).

### Check SMS Center setting

- The incorrect host is set at the SMSC. Restore the host to "DoCoMo", the default setting at the time of purchase (P.186).

### Connection failed

- The host number set for the Host selection is incorrect. Restore the host number to "iモード", the default setting at the time of purchase (P.159).
- Failed to connect because of weak radio wave condition. Retry to connect from a place with better radio wave condition.
- Failed to connect to a line due to a network problem. Retry to connect after a while.
- Failed to connect to a line for some reason when placing a videophone call.

### Connection failed (403)

- Failed to connect to i-mode for some reason. Retry to connect (P.152).

### Connection failed (503)

- Failed to connect to a line due to a network problem. Retry to connect after a while.

### Connection failed (562)

- Failed to connect to the i-mode center. Move to a location with better radio wave condition and then retry the operation.

### Connection interrupted

- Failed to obtain the i-mode data. Retry to obtain it.
- The communication is interrupted because of an error occurrence during data communication.

### Content length exceeds maximum size for i-motion

- Failed to retrieve the data because its volume has exceeded the maximum size.

### Content length exceeds playable size for i-motion

- Failed to retrieve the data because its volume has exceeded the maximum size.

### Continue using XXX (i-αppli name) and transmit data?

- This message appears when the number of times of communication performed while an i-αppli software is used has increased significantly for a certain period of time. To continue using the i-αppli software, select [Yes]. To continue using the i-αppli software after the communication is terminated, select [No]. To quit the i-αppli software, select [End i-αppli].

### Could not move

- Failed to move data because of an error occurrence.

### Could not save

- Failed to save the image, music data, or i-αppli software.
- Failed to save to the microSD memory card.
- Failed to receive data during the infrared/iC communication or data communication with a PC.
- Failed to save the image or melody scanned by the bar code reader.
- Failed to save the i-motion because the size exceeded 2M bytes. You can set a Chaku-Uta Full® with up to 2M bytes of i-motion for the ring tone/Alarm using [Point].

## D

### Data in IC-card is full. Unable to download. Delete service?

- Failed to download the data because the Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli IC card is full of data. When you select [Yes], the names of the Osaifu-Keitai services on the card appear. Select a service name and delete its Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli software and data from the IC card.

### Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?

- This message appears when the number of times of communication performed while an i-αppli software is used has increased significantly for a certain period of time. To continue using the i-αppli software, select [Yes]. To continue using the i-αppli software after the communication is terminated, select [No]. To quit the i-αppli software, select [End i-αppli].

### Deleted invalid text

- Characters other than digits cannot be accepted for the postal code. They are discarded.

### Disconnected from PC

- The FOMA USB Cable (optional) is removed improperly while the Memory mode is active.

### Download failed

- Failed to download because of an error occurrence.

### Draft is full. Cannot create

- The number of saved mail has reached 50 or there is not enough memory. Delete unnecessary saved mail (P.181).

## E

### Error in IC card data. Unable to delete software

- Failed to delete the software because data in the Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli IC card contains an error.

### Error in image. Does not work correctly

- The Flash movie cannot be played back due to memory shortage, etc.

### Error in the dictionary

- There are some words or phrases that have failed to be saved because of an error in part of the dictionary data (words or phrases that have been saved successfully can be used as dictionary data).

### Exceeds max number of simultaneous call

- This message appears when you originate a PushTalk call to more than four members. Reduce the number of members you select to four or less and originate the call again.

## F

### Final number exists. Cannot shoot

- The microSD memory card contains a file with the maximum number (999-9999), so no more files can be saved in it. Delete the images from the largest file numbers (P.147, 220).

## I

### i-αppli stand-by display terminated due to security error

- The i-αppli stand-by display was canceled since it has attempted an unauthorized operation. Check the security error history (P.196).

### i-αppli To function is not set

- The i-αppli To is set to [No]. Set the i-αppli To to [Yes] and then retry the operation (P.191).

### IC card is locked

- The IC card lock is set. Cancel the IC card lock and then retry the operation (P.202).

### Image display setting OFF. Cannot download

- Failed to download the image because the Display img is set to [OFF]. Set the Display img to [ON] and then retry the operation.

### i-mode mail service is busy. Please try again later (553)

- The line is extremely congested. Wait for a while and then retry the operation.

### Input error (205)

- Incorrect input data. Check the input contents.

### Insert UIM

- The UIM is not inserted. Insert the UIM and then retry the operation (P.32).

### Invalid data (XXX)

- You tried to connect to the site, etc. not supporting i-mode.
- The URL you entered may be invalid.
- Failed to display because of an error in the received data.

### Invalid data. Connection cannot be established (400)

- The host number you set for the Host selection is incorrect. Restore the host number to “iモード”, the default setting at the time of purchase (P.159).
- Failed to connect to i-mode for some reason. Retry to connect (P.152).

### Invalid data. Data size is not supported (413)

- You tried to connect to the site, etc. not supporting i-mode.
- The URL you entered may be invalid.

### Invalid UIM, requested software failed to start

- Failed to start the i-αppli software due to the function for restricting UIM operation. Insert the UIM that was used when you retrieved the data or file and then retry the operation (P.32).

### Invalid UIM. Delete not possible

- Unable to delete software because the information on a UIM inserted in the FOMA terminal and its corresponding information on the IC card are different. Use the UIM that was inserted in the FOMA terminal when you downloaded and activated the Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli for the first time.

### Invalid UIM. Download not possible

- Unable to download software because the information on a UIM inserted in the FOMA terminal and its corresponding information on the IC card are different. Use the UIM that was inserted in the FOMA terminal when you downloaded and activated the Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli for the first time.

### Invalid UIM. Requested service not available

- Failed to perform the operation due to the function for restricting UIM operation. Insert the UIM that was used when you retrieved the data or file and then retry the operation (P.32).

### Invalid UIM. Start not possible

- Unable to start software because the information on a UIM inserted in the FOMA terminal and its corresponding information on the IC card are different. Use the UIM that was inserted in the FOMA terminal when you downloaded and activated the Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli for the first time.

### Invalid URL

- When you entered a URL, you did not enter “http://” or “https://”, or entered it incorrectly. Enter the correct URL and then retry the operation (P.155).
- Failed to display a link because the URL contains an error.

## K

### Key dial locked

- The Key dial lock is set. Cancel the Key dial lock and then retry the operation (P.124).

## L

### Lock all

- The Lock all is set. Cancel the Lock all and then retry the operation (P.120).

## M

### Mail security is set

- The Mail security is set. Cancel the Mail security and then retry the operation (P.125).

### 以下の宛先にはメール送信できませんでした(561) Mails could not be sent to following address

00@ΔΔΔ.ne.jp

※ Mail addresses vary depending on each recipient.

- Failed to send mails to some mail addresses. Move to a location with better radio wave condition and then send them again.

### Main memory shortage

- The remaining memory on the FOMA terminal is insufficient. Change the image quality or image size, or delete unnecessary images (P.140, 146, 220).

### Main memory shortage. May not save

- An image you edit may not be saved because of insufficient memory on the FOMA terminal. Delete unnecessary images or move some images to the microSD memory card (P.215, 220).

### MainMenu cannot be activated now

- Failed to display the menu because a function that does not support menu display is executed.

### Manner mode is set

- Failed to adjust the volume because the Manner mode is set. Cancel the Manner mode and then retry the operation (P.105).

### Memory shortage

- The operation is interrupted because of insufficient memory.

### Memory shortage. Cancel operation

- The operation is discontinued because of insufficient memory.

### Message rejected and cannot be received

- Failed to send SMS because the recipient rejects receiving SMS.

### Message rejected and cannot be sent

- Failed to send SMS because sending SMS is rejected.

### microSD error

- Failed to access the microSD memory card (loading error, etc.). Remove the microSD memory card once and insert it again (P.212). If this message appears again, the microSD memory card may be damaged.

## N

### No content is available (204)

- The site you specified contains no display data.

### No memory space

- The number of entries saved in the Phonebook has reached 1,000. Delete unnecessary entries in the Phonebook (P.94).
- The number of saved schedules has reached 300. Delete unnecessary schedules (P.245).
- Failed to save the data. This message appears if there is not enough memory when you attempt to exchange data using the infrared or iC communication.
- There is not enough memory to save new data. Delete unnecessary data (P.224).


### No more file number. Please reset

- The file number which is attached to an image saved in the microSD memory card and incremented with the number of saved images has reached the maximum number (999-9999). Perform the Reset file No. or delete the images from the largest file numbers (P.147, 220).

### No requested software

- The i-αppli software to be started from the site or mail, or by the infrared communication is not stored in the FOMA terminal.

### No response

- Failed to identify a recipient of iC communication. Check if both FeliCa marks “” are opposed correctly with each other or the other device operates properly (P.227).
- Failed to recognize the other device for the infrared communication. Check if the infrared data ports are pointed at each other correctly or if the other device operates properly (P.224).

### No response (408)

- The communication is interrupted because there is no response from this site. Retry the operation after a while.

### No space in main memory

- Another image recorded by the camera cannot be saved because of no memory to save it on the FOMA terminal. Change the image quality or image size, or delete unnecessary images (P.140, 146, 220).
- The remaining memory on the FOMA terminal is insufficient. Delete unnecessary data (P.94, 156, 157, 181, 201, 220, 245, 249).

### No space to attach signature

- Failed to attach the signature because the total number of characters in the mail main body and signature exceeds 5,000 full-width or 10,000 half-width characters. Decrease the number of characters in the mail main body or send mail with no signature attached (P.170, 183).

### Not enough space in microSD


- Another image recorded by the camera cannot be saved because of no vacant space to save it in the microSD memory card. Change the image quality or image size, or delete unnecessary images (P.140, 146, 220).

### Not supported by this Reader/Writer

- The recipient's terminal does not support the iC communication.

## O

### Out of service area

- The i-mode services are not available since you are outside of the service area or in a location without the radio wave. Move to a location where “” disappears (P.27).

## P

### Page is not found (404)

- The site, etc. cannot be located. Check if the URL you entered is correct.

### PIM locked

- The PIM lock is set. Cancel the PIM lock and then retry the operation (P.123).

### Please wait for a while

- Voice line/packet communication system failure or very high congestion in voice line/packet communication network. Retry after a while. However, you can still place a call to 110, 119, or 118, with some exceptions depending on the situation.

### Please wait for a while (packet)

- Packet communication system failure or very high congestion in packet communication network. Retry the operation after a while.

### Public mode (Drive mode)

- The Public mode is set. Cancel the Public mode and then retry the operation (P.62).

### PUK blocked

- The PUK code is locked. Contact the nearest DoCoMo shop (P.117).

## R

### Receiving data exceeds maximum size for i-motion

- Failed to retrieve the data because its volume has exceeded the maximum size.

### Receiving data exceeds replayable size for i-motion

- Failed to retrieve the data because its volume has exceeded the maximum size.

### Registration is in progress (554)

- User registration of i-mode is in progress. Retry the operation after a while.

### Remotely Controllable services denied

- You currently do not yet subscribe to services such as the Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service that can be operated by remote control. To use the remote control, subscribe to services.



### Replay period has expired

- This file is provided with an expiry date or a term limitation for playback. It cannot be played back because the term permitted for playback has expired. Check the expiry date in the Detail info display (P.221).

### Replay period has not yet started

- This file is provided with a term limitation for playback. It cannot be played back because the term permitted for playback has not yet started. Check the starting date of the term in the Detail info display (P.221).

### Requested software unavailable

- Failed to start the i-αppli software stored in the FOMA terminal from a site or mail, or by infrared communication.

### Retention period has expired (492)

- The time for storage of the pull-type file attachment has expired. It cannot be obtained.

### Root certificate has expired. Connect?

- The certificate of the FOMA terminal is not yet valid or has expired. Select [Yes] to connect or [No] to cancel to connect. This message may also appear when the current date and time are set wrong. Set them correctly (P.40).

### Root certificate is not valid

- The SSL list is set to [Invalid]. Set the SSL list to [Valid] (P.162).

### Run software and delete data on IC card. Then delete software

- Failed to delete the Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli software because of some data being contained in the IC card. Delete the saved data after starting the software and then retry the operation (P.198).

## S

### Same ToruCa exists. Unable to receive ToruCa

- You cannot obtain a ToruCa card that already exists when the Duplication check is set (P.202).

### Server is busy

- The software update is not available because the server is busy. Wait for a while and then retry the operation (P.300).

### Server is full (551)

- When the number of mail held for the recipient at the i-mode center reaches the maximum number, no more mail sent to the recipient is accepted by the i-mode center. Try to send mail after the recipient makes space for new mail at the i-mode center (P.175).

### Service is used by the previous software. Unable to download. Delete a service?

- Downloading/upgrading is unavailable because software using the same service has been already downloaded.

### Service not provided

- SMS is not provided.

### Service not registered

- You do not have a subscription for the i-mode service. To use i-mode, subscribe to i-mode.
- If you signed up for i-mode after starting to use the FOMA terminal, power off the FOMA terminal once and then power it on again.

### Setting self mode

- The Self mode is set. Cancel the Self mode and then retry the operation (P.122).

### Setting unknown reject

- The Reject unknown is set. Cancel the Reject unknown and then retry the operation (P.128).

### Software already updated

- No update is available for the i-αppli software because it has been already updated to the latest.

### Software terminated due to security error

- The i-αppli software was terminated since it has attempted an unauthorized operation. Check the security error history (P.196).

### SSL session cannot be established

- The SSL session failed. Connect again.

### SSL session failed

- Failed to connect to the server because of a server authentication error.

### SSL session was terminated

- The SSL communication is disconnected because there is a problem with the certificate of the site.

### Syntax error (XXX)

- Failed to display because of an error in the received data.

## T

### Text volume exceeds. Cannot send

- The number of characters in the mail main body has exceeded the limit and mail cannot be sent. Reduce the number of characters.

### This certificate has expired. Connect?

- The certificate of the site is not yet valid or has expired. Select [Yes] to connect or [No] to cancel to connect.

### This certificate is not valid for this URL. Connect?

- The CN-Name (server name) of the certificate of the site does not match the actual server name. Select [Yes] to connect or [No] to cancel to connect.

### This data can no longer be replayed

- This file is provided with a limitation on the number of times of playback. It cannot be played back because the number of times permitted for playback has been exceeded. Check the permitted number of times in the Detail info display (P.221).

### This data may not be replayed

- You may not be able to play back this i-motion data because it is invalid.

### This function is unavailable

- The function you selected cannot be used concurrently with the function that is currently executed (P.238).

### This site is not certified. Connect?

- The certificate of the site is not supported by the FOMA terminal. Select [Yes] to connect or [No] to cancel to connect.

### This software contains an error

- Failed to download or upgrade because information required for it is not set on the i- $\alpha$ ppli software.

### This software contains an error. Unable to download

- Failed to download because of an error in the software data.

### This software is currently unavailable for use

- IP (information service providers) stopped the use of the i- $\alpha$ ppli software. Contact IP.

### This software is not supported by this phone

- The software you want to download or upgrade does not support the FOMA terminal.

### This UIM cannot be recognized

- Make sure that the correct UIM is inserted (P.32).
- The UIM contains an error. Contact our service counter (DoCoMo shop, etc.).

### Time out

- Failed to connect within the time set for the Connection timeout. Change the setting or retry to connect after a while (P.159).

### Too many active functions. Cannot activate

- You cannot execute the selected function because of too many functions being executed by multitasking. Quit a currently executed function and then retry the operation (P.238).

### Too many active functions. Cannot execute. Quit other function and retry

- You cannot execute a selected function because of insufficient memory. Quit a currently executed function and then retry the operation (P.238).

### Too much data was entered

- Failed to send because of too many characters. Reduce the number of characters and try to send again.

### Transmission failed

- An error occurred while sending mail. Make sure that “ $\text{圏外}$ ” is not displayed and send it again. If the message appears again, retry to send after a while (P.175).
- The address of SMS is incorrect. Enter the correct address (phone number) and send again (P.185).

### Transmission failed (552)

- Failed to connect to a line due to a problem at the i-mode or SMS center. Retry to connect after a while.

## U

### UIM is full

- The number of SMS saved in the UIM has reached the maximum number. Delete unnecessary SMS (P.181).

### UIM is not inserted. Content is unavailable

- Failed to operate because the UIM is not inserted. Insert the UIM that was used when you retrieved the data or file and then retry the operation (P.32).

### Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error

- Failed to obtain the file because of an error in the playback restriction data.

### Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)

- Failed to connect to the site for some reason. Retry to connect.

### Unable to update pattern definitions

- Failed to update pattern definitions because of error occurrence.

### Unsupported microSD

- A non-compatible microSD memory card is installed in the FOMA terminal. Install a FOMA terminal-compatible microSD memory card (P.211).

### URL is too long to register

- Failed to save the site as a bookmark because the URL exceeds 256 half-width characters (P.155).

### Usage is currently restricted. Try again later

- Users of the flat-rate i-mode packet service may not be able to connect during certain hours because of sharp increase in communication traffic. In this case, wait for a while until you can use i-mode.

### USB cable disconnected

- The FOMA USB Cable (optional) is removed improperly while the USB mode is in progress.

### Use ToruCa automatic reading function through the reader/writer?

- Auto recognition is set to [OFF] (P.201).

## Y

### Your HTTP version is not supported (505)

- You tried to connect to the site, etc. not supporting i-mode.

## Symbol

### ✕error

- An error occurred while running the i- $\alpha$ ppli software. Start to run again or check the error history (P.196).

“ $\text{〇}\Delta\text{〇}.ne.jp$ ”宛のメールが混み合っているため、送信することができません(555) (Failed to send mail to “ $\text{〇}\Delta\text{〇}.ne.jp$ ” because the line is congested)

※ Domain names vary depending on each recipient.

- The line is extremely congested. Wait for a while and then retry the operation.

### おまかせロック中 (Omakase Lock is set)

- The Omakase Lock is set. While the Omakase Lock is set, all key operations are disabled except for answering an incoming voice or videophone call and powering on/off (P.121).

# Warranty and After Sales Services

## Warranty

- Make sure that the warranty is received with the FOMA terminal upon purchase.  
Check to be sure that the name of the retailer, date of purchase, and other items have been filled out on the warranty before storing it in a safe place. If any necessary information is not provided, immediately contact the retailer and request to complete the warranty. The FOMA terminal comes with a year's free warranty starting from the date of purchase.
- Specifications of this product and its accessories are subject to change for improvement without prior notice.
- Data saved in the Phonebook or other memory locations may be changed/lost due to the trouble/repairs or handling of the FOMA terminal. Note down the data in the Phonebook or other memory locations on a separate memo and keep it safely to prevent such problems. When the FOMA terminal is replaced due to trouble, the information downloaded using i-mode and i- $\alpha$ ppli are not transferred to the repaired FOMA terminal because of copyright laws, with some exceptions.
  - ※ This FOMA terminal allows you to save data, such as the Phonebook, in the microSD memory card.
  - ※ This FOMA terminal allows you to save i-motion files and data that is used by i- $\alpha$ ppli software in the microSD memory card.
  - ※ This FOMA terminal allows you to use the Data Security Service (a paid service that requires a subscription) to store data, such as the Phonebook, at the Data Security Service Center.
  - ※ If you have a PC, you can use the DoCoMo keitai datalink (P.268) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional) or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional) to transfer data saved in the Phonebook and other memory from the FOMA terminal to the PC and save data in the PC.

## After Sales Services

### ◎ If you have problems with the FOMA terminal

Before requesting for repairs, refer to "Troubleshooting" of this manual to see if the problem can be remedied (P.289).

If the FOMA terminal still malfunctions, call the "Contact for Repairs" on the backcover of this manual.

### ◎ If repair is required resultingly

Bring the FOMA terminal to the DoCoMo repair handling service counter. However, it must be taken during business hours of the DoCoMo repair handling service counter. Make sure to bring a warranty card with the product when you visit the shop.

### ◎ Within the warranty period

- We repair the FOMA terminal free of charge based on the terms documented in the warranty.
- When requesting a repair, make sure to bring the warranty card with the FOMA terminal. Repair requests that are not accompanied by the warranty or that involve malfunction and damage due to incorrect handling by the owner will only be repaired at the owner's expense, even if the warranty period is still effective.
- Malfunction due to use of devices and consumable parts other than those specified by DoCoMo will only be repaired at the owner's expense, even if the warranty period is still effective.

### ◎ Note that repair may be refused in the following cases.

We may not repair the FOMA terminal if the water leak seal is reacted or if the FOMA terminal has corrosion due to water leakage, condensation, perspiration, etc. or if the internal circuit board is damaged or deformed. Even if repair is possible, it will be done at the owner's expense, as this type of corrosion or damage is not covered by the warranty.

### ◎ If the warranty period expires

We will repair the FOMA terminal at the owner's expense.

### ◎ Parts stock period

The functional parts necessary to repair the FOMA terminal will be basically available for a minimum of six years after the manufacture is discontinued. However, depending on the defective portion, repair may not be possible because of a shortage of repair parts.

Note that repair may still be possible depending on the defective portion even if the stock period has expired. Call the "Contact for Repairs" on the backcover of this manual.

## ◎Precautions

- Never modify the FOMA terminal or accessories.
  - Doing so may result in fire, injuries or malfunctions.
  - The technical standards of the FOMA terminal and UIM are stipulated by law and standards to prevent radio interference and network malfunctions. FOMA terminals or UIM that do not satisfy the technical standards must not be used.
  - The modified FOMA terminal may be repaired only if all the modified parts (replacement of parts, modification, paint, etc.) are restored to the original conditions (DoCoMo Standard Parts). Note that repairs of the phone may be refused depending on the modifications.
  - Malfunction and damage due to modifications will be repaired at the owner's expense, even if the warranty period is still effective.
- The model sticker must not be removed from the FOMA terminal.  
The model sticker certifies that the FOMA terminal satisfies technical standards. It should be noted that if the sticker is removed or is replaced with a different sticker, and the original model sticker cannot be verified, it may disqualify the unit from repairs due to not being able to determine the technical standards of that particular phone.
- Note that the settings, total call duration, and other information may be reset (cleared) as a result of malfunction, repair or other handling. In this case, make the settings again.
- A material that generates a magnetic field is used in the following parts of the FOMA terminal. Do not hold an object that is easily affected by magnetism, such as a cash card, close to the FOMA terminal. You may not be able to use the card any more.  
Where it is used: Earpiece, speaker
- If the FOMA terminal has gotten wet or moist, immediately power off the terminal and remove the battery pack from it, and then bring it to the DoCoMo repair handling service counter as soon as possible. However, note that we may not repair the FOMA terminal depending on the extent of the damage.

## Precautions on Memory Dial (Phonebook Function) and Downloaded Data

- It is strictly recommended to back up all the data you have saved in the FOMA terminal or other recording media. DoCoMo shall have no liability for any change or loss of the data.
- Note that data you created or data you retrieved or downloaded from sources other than your FOMA terminal may be changed or lost when you change the model or have repairs done to the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall have no liability for any change or loss of any kind. Under some circumstances, DoCoMo may replace your FOMA terminal with its equivalent instead of repairing it.  
Only when the FOMA terminal is replaced, the images/melodies for incoming calls that you downloaded to your FOMA terminal and user-defined data are transferred to a new terminal. (However, depending on the data and seriousness of the trouble, data cannot be transferred to a new terminal.)  
※ Depending on the volume of data saved in the FOMA terminal, it may take time or it may not be possible to transfer data to a new terminal.

## i モード故障診断 (i-mode Trouble Diagnosis) Site

This website allows you to check by yourself whether some operations, such as sending/receiving mail and downloading images and melodies, are performed normally on your FOMA terminal.

Top page  
(Only in Japanese)

iモード 故障診断 画像・Xロディ・メールなどが正常に動作しているか確認することができます。  テストメニューへ  「iモード 故障診断」についてのお問い合わせ ※お問い合わせ先および受付時間は地域によって異なります。 お問い合わせ先へ
---



List of test menus page  
(Only in Japanese)

iモード 故障診断 テストメニュー一覧  GIF画像 JPEG画像 テキスト画像 簡信メール メール送受信 画像メール i777/リダダウンロード i-motionダウンロード Xロディ・メール  戻る
--

## ● Access to the “i モード故障診断” (i-mode trouble diagnosis) site

i-mode site : [i Menu] → [お知らせ] (Information) → [サービス・機能] (Service/Function)  
→ [i モード] (i-mode) → [i モード故障診断] (i-mode trouble diagnosis)



- No packet communication charge is required for the i-mode trouble diagnosis site.
- Available test items vary depending on the model of the FOMA terminal and may be subject to change.
- When you check your mobile phone for normal operation on each test item, carefully read the precautions described in the website before starting the diagnosis.
- When you access the i-mode trouble diagnosis site and perform a mail sending test, your mobile phone-specific information (such as model and mail address) is automatically sent to the server (server for the i-mode trouble diagnosis). DoCoMo will not use the information sent from your mobile phone for any purposes other than for the i-mode trouble diagnosis.
- If your mobile phone is diagnosed as having some troubles, call the “Contact for Repairs” on the backcover of this manual for remedial action.

## Updating the Software

<Software update>

### About Updating the Software

This function allows you to check if the software update is necessary by connecting to the network for the FOMA terminal and if necessary, download a part of the software using packet communication to update the software.

※ No packet communication charge is required for updating software.

If the software update is necessary, we inform of it on DoCoMo's home page and in “お知らせ” (Information) accessible from i Menu.

You can use one of the two update types: “Now update” or “Reserve” to update the software.

Now update	Update the software immediately at any time you want.
Reserve	Reserve a date/time you want to update the software. The software update starts automatically at the reserved date and time.

- Never remove the battery pack while updating the software. The software update may fail if you do so.
- The software update can be made with data, such as Phonebook entries, images recorded by the camera and downloaded data, remaining in the mobile phone. However, note that the safety of the data may not be assured depending on the conditions of the mobile phone (e.g. malfunction, damage and exposure to water). It is recommended to take a backup copy of important data (some data such as downloaded data may be protected from backup copy).

### Before Using the Function

- You can update the software even if the Host selection is set to other than [i-mode(UIM)].
- Before updating the software, be sure to fully charge the battery pack of the FOMA terminal.
- You cannot update the software in the following cases:
  - When the date and time of the FOMA terminal are not set
  - When “圏外” is displayed
  - While the Lock all is set
  - While the Omakase Lock is set
  - When the UIM is not inserted
  - When the FOMA terminal is connected to an external device such as a PC
  - During a call
  - While the Self mode is set
  - While the PIM lock is set
  - When the battery level is low
  - When another function is being used
- It may take time to update (download and rewrite) the software in some cases.
- The Alarm and Schedule alarm do not operate while updating the software.
- If the SW Update is executed when the PIN1 code setting is set to [ON], the PIN1 code input screen appears at an automatic restart after rewriting software. If you do not enter a correct PIN1 code, you cannot place/receive a call or perform various communication.

- You cannot place or receive a call, and use various communication functions and other functions while updating the software. (You can receive a voice call while downloading the software.)
- The FOMA terminal uses SSL communication with the DoCoMo server to update the software. Before starting update, set the SSL list to [Valid] (Default: [Valid]) (P.162).
- It is recommended to update the software under strong radio wave condition with 3-antenna marks displayed and not to move the FOMA terminal while updating the software.
  - ※ When the weakening of the radio wave occurs while downloading the software or the download is interrupted for any reason, perform the software update again in a location of good radio wave condition.
- If no new update is available, the message “No update is needed. Please continue to use as before” appears when you check the necessity of the update.
- After updating the software, icons that notify you about mail/messages stored at the i-mode center disappears. When the Recv option setting is [ON], the screen notifying you of new mail may not be displayed after completion of the update if there is new mail while updating the software.
- When you update the software, your mobile phone-specific information (such as model and manufacturer's serial number) is automatically sent to the server (server for updating the software under DoCoMo's supervision). DoCoMo will not use the information sent from your mobile phone for any purposes other than to update the software.
- When the software update fails, the message “Rewrite failed” appears and no further operation is possible. In this case, please bring the FOMA terminal to the nearest DoCoMo repair handling service counter.

## Activating the Software Update

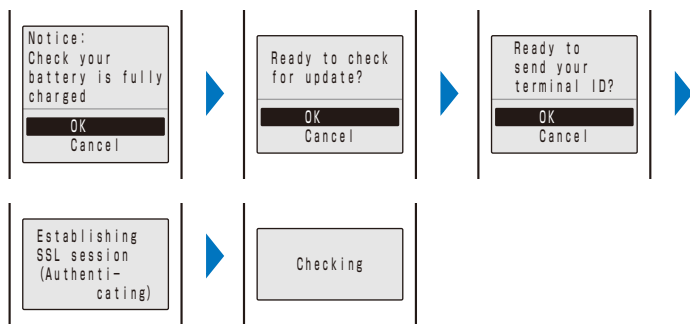
**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [SW Update] and press .

The Security code screen appears.

**2** Enter the Security code and press  (OK).

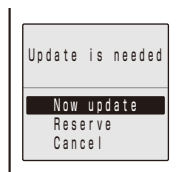
- The Security code is masked by “\* \* \* \*”.
- The Security code is set to “0000” at the time of purchase.

**3** Confirm the messages.



The FOMA terminal starts SSL communication to check if the software update is necessary.

**4** If necessary, select the timing to start update and press .



[Now update] : Start updating the software. The software update may not be completed successfully if the server is busy.

[Reserve] : Reserve a date/time to start the software update.

[Cancel] : Do not start updating the software.



**When the message informing there is no need to update the software appears**

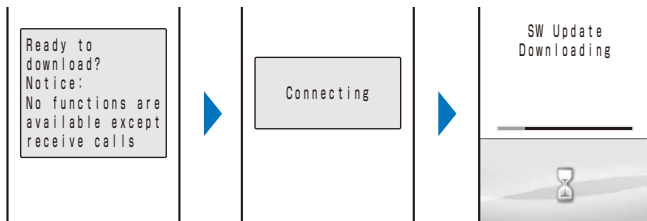
You do not need to update the software. Continue to use the FOMA terminal without updating.

- When the server is busy, the screen to the right appears. To reserve, select [Reserve] and set a date/time for the update.



## Updating the Software Immediately (Now update)


- From the screen for selecting the update type, select [Now update] and press , then press  (OK).




After a while, the software download starts.

- When downloading starts, step 2 and step 3 are performed automatically (no need to operate).

### To cancel the download

Press  (Cancel) while downloading.

- If you stop the download before it is completed, the data downloaded up until this point is deleted.

- After the download is completed, press  (OK).





The software rewriting starts and the incoming indicator lights. After rewriting is completed, the FOMA terminal is restarted automatically.

- While the software is being rewritten, all key operations are disabled. You even cannot stop the update operation.

- After completion of restart, confirm the completion of the update and press  (OK).



After restarted, the FOMA terminal automatically connects to the server. It takes some time.

- When you did not confirm the update result on the screen in step 3, " (Update complete) appears in the stand-by display. If there is any information that you must confirm, " (Check for update) appears. The icon and message disappear after you check the notification information by selecting the icon.

## Reserving a Date/Time for the Software Update (Reserve)

If downloading takes too long or the server is congested, you can connect to the server and preset a date/time to start the software update.

Example: Reserving the software update on September 10 (Mon) 1:05 a.m.


### 1 From the screen for selecting the update type, select [Reserve] and press .

List of choice	
9/10 Mon	1:05
9/10 Mon	9:44
9/10 Mon	4:18
9/10 Mon	4:44
9/10 Mon	5:28
9/10 Mon	5:55
9/10 Mon	6:29
9/10 Mon	6:57
9/10 Mon	7:15
9/10 Mon	7:50
9/10 Mon	8:27
9/10 Mon	8:58

The FOMA terminal connects to the server and displays a list of reservation choices.

- When reserving the software update, the time set on the server is displayed.

#### To select another date/time

Press  (Others) and select the preferred date, time slot, and time. You can confirm vacant time slot available for reservation in the Preferred- time slot display as follows:

"○": Available, "△": Almost full, or "×": Full".

#### To cancel the reservation operation

Press .

### 2 Select the date/time to be reserved → [Yes] and press .



The FOMA terminal connects to the server and completes the reservation.

## When the Reserved Time Comes

Reserved time reached.  
Ready to update software?

The screen to the left appears. After about five seconds, the software update starts automatically and the incoming indicator flashes.

- Before the reserved time comes, turn the FOMA terminal to the stand-by display and place it in a location of good radio wave condition.

- The software update may not start if another function is being used when the reserved time comes.
- When the Alarm/Schedule alarm is set to start at the same time as the reserved time, the software update has priority and the alarm may not sound.
- If you execute the Reset all data&set or leave the FOMA terminal without a battery pack or with a fully expended battery pack for a long period of time after you complete the reservation, the date and time is reset, and the software update does not start even if the reserved time comes. Perform the reservation again.

## Confirming the Reservation

### 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [SW Update] and press .

The Security code screen appears.

### 2 Enter the Security code and press (OK).

Already reserved for  
2007/09/10 Mon  
1:05  
OK  
Change  
Cancel

If the software update is already reserved, the reserved information appears.

#### To change the reservation

Select [Change] → [OK]. The FOMA terminal connects to the server and you can select another date/time.

#### To cancel the reservation

Select [Cancel] → [Yes] → [OK]. The FOMA terminal connects to the server and cancels the reservation.



At first, update the pattern definitions to get the latest definitions.


You can detect information related to the data and programs obtained into the FOMA terminal from an external source, such as data downloaded from a site or i-mode mail, and delete data or end the start-up of application that can cause a trouble.

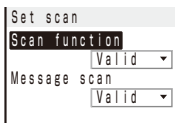
- Use the pattern definitions for checking. Since the pattern definitions are upgraded every time a new problem is discovered, be sure to update the definitions (P.304).
- The scanning function provides explicit protection against intrusive data that causes mobile phone trouble while you are viewing a website or receiving mail. Note that if the pattern definitions corresponding to each trouble are not downloaded to the mobile phone, or if there are no pattern definitions corresponding to each trouble, this function cannot prevent the trouble occurrences.
- The contents of the pattern definitions vary depending on the model of your mobile phone. Note that the distribution of pattern definitions for models released more than three years ago may be discontinued at our company's discretion.

## Setting the Scanning Function

Default | Scan function • Message scan : Valid

You can set whether to automatically check data and programs when they are executed.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [Scan function] → [Set scan] and press .



[Scan function] : Set whether to enable the scanning function.

[Message scan] : Set whether to enable the scanning function for SMS when the Scan function is set to [Valid].

- 2 Select [Valid] at [Scan function].

[Valid] : Execute the scanning function. If data that can cause a trouble is detected, a warning is displayed in five levels.

[Invalid] : Do not execute the scanning function.

**When you change the setting**

Select [Yes].

- 3 Select [Valid] at [Message scan].


[Valid] : Execute the scanning function for the SMS. If a phone number or URL is included in the mail main body, the message appears.

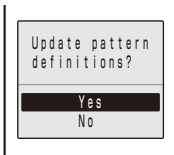
[Invalid] : Do not execute the scanning function for the SMS.


**When you change the setting**

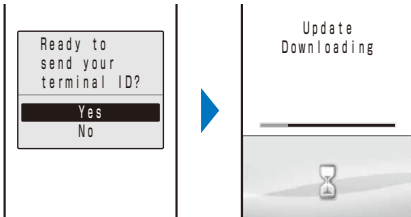
Select [Yes].

## Updating the Pattern Definitions

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [Scan function] → [Update] and press .



- 2 Select [Yes] → [Yes] and press .




### When the pattern definitions are the latest available

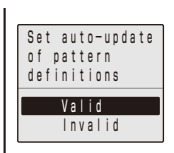
There is no need to update the pattern definitions. Use them as is.

- When you update the pattern definitions, your mobile phone-specific information (such as model and manufacturer's serial number) is automatically sent to the server (server for the scanning function under DoCoMo's supervision). DoCoMo will not use the information sent from your mobile phone for any purposes other than the scanning function.
- You cannot update the pattern definitions in the following cases:
  - When the date/time is not set
  - During a call
  - While the Lock all is set
  - While the Omakase Lock is set
  - When another function is being used
  - When the FOMA terminal is connected to an external device such as a PC
  - When "圏外" is displayed
  - While the Self mode is set
  - While the PIM lock is set
  - When the UIM is not inserted
- If you cancel the downloading operation before it is completed, the data downloaded until this point is deleted.

## Setting Whether Pattern Definitions Are Automatically Updated

You can set whether to update the pattern definitions automatically.

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [Scan function] → [Set auto-update] and press .



[Valid] : Update the pattern definitions automatically.

[Invalid] : Do not update the pattern definitions automatically.

- 2 Select [Valid] → [Yes] → [Yes] and press .

The Set auto-update is set.

[Appendix/External Devices/Troubleshooting](#)

- If the Set auto-update is set to [Valid], “🔄” (Update completed) appears in the stand-by display when the pattern definitions auto-update is completed. If the pattern definitions were not auto-updated successfully, “🔄” (Update definitions) appears. Confirm the information by selecting the icon to clear the notification.
- If you leave the FOMA terminal without a battery pack or with a fully expended battery pack for a long period of time, the date and time is reset, and the Auto-update may not operate correctly.

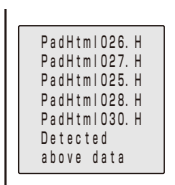
## About the Scanning Result Indication

If data that can cause a trouble is detected, the warning display appears.

### ■ Scanning result indication

Warning level 0	Warning level 1	Warning level 2	Warning level 3	Warning level 4
The operation is continued.	Confirms whether you want to stop the operation.	Stops the operation.	Confirms whether you want to stop the operation and delete the target data.	Stops the operation and deletes the target data.

### ■ Display of detected error factors

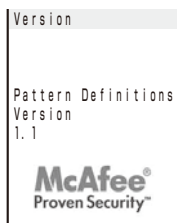


When you press (Detail) in the warning display, the title of the error factor appears.

- If six or more error factors are detected, the titles of the sixth and later error factors are omitted.

## Displaying the Pattern Definition Version

- 1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [Scan function] → [Version] and press .



# Specifications

Product name		FOMA S0704i
Dimensions		105×47×18.7 mm (H×W×D) (when folded)
Weight		About 105 g (with battery pack attached)
Continuous stand-by time		Stationary state: About 600 hours Moving state: About 450 hours
Continuous call time		Voice call: About 160 minutes Videophone call: About 90 minutes
Charging time		AC adapter: About 150 minutes DC adapter: About 150 minutes
LCD	Type	Main display: TFT 262,144 colors Sub-display: Organic EL 1 color
	Size	Main display: About 2.7 inches Sub-display: About 1.1 inches
	Number of pixels	Main display: 103,680 pixels (240 dots×432 dots) Sub-display: 4,608 pixels (128 dots×36 dots)
Image pickup device	Type	In-camera: CMOS Out-camera: CMOS
	Size	In-camera: 1/11 inches Out-camera: 1/4.0 inches
	Valid pixels	In-camera: About 110,000 pixels Out-camera: About 2,000,000 pixels
Camera	Film valid pixels	In-camera: About 100,000 pixels Out-camera: About 2,000,000 pixels
	Zoom (Digital)	In-camera: Zoom is unavailable. Out-camera: Maximum magnification about ×4.5
Storage	Recordable number of still images	About 1,500 (on the Data Box)※1
	Recordable number of continuous still images	4
	File format of still images	JPEG
	Recordable time of movies	On the Data Box: About 7 minutes 14 seconds※2 On the microSD memory card (64MB): About 60 minutes※3
	File format of movies	MP4
Music playback	Continuous playback time	AAC-LC (i-motion): About 240 minutes (on the Data Box) HE-AAC (Chaku-Uta Full®): About 230 minutes (on the Data Box)
	Memory capacity	About 25.6MB

※1 Image size: [sQCIF(128×96 dots)] Image quality: [Standard] File size: 10K bytes

※2 It is the maximum recording time per one movie under the following conditions:  
Image size: [sQCIF(128×96 dots)] Image quality: [Standard] File size restriction: Attach(L)

※3 It is the maximum recording time per one movie under the following conditions:  
Image size: [sQCIF(128×96 dots)] Image quality: [Standard] File size: No limit

## Number of Saved and Protected Data Items

Type		Number of saved data items	Number of protected data items
Phonebook※1		Up to 1,000	—
Schedule		Up to 300	—
Text memo		Up to 10	—
Mail (Total number of i-mode mail and SMS)	Received mail※2	Up to 1,000	Up to 500
	Sent mail※2	Up to 500	Up to 250
	Saved draft mail※2	Up to 50	—
	Template※3	Up to 50	—
Message	Message R	Up to 20	Up to 20
	Message F	Up to 20	Up to 20
Bookmark		Up to 200	—
Screen memo※2		Up to 100	Up to 50
i-αppli※2※3		Up to 100 (including up to 5 i-αppli with mail software)	—
Image※2※5		Up to 1,500	—
Movie/i-motion※2※4		Up to 150	—
Melody※2※4		Up to 200	—
Chara-den※2※3		Up to 50	—
ToruCa card		Up to 100	—

※1 You can save up to 50 entries in the UIM.

※2 The actual number of data items that can be saved may decrease depending on the data to be saved.

※3 Includes the preinstalled data.

※4 Does not include the preinstalled data.

※5 Includes the preinstalled Deco-mail pictographs at the time of purchase.

- The data may be lost as a result of malfunction, repair, or other handling of the FOMA terminal. Under no condition will DoCoMo be held liable for any damaged or lost data saved in the FOMA terminal. It is recommended that you make a separate note of the data saved in the FOMA terminal or make a backup copy of it using the microSD memory card (P.211). If you have a PC, you can store data in the PC using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (P.268) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional).

## About the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phones, etc.

### SAR Certification Information

This model phone FOMA SO704i meets the MIC's\* technical regulation for exposure to radio waves.

The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)\*\* averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP\*\*\*.

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone is 0.863 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC), a Registered Certification Agency on the Radio Law. The test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For more information about SAR, please see the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO): <http://www.who.int/peh-emf/>

ICNIRP: <http://www.icnirp.de/>

MIC: <http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/body/index.htm>

TELEC: [http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/index\\_e.htm](http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/index_e.htm)

NTT DoCoMo: <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/>

Sony Ericsson Mobile Communications Japan, Inc.:

<http://www.SonyEricsson.co.jp/product/SAR/> (Japanese only)

\* Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications

\*\* The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.

\*\*\* International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection

# Index/Quick Manual



Index .....	310
Quick Manual .....	316

# Index

## How to Look up in the Index

The index can be used as an “alphabetical table of contents”. Under each headword, terms relevant to it are listed. Not only terms representing function names actually displayed on the FOMA terminal, but also those that are a brief summary about the functions described in this manual.

Example: Adjusting the volume of i-αppli software

<b>Volume</b>	
Caller's voice.....	103
i-motion.....	207
<b>i-αppli.....</b>	<b>103</b>
Keypad sound.....	102
Melody.....	211
MUSIC.....	210, 234
Ring volume.....	101
Sound effect.....	103
<b>Volume setting.....</b>	<b>103</b>

<b>i-αppli.....</b>	<b>188</b>
Auto start.....	194
Certificates.....	190
Cng. ring tone/img.....	191
Delete.....	195
SW description.....	190
SW init. Setting.....	189
Upgrade.....	195
<b>Use icons.....</b>	<b>191</b>
<b>Volume setting.....</b>	<b>103</b>

## A

AC adapter.....	36
Accept/Reject call.....	126
Additional service.....	264
Adjust light.....	110
After sales services.....	297
Alarm	
Alarm (clock).....	242
Cost limit notice.....	248
Schedule alarm.....	244
Alarm (clock).....	242
Anim setting.....	108
Antenna.....	25
Any key ans.....	60
Application.....	250
Arrival Call Act.....	263
Auto answer.....	251
Auto reset.....	248
AV Phone To function.....	158
Available services.....	287

## B

Backlight.....	110
Backlight always on.....	110
Bar code reader.....	149
Add bookmark.....	149
Add to phonebook.....	149
Saved data.....	150
Battery level.....	38

Battery pack.....	34
BC reader.....	149
Bookmark.....	155
Add bookmark.....	155
Attach to mail.....	174
Bookmark.....	156
Delete.....	156
Display.....	156
Edit folder.....	156
iC transmission.....	228
Move.....	156
Send Ir data.....	226

## C

Cache.....	153
Calculator.....	249
Calendar.....	107, 245
Calendar/Clock.....	107
Call condition menu.....	53
Call display.....	109
Call Forwarding Service.....	261
Call menu.....	53
Call Rejection.....	59
Call Waiting Service.....	261
Call with ID/Call with no ID.....	53
Caller ID Display Request Service.....	262
Camera.....	132
Adjust EV.....	144
Adjust zoom.....	142

Attach to mail.....	136, 139
Auto focus.....	147
Auto save.....	145
Auto timer.....	141
Backlight always on.....	110
Bar code reader.....	149
Change screen.....	142
Continuous mode.....	137
Estimated number of recordable images...	133
Estimated recording time of movie...	134
File size.....	148
Icons.....	135
Image quality.....	146
Movie shoot.....	139
Photo light.....	141
Photometry.....	144
Pict. Effect.....	144
Reset all.....	145
Reset file No.....	147
Select save to.....	145
Select scene.....	143
Select size.....	140
Shoot by photo.....	136
Shoot mode.....	148
Shoot with frame.....	138
Shutter sound.....	146
Switch camera.....	141
Switch mode.....	139
Viewer.....	239
White balance.....	143
Certificates.....	153, 162, 190





IC card .....	198	Add to phonebook .....	177	Download .....	164
Osafu-Keitai-compatible i- $\alpha$ ppli .....	188	Anim setting .....	108	Edit folder .....	219
IC card content .....	198	Attached file pref. ....	185	Edit movie .....	208
IC card lock .....	202	Auto receive .....	175	Folder info .....	221
iC communication .....	227	Check new messages .....	176	iC transmission .....	228
Reception .....	227	Clear Recv ranking .....	185	i-motion type .....	164
Transmission .....	228	Clear Send ranking .....	185	Move .....	220
iC transfer service .....	198	Compose and send .....	170	Play mode change .....	207
i-Channel .....	165	Confirm title .....	178	Playback .....	207
Channel list .....	166	Deco-mail .....	171	Save .....	215
Display .....	166	Delete .....	181	Send Ir data .....	226
Reset i-Channel .....	166	Display .....	178	Sort .....	220
Ticker .....	166	Dur multi task disp .....	184	Stand-by display .....	207
Icon .....	26, 135	Edit folder .....	180	i-motion setting .....	164
Icon setting .....	112	File attachment .....	174, 178	In-call arrival act .....	263
Illumination .....	110	Font size .....	114	Incoming set .....	100
i-mode .....	152	Forward .....	176	Information on using the manual and how to look up in the manual ....	1
Add to phonebook .....	177	iC transmission .....	228	Infrared communication .....	224
Auto detect .....	159	i-mode inquiry set .....	183	Infrared remote control .....	226
Auto-display .....	160	i-mode mail form .....	181	Receive .....	226
Backlight always on .....	110	Incoming set .....	100	Send .....	226
Bookmark .....	155	Mail list .....	171, 184	Init. setting .....	39
Cache .....	153	Mail security .....	125	Input method .....	255, 256, 257, 258
Change i-mode password .....	155	Melody auto play .....	184	Insufficient memory .....	224
Compose message .....	154	Memory status .....	181	Intellectual property right .....	20
Connection timeout .....	159	Move .....	180	International call .....	55
Display img .....	159	Protect ON/OFF .....	181	Int'l dial assist .....	55
Display sites .....	152	Receive option .....	175	Int'l prefix .....	54
Download .....	158	Recv option setting .....	183	i- $\alpha$ ppli .....	188
Enter URL .....	155	Reply .....	176	Auto start .....	194
Font size .....	114	Save .....	175	Certificates .....	190
Go to location .....	155	Save address .....	177	Cng. ring tone/img. ....	191
Host selection .....	159	Secret code .....	87, 169	Delete .....	195
i-mode arrival act .....	84	Send Ir data .....	226	Download .....	189
i-mode menu .....	152	Signature .....	183	Edit folder .....	195
Last accessed URL .....	153	Sort .....	182	i $\alpha$ ppli history .....	196
My Menu .....	154	Sort inbox .....	182	i $\alpha$ ppli To .....	191
Reload .....	154	Sort outbox .....	182	Individual set .....	191
Save backgnd img .....	157	Store at Center .....	180	Move .....	195
Save image .....	157	Templates .....	173	NW setting .....	191
Screen memo .....	157	i-mode menu .....	152	Phonebook/Records .....	191
Select host .....	163	i-mode password .....	117	Preinstalled software .....	191
Sound effect .....	103	Change .....	155	Run .....	190
SSL list .....	162	i-mode setting .....	103, 159	Saved data .....	188
SSL page .....	153	i-mode trouble diagnosis site .....	298	Stand-by display .....	194
Terminate i-mode .....	154	i-motion .....	164, 207	Stand-by NW setting .....	191
URL .....	154	Attach to mail .....	174	SW description .....	190
URL list .....	155	Auto replay .....	164	SW init. Setting .....	189
Use phone info .....	159	Backlight always on .....	110	Upgrade .....	195
Use sites .....	153	Change display .....	220	Use icons .....	191
User certificate .....	162	Continuous play .....	207	Volume setting .....	103
Word translate .....	154	Delete .....	220	i- $\alpha$ ppli DX .....	188
i-mode mail .....	168	Detail .....	221	i- $\alpha$ ppli stand-by .....	194
Add receiver .....	171	Display quality .....	207		

i-αppli To function .....	158
i-αppli with mail .....	188, 190
i-mode mail form .....	181

## J

JAN code .....	149
----------------	-----

## K

Key dial lock .....	124
Keypad light .....	110
Keypad sound .....	102
Kuten codes .....	257

## L

Language .....	114
Last accessed URL .....	153
Last call cost .....	247
Last call duration .....	247
Lifetime Calendar .....	240
Display .....	240
Display setting .....	241
LTC setting .....	241
Memory auto display .....	241
List of default settings .....	252, 270
List of menus .....	270
List of reset items .....	252, 270
Lock all .....	120
LTC .....	250

## M

Mail address .....	168
Mail menu .....	170
Mail security .....	125
Mail setting (FOMA terminal)....	182
Mail Settings (i-mode center)....	168
Mail To function .....	158
Manner mode .....	105
Original manner .....	106
Silent .....	105
Melody .....	211
Attach to mail .....	174
Delete .....	220
Detail .....	221
Edit folder .....	219
Folder info .....	221
iC transmission .....	228
Move .....	220
Play .....	211
Play portion .....	211
Save .....	215

Send Ir data .....	226
Sort .....	220
Memory mode .....	217
Menu .....	30
Menu mode .....	112
Menu pattern .....	112
Menu setting .....	112

### Message

Auto-display .....	160
Check new messages .....	160
Delete .....	161
Display .....	161
Dur multi task disp .....	184
i-mode inquiry set .....	183
Incoming set .....	100
Melody auto play .....	184
Protect ON/OFF .....	161
Receive .....	160
Save attached .....	178

### Message F .....

### Message R .....

microSD memory card .....	211
Delete .....	220
Display .....	212
Folder setup .....	213
Format .....	216
Insert/Remove .....	212
Memory mode .....	217
microSD info .....	216
Reset file No. ....	147
Save .....	215
To Ext. Memory .....	223
Update mng. Info .....	216
Missed call .....	65, 113
Movable contents .....	223
Movie player software .....	289
Multi Number Service .....	263
Multiaccess .....	238
Combinations .....	285
Multitask .....	238
Combinations .....	286

### MUSIC .....

Delete .....	220
Detail .....	221
Edit folder .....	219
Folder info .....	221
Move .....	220
Play .....	210
MUSIC Player .....	230
Change jackets .....	234
Music settings .....	236
Play .....	233
Playable music data .....	230
Playlist .....	235

Reset settings .....	236
Transfer .....	230

### My data .....

### My Menu .....

### My picture .....

Attach to mail .....	174
Change display .....	220
Delete .....	220
Detail .....	221
Display quality .....	204
Edit folder .....	219
Edit photo .....	205
Folder info .....	221
iC transmission .....	228
Move .....	220
Save .....	215
Send Ir data .....	226
Slideshow .....	204
Sort .....	220
Store at Center .....	206

### My Selection .....

## N

Name .....	109
Network security code .....	116
Network service .....	260
Notification display .....	28
Notify caller ID .....	41
Nuisance Call Blocking Service .....	261
Number of protected data items .....	307
Number of saved data items .....	307
NW Services .....	260

## O

OFFICEED .....	264
Omakase Lock .....	121
On hold .....	62
Optional and related devices .....	288
OsaiFu-Keitai .....	198
iC card lock .....	202
Use .....	199
OsaiFu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli .....	188
Start .....	198
Own number .....	41
Attach to mail .....	174
iC transmission .....	228
Quote my data .....	256
Secret display .....	124
Send Ir data .....	226



Set rec msg .....	66
Set ring start time .....	127
Setting when folded .....	61, 84
Simple mode .....	112
<b>SMS (Short Message Service)</b>	
.....	170
Anim setting .....	108
Compose and send .....	185
Copy to Main .....	218
Copy to UIM .....	218
Receive .....	186
Save .....	185
<b>SMS setting .....</b>	<b>186</b>
<b>Soft key .....</b>	<b>108</b>
<b>Software update .....</b>	<b>299</b>
Now update .....	301
Reserve .....	302
<b>SonicStage .....</b>	<b>230</b>
<b>Sound effect .....</b>	<b>103</b>
<b>Specifications .....</b>	<b>306</b>
<b>SSL list .....</b>	<b>162</b>
<b>SSL site .....</b>	<b>153</b>
<b>Stand-by disp. ....</b>	<b>107</b>
<b>Stereo&amp;3D .....</b>	<b>102</b>
<b>Storage info .....</b>	<b>223</b>
<b>Style-Up Panel .....</b>	<b>37</b>
<b>Sub display setting .....</b>	<b>110</b>
<b>Sub-address .....</b>	<b>57</b>
<b>Sub-display .....</b>	<b>29</b>
Icons .....	26
Notification display .....	28
Ticker .....	166
<b>Supplied and optional accessories</b>	
.....	22
<b>Symbols .....</b>	<b>256</b>
List of special symbols .....	282

## T

<b>Template .....</b>	<b>173</b>
Delete .....	173
<b>Text input .....</b>	<b>254</b>
Bar code reader .....	256
Character mode .....	254
Characters assigned to keys .....	281
Common phrases .....	256, 284
Copy .....	257
Cut .....	257
Delete .....	254
Dictionaries .....	258
Edit common phrases .....	256
Edit prediction .....	258
Edit user dict .....	258
Insert .....	254

Kuten codes .....	257
Multi/Single .....	254
Paste .....	257
Pictograph/symbol mode .....	254
Pictographs .....	256, 282
Prediction .....	254
Quote my data .....	256
Quote phonebook .....	256
Reset data .....	258
Select conversion .....	255
Symbols .....	256, 282
Undo .....	254
User conversion .....	255
<b>Text Memo .....</b>	<b>249</b>
Copy Text memo .....	249
Delete .....	249
Display .....	249
iC transmission .....	228
Save .....	215, 249
Send Ir data .....	226
<b>Ticker .....</b>	<b>166</b>
<b>Timer (T) .....</b>	<b>47</b>
<b>ToruCa .....</b>	<b>199</b>
Attach to mail .....	174
Auto recognition .....	201
Delete .....	201
Display .....	200
Duplication check .....	202
Edit folder .....	200
IC act. Notice .....	202
IC card lock .....	202
iC transmission .....	228
Move .....	200
Obtain .....	199
Save .....	215
Search .....	201
Send Ir data .....	226
Sort .....	201
ToruCa receive .....	201
<b>ToruCa setting .....</b>	<b>201</b>
<b>Total calls cost .....</b>	<b>247</b>
<b>Total calls dur .....</b>	<b>247</b>
<b>Touch-tones .....</b>	<b>47</b>
<b>Troubleshooting .....</b>	<b>289</b>

## U

<b>UIM .....</b>	<b>32</b>
Copy to Main .....	218
Copy to UIM .....	218
Insert/Remove .....	32
PIN1/PIN2 code .....	117
<b>UIM phonebook .....</b>	<b>86</b>
Save .....	89

<b>UIM setting .....</b>	<b>118</b>
<b>URL</b>	
Display .....	154
Last accessed URL .....	153
List .....	155
<b>USB mode set. ....</b>	<b>217</b>
<b>User certificate .....</b>	<b>162</b>

## V

<b>V.ph switch notice .....</b>	<b>72</b>
<b>Vibrator .....</b>	<b>101</b>
<b>Videophone .....</b>	<b>44</b>
Anim setting .....	108
Auto redial(voice) .....	71
Backlight always on .....	110
Call Rejection .....	59
Chara-den .....	69
Chg. to voice call .....	48
Display setting .....	70
Hands-free .....	47, 71
Holding .....	62
Incoming set .....	100
Missed call .....	65
On hold .....	62
Quick record message .....	67
Select sub image .....	44
Set call display .....	109
Set outgoing image .....	70
Setting when folded .....	61
V.ph while packet .....	72
Visual preference .....	71
<b>Videophone setting .....</b>	<b>70</b>
<b>Voice call</b>	
Anim setting .....	108
Any key ans .....	60
Call Rejection .....	59
Chg. to videophone .....	48
Hands-free .....	47
Holding .....	62
Incoming set .....	100
Missed call .....	65
On hold .....	62
Quick record message .....	67
Set call display .....	109
Setting when folded .....	61
Whisper mode .....	61
<b>Voice Mail Service .....</b>	<b>260</b>
<b>Voice memo .....</b>	<b>68, 247</b>
<b>Volume</b>	
Caller's voice .....	103
i-motion .....	207
i-α ppli .....	103
Keypad sound .....	102

Melody .....	211
MUSIC.....	210, 234
Ring volume .....	101
Sound effect.....	103
Volume setting.....	103

W	
Warranty and after sales services .....	297
Web To function .....	158
Whisper mode .....	61
WORLD CALL .....	55
WORLD WING.....	34

Symbols and Numbers	
+ .....	47
186/184.....	53
2-touch dial.....	96

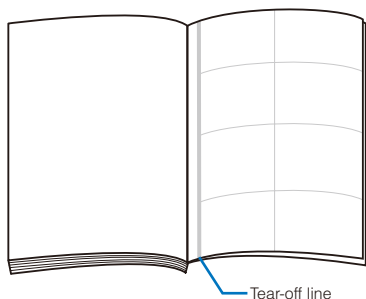
# Quick Manual

## Using the Quick Manual

To bring the Quick Manual provided with this manual, separate it at the tear-off line and fold as shown below.

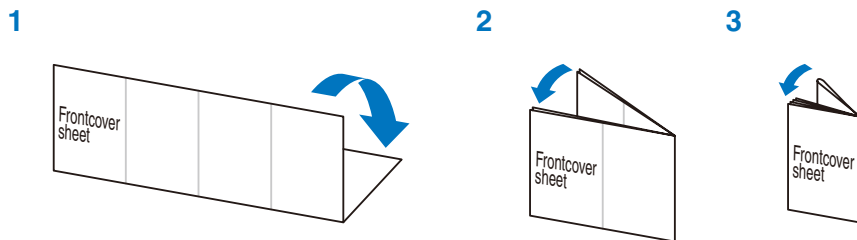
### ■ Cutting the pages

Separate the pages of the Quick Manual at the tear-off line.



### ■ Folding the cut pages

Fold the Quick Manual at the folding line so that the frontcover of the document comes on top.

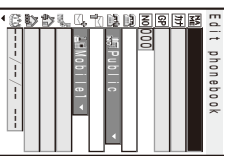


**Quick Manual**

- General Inquiries
  - ◆ DoCoMo Information Center> (In English)
  - ☎ 0120-005-250 (toll free)
  - ※ Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS. (In Japanese only)
- (No prefix) **151** (toll free)
  - ※ Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS.
- Repairs
  - (No prefix) **113** (toll free)
    - ※ Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS. (In Japanese only)
    - ☎ 0120-800-000 (toll free)
  - ※ Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.
  - ※ Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
  - ※ For further information, refer to the Nationwide Service Station List included with your FOOMA terminal and other devices.

**Saving an Entry in the FOOMA Terminal Phonebook (P97)**

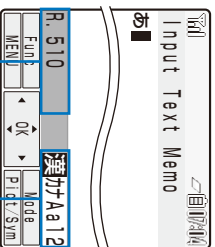
- 1 Press **☑** ( ) in the stand-by display → **☑** (Create).
- 2 [Main memory] → **☑**.



To save data in the UIM phonebook  
Select [UIM].

- 3 Save other items → **☑** (Complete).

**Entering Text (P254)**



- ① The screen is an image.
- ② The screen is an image.
- Number of bytes that can be entered
- A half-width character is counted as one byte and a full-width character as two bytes.
- Character mode or pictograph/symbol mode

1

**Items you can save**

- **NAME** Name (Required)
  - Enter a name within 16 full-width/32 half-width characters.
- **読み** Reading
  - Enter the reading within 32 half-width characters.
- **グループ** Group
  - Select from 20 different groups.
- **NO** Memory no.
  - Enter from 000 to 999.
- **☎** Phone number
  - Up to three numbers per entry are available. Enter each number within 26 digits.
- **☎** Phone number type
  - Select from nine different icons.
- **✉** E-mail address
  - Up to three mail addresses per entry are available. Enter each address within 50 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols.
- **☎** E-mail address type
  - Select from five different icons.

5

**Changing the character mode**

- (Mode)
  - Character mode for half-width: Every time you press **☑** (Mode), the character mode changes in the order of [英] → [和] → [英] → [和]
  - Character mode for full-width: Every time you press **☑** (Mode), the character mode changes in the order of [英] → [和] → [英] → [和]

**Changing the pictograph/symbol mode**

- (Pict/Sym)
  - Every time you press **☑** (Pict/Sym), the character mode changes in the order of [英] → [和] → [英] → [和].
  - [英] can be selected only in the Edit mail and Edit signature displays.

**Changing the character mode between full-width and half-width**

- (Func) → [Multi/Single]

2

**Secret code**

- **☎** Secret code
  - Enter the specified Secret code for the mail address in four digits.
- **☎** Postal code
  - Enter a code within seven half-width digits.
- **☎** Address
  - Enter an address within 64 full-width/128 half-width characters.
- **☎** Birthday
  - Enter a date within the range from 1900/01/01 to 2050/12/31.
- **☎** Des call display
  - Select or shoot a call image to be displayed when placing/receiving a voice/video phone call and displaying the individual Phonebook entry.
- **☎** Chara-den
  - Select a Chara-den character to be sent when placing a videophone call.

6

**Entering a character assigned to the same key twice or more in succession**

After entering the first character, move the cursor.

**Deleting a character**

- **☑**
  - The character at the cursor is deleted by pressing **☑** for less than a second. The last character is deleted when the cursor is at the end of the text.
- All characters at and after the cursor position are deleted by pressing **☑** for over a second. All characters are deleted when the cursor is at the end of the text.

**Inserting a character**

- **☑**
  - Move the cursor to the position to insert a character.

**Changing the block of characters**

- **☑**
  - Move the cursor with **☑**.

**Undoing text**

- **☑** (Func) → [Undo]

3

**Des phone tone**

- **☎**
  - Select a ring tone that sounds for an incoming voice/video phone call.

**Des mail tone**

- **☎**
  - Select a ring tone that sounds immediately after receiving mail.

**Select phone illum.**

- **☎**
  - Select an indicator color that flashes for an incoming voice/video phone call.

**Select mail illum.**

- **☎**
  - Select an indicator color that flashes immediately after receiving mail.

**Secret**

- **☎**
  - Select whether to display the Phonebook data.

**Editing an Entry (P94)**

- 1 From the Phonebook, select an entry → **☑** (Edit).

- 2 Edit each item → **☑** (Complete).

7

## Camera (P.196, 199)

### Recording still images

- 1 Press **[Camera]** in the stand-by display (for over a second).

Camera mode is activated.

- 2 Point the camera at the object → **[Shooting]**.

The white-framed focusing window is used to adjust the focus. When the image comes into focus, the confirmation sound is heard, and the focusing window turns green. A still image is recorded with the shutter sound.

- 3 Press **[Save]**.

The still image is saved.

8

### Recording a movie

- 1 Press **[Func]** in the Camera mode display → **[Shoot]** → **[Switch mode]** → **[Movie shoot]** → **[Start]**.

The display switches to the Movie shoot display.

- 2 Point the camera at the object → **[Shooting]**.

The recording start tone is heard and the movie is recorded.

- 3 Press **[Stop]** to end recording.

The recording end tone is heard and the recording is stopped.

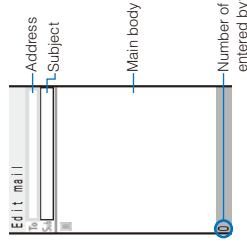
- 4 Press **[Save]**.

The movie is saved.

9

## Composing and Sending i-mode Mail (P.170)

- 1 Press **[Mail]** in the stand-by display → **[Compose message]** → **[Compose]**.



12

## Music (P.233)

Example: Playing back music data by selecting an artist

- 1 Press **[Menu]** (MENU) in the stand-by display → **[Entertainment]** → **[MUSIC Player]** → **[OK]**.

- 2 Select **[Artists]** → **[OK]**.

- 3 Select an artist → an album → **[OK]**.

- 4 Select music data → **[Play]**.

10

## File Attachment (P.174)

- 1 Press **[Func]** in the Edit mail display → **[Add attach file]** → **[OK]**.

Select from [Image], [i-motion], [Melody], [TuruCa], [Phonebook], [My data], [Schedule], [Bookmark], [Others], and [Activate camera].

- 2 Select a file type → a folder → a file → **[OK]**.

The file is attached and "📎", "📎", "📎", "📎", or "📎" appears.

- 3 Compose mail → **[Send]**.

14

## Videophone (P.45, 58)

### Placing a videophone call

- 1 Enter a phone number in the stand-by display → **[Call]** (V.phone).

- 2 Press **[Call]** to hang up.

### Receiving a videophone call

- 1 When you receive a call, press **[Call]** or **[Call]** (V.phone).

- 2 Press **[Call]** to hang up.

### Operations during a videophone call

Key operation	Operation
<b>[M/Side]</b> (MySide/ Sub)	Switch between camera image/substitute image
<b>[In/Out]</b> (In/Out)	Switch between In-/Out-camera
<b>[ON/OFF]</b> (On/Off)	Hands-free ON/OFF
<b>[Zoom In/Out]</b> (Zoom In/Out)	Out-camera zoom-In/-out

11

## Checking New i-mode Mail (P.176)

- 1 Press **[Mail]** in the stand-by display (for over a second).

The FOMA terminal is connected to the i-mode center and an inquiry result is displayed.

## Auto Receiving i-mode Mail (P.175)

- 1 When receiving mail

"📧" flashes.

- 2 When receiving is completed

"📧" is displayed, the indicator flashes, the ring tone sounds, and the number of received mail is displayed. The display before receiving reappears after about 15 seconds.

15



## List of Menus (P270)

- Selecting the menu

### 1 (MENU)

- List of menus

Entertainment	
My Selection	
MUSIC Player	
Lifetime Calendar	
Camera	
Movie	
microSD	
Mall	
Mail box	
Compose msg	
Compose SMS	
Templates	

16

Call	Call assist
	Call setting
	Call quality
	Earphone
	Self mode
	TTC
Application	Mail
	i-mode
	i QPill
	Phonebook
	Call record
	PushTalk
	Record msg
	TomCa
	C.act. Notice
	Schedule
	Input method
	lock all
	IC card lock
Lock/Security	PIA lock

20

Check new msg	
Check new SMS	
Receive option	
Mail setting	
i-mode	
i Menu	
Bookmark	
Screen Memo	
Go to location	
Last accessed URL	
i-Channel	
MessageR/F	
Check new messages	
i-mode setting	
Q PILL	
Q PILL list	
Q PILL setting	
Q PILL history	
Q PILL(microSD)	

17

Lock/Security	Secret display
	Key dial lock
	Acpt/Rjct call
	Reject unknown
	Denied no ID
	Date/time
	Language
	Manner mode
	Change code
	UIM setting
	Scan function
	SW Update
	Battery level
	Set basic tone
	Storage info
	USB mode set.
	Reset
	Init. setting

21

Phone	
Own number	
Phonebook	
Call record	
PushTalk phonebook	
Record msg	
LikeIt	
BC reader	
Rev'r data	
TomCa	
IC card content	
Data Security Service	
Alarm	
Schedule	
Text Memo	
Calculator	

18

NW Services	
Voice Mail	
Call Waiting	
Call Forwarding	
Bar Nuisance Calls	
Notify Caller ID	
Caller ID Request	
Call Cost/Duration	
In-call arrival act	
Arrival Call Act	
Remote Control	
Dual Network	
English Guidance	
Service Numbers	
Additional service	
Multi Number	
Chaku-moji	
Int'l dial assist	
Vph switch notice	

22

Data Box	
My picture	
MUSIC	
i-motion	
IMeody	
Chara-den	
Settings	
Stand-by disp.	
Display	
Sub display	
Backlight	
Power saver	
Menu setting	
Menu pattern	
Anim setting	
Font size	
Incoming set	
Missed call	
Videophone	
Call display	

19

## Manner Mode (P282, 63, 64, 106)

- Setting/canceling the Public mode (Drive mode)

Press **[#]** (☞) in the stand-by display (for over a second).

- Public mode (Power off)

Set **[\*]** **[2]** **[5]** **[2]** **[5]** **[1]** + **[✓]**  
Cancel **[\*]** **[2]** **[5]** **[2]** **[5]** **[0]** + **[✓]**

Confirm contents **[\*]** **[2]** **[5]** **[2]** **[5]** **[9]** + **[✓]**

- Setting/canceling the Manner mode
- Press **[\*]** in the stand-by display (for over a second).

## The Voice Mail Service (P260)

- Starting the service

From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Voice Mail] → [Activate] → [Activate] → [Yes] → **[○]**.

- Stopping the service

From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Voice Mail] → [Deactivate] → [Yes] → **[○]**.

- Playing back a new message

From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Voice Mail] → [Play messages] → [Yes] → **[○]**.

23

### The Call Waiting Service (P.261)

■ **Starting the service**  
From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Call Waiting] → [Activate] → [Yes] → [OK]

■ **Stopping the service**  
From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Call Waiting] → [Deactivate] → [Yes] → [OK]

### The Call Forwarding Service (P.261)

■ **Starting the service**  
From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Call forwarding] → [Activate] → [Activate] → [Yes] → [OK]

■ **Stopping the service**  
From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Call forwarding] → [Deactivate] → [Yes] → [OK]

■ **Changing the forwarding number**  
From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Call forwarding] → [Change FWD number] → [OK]  
Enter the phone number → [Set] → [OK] 24

### The Caller ID Display Request Service (P.262)

■ **Starting the service**  
From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Caller ID Request] → [Activate] → [Yes] → [OK]

■ **Stopping the service**  
From the Menu, select [NW Services] → [Caller ID Request] → [Deactivate] → [Yes] → [OK]

### List of Key Operation (P.25, 26)

▲ : Press in the stand-by display to display the Data Box.  
● : Press in the stand-by display to display the Phonebook.  
○ : Press in the stand-by display to display the Received record.  
○ : Press in the stand-by display to display the Redial record.  
□ : Press in the stand-by display to display the Mail menu.  
Press for over a second in the stand-by display to perform the Check new messages. 25

■ : Press in the stand-by display to display the I-mode menu.  
Press for over a second in the stand-by display to display the I-crpppl folder list display.  
■ : Press to display the menu.  
■ : Press in the stand-by display to display the Channel list display.  
Press for over a second in the stand-by display to display My Selection.  
■ : Press for over a second in the stand-by display to lock/cancel the IC card function.  
■ : Press for over a second in the stand-by display to set/cancel the Public mode (Drive mode).  
■ : Press in the stand-by display to display the Manner mode display.  
Press for over a second in the stand-by display to set/cancel the Manner mode.  
Press to scroll a page to the previous display.  
■ : Press in the stand-by display to display the Record msg display.  
Press for over a second in the stand-by display to set/cancel the Record message.  
Press to scroll a page to the next display. 26

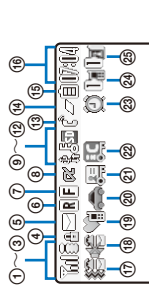
■ : Press in the stand-by display to display the I-mode menu.  
Press for over a second in the stand-by display to display the I-crpppl folder list display.  
■ : Press to display the menu.  
■ : Press in the stand-by display to display the Channel list display.  
Press for over a second in the stand-by display to display My Selection.  
■ : Press for over a second in the stand-by display to lock/cancel the IC card function.  
■ : Press for over a second in the stand-by display to set/cancel the Public mode (Drive mode).  
■ : Press in the stand-by display to display the Manner mode display.  
Press for over a second in the stand-by display to set/cancel the Manner mode.  
Press to scroll a page to the previous display.  
■ : Press in the stand-by display to display the Record msg display.  
Press for over a second in the stand-by display to set/cancel the Record message.  
Press to scroll a page to the next display. 26

■ : When you open the FOMA terminal, press for over a second in the stand-by display to activate the Camera mode.

### Services Available on the FOMA Terminal (P.287)

Service	Phone number
Number guide service (paid; service charge + call charge)	(no area code) 104
Telegram service (paid; telegram fee)	(no area code) 115
Time (paid)	(no area code) 117
Weather (paid)	Area code + 177
Emergency call to Police	(no area code) 110
Emergency call to Fire	(no area code) 119
Ambulance	(no area code) 118
Emergency call to Maritime rescue	(no area code) 171
Disaster Message Board Service (paid)	(no area code) 106
Collect Call (paid; service charge + call charge)	(no area code) 106

### Using the Display (P.26)



① : Radio wave condition  
② : During I-mode  
③ : Outside of the service area  
④ : Self mode is set  
⑤ : While using the infrared/IC communication function  
⑥ : While performing an SSL-related function such as displaying an SSL site  
⑦ : Unread i-mode mail/Unread SMS/Unread I-mode mail and unread SMS  
⑧ : Mail at the I-mode center 28

① : Unread Message R  
② : Unread Message F  
③ : While running I-crpppl (I-crpppl stand-by display)/I-crpppl DX mode  
④ : USB mode is Communication mode  
⑤ : USB mode is Memory mode  
⑥ : Secret display is [ON]  
⑦ : The microSD memory card is inserted  
⑧ : While the infrared remote control is used  
⑨ : During a voice call  
⑩ : During a videophone call (64K/32K)  
⑪ : During PushTalk communication (1/2/3 or more tasks are executed changes to while playback is in progress on the MUSIC Player)  
⑫ : Battery level  
⑬ : Current time (Displayed in 24-hour format in other than the stand-by display) 29

⑭ : The vibrator is set for incoming calls  
⑮ : The vibrator is set for incoming calls and mail  
⑯ : Incoming call ring volume OFF  
⑰ : Incoming mail ring volume OFF  
⑱ : Incoming call and mail ring volume OFF  
⑲ : Manner mode is set (♥ is pink)  
⑳ : Public mode (Drive mode) is set  
㉑ : PIM lock is set  
㉒ : Key dial lock is set  
㉓ : PIM lock and Key dial lock are set  
㉔ : IC card lock is set  
㉕ : Alarm is set  
㉖ : Schedule alarm is set  
㉗ : Alarm and Schedule alarm are set  
㉘ : Record message is set (there are non-played back record messages) (□ is white, □ is light blue)  
㉙ : Videophone message is set (there are non-played back videophone messages) (■ is green, □ is light blue) 30

### Contact for Emergency Such As Lost Terminal Omakase Lock

※ Omakase Lock is a paid service. When you subscribe to this service together with your request to suspend the FOMA terminal or while the FOMA terminal is suspended, the service charge is not required.

Setting/canceling the Omakase Lock  
☎ 0120-524-360 (24-hour service)

### Other contact numbers

Contact number: \_\_\_\_\_  
Contact number: \_\_\_\_\_  
Contact number: \_\_\_\_\_

● Check the number you call and dial it correctly. 31

## Don't forget your FOMA terminal or your manners!

When you use the FOMA terminal, be careful not to disturb others around you.

### Power off the FOMA terminal in the following cases

#### ● When you are in a place where the use is prohibited

In airplanes and hospitals, power off the FOMA terminal.

※ Power off the FOMA terminal not only inside hospital wards but also in the lobby or waiting rooms since electronic medical equipment may be used nearby.

#### ● When there is a possibility that the implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator is used nearby such as on rush-hour trains

The FOMA terminal may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator.

### Set the Public mode in the following cases

#### ● When you are driving

Using the FOMA terminal while driving is dangerous because it may interfere safe driving.

※ Use the FOMA terminal after stopping the vehicle to park in a safe place or use the Public mode (Drive mode).

#### ● When you are in a public place such as in a theater, movie theater or museum

Power off the FOMA terminal in a quiet public place since it may disturb others around you.

### Be careful of where you use the FOMA terminal and the volume of your voice and ring tone

#### ● Be careful of the volume of your voice when you use the FOMA terminal in a quiet place such as in a restaurant or hotel lobby.

#### ● Use the FOMA terminal in a place where you do not disturb passengers on the streets.

### Be sensitive regarding privacy

! Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

### Features to support public manners

The FOMA terminal is equipped with helpful features, such as muting sounds, not answering incoming calls, etc.

- Public mode (P.62, 63, 64)
- Manner mode (P.105)/Original manner mode (P.106)
- Vibrator (P.101)
- Record message (P.65)

Access DoCoMo e-site for procedures to change your address or billing plan and for request of information materials.

**From i-mode** i Menu▶料金&お申込・設定(Charges & Applications/Setting)▶ドコモeサイト(DoCoMo e-site) Packet communication charges free

**From PC** My DoCoMo (<http://www.mydocomo.com/>)▶各種手続き (ドコモeサイト) (Application procedure (DoCoMo e-site))

- ※ You will need your "network security code" to access e-site from i-mode.
- ※ No packet communication charges are incurred when accessing e-site from i-mode. Accessing from overseas will incur charges.
- ※ You will need your "DoCoMo ID/password" to access e-site from PC.
- ※ If you do not have or you have forgotten your "network security code" or "DoCoMo ID/password", contact the DoCoMo Information Center listed below.
- ※ DoCoMo e-site may not be available depending upon the content of your subscription.
- ※ You may not be able to access some e-site services due to system maintenance, etc.

### General Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>

### Repairs

#### ■ (In English)

 **0120-005-250** (toll free)


- ※ Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

#### ■ (In Japanese only)

 (No prefix) **151** (toll free)

- ※ Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

#### ■ (In Japanese only)

 (No prefix) **113** (toll free)

- ※ Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

#### ■ (In Japanese only)

 **0120-800-000** (toll free)

- ※ Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.
- ※ Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
- ※ For further information, refer to the "Nationwide Service Station List" included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.



Do not forget your cellular phone  
... or your manners!

When using your portable phone in a public place, do not forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

## Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: Sony Ericsson Mobile Communications Japan, Inc.



**Li-ion**

To prevent damage to the environment, bring used battery packs to an NTT DoCoMo service counter, an NTT DoCoMo agent or a recycle center.



Made from 100% recycled paper.



This manual is printed using an ink based on soy bean oil.

# FOMA® SO704i

## Manual for

### Data Communication

About Data Communication .....	1
Before Using Data Communication.....	2
Preparations and Flow of Data Communication .....	3
Connecting the FOMA Terminal to a PC .....	3
Installing the Communication Configuration Files (Drivers) .....	4
About the FOMA PC Setup Software .....	6
Setting Communication Using the FOMA PC Setup Software (When Using Windows XP/Windows 2000 Professional) .....	7
Setting Communication Using the FOMA PC Setup Software (When Using Windows Vista) .....	13
Setting Communication Without the FOMA PC Setup Software .....	18
AT Commands .....	23

#### ■ Brief summary of the Manual for Data Communication

This manual provides instructions on how to install the SO704i communication configuration files (drivers) and FOMA PC Setup Software that are both included in the supplied CD-ROM as well as information necessary for performing data communication on the FOMA SO704i.

#### ■ Operations on Windows

This manual assumes that you use Windows XP Service Pack 2 as your operating system. Operating procedures and window examples may partly differ depending on your PC environment.

## About Data Communication

You can use the FOMA terminal for three types of data communication, packet communication, 64K data communication, and data transfer.

- The FOMA terminal does not support Remote Wakeup.
- The FOMA terminal does not support FAX communication.
- The FOMA terminal does not support the IP connection.
- If you are going to connect the FOMA terminal to DoCoMo's "sigmarion II"/"sigmarion III"/"musea" PDA to perform data communication, you should update "sigmarion II"/"musea". For details about updating, see the DoCoMo website.

### Packet Communication

A charge applies to this type of communication based on the volume of exchanged data (maximum reception speed 384kbps, maximum transmission speed 64kbps).

You can perform packet communication by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC using the FOMA USB Cable (optional) and making the necessary settings. Use a FOMA packet communication-compliant access point such as DoCoMo's Internet connection service "mopera U"/"mopera". You can also exchange data by accessing an in-house LAN connected to the FOMA network.

- Note that packet communication could be expensive if you exchange large volumes of data such as viewing sites or Internet home pages that contain images or downloading files.

### 64K Data Communication

A charge applies to this type of communication based on the duration of a communication (communication speed 64kbps).

You can perform 64K data communication by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC using the FOMA USB Cable (optional) and making the necessary settings. Use a FOMA 64K data communication-compliant access point such as DoCoMo's Internet connection service "mopera U"/"mopera" or ISDN synchronous 64K access points.

- Note that 64K data communication could be expensive if it is performed for a long period of time.

### Data Transfer

This type of communication is used to exchange data using the infrared communication, iC communication, or FOMA USB Cable (optional) and no charge is required. Using infrared communication, you can exchange data with a device such as the FOMA terminal or a PC that is equipped with the infrared communication function.

## Precautions on Use

### Usage Fee of Internet Service Provider

When you use the Internet, a usage fee is required for your Internet service provider. This usage fee, which is separate from the FOMA service charges, must be paid directly to the Internet service provider. For details about usage fees, contact your Internet service provider.

You can use DoCoMo's Internet connection service "mopera U"/"mopera".

To use "mopera U", you need to subscribe to this service (paid service). No monthly charge is required to use "mopera" and you do not need to subscribe to it.

### Setting a Host (Such as an Internet Service Provider)

The host for packet communication is different from the host for 64K data communication. To use packet communication, use a packet communication-compliant host; to use 64K data communication, use a FOMA 64K data communication-compliant host or ISDN synchronous 64K-compliant host.

- You cannot connect to a DoPa access point.
- You cannot connect to a PHS 64K/32K data communication access point such as PIAFS.

### User Authentication for Network Access

User authentication (ID and password) may be required when connecting to some hosts. If user authentication is required, enter your ID and password on the communication software (dial-up network) for connecting to the host. The Internet service provider or the network administrator of the host assigns an ID and password. For details, contact your Internet service provider or the network administrator of the host.

### Access Authentication for the Use of a Browser

When a FirstPass-compatible site that you access through the Internet browser on your PC requires the FirstPass (user certificate) as an access authentication, install the FirstPass PC software from this CD-ROM and perform necessary settings. For details, see the "FirstPassManual" (PDF format) in the [FirstPassPCSoft] folder on the CD-ROM. You need Adobe Reader (Version 6.0 or later is recommended) to read the "FirstPassManual" (PDF format). If Adobe Reader is not installed on your PC, install it from the same CD-ROM, which also contains the Adobe Reader software.

For details on using Adobe Reader, see the Help that is installed with the software.

## Conditions of Packet and 64K Data Communication

The following conditions are necessary to perform communication using the FOMA terminal.

- The FOMA USB Cable (optional) can be used on your PC.
- Your PDA must have FOMA packet and 64K data communication support.
- You must be inside of the FOMA's service area.
- The host for packet communication must have FOMA packet communication support.
- The host for 64K data communication must have FOMA 64K or ISDN synchronous 64K data communication support.

Note, however, that even if you comply with the above conditions, you may not be able to perform communication if the base station is congested or radio wave condition is poor.

## Before Using Data Communication

### About the Operating Environment

Operating environment of a PC to be used for data communication is as follows.

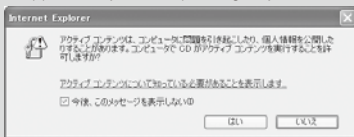
Item	Required environment
PC main unit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PC/AT compatible machine with a built-in or removable CD-ROM drive</li> <li>• USB port (Universal Serial Bus Specification 1.1 compliant)</li> </ul>
OS※1	Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP, Windows Vista (all Japanese versions)
Required memory※2	Windows 2000 Professional: 64MB or more Windows XP: 128MB or more Windows Vista: 512MB or more
Hard drive capacity※2	5MB or more free space
Display	High color (65,536 colors) and high resolution (800×600 dots) or over (recommended)

※1 Operation on a PC running upgraded OS is not guaranteed.

※2 The required memory and hard drive capacity may vary depending on the PC system configuration.

- When you set the supplied CD-ROM in the PC, a warning window as shown below may appear. This warning appears because of the security setting on the Internet Explorer, however, causing no problem for use. Click [はい].

※ The window example assumes that Windows XP is used as an operating system. The actual window that appears may differ depending on your PC environment.



### Other Necessary Items

Other than the FOMA terminal and a PC, the following hardware and software are necessary.

- FOMA USB Cable (optional) or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional)
- Supplied CD-ROM "FOMA SO704i CD-ROM"

● This manual assumes that you use the FOMA USB Cable (optional).

● Purchase the exclusive "FOMA USB Cable" or "FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01". A generic USB cable for a PC connection cannot be used because it has a different connector shape.

### Definition of terms

#### ● Administrator

An administrator is authorized access to all Windows XP, Windows 2000 Professional, and Windows Vista systems. At least one user with Administrator privilege is set for each PC. Normally, a user without Administrator privilege cannot install the communication configuration files (drivers). For more information on Administrator privilege, contact the manufacturer of your PC or a representative of Microsoft Corporation.

#### ● APN (Access Point Name)

A character string used for identifying the Internet service provider host or in-house LAN for packet communication. For example, the APN of "mopera U" is "mopera.net".

#### ● cid (Context Identifier)

A registration number available when you save a packet communication host (APN) in the FOMA terminal. You can save up to 10 numbers from one to 10 for the FOMA terminal.

Default cid of the FOMA terminal

Registration number (cid)	Host (APN)
1	mopera.ne.jp (mopera)
2	Undefined
3	mopera.net (mopera U)
4-10	Undefined

#### ● DNS (Domain Name System)

DNS is a system that converts a domain name (example: nttdocomo.co.jp) into an IP address, which is used by a PC.

#### ● IrDA (Infrared Data Association)

IrDA is an organization that establishes infrared communication-related standards.

#### ● IrMC (Ir Mobile Communication)

Standards established for the purpose of data transfer between mobile phones and between PDAs (personal digital assistant). You can exchange phone numbers and schedule data between mobile phones or PDAs equipped with an IrMC-compliant infrared jack.

#### ● OBEX (Object Exchange)

OBEX is one of the global standards for data communication. You can exchange data between OBEX-compliant mobile phones, PCs, digital cameras, and printers.

#### ● QoS (Quality of Service)

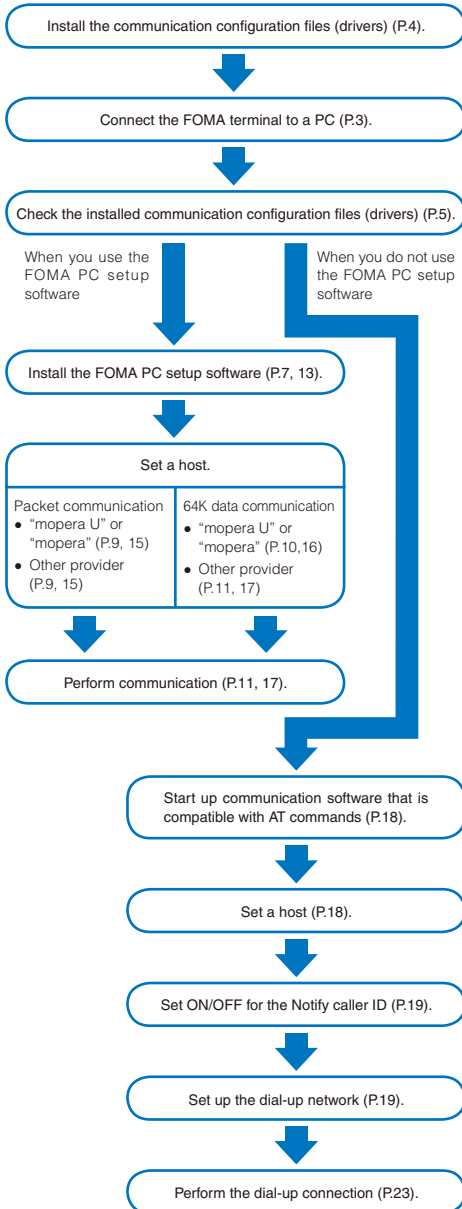
Service quality technology that enables the user to use a communication line in accordance with requirements. If you are using the FOMA terminal, you can set the communication speed for connection.

#### ● 通信設定最適化 (W-TCP) (Optimizing the communication settings (W-TCP))

"通信設定最適化" is a "TCP parameter setting" tool that makes optimal use of TCP/IP transmission capabilities for packet communication on the FOMA network. To make the most of the communication performance of the FOMA terminal, you need to configure the communication settings using this software.

## Preparations and Flow of Data Communication

The preparations required for performing packet and 64K data communication by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC are given below.

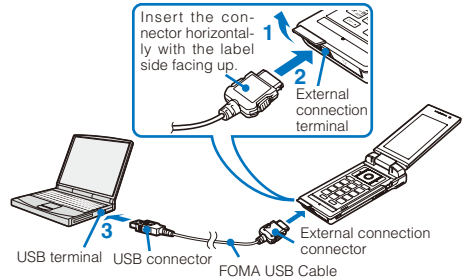


## Connecting the FOMA Terminal to a PC

Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC when they are powered on.

- 1 Open the external connection terminal cover.
- 2 Insert the external connection connector of the FOMA USB Cable (optional) into the external connection terminal of the FOMA terminal until it clicks.
- 3 Connect the USB connector of the FOMA USB Cable to the USB terminal of the PC.

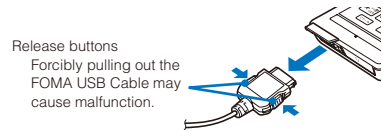
The FOMA terminal is connected to the PC and "☎" is displayed on the FOMA terminal.



### ■ Disconnecting the FOMA USB Cable

- 1 Make sure to pull out the FOMA USB Cable horizontally while holding the release buttons pressed.

When you remove the FOMA USB Cable, "☎" which is displayed on the FOMA terminal disappears.



- 2 Pull out the FOMA USB Cable from the USB terminal of the PC.

- Do not remove the FOMA USB Cable during data communication. Doing so may cause malfunction, etc.
- It is after installing the communication configuration files that "☎" appears on the FOMA terminal.



## Installing the Communication Configuration Files (Drivers)

To connect the FOMA terminal to a PC using the FOMA USB Cable (optional) and perform data communication, install the communication configuration files (drivers) from this CD-ROM.

- A user with Administrator privilege can install the software.
- Make sure not to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC using the FOMA USB Cable (optional) before the installation is completed.

### When Using Windows XP

- 1 Set "FOMA SO704i CD-ROM" in the CD-ROM drive of the PC.



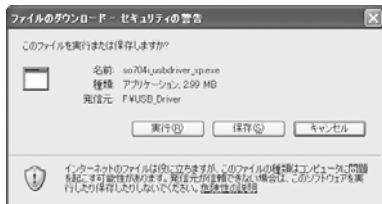
- The recommended environment for operating the Menu program is Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later. If your PC does not meet the requirements or if the Menu does not appear when you insert the CD-ROM, open the CD-ROM drive from My Computer, etc. and double-click [index.html].

- 2 Click [データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト] → [インストール(WindowsXPまたはWindows2000をご利用の場合)] under "FOMA通信設定ファイル(USBドライバ)" (FOMA communication configuration files (USB drivers)).

- When you click [インストール(WindowsXPまたはWindows2000をご利用の場合)], a warning window as shown below may appear. This warning appears because of the security setting on the Internet Explorer, however, causing no problem for use.

When the "ファイルのダウンロード - セキュリティの警告" (File Download - Security Warning) window appears

Click [実行].



When the "Internet Explorer - セキュリティの警告" (Internet Explorer - Security Warning) window appears Click [実行する].



- 3 Click [次へ].

The confirmation window appears.

- 4 Click [OK].

The Terms of Use for FOMA SO704i USB Driver appears.

- 5 Check the contents and click [はい] to accept the terms.

When you click [いいえ]

Installation is canceled.

- 6 Click [完了].

- 7 Connect the FOMA terminal to the PC using the FOMA USB Cable.

A "new hardware found" message appears, all drivers are automatically installed, and the installation is completed.

### When Using Windows 2000 Professional

- 1 Set "FOMA SO704i CD-ROM" in the CD-ROM drive of the PC.



- The recommended environment for operating the Menu program is Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later. If your PC does not meet the requirements or if the Menu does not appear when you insert the CD-ROM, open the CD-ROM drive from My Computer, etc. and double-click [index.html].

- 2 Click [データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト] → [インストール(WindowsXPまたはWindows2000をご利用の場合)] under "FOMA通信設定ファイル(USBドライバ)" (FOMA communication configuration files (USB drivers)).

- 3 Select [このプログラムを上記の場所から実行する] (Run this program from its current location) and click [OK].

- 4 Click [次へ].

The confirmation window appears.

- Click [OK].  
The Terms of Use for FOMA SO704i USB Driver appears.
- Check the contents and click [はい] to accept the terms.  
When you click [いいえ]  
Installation is canceled.
- Click [完了].
- Connect the FOMA terminal to the PC using the FOMA USB Cable.  
A "new hardware found" message appears, all drivers are automatically installed, and the installation is completed.

### When Using Windows Vista

- Set "FOMA SO704i CD-ROM" in the CD-ROM drive of the PC.



- If the Menu does not appear when you insert the CD-ROM, open the CD-ROM drive from Computer, etc. and double-click [index.html].
- Click [データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト] → [インストール(WindowsVistaをご利用の場合)] under "FOMA通信設定ファイル(USBドライバ)" (FOMA communication configuration files (USB drivers)).

- When you click [インストール(WindowsVistaをご利用の場合)], a warning window as shown below may appear. This warning appears because of the security setting on the Internet Explorer, however, causing no problem for use.

When the "ファイルのダウンロード - セキュリティの警告" (File Download - Security Warning) window appears

Click [実行].



The user account control window appears.

- Click [続行].

- Click [次へ].  
The confirmation window appears.
- Click [OK].  
The Terms of Use for FOMA SO704i USB Driver appears.
- Check the contents and click [はい] to accept the terms.  
When you click [いいえ]  
Installation is canceled.
- Click [完了].
- Connect the FOMA terminal to the PC using the FOMA USB Cable.  
All drivers are automatically installed and the message stating that the device is ready to be used appears.

### Checking the Installed Communication Configuration Files (Drivers)

Confirm that the SO704i communication configuration files (drivers) are installed properly.

### When Using Windows XP/Windows 2000 Professional

Example: When using Windows XP

- Click [スタート] → [コントロールパネル] → [パフォーマンスとメンテナンス] → [システム].  
When using Windows 2000 Professional  
Click [スタート] → [設定] → [コントロールパネル] and then double-click [システム].
- Click the [ハードウェア] tab and then [デバイスマネージャ].
- Click each device and confirm the name of the installed driver.

Device type	Driver name
Port (COM/LPT)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FOMA SO704i Command Port</li> <li>FOMA SO704i OBEX Port</li> </ul>
Modem	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FOMA SO704i</li> </ul>
USB (Universal Serial Bus) controller	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FOMA SO704i</li> </ul>

- The COM port number may be different depending on the PC.

## When Using Windows Vista

- 1 Click [スタート] → [コントロールパネル] → [システムとメンテナンス] → [デバイスマネージャ].

The user account control window appears.

- 2 Click [続行].

- 3 Click each device and confirm the name of the installed driver.

Device type	Driver name
Port (COM/LPT)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● FOMA SO704i Command Port</li><li>● FOMA SO704i OBEX Port</li></ul>
Modem	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● FOMA SO704i</li></ul>
Universal Serial Bus controller	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● FOMA SO704i</li></ul>

- The COM port number may be different depending on the PC.

## Uninstalling the Communication Configuration Files (Drivers)

- A user with Administrator privilege can uninstall the software.
- Before starting uninstallation, make sure to disconnect the FOMA terminal from the PC.

## When Using Windows XP/Windows 2000 Professional

Example: When using Windows XP

- 1 Click [スタート] → [コントロールパネル] → [プログラムの追加と削除].

When using Windows 2000 Professional

Click [スタート] → [設定] → [コントロールパネル] and then double-click [アプリケーションの追加と削除].

- 2 Select [FOMA SO704i USB] and click [変更と削除].

The deletion confirmation window appears.

- 3 Click [はい].

The uninstallation of the communication configuration files (drivers) starts.

- 4 Click [OK].

- When you failed to install the software or [FOMA SO704i USB] does not appear on the window in step 2, reinstall the software after uninstalling it by clicking [スタート] → [ファイル名を指定して実行] and entering [C:¥Program Files¥SonyEricsson¥SO704iUSBDriver¥so704idun.exe].

## When Using Windows Vista

- 1 Click [スタート] → [コントロールパネル] → [プログラムのアンインストール].

- 2 Select [FOMA SO704i USB] and click [アンインストールと変更].

The user account control window appears.

- 3 Click [続行].

The deletion confirmation window appears.

- 4 Click [はい].

The uninstallation of the communication configuration files (drivers) starts.

- 5 Click [OK].

## About the FOMA PC Setup Software

To connect the FOMA terminal to a PC and perform packet or 64K data communication, various communication-related settings are necessary. If you use the FOMA PC setup software, you can perform the following settings very easily. You can also set up for packet or 64K data communication without using the FOMA PC setup software (P.18).

### ● かたん設定 (Easy setup)

You can follow the guidance to create a dial-up connection for FOMA data communication. The optimization of the communication settings is performed at the same time.

### ● 通信設定最適化 (Optimizing the communication settings)

Before using FOMA packet communication, optimize the communication settings on the PC.

The optimization of the communication settings is necessary for the possible communication performance.

### ● 接続先(APN)の設定 (Host (APN) setting)

Perform the setting of a host (APN) required for packet communication.

Unlike in 64K data communication, a regular phone number is not used for a FOMA packet communication host. You must register in advance a host name called APN in the FOMA terminal for each host and specify this registration number (cid) in the host number field to connect.

- At the time of purchase, cid1 and cid3 are assigned to "mopera.ne.jp", a host (APN) for mopera and "mopera.ne.jp", a host (AP) for mopera U respectively. To connect to other provider or the corporate LAN, the host (APN) setting is necessary.

- If you have a FOMA PC setup software Ver.4.0.0 or earlier (hereinafter referred to as an old FOMA PC setup software) installed, uninstall it beforehand.

## Setting Communication Using the FOMA PC Setup Software (When Using Windows XP/Windows 2000 Professional)

### Installing the FOMA PC Setup Software

To use the FOMA PC setup software, install it from this CD-ROM.

- When you install the FOMA PC setup software, be sure to use the user account with Administrator privilege of the PC.
- Before starting installation, quit all programs that are running.
- Confirm that the SO704i communication configuration files (drivers) are installed properly on the PC (P.5).

Example: When using Windows XP

- 1 Set "FOMA SO704i CD-ROM" in the CD-ROM drive of the PC.



- The recommended environment for operating the Menu program is Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later. If your PC does not meet the requirements or if the Menu does not appear when you insert the CD-ROM, open the CD-ROM drive from My Computer, etc. and double-click [index.html].

- 2 Click [データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト] → [インストール] under "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setup software).

- When you click [インストール], a warning window as shown below may appear. This warning appears because of the security setting on the Internet Explorer, however, causing no problem for use.

When the "ファイルのダウンロード - セキュリティの警告" (File Download - Security Warning) window appears

Click [実行].



When the "Internet Explorer - セキュリティの警告" (Internet Explorer - Security Warning) window appears (Internet Explorer - Security Warning) window appears Click [実行する].



- 3 Click [次へ].

The Terms of Use for the FOMA PC setup software appears.

- 4 Check the contents and click [はい] to accept the terms.

When you click [いいえ]

Installation is canceled.

- 5 Put a checkmark for [タスクトレイに常駐する] and click [次へ].



After installation of the FOMA PC setup software, the "通信設定最適化" (Optimizing the communication settings) icon is resident in the task tray.

- You can also change the resident setting for the "通信設定最適化" icon after installing the FOMA PC setup software.

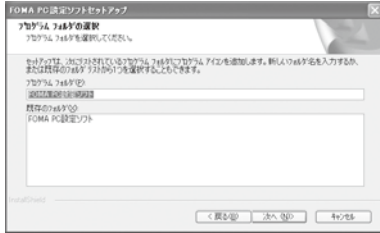
- 6 Check the installation destination and click [次へ].



To change the installation destination

Click [参照], specify the desired installation destination, and click [次へ].

- 7 Check the name of the program folder and click [次へ].



To change the folder name

Enter a new folder name and click [次へ].

- 8 Click [完了].

When the installation is completed, the FOMA PC setup software operation window starts.

## Uninstalling the FOMA PC Setup Software

Example: When using Windows XP

- 1 Quit the program that is running.

- Quit the “通信設定最適化” (Optimizing the communication settings) software. Right-click [通信設定最適化ソフト] in the task tray located in the lower right corner of the desktop window and click [終了].
- Quit the FOMA PC setup software. Click [終了] at the lower right corner of the software window.

- 2 Click [スタート] → [コントロールパネル] → [プログラムの追加と削除].

When using Windows 2000 Professional

Click [スタート] → [設定] → [コントロールパネル] and then double-click [アプリケーションの追加と削除].

- 3 Select [NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC設定ソフト] and click [削除].



- 4 Check the name of the program to be deleted and click [はい].

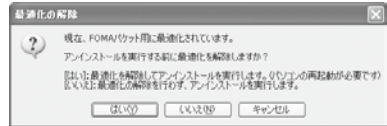
The program is uninstalled and deleted.

- 5 Click [完了].

The FOMA PC setup software is uninstalled.

When the communication settings are optimized

The following window appears. Normally, click [はい] to cancel optimization.



## Preparations Before Making Various Settings

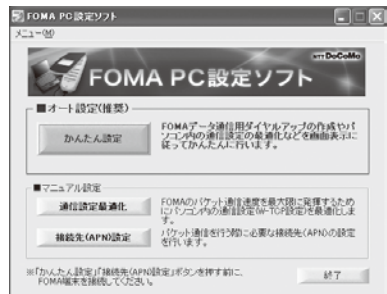
We recommend using “mopera U”, which provides a broadband connection option for an Internet connection using the FOMA terminal. (You need to subscribe separately to this service.)

Users who want to connect to the Internet immediately may find it easy using “mopera”.

To create an easy dial-up connection for FOMA, select/enter responses for the displayed questions in accordance with information of the “Connection method” and “Connection provider” you have selected. Before making the settings, make sure the FOMA terminal is connected to a PC and recognized properly (P.3, 5).

Example: When using Windows XP

- 1 Click [スタート] → [すべてのプログラム] → [FOMA PC設定ソフト].



When using Windows 2000 Professional

Click [スタート] → [プログラム] → [FOMA PC設定ソフト].

## Easy Setup (Packet Communication)

- Note that packet communication could be expensive if you exchange large volumes of data such as viewing sites or Internet home pages that contain images or downloading files.

## When Using "mopera U" or "mopera"

- Start the FOMA PC setup software and click [かんたん設定].
- Select [パケット通信] and click [次へ].
- Select [「mopera U」への接続] or [「mopera」への接続] and click [次へ].

When you select [「mopera U」への接続], the confirmation window for subscription appears. If you have already subscribed to "mopera U", click [はい].

- Click [OK].

The host (APN) is loaded from the FOMA terminal. Wait for a few moments.

- Enter a host name (any name) at [接続名] and click [次へ].

- You cannot enter half-width characters, "¥" "/" ":", "\*" "?" "<" ">" "!" "" "" and "!".
- To connect to "mopera U" or "mopera", your caller ID must be notified. Select either [設定しない(推奨)] or [186を付加する(通知する)].
- To use "mopera", select [PPP接続]. When you use "mopera U", the best connection type is automatically entered according to the FOMA terminal you use.



- Select a choice of accessible users and click [次へ]. You can connect with [ユーザID] and [パスワード] left blank.

- Put a checkmark for [最適化を行う] and click [次へ].

- If you have performed the optimization already, the window for optimization does not appear.

- Check the setting information and click [完了].

- Click [OK].

- When you performed the optimization in step 7, you need to restart the PC.

## When Using Other Providers

- Start the FOMA PC setup software and click [かんたん設定].
- Select [パケット通信] for the connection type and click [次へ].
- Select [その他] for the host and click [次へ].
- Click [OK].

The host (APN) is loaded from the FOMA terminal. Wait for a few moments.

- Enter a host name (any name) at [接続名].

- You cannot enter half-width characters, "¥" "/" ":", "\*" "?" "<" ">" "!" "" "" and "!".
- Select [PPP接続] for the connection type. [IP接続] is not available.
- A connection to some access points may not be available depending on the connection type they provide.
- About whether you should notify your caller ID, follow the instruction of your provider.



### ■ Advanced setting (Setting of TCP/IP)

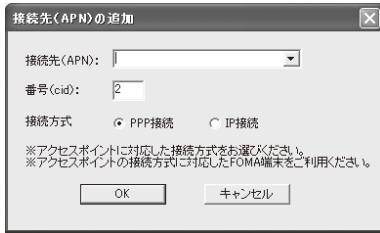
When you click [詳細情報の設定], the setting window of [IPアドレス] and [ネームサーバー] appears. If any entries are required as information for dialing up to your provider or office LAN, enter the appropriate addresses according to the provided instructions.

- Click [接続先(APN)設定].



## 7 Click [追加] and set a host (APN) and click [OK].

Set 2 or a number between 4 and 10 for cid.



## 8 Select the newly added host (APN) and click [OK].

## 9 Click [次へ].

## 10 Select a choice of accessible users, set [ユーザID] and [パスワード], and click [次へ].

To set [ユーザID] and [パスワード], enter the appropriate information supplied by your provider accurately with careful attention to the letter case.



## 11 Put a checkmark for [最適化を行う] and click [次へ].

- If you have performed the optimization already, the window for optimization does not appear.

## 12 Check the setting information and click [完了].

## 13 Click [OK].

- When you performed the optimization in step 11, the window for confirming whether to restart the PC appears. Click [はい].

## Easy Setup (64K Data Communication)

### When Using "mopera U" or "mopera"

- Note that 64K data communication could be expensive if it is performed for a long period of time.

## 1 Start the FOMA PC setup software and click [かんたん設定].

## 2 Select [64Kデータ通信] and click [次へ].

## 3 Select [「mopera U」への接続] or [「mopera」への接続] and click [次へ].

When you select [「mopera U」への接続], the confirmation window for subscription appears. If you have already subscribed to "mopera U", click [はい].

## 4 Enter a host name (any name) at [接続名] and click [次へ].

- You cannot enter half-width characters, "¥" "!" "." "\*" "?" "<" ">" "!" "" and "!".
- If [FOMA SO704i] is not set for [モデムの選択], select [FOMA SO704i].
- To connect to "mopera U" or "mopera", your caller ID must be notified. Select [186を付加する(通知する)].



## 5 Select a choice of accessible users and click [次へ].

You can connect with [ユーザID] and [パスワード] left blank.

## 6 Check the setting information and click [完了].

## 7 Click [OK].

## When Using Other Providers

- 1 Start the FOMA PC setup software and click [かんたん設定].
- 2 Select [64Kデータ通信] for the connection type and click [次へ].
- 3 Select [その他] for the host and click [次へ].
- 4 Enter dial-up information.

● About whether you should notify your caller ID, follow the instruction of the provider you use.

### [接続名]:

Enter a host name (any name).

- You cannot enter half-width characters, "¥" "/" ":" "\*" "?" "<" ">" "!" "[]" and "!".

### [モデムの選択]:

Select [FOMA SO704].

### [電話番号]:

Enter the line phone number of your provider.

- Enter information supplied by your provider accurately.



### ■ Advanced setting (Setting of TCP/IP)

When you click [詳細情報の設定], the setting window of [IPアドレス] and [ネームサーバー] appears. If any entries are required as information for dialing up to your provider or office LAN, enter the appropriate addresses according to the provided instructions.

- 5 Click [次へ].
- 6 Select a choice of accessible users, set [ユーザID] and [パスワード], and click [次へ].

To set [ユーザID] and [パスワード], enter the appropriate information supplied by your provider accurately with careful attention to the letter case.



- 7 Check the setting information and click [完了].

- 8 Click [OK].

## Starting the Communication You Just Finished Setting Up

Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC before starting this operation.

Example: When using Windows XP

- 1 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop.

The communication starts.

### To start from the Start menu

Windows XP

Click [スタート] → [すべてのプログラム] → [アクセサリ] → [通信] → [ネットワーク接続].

Windows 2000 Professional

Click [スタート] → [プログラム] → [アクセサリ] → [通信] → [ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続].



- 2 Enter [ユーザー名] and [パスワード], and click [ダイヤル].

- You can connect with [ユーザー名] and [パスワード] left blank when using "mopera U" or "mopera".

The connection is established.



- The communication speed displayed on a PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

- An icon appears on the FOMA terminal during communication.

During packet communication (no data transmission)



During packet communication (with data transmission)



During 64K data communication





## Disconnecting Communication

Sometimes, closing the Internet browser does not disconnect communication. To ensure the disconnection of communication, perform the following procedure.

1 Click the dial-up icon in the task tray.

2 Click [切断].

The connection is disconnected.



Dial-up icon

## Optimizing the Communication Settings

The “通信設定最適化” (Optimizing the communication settings) software is a “TCP parameter setting” tool that makes optimal use of TCP/IP transmission capabilities for packet communication on the FOMA network. To make the most of the communication performance of the FOMA terminal, you need to configure the communication settings using this software.

### When Using Windows XP

You can optimize the settings for each dial-up connection.

1 Start the FOMA PC setup software and click [通信設定最適化].

To perform the operation from the task tray

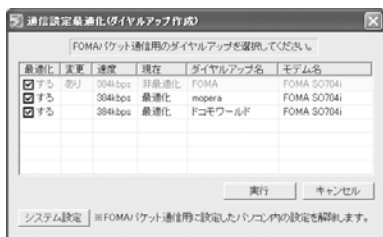
Click “通信設定最適化” in the task tray.

2 Select [FOMA端末(受信最大384kbps)] and click [最適化を行う].

When the system settings are optimized

If you need to cancel the settings because of some reasons such as connecting using other than the FOMA terminal, follow the same steps as in “Canceling the Optimization” (P.12 step 2 to 5).

3 Select the dial-up connection to be optimized and click [実行].



The system and dial-up settings are optimized.

4 Restart the PC in accordance with the instructions on the window.

The system settings are optimized.

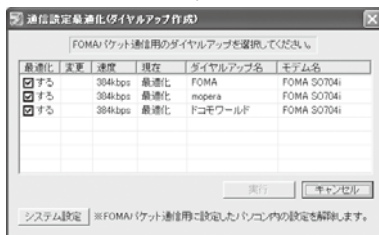
## Canceling the Optimization

Example: When canceling the entire dial-up settings

1 Start the FOMA PC setup software and click [通信設定最適化].

To perform the operation from the task tray

Click “通信設定最適化” in the task tray.

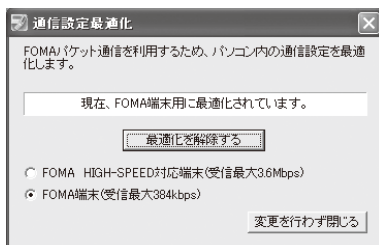


When canceling each dial-up setting

Remove the checkmark from the host for which to cancel the optimization and click [実行]→[OK].

- Restart the PC to enable the cancellation of the optimization.

2 Click [システム設定].



3 Click [最適化を解除する].

4 Click [OK].

5 Restart the PC in accordance with the instructions on the window.

The cancellation of the optimization is enabled.

### When Using Windows 2000 Professional

1 Start the FOMA PC setup software and click [通信設定最適化].

To perform the operation from the task tray

Click “通信設定最適化” in the task tray.

2 Select [FOMA端末(受信最大384kbps)] and click [最適化を行う].

When the system settings are optimized

The message “現在、FOMA端末用に最適化されています。” (The settings are optimized for the FOMA terminal.) appears.

To cancel the settings because of some reasons such as connecting using other than the FOMA terminal, click [最適化を解除する].

3 Restart the PC in accordance with the instructions on the window.

The system settings are optimized.

## Host (APN) Setting

You can set a host (APN) for packet communication. Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC before starting this operation.

- 1 Start the FOMA PC setup software and click [接続先(APN)設定].
- 2 Click [OK].  
The host (APN) is loaded from the FOMA terminal. Wait for a few moments.
- 3 Set a host (APN).



### To add a host (APN)

Click [追加].

### To edit (change) a host (APN)

Select a host (APN) and click [編集].

### To delete a host (APN)

Select a host (APN) and click [削除].

- You cannot delete a host (APN) saved as [cid1] and [cid3]. (Even if you select [cid3] and click [削除], it is not actually deleted. The operation is returned to [mopera.net].)

### To save data in a file

Click the [ファイル] menu → [上書き保存][名前を付けて保存].

### To read data from a file

Click the [ファイル] menu → [開く] and select a saved file.

### To read host (APN) data from the FOMA terminal

Click the [ファイル] menu → [FOMA端末から設定を取得].

### To write host (APN) data to the FOMA terminal

Click the [ファイル] menu → [FOMA端末へ設定を書き込む].

### To create dial-up

Select a host (APN) and click [ダイヤルアップ作成]. Set up a dial-up connection for packet communication in accordance with the instructions on the window.

- The host (APN) is information that must be saved in the FOMA terminal. When you use the PC with a different FOMA terminal connected, it is required to save it again in the new FOMA terminal.
- To continue using a host (APN) saved in the PC, save the registration number (cid) of the same host (APN) in the FOMA terminal.

## Setting Communication Using the FOMA PC Setup Software (When Using Windows Vista)

### Installing the FOMA PC Setup Software

To use the FOMA PC setup software, install it from this CD-ROM.

- When you install the FOMA PC setup software, be sure to use the user account with Administrator privilege of the PC. An error occurs when a user account without Administrator privilege is used. For more information on Administrator privilege, contact the manufacturer of your PC or a representative of Microsoft Corporation.
- Confirm that the SO704i communication configuration files (drivers) are installed properly on the PC (P.5).

- 1 Set "FOMA SO704i CD-ROM" in the CD-ROM drive of the PC.



- If the Menu does not appear when you insert the CD-ROM, open the CD-ROM drive from Computer, etc. and double-click [index.html].

- 2 Click [データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト] → [インストール] under "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setup software).

- When you click [インストール], a warning window as shown below may appear. This warning appears because of the security setting on the Internet Explorer, however, causing no problem for use.

When the "ファイルのダウンロード - セキュリティの警告" (File Download - Security Warning) window appears

Click [実行].



The user account control window appears.

- 3 Click [続行].

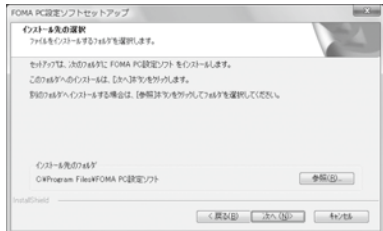
#### 4 Click [次へ].

The Terms of Use for the FOMA PC setup software appears.

#### 5 Check the contents and click [はい] to accept the terms.

When you click [いいえ]  
Installation is canceled.

#### 6 Check the installation destination and click [次へ].



#### To change the installation destination

Click [参照], specify the desired installation destination, and click [次へ].

#### 7 Check the name of the program folder and click [次へ].



#### To change the folder name

Enter a new folder name and click [次へ].

#### 8 Click [完了].

When the installation is completed, the FOMA PC setup software operation window starts.

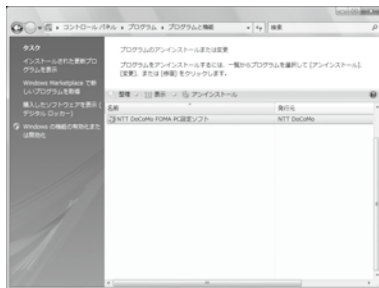
## Uninstalling the FOMA PC Setup Software

#### 1 Quit the program that is running.

Quit the FOMA PC setup software. Click [終了] at the lower right corner of the software window.

#### 2 Click [スタート] → [コントロールパネル] → [プログラムのアンインストール].

#### 3 Select [NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC設定ソフト] and click [アンインストール].



#### 4 Check the name of the program to be deleted and click [はい].

The program is uninstalled and deleted.

#### 5 Click [完了].

The FOMA PC setup software is uninstalled.

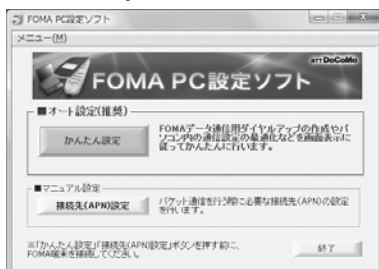
## Preparations Before Making Various Settings

We recommend using "mopera U", which provides a broadband connection option for an Internet connection using the FOMA terminal. (You need to subscribe separately to this service.)

Users who want to connect to the Internet immediately may find it easy using "mopera".

To create an easy dial-up connection for FOMA, select/enter responses for the displayed questions in accordance with information of the "Connection method" and "Connection provider" you have selected. Before making the settings, make sure the FOMA terminal is connected to a PC and recognized properly (P.3, 5).

#### 1 Click [スタート] → [すべてのプログラム] → [FOMA PC設定ソフト].



## Easy Setup (Packet Communication)

- Note that packet communication could be expensive if you exchange large volumes of data such as viewing sites or Internet home pages that contain images or downloading files.

### When Using "mopera U" or "mopera"

- Start the FOMA PC setup software and click [かんたん設定].
- Select [パケット通信] and click [次へ].
- Select [「mopera U」への接続] or [「mopera」への接続] and click [次へ].

When you select [「mopera U」への接続], the confirmation window for subscription appears. If you have already subscribed to "mopera U", click [はい].

- Click [OK].

The host (APN) is loaded from the FOMA terminal. Wait for a few moments.

- Enter a host name (any name) at [接続名] and click [次へ].

- You cannot enter half-width characters, "¥" "/" ":" "\*" "?" "<" ">" "!" "" "" and "!".
- To connect to "mopera U" or "mopera", your caller ID must be notified. Select either [設定しない(推奨)] or [186を付加する(通知する)].
- To use "mopera", select [PPP接続]. When you use "mopera U", the best connection type is automatically entered according to the FOMA terminal you use.



- Set [ユーザID] and [パスワード] and click [次へ].

You can connect with [ユーザID] and [パスワード] left blank.

- Check the setting information and click [完了].

- Click [OK].

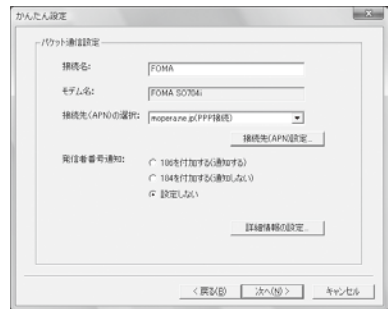
## When Using Other Providers

- Start the FOMA PC setup software and click [かんたん設定].
- Select [パケット通信] for the connection type and click [次へ].
- Select [その他] for the host and click [次へ].
- Click [OK].

The host (APN) is loaded from the FOMA terminal. Wait for a few moments.

- Enter a host name (any name) at [接続名].

- You cannot enter half-width characters, "¥" "/" ":" "\*" "?" "<" ">" "!" "" "" and "!".
- Select [PPP接続] for the connection type. [IP接続] is not available.
- A connection to some access points may not be available depending on the connection type they provide.
- About whether you should notify your caller ID, follow the instruction of your provider.



### ■ Advanced setting (Setting of TCP/IP)

When you click [詳細情報の設定], the setting window of [IPアドレス] and [ネームサーバー] appears. If any entries are required as information for dialing up to your provider or office LAN, enter the appropriate addresses according to the provided instructions.

- Click [接続先(APN)設定].





## When Using Other Providers

- 1 Start the FOMA PC setup software and click [かんたん設定].
  - 2 Select [64Kデータ通信] for the connection type and click [次へ].
  - 3 Select [その他] for the host and click [次へ].
  - 4 Enter dial-up information.
- About whether you should notify your caller ID, follow the instruction of the provider you use.

### [接続名]:

Enter a host name (any name).

- You cannot enter half-width characters, "¥" "/" "\*" "?" "<" ">" "!" "" and "!".

### [モデムの選択]:

Select [FOMA SO704].

### [電話番号]:

Enter the line phone number of your provider.

- Enter information supplied by your provider accurately.

### ■ Advanced setting (Setting of TCP/IP)

When you click [詳細情報の設定], the setting window of [IPアドレス] and [ネームサーバー] appears. If any entries are required as information for dialing up to your provider or office LAN, enter the appropriate addresses according to the provided instructions.

- 5 Click [次へ].
- 6 Set [ユーザID] and [パスワード] and click [次へ].

To set [ユーザID] and [パスワード], enter the appropriate information supplied by your provider accurately with careful attention to the letter case.

- 7 Check the setting information and click [完了].

- 8 Click [OK].

## Starting the Communication You Just Finished Setting Up

Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC before starting this operation.

- 1 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop.



FOMA

The communication starts.

### To start from the Start menu

Click [スタート]→[接続先] and select [すべて] at [表示]. Select a dial-up connection and click [接続].

- 2 Enter [ユーザー名] and [パスワード], and click [ダイヤル].

- You can connect with [ユーザー名] and [パスワード] left blank when using "mopera U" or "mopera".

### When you allow the users other than yourself to connect

Put a checkmark for [次のユーザーが接続するとき使用する] (Save this user name and password so that they can be used for further connections by other users) and select [このコンピュータを使うすべてのユーザー] (All users who use this computer).

The connection is established.

- The communication speed displayed on a PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

- An icon appears on the FOMA terminal during communication.

During packet communication (no data transmission)



During packet communication (with data transmission)



During 64K data communication



## Disconnecting Communication

Sometimes, closing the Internet browser does not disconnect communication. To ensure the disconnection of communication, perform the following procedure.

- 1 Click the dial-up icon in the task tray.
- 2 Select the currently active dial-up connection and click [切断].

The connection is disconnected.



Dial-up icon

## Host (APN) Setting

You can set a host (APN) for packet communication. Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC before starting this operation.

- 1 Start the FOMA PC setup software and click [接続先(APN)設定].

- 2 Click [OK].

The host (APN) is loaded from the FOMA terminal. Wait for a few moments.

- 3 Set a host (APN).



To add a host (APN)

Click [追加].

To edit (change) a host (APN)

Select a host (APN) and click [編集].

To delete a host (APN)

Select a host (APN) and click [削除].

- You cannot delete a host (APN) saved as [cid1] and [cid3]. (Even if you select [cid3] and click [削除], it is not actually deleted. The operation is returned to [mopera.net].)

To save data in a file

Click the [ファイル] menu → [上書き保存]/[名前を付けて保存].

To read data from a file

Click the [ファイル] menu → [開く] and select a saved file.

To read host (APN) data from the FOMA terminal

Click the [ファイル] menu → [FOMA端末から設定を取得].

To write host (APN) data to the FOMA terminal

Click the [ファイル] menu → [FOMA端末へ設定を書き込む].

To create dial-up

Select a host (APN) and click [ダイヤルアップ作成]. Set up a dial-up connection for packet communication in accordance with the instructions on the window.

- The host (APN) is information that must be saved in the FOMA terminal. When you use the PC with a different FOMA terminal connected, it is required to save it again in the new FOMA terminal.
- To continue using a host (APN) saved in the PC, save the registration number (cid) of the same host (APN) in the FOMA terminal.

## Setting Communication Without the FOMA PC Setup Software

The procedure for setting packet or 64K data communication without using the FOMA PC setup software is given below.

To perform the settings, communication software for entering AT commands is necessary. In this section, the "Hyper Terminal" preinstalled as a standard feature in the Windows is used for explanation.

## Host (APN) Setting

Set a host (APN) for performing packet communication.

- If you are using "mopera U" or "mopera" as the packet communication host, you do not have to set a host for 64K data communication.

Example: When using Windows XP

- 1 Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC.

- 2 Click [スタート] → [すべてのプログラム] → [アクセサリ] → [通信] → [ハイパーターミナル].

Hyper Terminal is started up.

When using Windows 2000 Professional

Click [スタート] → [プログラム] → [アクセサリ] → [通信] → [ハイパーターミナル].

When using Windows Vista

Windows Vista does not support Hyper Terminal. Perform the same operations using other terminal software.

- 3 Enter any name at [名前] and click [OK].



- Enter a dummy (nonexistent) phone number (such as "0") at [電話番号], select [FOMA SO704i] at [接続方法], and click [OK].

The connection window appears.



- Click [キャンセル].

- Enter a host (APN) and press

Input format

AT+CGDCONT=<cid>, "PPP", "APN"

Enter the registration number 2 or a number between 4 and 10. Enclose the host name you enter in double quotes.

If the AT command you entered is not displayed

Enter "ATE1" .

When the host (APN) is set, "OK" appears.



- Click the [ファイル] menu → [ハイパーターミナルの終了].

Hyper Terminal ends.

- When the message "現在、接続されています。切断してもよろしいですか?" (The line is connected. Are you sure you want to disconnect?) appears, select [はい].
- When using Windows XP, the message "'XXX' と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか?" (Do you want to save the connection named "XXX"?) appears. You do not need to save the connection.
- When using Windows 2000 Professional, the message "セッションXXXを保存しますか?" (Do you want to save session XXX?) appears. You do not need to save the session.

To reset a host (APN)

Input format

AT+CGDCONT= (Reset all cid)

AT+CGDCONT=<cid> (Reset a specific cid only)

To display a current host (APN)

Input format

AT+CGDCONT?

## Setting ON/OFF for the Notify Caller ID

The caller ID is important personal information. Carefully decide whether you want to notify a recipient of your caller ID.

- The caller ID must be notified when you use "mopera U" or "mopera".

- Perform step 1 to 5 in "Host (APN) Setting" (P.18).

- Set ON/OFF for the Notify caller ID during packet communication.

Input format

AT \*DGPIR=<n>

1: Add "184" (OFF).

2: Add "186" (ON).

If the AT command you entered is not displayed

Enter "ATE1".

When ON/OFF for the Notify caller ID is set, "OK" appears.

### ON/OFF setting of a dial-up network

You can add 186 (ON)/184 (OFF) to a host number even for a dial-up network setting (P.19).

When this setting is performed by both \*DGPIR command and dial-up network setting, the following parameters are used.

Dial-up network setting (when <cid>=3)	* DGPIR command setting		
	No setting	OFF	ON
*99* * *3#	ON	OFF	ON
184*99* * *3#	OFF		
186*99* * *3#	ON		

## Dial-up Network Setting

### When Using Windows XP

- Click [スタート] → [すべてのプログラム] → [アクセサリ] → [通信] → [新しい接続ウィザード].

The new connection window appears.

- Click [次へ].

- Select [インターネットに接続する] and click [次へ].

- Select [接続を手動でセットアップする] and click [次へ].

- Select [ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する] and click [次へ].

- Put a checkmark in the checkbox of [モデム - FOMA SO704i] and click [次へ].

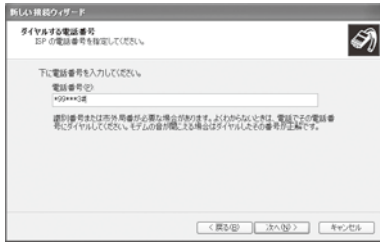
- The window for selecting the device appears only when there are several modems.

- Enter any name at [ISP名] and click [次へ].





8 Enter a host number at [電話番号] and click [次へ].



For packet communication

Enter " \*99\*\* \* <cid>#". Enter the registration number of a host for <cid>.

For 64K data communication

Enter the phone number of a host.

9 Enter [ユーザー名], [パスワード], and [パスワードの確認入力] and click [次へ].

- You can connect with [ユーザー名] and [パスワード] left blank when using "mopera U" or "mopera".



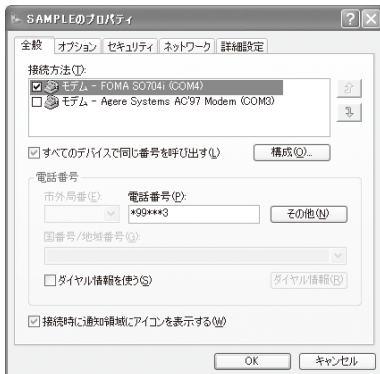
10 Click [完了].

11 Click [スタート]→[すべてのプログラム]→[アクセサリ]→[通信]→[ネットワーク接続].

12 Select the created host icon and then click the [ファイル] menu → [プロパティ].

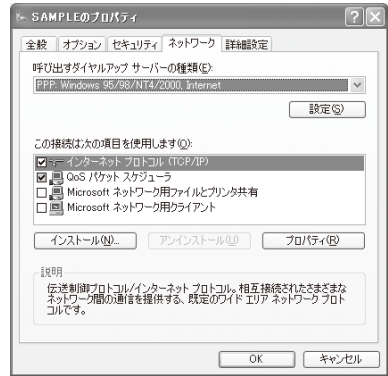
13 Check each item of the [全般] tab.

- When multiple modems are connected to a PC, put a checkmark only for [モデム - FOMA S0704i] at [接続方法].
- Remove the checkmark from [ダイヤル情報を使う].

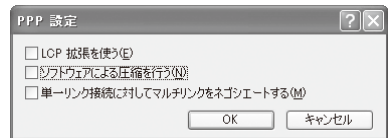


14 Click the [ネットワーク] tab, check each item, and click [設定].

- Select [PPP:Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet] for [呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類].
- Put a checkmark only for [インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)] at [この接続は次の項目を使用します]. Since you cannot change [QoS/パケットスケジューラ], leave it as it is.



15 Remove all checkmarks and click [OK].



16 Click [OK].

The host and TCP/IP protocol are set.

### When Using Windows 2000 Professional

1 Click [スタート] → [プログラム] → [アクセサリ] → [通信] → [ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続].

The network and dial-up connection window appears.

2 Double-click the [新しい接続の作成] icon.

The location information window appears.

- The network connection wizard appears for the second time and later. Go to step 5.

3 Enter an area code at [市外局番] and click [OK].

The phone and modem option window appears.

4 Click [OK].

The network connection wizard appears.

5 Click [次へ].

6 Select [インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する] and click [次へ].

7 Select [インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク(LAN)を使って接続します] and click [次へ].

8 Select [電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します] and click [次へ].

9 Check whether [インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する] is set to [FOMA SO704i] and click [次へ].

- This window may not appear on some operating environments of the PC. In this case, go to step 10.

10 Enter a host number at [電話番号] and click [詳細設定].

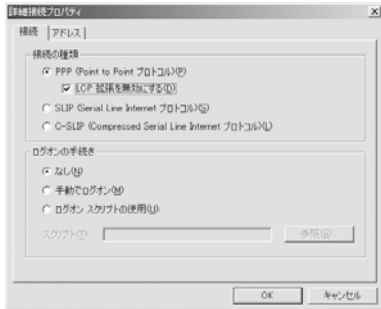
**For packet communication**

Enter “\*99\*\* \*<cid>#”. Enter the registration number of a host for <cid>.

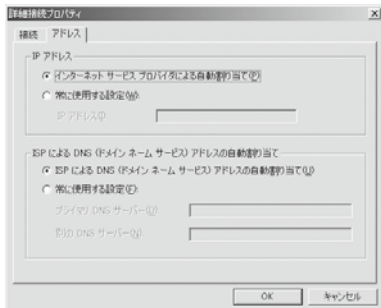
**For 64K data communication**

Enter the phone number of a host.

11 Set each item of the [接続] tab as shown on the window example.



12 Click the [アドレス] tab and set each item as shown on the window example.



13 Click [OK].

14 Click [次へ].

15 Enter [ユーザー名] and [パスワード], and click [次へ].

- You can connect with [ユーザー名] and [パスワード] left blank when using “mopera U” or “mopera”.

16 Enter a host name (any name) at [接続名] and click [次へ].

17 Select [いいえ] and click [次へ].

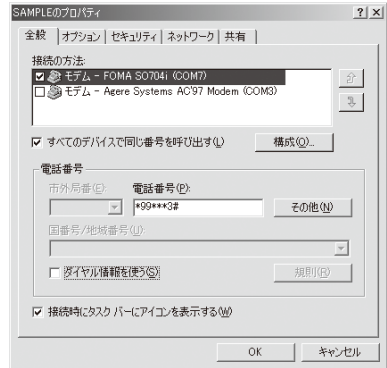
18 Remove the checkmark from [今すぐインターネットに接続するにはここを選んで[完了]をクリックしてください] and click [完了].

19 Select the created host icon and then click the [ファイル] menu → [プロパティ].

20 Check each item of the [全般] tab.

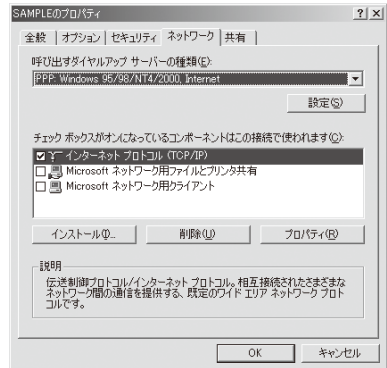
- When multiple modems are connected to a PC, put a checkmark only for [モデム - FOMA SO704i] at [接続方法].

- Remove the checkmark from [ダイヤル情報を使う].

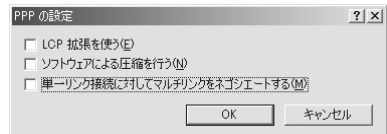


21 Click the [ネットワーク] tab, check each item, and click [設定].

- Select [PPP:Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet] for [呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類].
- Put a checkmark only for [インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)] for component.



22 Remove all checkmarks and click [OK].

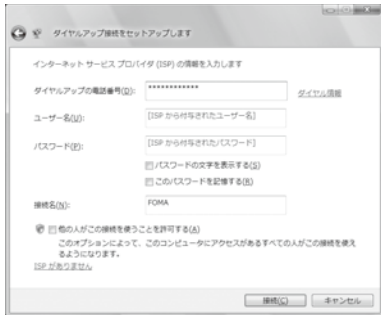


23 Click [OK].

The host and TCP/IP protocol are set.

## When Using Windows Vista

- 1 Click [スタート]→[接続].
- 2 Click [接続またはネットワークをセットアップします].
- 3 Select [ダイヤルアップ接続をセットアップします] and click [次へ].
- 4 Click [モデム - FOMA SO704i].
  - The window for selecting the device appears only when there are several modems.
- 5 Enter a host number at [ダイヤルアップの電話番号].



### For packet communication

Enter "\*99\*\* \*<cid>#". Enter the registration number of a host for <cid>#.

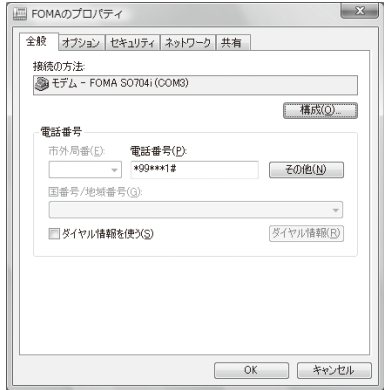
### For 64K data communication

Enter the phone number of a host.

- 6 Enter [ユーザー名] and [パスワード], enter any name at [接続名], and click [接続].
  - You can connect with [ユーザー名] and [パスワード] left blank when using "mopera U" or "mopera".The connecting window appears.
- 7 Click [スキップ].
- 8 Click [接続をセットアップします].
- 9 Click [閉じる].
  - The new dial-up connection is created.
- 10 Click [スタート]→[接続先].
- 11 Right-click the icon of a created host and click [プロパティ].

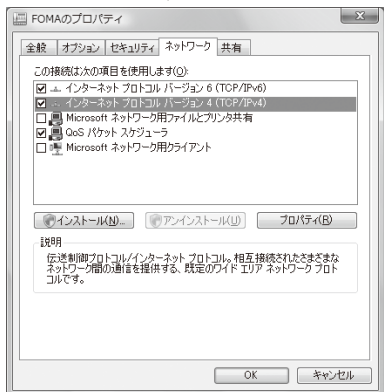
## 12 Check each item of the [全般] tab.

- When multiple modems are connected to a PC, put a checkmark only for [モデム - FOMA SO704i] at [接続の方法].
- Remove the checkmark from [ダイヤル情報を使う].



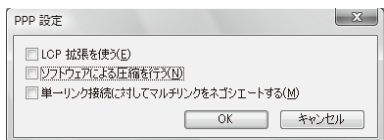
## 13 Click the [ネットワーク] tab, check that the checkmark is put for [インターネットプロトコルバージョン4(TCP/IPv4)] at [この接続は次の項目を使用します], and click [OK].

- You may need to put checkmarks for other items depending on your provider or office LAN. Follow the instructions provided by the provider or the administrator of the office LAN to put checkmarks.



## 14 Click the [オプション] tab and click [PPP設定].

## 15 Remove all checkmarks and click [OK].



## 16 Click [OK].

The host and TCP/IP protocol are set.

## Performing the Dial-up Connection

Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC before starting this operation.

Example: When using Windows XP

- 1 Click [スタート] → [すべてのプログラム] → [アクセサリ] → [通信] → [ネットワーク接続].
- 2 Double-click the host icon.
- 3 Check each item and click [ダイヤル].

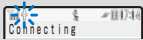
- You can connect with [ユーザー名] and [パスワード] left blank when using "mopera U" or "mopera".

The connection is established.

- The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

- An icon appears on the FOMA terminal during communication.

During packet communication (no data transmission)



During packet communication (with data transmission)



During 64K data communication



## Disconnecting the Dial-up Connection

Sometimes, closing the Internet browser does not disconnect communication. To ensure the disconnection of communication, perform the following procedure.

- 1 Click the dial-up icon in the task tray.
- 2 Click [切断].

The connection is disconnected.



Dial-up icon

## AT Commands

AT commands are the commands (instructions) for setting and changing the functions of the FOMA terminal on a PC.

### Input format of AT commands

Always enter an AT command by adding AT at the beginning of the command. Be sure to use half-width alphanumeric characters. An input example is given below.

ATD\*99\*\*3#

Return mark: Press Enter key. It separates the commands.  
Parameter: Description of the command  
Command: Command name

Always enter an AT command including a parameter (number and symbol) right after the command in one line. One line means the row of characters from the first character to the character immediately before pressing [Enter].

### Input mode of AT commands

To operate the FOMA terminal using AT commands, set the PC to the terminal mode.

The terminal mode is used for operating a PC as a communication terminal. The characters entered from the keyboard are sent to the device connected to the communication port or the line.

#### Offline mode

The FOMA terminal is in stand-by status. This mode is normally used when you operate the FOMA terminal using AT commands.

#### Online data mode

The FOMA terminal is in the status where communication is in progress. If you enter an AT command in this status, the characters sent are sent to the destination in their original form and the modem at the destination may develop a trouble. Do not enter AT commands during communication.

#### Online command mode

This mode allows you to operate the FOMA terminal using AT commands even if it is in the status where communication is in progress. In this case, an AT command is executed while the terminal remains connected to the destination. You can continue communication again after completion of the AT command execution.

## Switching between the Online Data Mode and Online Command Mode

You can use the following two methods to switch the FOMA terminal between the online data mode and online command mode.

- Enter the code set to "+++ " command or "S2" register.
- Set the ER signal of RS-232C(※) to OFF when "AT&D1" is set.  
※ Since the RS-232C signal line is emulated by a USB interface, RS-232C signal line control by the communication application is enabled.

To switch from the online command mode to the online data mode, enter "ATO [Enter]".

## AT Command List

AT commands that can be used for FOMA SO704i are listed below.

[&F] : Commands that have their settings initialized by the AT&F command.

[&W] : Commands that have their settings saved by the AT&W command. You can use the ATZ command to call back the setting value.

Command	Outline/Parameter	Input example
A/	Re-executes the last executed command.	A/
AT%V	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal in the "Verx.xx" format.	AT%V
AT&C<n>	Selects the operating conditions for the circuit CD signal to DTE.	AT&C1
	n=0 Always sets the CD signal to ON (When the parameter is omitted).	
	n=1 Changes CD signal in accordance with the other party's modem status (Default).	
[&F][&W]		
AT&D<n>	Selects the operation that takes place when the circuit ER signal received from DTE changes to ON/OFF.	AT&D1
	n=0 Ignores the ER signal state (Always ON) (When the parameter is omitted).	
	n=1 Sets the online command mode if the ER signal changes from ON to OFF.	
[&F][&W]	n=2 Sets the offline mode if the ER signal changes from ON to OFF (Default).	
AT&E<n>	Selects specification of the speed indication during connection.	AT&E1
	n=0 Displays the communication speed between wireless sections.	
	n=1 Displays the communication speed between a PC and FOMA terminal (Default).	
[&F][&W]		
AT&F<n>	Sets the AT command setting values of the FOMA terminal to default. When this command is executed during communication, the operation for disconnecting the communication is performed.	AT&F0
	n=0 Only n=0 can be specified (Can be omitted).	
AT&S<n>	Sets the control of the DR signal to be output by the FOMA terminal.	AT&S0
	n=0 Always sets the DR signal to ON (Default, when the parameter is omitted).	
[&F][&W]	n=1 Sets the DR signal to ON when the line is connected.	
AT&W<n>	Writes the current setting value to the FOMA terminal.	AT&W0
	n=0 Only n=0 can be specified (Can be omitted).	
AT * DANTE	Displays the radio wave condition of the FOMA terminal in the " * DANTE:m" format. m=0: Outside of the service area, m=1-3: Number of antennas displayed on the FOMA terminal (m=1: No or one antenna).	AT * DANTE AT * DANTE=?
AT * DGANSM=<n>	Sets the Accept/Reject call to packet incoming call.	AT * DGANSM=0 AT * DGANSM? AT * DGANSM=?
	n=0 Sets the Accept/Reject call setting to OFF (Default).	
	n=1 Sets the Reject call to ON.	
	n=2 Sets the Accept call to ON.	
AT * DGAPL=<n>[,<cid>]	Sets a host (APN) that accepts a packet incoming call. The <cid> parameter defined by "+CGDCONT" is used as an APN. If <cid> is omitted, all cid are added/deleted.	AT * DGAPL=0,1 AT * DGAPL? AT * DGAPL=?
	n=0 Adds an APN defined by <cid> to the Accept call list.	
	n=1 Deletes an APN defined by <cid> from the Accept call list.	
AT * DGARL=<n>[,<cid>]	Sets a host (APN) that rejects a packet incoming call. The <cid> parameter defined by "+CGDCONT" is used as an APN. If <cid> is omitted, all cid are added/deleted.	AT * DGARL=0,1 AT * DGARL? AT * DGARL=?
	n=0 Adds an APN defined by <cid> to the Reject call list.	
	n=1 Deletes an APN defined by <cid> from the Reject call list.	
AT * DGPIR=<n>	Sets the Notify caller ID ON/OFF when sending/receiving data on packet communication.	AT * DGPIR=0 AT * DGPIR? AT * DGPIR=?
	n=0 Uses an APN as it is (Default).	
	n=1 Adds "184" to an APN.	
	n=2 Adds "186" to an APN.	
AT * DRPW	Displays the received power indicator of radio waves being received by the FOMA terminal in the " * DRPW:m" format (m=0-75).	AT * DRPW AT * DRPW=?
AT+CEER	Displays the reason for disconnection of the last communication (P.28).	AT+CEER AT+CEER=?
AT+CGDCONT=[<cid>[:"PPP"[<APN>]]]	Sets a host (APN) during outgoing packet transmission.	AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","abc"
	cid=1-10 Used for managing hosts (APN) saved in the FOMA terminal for packet communication	AT+CGDCONT= *1 AT+CGDCONT=<cid> *2
	APN=Arbitrary Host-specific arbitrary character string that indicates a host	AT+CGDCONT? AT+CGDCONT=?

\*1 Resets all cid to the default settings.

\*2 Resets a specified cid to the default setting.

Command	Outline/Parameter	Input example
AT+CGEQMIN=<cid[.[,<n>[,<m>]]]	Saves the criteria for permitting or not permitting QoS (Quality of Service) notified from the network when packet communication is established.	AT+CGEQMIN=2,,64,384 AT+CGEQMIN=2,,64
cid=1-10	Used for managing hosts (APN) saved in the FOMA terminal for packet communication	AT+CGEQMIN=2,,64 AT+CGEQMIN= *1
n=None/64	The minimum uplink communication speed (kbps) used between the FOMA terminal and the base station. None: Permits all speeds (Default). 64: Packet communication may not be connected in some cases.	AT+CGEQMIN=<cid> *2
m=None/384	The minimum downlink communication speed (kbps) used between the FOMA terminal and the base station. None: Permits all speeds (Default). 64: Packet communication may not be connected in some cases.	
AT+CGEQREQ=<cid>	Sets the QoS (Quality of Service) requested to the network when packet communication is originated.	AT+CGEQREQ= *1 AT+CGEQREQ=<cid> *2
cid=1-10	Used for managing hosts (APN) saved in the FOMA terminal for packet communication	
AT+CGMR	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal in 16 digits.	AT+CGMR AT+CGMR=?
AT+CGREG=<n>	Sets whether the network registration status is notified.	AT+CGREG=1 AT+CGREG=?
n=0	No notification (Default)	AT+CGREG=?
n=1	Notifies the registration status inside/outside of the service area in the "+CGREG:<n>,<stat>" format. stat=0: Outside of the service area, stat=1: Inside of the service area (home), stat=4: Unknown, stat=5: Inside of the service area (visitor)	AT+CGREG=?
[&F][&W]		
AT+CGSN	Displays the manufacturing number of the FOMA terminal.	AT+CGSN AT+CGSN=?
AT+CLIP=<n>	Sets whether the sender's caller ID is displayed on a PC when receiving 64K data communication. When you enter "AT+CLIP?", "+CLIP:n,m" appears. m=0: Network setting that does not notify caller ID to the other party when originating 64K data communication, m=1: Network setting that notifies caller ID to the other party when originating 64K data communication, m=2: Unknown	AT+CLIP=0 AT+CLIP? AT+CLIP=?
n=0	Does not display the sender's caller ID (Default, when the parameter is omitted).	
[&F][&W]		
n=1	Displays the sender's caller ID.	
AT+CLIR=<n>	Sets whether the recipient is notified of your caller ID when you originate 64K data communication. When you enter "AT+CLIR?", "+CLIR:n,m" appears. m=0: CLIR is not executed (always notifies), m=1: CLIR is always executed (never notifies), m=2: Unknown, m=3: CLIR temporary mode (Default: No notification), m=4: CLIR temporary mode (Default: Notification)	AT+CLIR=0 AT+CLIR? AT+CLIR=?
n=0	The terms of the CLIR service are applied (When the parameter is omitted).	
n=1	No notification	
n=2	Notification (Default)	
AT+CMEE=<n>	Sets the error report format of the FOMA terminal (P.28).	AT+CMEE=0 AT+CMEE=?
n=0	Displays "ERROR" (Default, when the parameter is omitted).	AT+CMEE=?
n=1	Displays using the "+CME ERROR:xxxx" format (xxxx are numerics).	
[&F][&W]		
n=2	Displays using the "+CME ERROR:xxxx" format (xxxx are characters).	
AT+CNUM	Displays the home station number of the FOMA terminal using the "+CNUM:,"home station number",type". type=129: Does not include the international access code +, type=145: Includes the international access code +	AT+CNUM AT+CNUM? AT+CNUM=?
AT+CR=<mode>	Sets whether the communication type is displayed before displaying "CONNECT" when the line is connected.	AT+CR=0 AT+CR? AT+CR=?
mode=0	Does not display (Default, when the parameter is omitted).	
mode=1	Displays using the "+CR:serv" format. serv=SYNC: 64K data communication, serv=GPRS: Packet communication	
[&F][&W]		
AT+CRC=<n>	Sets whether the extended result code is used when receiving a call.	AT+CRC=0 AT+CRC? AT+CRC=?
n=0	Does not use (Default).	
[&F][&W]		
n=1	Uses.	

\*1 Resets all cid to the default settings.

\*2 Resets a specified cid to the default setting.

Command	Outline/Parameter	Input example
AT+CREG=<n>	Sets whether the outside/inside of the service area information is displayed. When you enter AT+CREG?, the result is displayed in the "+CREG: <n>,<stat>" format. stat=0: Outside of the service area, stat=1: Inside of the service area (home), stat=4: Unknown, stat=5: Inside of the service area (visitor)	AT+CREG=1 AT+CREG=? AT+CREG=?
	n=0 Does not display (Default).	
[&F][&W]	n=1 Displays.	
AT+GMI	Displays the name of the FOMA terminal manufacturer.	AT+GMI AT+GMI=?
AT+GMM	Displays the name of the FOMA terminal.	AT+GMM AT+GMM=?
AT+GMR	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	AT+GMR AT+GMR=?
AT+IFC=<n,m>	Sets the local flow control method between the PC and the FOMA terminal. n is used for setting the control of DCE by DTE while m is used for setting the control of DTE by DCE. When m is omitted, the same input value as DCE by DTE is used.	AT+IFC=2,2 AT+IFC=? AT+IFC=?
	n=0 Does not perform flow control.	
	n=1 Performs XON/XOFF flow control.	
	n=2 Performs RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control (Default).	
	m=0 Does not perform flow control.	
	m=1 Performs XON/XOFF flow control.	
[&F][&W]	m=2 Performs RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control (Default).	
AT+WS46=<n>	Sets the radio network used by the FOMA terminal when originating communication.	AT+WS46=22 AT+WS46? AT+WS46=?
[&F][&W]	n=22 FOMA network (fixed value)	
AT+FS	Displays the command setting and S register data.	AT+FS
AT+YV<n>	Selects whether an extended result code is used when the connection is established.	AT+YV0
	n=0 Does not use an extended result code (Default, when the parameter is omitted).	
[&F][&W]	n=1 Uses an extended result code.	
ATA	Performs the receiving operation according to the mode received by the FOMA terminal.	
ATD	Originates packet or 64K data communication. For packet communication: Enter the command in the "ATD *99 * * * cid#" format. When cid is omitted, cid=1 is set. If the command is entered in the format beginning with "ATD184 *99", then 184 (without caller ID) is added to an APN of the specified cid. (This condition also applies to 186.) For 64K data communication: Enter the command in the "ATD phone number" format. For originating a call by redial: Enter the command in the "ATDL" or "ATDN" format.	ATD *99 * * * 3#
ATE<n>	Sets whether characters sent from the PC are echoed back.	ATE0
	n=0 Does not echo back (When the parameter is omitted).	
[&F][&W]	n=1 Performs an echo back (Default).	
ATH	Disconnects packet or 64K data communication.	ATH
ATI<n>	Displays an identification code.	ATI0
	n=0 Displays "NTT DoCoMo" (When the parameter is omitted).	
	n=1 Displays the name of the FOMA terminal.	
	n=2 Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	
ATO	Switches from the online command mode to the online data mode during communication.	ATO
ATQ<n>	Sets whether the result code is displayed on the PC.	ATQ1
	n=0 Displays (Default, when the parameter is omitted).	
[&F][&W]	n=1 Does not display.	
ATS0=<n>	Sets the number of rings sounded until the FOMA terminal automatically receives a call.	ATS0=0 ATS0?
	n=0 Does not automatically receive a call (Default, when the parameter is omitted).	
[&F][&W]	n=1-255 Number of rings	

Command	Outline/Parameter	Input example
ATS2=<n>	Sets an escape character.	ATS2=0 ATS2?
[&F]	n=0-126 43: Default, 0: When the parameter is omitted	
[&F]	n=127 Disables the escape operation.	
ATS3=<n>	Sets a carriage return (CR) character that can identify the end of an AT command character string. It is added to the end of the echoed back command character string and result code.	ATS3=13 ATS3?
[&F]	n=13 Default	
ATS4=<n>	Sets a line feed (LF) character. When the result code is displayed in alphabets, it is added after the carriage return (CR) character.	ATS4=10 ATS4?
[&F]	n=10 Default	
ATS5=<n>	Sets a backspace (BS) character that deletes the last character of input buffer during AT command input.	ATS5=8 ATS5?
[&F]	n=8 Default	
ATS6=<n>	Sets the pause time (seconds) until dialing. Although the register is set, the operation does not take place even if this command is used.	ATS6=5 ATS6?
[&F]	n=2-10 5: Default, when the parameter is omitted	
ATS8=<n>	Sets the pause time (seconds) until a comma dial is performed. Although the register is set, the pause time is fixed to 3 seconds even if this command is used.	ATS8=3 ATS8?
[&F]	n=1-255 60: Default, 121-255: Assumes 120	
ATS10=<n>	Sets the automatic disconnection delay time (1/10 seconds). Although the register is set, the operation does not take place even if this command is used.	ATS10=1 ATS10?
[&F][&W]	n=1-255 1: Default, when the parameter is omitted	
ATS30=<n>	Sets the waiting time (minutes) until communication is disconnected when no data is exchanged during 64K data communication.	ATS30=0 ATS30?
[&F]	n=0 Does not disconnect (Default, when the parameter is omitted).	
[&F]	n=1-255 Waiting time (minutes) until communication is disconnected	
ATS103=<n>	Sets a separator used when originating a call by adding an incoming call sub-address for 64K data communication.	ATS103=0 ATS103?
[&F]	n=0 * (When the parameter is omitted)	
[&F]	n=1 / (Default)	
[&F]	n=2 ¥	
ATS104=<n>	Sets a separator used when originating a call by adding an outgoing call sub-address for 64K data communication.	ATS104=0 ATS104?
[&F]	n=0 # (When the parameter is omitted)	
[&F]	n=1 % (Default)	
[&F]	n=2 &	
ATV<n>	Sets the display method for the result code.	ATV1
[&F][&W]	n=0 Displays the result code using a numeric value (When the parameter is omitted).	
[&F][&W]	n=1 Displays the result code using text (Default).	
ATX<n>	Sets the busy tone and dial tone detection, and communication speed indication.	ATX1
[&F][&W]	n=0 Without busy/dial tone detection, without speed indication (When the parameter is omitted)	
[&F][&W]	n=1 Without busy/dial tone detection, with speed indication	
[&F][&W]	n=2 Without busy tone detection, with dial tone detection, without speed indication	
[&F][&W]	n=3 With busy tone detection, without dial tone detection, with speed indication	
[&F][&W]	n=4 With busy/dial tone detection, with speed indication (Default)	
ATZ	Sets the FOMA terminal settings to the contents of a volatile memory recorded by AT&W. When this command is executed during communication, the operation for disconnecting the line is performed.	ATZ
+++	Switches the FOMA terminal from the online data mode to the online command mode. The escape guard section is fixed to 1 second.	+++



## List of Reasons for Disconnection

### Packet communication

Value	Reason
27	An APN is not found or is incorrect.
30	Disconnected from the network.
33	Not signed up for packet communication.
36	Normal disconnection

### 64K data communication

Value	Reason
1	A specified number is not found.
16	Normal disconnection
17	Cannot communicate because the other party is already in communication status.
18	Communication was originated but no response is returned within the specified time.
19	Cannot communicate because the recipient's terminal is ringing.
21	The recipient rejected the call.
63	Network service and option are not enabled.
65	An invalid processing speed has been specified.
88	A call was originated to or received by a terminal with different terminal attributes.

## List of Error Reports

Numeric value indication	Text indication	Reason
10	SIM not inserted	UIM is not set.
15	SIM wrong	SIM (IC card equivalent to UIM) other than a DoCoMo product is inserted.
16	incorrect password	Wrong password
100	unknown	Unknown error

## Result Codes

The result code is displayed in the text indication format (initial value) when the ATVn command is set to n=1 (P.27), while the result code is displayed in the numeric value format when it is set to n=0.

### List of result codes

Numeric value indication	Text indication	Description
0	OK	Normal execution
1	CONNECT	Connected to the other party.
2	RING	There is an incoming call.
3	NO CARRIER	The line is disconnected.
4	ERROR	Cannot accept a command.
6	NO DIALTONE	Cannot detect a dial tone.
7	BUSY	During the detection of a busy tone
8	NO ANSWER	Connection timeout
100	RESTRICTION	The network is restricted. The communication network is congested. Retry later.
101	DELAYED	Call origination using the redial record is restricted.

### Extended result codes

#### ● &E0

Displays the connection speed between the FOMA terminal and the base station.

Numeric value indication	Text indication	Connection speed
121	CONNECT 32000	32,000bps
122	CONNECT 64000	64,000bps
125	CONNECT 384000	384,000bps

#### ● &E1

Displays the connection speed between the FOMA terminal and a PC.

Numeric value indication	Text indication	Connection speed
5	CONNECT 1200	1,200bps
10	CONNECT 2400	2,400bps
11	CONNECT 4800	4,800bps
12	CONNECT 9600	9,600bps
16	CONNECT 19200	19,200bps
17	CONNECT 38400	38,400bps
18	CONNECT 57600	57,600bps
19	CONNECT 115200	115,200bps
20	CONNECT 230400	230,400bps
21	CONNECT 460800	460,800bps

- The displayed communication speed, which remains only for compatibility with a modem that has a conventional RS-232C interface, does not indicate the actual speed because the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is used for connection between the FOMA terminal and a PC.

### Communication protocol result codes

Numeric value indication	Text indication	Description
1	PPPOverUD	64K data communication connection
5	PACKET	Packet communication connection

### Example of result code indication

#### ● When ATX0 is set

When the connection is completed, only "CONNECT" is displayed regardless of the ATV command setting (P.26).

Text indication example	Numeric value indication example
ATD *99 * * * 3# CONNECT	ATD *99 * * * 3# 1

#### ● When ATX1 is set※

- When ATX1 or ATV0 is set

When the connection is completed, indicated in "CONNECT <speed between the FOMA terminal and a PC>" format.

Text indication example	Numeric value indication example
ATD *99 * * * 3# CONNECT 460800	ATD *99 * * * 3# 1 21

- When ATX1 or ATV1 is set※

When the connection is completed, indicated in "CONNECT <speed between the FOMA terminal and a PC>PACKET<Host APN>/<Highest uplink speed (FOMA terminal → base station)>/<Highest downlink speed (FOMA terminal ← base station)>" format.

Text indication example	Numeric value indication example
ATD *99 * * * 3# CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.net/64/384	ATD *99 * * * 3# 1 21 5

(Indicates that the uplink connection is made using 64kbps maximum and the downlink connection is made using 384kbps maximum to mopera.net.)

- ※ When ATX1 and ATV1 are set simultaneously, the dial-up connection may not be performed correctly. We recommend using ATV0 only.

# FOMA® SO704i

## Kuten Code List

In the following Kuten code list, a 4-digit kuten code is expressed by the combination of the row for the first three digits and the column for the last digit.

Example: When you wish to input "★" (corresponding to kuten code "0190"), locate it in the Kuten code list and determine the kuten code for it from its row ("019") and column ("0").

※ The display of the Kuten code list may be different from the actual display.

区点 1~3桁目										区点4桁目										区点 1~3桁目										区点4桁目																																			
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9																										
010	!	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	077	ф	х	я	ц	ч	ш	щ	ь	ы	ь	э	195	赫	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	078	ю	х	я	ц	ч	ш	щ	ь	ы	ь	э	196	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額			
011	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	080	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	197	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	081	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	198	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額
012	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	082	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	199	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	083	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	200	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額
013	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	130	①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨	⑩	201	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	131	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	⑳	202	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額				
014	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	132	㊶	㊷	㊸	㊹	㊺	㊻	㊼	㊽	㊾	㊿	203	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	133	㊶	㊷	㊸	㊹	㊺	㊻	㊼	㊽	㊾	㊿	204	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額				
015	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	134	㊶	㊷	㊸	㊹	㊺	㊻	㊼	㊽	㊾	㊿	205	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	135	㊶	㊷	㊸	㊹	㊺	㊻	㊼	㊽	㊾	㊿	206	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額				
016	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	136	㊶	㊷	㊸	㊹	㊺	㊻	㊼	㊽	㊾	㊿	207	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	137	㊶	㊷	㊸	㊹	㊺	㊻	㊼	㊽	㊾	㊿	208	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額				
017	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	138	㊶	㊷	㊸	㊹	㊺	㊻	㊼	㊽	㊾	㊿	209	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	139	㊶	㊷	㊸	㊹	㊺	㊻	㊼	㊽	㊾	㊿	210	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額				
018	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	160	萎	亞	哇	哇	哀	愛	挨	哈	蓬	211	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	161	萎	亞	哇	哇	哀	愛	挨	哈	蓬	212	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額						
019	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	162	萎	亞	哇	哇	哀	愛	挨	哈	蓬	213	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	163	萎	亞	哇	哇	哀	愛	挨	哈	蓬	214	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額						
020	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	164	萎	亞	哇	哇	哀	愛	挨	哈	蓬	215	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	165	萎	亞	哇	哇	哀	愛	挨	哈	蓬	216	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額						
021	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	166	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	217	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	167	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	218	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額								
022	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	168	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	219	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	169	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	220	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額								
023	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	170	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	221	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	171	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	222	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額								
024	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	172	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	223	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	173	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	224	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額								
026	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	174	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	225	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	175	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	226	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額								
027	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	176	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	227	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	177	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	228	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額								
028	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	178	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	229	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	179	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	230	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額								
029	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	178	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	231	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	180	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	232	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額								
031	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	178	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	233	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	181	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	234	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額								
032	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	178	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	235	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	182	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	236	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額								
033	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	178	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	237	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	183	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	238	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額								
034	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	178	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	239	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	184	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	239	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額								
035	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	178	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	240	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	185	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	240	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額								
036	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	178	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	241	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	186	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	242	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額								
037	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	178	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	242	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	187	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	243	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額								
038	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	178	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	243	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	188	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	244	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額								
039	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	178	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	244	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	189	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	245	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額								
040	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	178	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	245	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	190	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	246	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額								
041	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	178	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	246	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額	191	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	247	額	鳴	額	掛	鼓	郭	閨	革	學	岳	寒	刺	刊	額								
042	~	。、	、	、	、	、	、	、	、	178	威	尉	伊	依	偉	圍	夷	委	247	額	鳴	額	掛																																										





